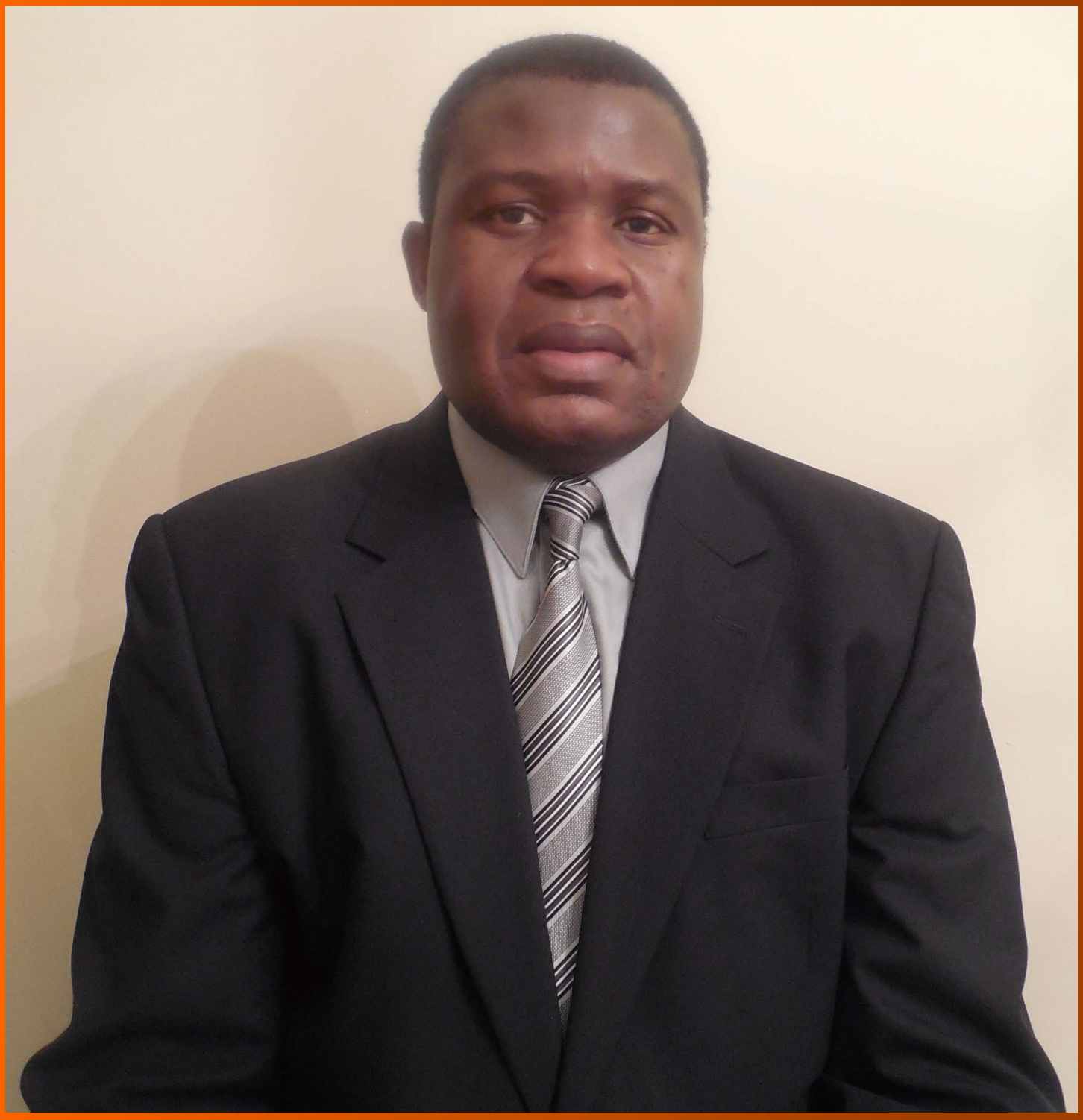
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

World Journal of *Surgical Procedures*

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 1-176



Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJSP World Journal of Surgical Procedures

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of surgical procedures

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Surgical Procedures* Editorial Board consists of 276 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgical procedures. They are from 35 countries, including Australia (10), Austria (3), Belgium (1), Brazil (4), Canada (5), China (23), Egypt (2), France (1), Germany (10), Greece (9), Hungary (1), India (6), Iran (3), Ireland (1), Israel (6), Italy (29), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (2), Nigeria (1), Norway (1), Pakistan (1), Poland (1), Romania (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (2), South Korea (7), Spain (11), Switzerland (5), Thailand (1), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (11), and United States (71).

Hungary

Péter Örs Horváth, *Pécs*

India

Nilakantan Ananthakrishnan, *Pondicherry*
Rakesh Kumar, *Haryana*
Suguna Lonchin, *Chennai*
Chinmay Kumar Panda, *Kolkata*
Muthukumaran Rangarajan, *Coimbatore*
Nihal Thomas, *Vellore*

Iran

Mehrdad Mohammadpour, *Tehran*
Seyed Reza Mousavi, *Tehran*
Mohammad Taher Rajabi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Desmond Winter, *Dublin*

Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*
Haim Gutman, *Tikva*
Yoav Mintz, *Jerusalem*
Solly Mizrahi, *Beer sheva*
Nir Wasserberg, *Petach Tiqua*
Oded Zmora, *Tel Hashomer*

Italy

Ferdinando Agresta, *Fregona*
Franco Bassetto, *Padova*
Claudio Bassi, *Verona*
Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
Francesco Boccardo, *Genoa*
Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
Fausto Catena, *Bologna*
Luigi D'Ambra, *La Spezia*
Alessandro Franchini, *Florence*
Giuseppe Galloro, *Naples*
Massimo Gerosa, *Verona*
Francesco Greco, *Brescia*
Roberto Iezzi, *Rome*
Fabrizio Luca, *Milan*
Simone Mocellin, *Padova*
Boscolo-Rizzo Paolo, *Padua*
Giacomo Pata, *Brescia*
Marcello Picchio, *Latina*
Giuseppe Piccinni, *Bari*
Marco Raffaelli, *Rome*
Matteo Ravaioli, *Bologna*
Raffaele Russo, *Naples*
Vincenzo Russo, *Naples*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Luciano Solaini, *Ravenna*
Pietro Valdastri, *Pisa*
Luca Viganò, *Torino*
Luigi Zorcolo, *Cagliari*

Japan

Hiroki Akamatsu, *Osaka*
Mitsuhiro Asakuma, *Osaka*
Hideo Baba, *Kumamoto*
Akihiro Cho, *Chiba*
Shotaro Enomoto, *Wakayama*
Satoshi Hagiwara, *Yufu*
Yoshiki Hirooka, *Nagoya City*
Motohiro Imano, *Osaka*
Yasuhiro Ito, *Kobe*
Koichi Iwatsuki, *Osaka*
Kyousuke Kamada, *Asahikawa*
Hirotoshi Kobayashi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Kume, *Gifu*
Daisuke Morioka, *Yokohama*
Toshitaka Nagao, *Tokyo*
Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
Kensaku Sanefuji, *Fukuoka*
Norio Shiraishi, *Oita*
Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
Nobumi Tagaya, *Koshigaya*
Sonshin Takao, *Kagoshima*
Hiroshi Takeyama, *Tokyo*
Koji Tanaka, *Suita*
Kuniya Tanaka, *Yokohama*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Akira Tsunoda, *Kamogawa*
Dai Uematsu, *Nagano*
Shinichi Ueno, *Kagoshima*
Toshifumi Wakai, *Niigata*
Atsushi Watanabe, *Sapporo*
Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
Yo-ichi Yamashita, *Hiroshima*
Naohisa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Seiichi Yoshida, *Niigata*

Lebanon

Bishara Atiyeh, *Beirut*

Lithuania

Aleksandras Antusevas, *Kaunas*

Mexico

José A Robles Cervantes, *Guadalajara*
Miguel F Herrera, *Mexico City*

Netherlands

Frans L Moll, *Utrecht*
Paulus Joannes van Diest, *Utrecht*

Nigeria

Christopher Olusanjo Bode, *Lagos*

Norway

Michael Brauckhoff, Bergen

Pakistan

Drshamim Muhammad Shamim, *Karachi*

Poland

Lek Nowińska Anna, *Katowice*

Romania

Mihai Ciocirlan, *Bucharest*
Adrian Iancu, *Cluj Napoca*

Saudi Arabia

Abdul-Wahed Meshikhes, *Dammam*

Singapore

Zhi-wei Huang, *Singapore*
Brian K P Goh, *Singapore*

South Korea

Sung-Hyuk Choi, *Seoul*
Young Seob Chung, *Seoul*
Dong-Ik Kim, *Seoul*
Choon Hyuck David Kwon, *Seoul*
Ho-Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
In Ja Park, *Seoul*
Sung-Soo Park, *Seoul*

Spain

Maria Angeles Aller, *Vallehermoso*
Aniceto Baltasar, *Alcoy*
Bernardo Hontanilla Calatayud, *Pamplona*
Manuel Giner, *Madrid*
Fernando Hernanz, *Cantabria*
Álvaro Larrad Jiménez, *Madrid*
David Martinez-Ramos, *Castellon*
Juan Viñas Salas, *Leida*
Eduardo M Targarona, *Barcelona*
Carmen Peralta Uroz, *Barcelona*
Jesus Vaquero, *Madrid*

Switzerland

Marco Buter, *Zürich*
Pascal Gervaz, *Geneva*
Merlin Guggenheim, *Männedorf*
Jürg Metzger, *Lucerne*
Cafarotti Stefano, *Bellinzona*

Thailand

Varut Lohsiriwat, *Bangkok*

Turkey

Ugur Boylu, *Istanbul*

WJSP

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Contents

Four-monthly Volume 5 Number 1 March 28, 2015

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Volume 5 Number 1 March 28, 2015

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Surgical Procedures

ISSN
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 29, 2011

FREQUENCY
Four-monthly

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
March 28, 2015

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.1

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 1-13
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Impact of technology on indications and limitations for transanal surgical removal of rectal neoplasms

Bikash Devaraj, Andreas M Kaiser

Bikash Devaraj, Andreas M Kaiser, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Keck School of Medicine, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, CA 90033, United States
Author contributions: Devaraj B and Kaiser AM contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: Both authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

Correspondence to: Andreas M Kaiser, MD, FACS, FASCRS, Professor of Clinical Surgery, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Keck School of Medicine, University of Southern California, 1441 Eastlake Avenue, Suite 7418, Los Angeles, CA 90033, United States. akaiser@usc.edu
Telephone: +1-323-8653690
Fax: +1-323-8653671
Received: September 30, 2014
Peer-review started: October 1, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: November 4, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Transanal surgery has and continues to be well accepted for local excision of benign rectal disease not amenable to endoscopic resection. More recently, there has been increasing interest in applying transanal surgery to local resection of early malignant disease. In addition, some groups have started utilizing a transanal route in order to accomplish total mesorectal excision (TME) for more advanced rectal malignancies. We aim to review the role of various transanal and endoscopic techniques in the local resection of benign and malignant rectal disease based on published trial data. Preliminary data on the use of transanal platforms to accomplish TME will also be highlighted. For endoscopically unresectable rectal adenomas, transanal surgery remains a widely accepted method with minimal morbidity that avoids the downsides of a major abdomino-pelvic operation. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery and transanal minimally invasive surgery offer improved visualization and magnification, allowing for finer and more precise dissection of more proximal and larger rectal lesions without compromising patient outcome. Some studies have demonstrated efficacy in utilizing transanal platforms in the surgical management of early rectal malignancies in selected patients. There is an overall higher recurrence rate with transanal surgery with the concern that neither chemoradiation nor salvage surgery may compensate for previous approach and correct the inferior outcome. Application of transanal platforms to accomplish transanal TME in a natural orifice fashion are still in their infancy and currently should be considered experimental. The current data demonstrate that transanal surgery remains an excellent option in the surgical management of benign rectal disease. However, care should be used when selecting patients with malignant disease. The application of transanal platforms continues to evolve. While the new uses of transanal platforms in TME for more advanced rectal malignancy are exciting, it is important to remain cognizant and not sacrifice long term survival for short term decrease in morbidity and improved cosmesis.

Key words: Transanal surgery; Transanal endoscopic microsurgery; Endoscopic mucosal resection; Transanal total mesorectal excision; Transanal minimally invasive surgery; Robotic transanal surgery; Local excision rectal neoplasms

Core tip: The review summarizes the technology advances and analyzes their impact on the validity of local transanal management of benign *vs* malignant rectal neoplasms. Current data demonstrate that transanal surgery remains an excellent option for benign disease. As transanal platforms continue to evolve, caution should be used when selecting patients with malignant disease. In view of the fact that the alternative of abdominal oncological procedures (laparoscopic, robotic, open) provide high cure rates, it is important to remain cognizant and not sacrifice long term survival for short term benefits (decrease in morbidity and improved cosmesis).

Devaraj B, Kaiser AM. Impact of technology on indications and limitations for transanal surgical removal of rectal neoplasms. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 1-13 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Rectal neoplasms are frequent and range from simple to highly complex conditions. Decision factors for their optimal management among others include the size and true axial and radial location of the lesion, the level of rectal wall and adjacent organ involvement, but most importantly, whether a definitively non-malignant (*e.g.*, lipoma), a potentially malignant (adenomatous polyp, carcinoid), or a malignant process is suspected or confirmed. Particularly for more advanced and malignant lesions, the standard approach consists of an abdominal low anterior resection; depending on the proximity to the pelvic floor and sphincter complex, it includes a resection of the anus (abdomino-perineal resection) or allows for restoration of the intestinal continuity[1,2]. The advantage of the abdominal total mesorectal excision (TME) is that it assures a lymphadenectomy and-if done correctly-the removal of an intact mesorectal envelope (fascia propria) as the two most relevant factors to reduce the risk of local recurrences. The disadvantages, however, include the magnitude of the surgery as such, the length of recovery, the risk for an anastomotic leak, a not negligible probability to require a temporary or permanent ostomy, and a marked negative functional impact.

As communicated by Parks *et al*[3], conventional transanal excision (TAE) became a widely adopted surgical technique with minimal morbidity for the management of low rectal lesions. Criteria were defined to characterize lesions best suited for TAE: it should be < 3-4 cm in size/diameter, encompass less than 25%-40% of the circumference, be mobile, and be in reach of the finger/anoscope (*i.e.*, no more than 6-8 cm from the anal verge)[1]. This latter aspect represented the biggest technical limitations of conventional transanal surgery, as mid to upper rectal tumors were out of reach secondary to inadequate exposure.

In more recent years, a number of technical developments have evolved to overcome these limitations. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery (TEMS) and later transanal minimally invasive surgery (TAMIS) have allowed for local excision of tumors anywhere in the entire rectum. The improved reach and visualization allows for a finer and controlled dissection which made it possible for surgeons to push the limits of what can be accomplished *via* a transanal route. Resection of larger, more proximal adenomas encompassing more than 40% of the circumference have been carried out with low morbidity and acceptable recurrence rates for benign neoplasms[4-6].

Whether transanal surgery should be applied to malignant disease remains a matter of considerable debate. Even when limiting local excision to early tumors with favorable histology, as described by Willett *et al*[7], a significant rate of local recurrence has been reported[8-10]. Two factors are thought to contribute to this unfavorable outcome: (1) direct implantation of cancer cells into the surgical wound as a result of the direct instrumentation of the tumor; and (2) the lack of a lymphadenectomy even though 7%-10% of T1 tumors are found to have lymph node metastases[1,2]. This latter aspect not only leaves behind nodal tumor tissue, but results in understaging and hence undertreatment of stage Ⅲ disease. Furthermore, salvage therapy after failure of local excision may involve more than what would have been needed initially and potentially require multivisceral resection with increased morbidity and lower overall survival[11,12].

Advances in endoscopy techniques have led to the introduction of endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR). This procedure has demonstrated some efficacy in the resection of larger (> 2 cm) and sessile lesions, characteristics that would have in the past ruled out the possibility of an endoscopic resection[13-16]. Similar to transanal surgery, EMR is not suited to perform a lymphadenectomy and carries a risk of bowel perforation with intraperitoneal bowel segments.

In recent years, some groups have extended the use of TEMS and TAMIS platforms in order to accomplish transanal natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) TME[17,18]. In addition, a combination of the da Vinci robotic system (Intuitive Surgical Inc., Sunnyvale, CA, United States) with the TAMIS platform was used to carry out the first series of robotic-assisted transanal surgery for TME[19]. Experience with these approaches remain confined to specialty groups and limited to feasibility case reports[19-22].

The goal of this article is to highlight the various transanal surgical techniques and analyze the available evidence on the validity of local excision of benign and

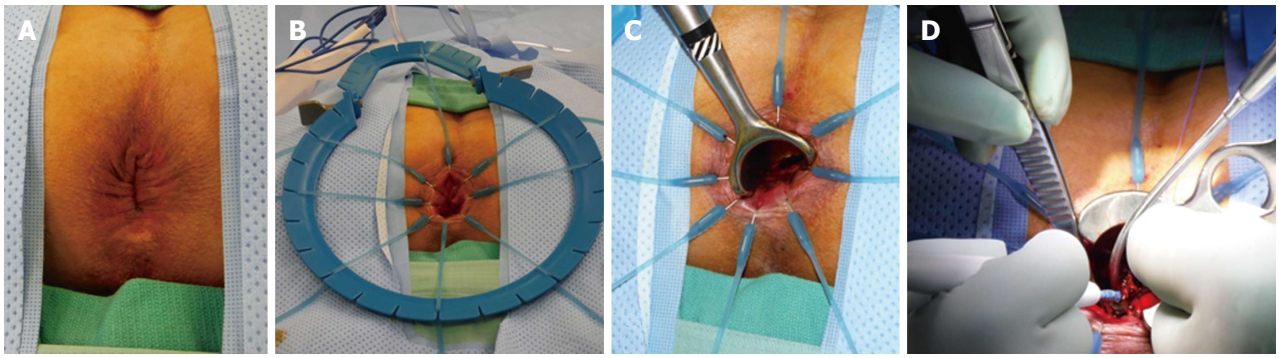


Figure 1 Conventional transanal excision with the patient in prone-jackknife position. A: Anus at beginning of the surgery; B: Placement of Lone Star retractor; C: Additional hand-held retractor optimizes exposure; D: Direct transanal instrumentation under regular view.

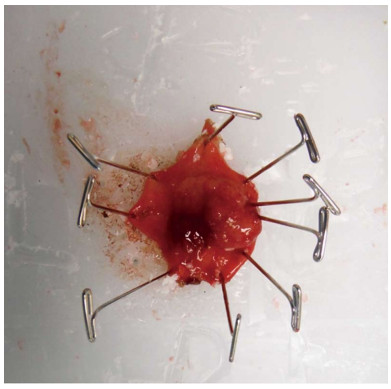


Figure 2 Fixation and orientation of the specimen on a wax board. The tissue is pinned down with needles. L(eft), R(ight), D(istal), and P(roximal) are carved into the wax. The specimen is subsequently placed in formalin for at least 24 h before processing and sectioning it onto slides.

malignant rectal neoplasms.

TAE

TAE can be performed with minimal specialty equipment, but depends on an optimized exposure of the target lesion as well as good hemostasis throughout the procedure. A variety of retractors are available, but in our hands, a Lone Star retractor (Coopersurgical, Inc. Trumbull, Connecticut, United States) to retract/evert the dentate line in combination with a handheld anal retractor has been the most reliable set-up (Figure 1). A circumferential margin of about 1cm is marked out by diathermy around the lesion. A full thickness excision using energy devices is then carried out whereby fragmentation of the specimen should be avoided. Fixation and orientation of the excised lesion on a wax board should then be carefully performed to prevent the tissue from rolling up and allow for proper pathological assessment of the resection margins (Figure 2). The defect should be washed out and either closed transversely with interrupted absorbable stitches or left open.

TAE overall is well tolerated and associated with only minor morbidity. However, there appears to be a significant variability in regards to recurrence rates after local excision of rectal adenomas ranging from 3%-40% in published series[23-26]. In a 10 year single institution review of 26 transanally excised adenomas, Hoth *et al*[27] reported a 38% recurrence rate over an average follow-up period of 25 mo. In a larger series of 117 patients with an average follow-up of 55 mo, Sakamoto *et al*[28] demonstrated an overall 30% recurrence rate for rectal adenomas. The authors postulated that the high recurrence rate was the result of inadequate exposure leading to incomplete excision[28]. A more recent and even larger study by Pigot *et al*[29] on a cohort of 207 patients undergoing TAE for rectal villous adenomata yielded better outcomes. The authors claimed to obtain improved intra-operative visualization by creating a cutaneo-mucus flap handle to allow for gentle traction, hence allowing for complete excision of the rectal adenoma with a recurrence rate of only 3.6%. Overall, the data on conventional TAE demonstrate higher than expected recurrence rates even for benign rectal adenomas; nonetheless, this surgical approach remains widely accepted for management of benign rectal pathologies in very distal location and close proximity to the sphincter structures.

Unquestionably, similarly high local recurrence rates would seem much more concerning in the management of malignant rectal tumors. Some 20 years ago, Willett *et al*[7] completed one of the earlier comparisons of standard resection with transanal local excision for low T1/T2 rectal cancer. This study was one of the first to suggest that in patients with favorable cancer histology (well differentiated, no venous or lymphovascular involvement), transanal surgery might be an acceptable alternative to standard resection. Fifty-six patients who had undergone transanal surgery were compared to 69 patients subjected to an abdomino-perineal resection (APR). Transanal surgery in 28 patients with favorable cancer histology resulted in a 5 year disease-free survival of 87% and a local control rate of 96%, whereas the other 28 patients with unfavorable cancer histology only achieved a 57% and 68%, respectively. In contrast, APR in 49 patients with favorable tumor histology resulted in 5 year disease-free survival and local control rates of 91%

Table 1 Single center comparison of transanal excision and standard resection for T1 rectal cancer

Ref.	Year	Follow-up (yr)	*n*		5 yr local recurrence		5 yr overall survival	
			TAE	SR	TAE	SR	TAE	SR
Mellgren *et al*[31]	2000	4.4-4.8	69	30	18%[1]	0[1]	72%	80%[1]
Nascimbeni *et al*[32]	2004	9.2	70	74	6.6%	2.8%	72%[1]	90%[1]
Bentrem *et al*[30]	2005	4.3	151	168	15%[1]	3%[1]	89%	93%
Nash *et al*[33]	2009	5.6	137	145	13.2%[1]	2.7%[1]	87%[1]	96%[1]

[1]Statistically significant. TAE: Transanal excision; SR: Standard resection.

Table 2 National cancer registries comparison of transanal excision and standard resection for T1 rectal cancer

Ref.	Year	Follow-up (yr)	*n*		5 yr local recurrence		5 yr overall survival	
			TAE	SR	TAE	SR	TAE	SR
Endreseth *et al*[37]	2005	2-8.1	35	256	12%	6%[1]	70%[1]	80%[1]
You *et al*[42]	2007	6.3	601	493	12.5%	6.9%[1]	77%	82%
Ptok *et al*[40]	2007	3.5	85	359	5.1%[1]	1.4%[1]	84%	92%
[2]Folkesson *et al*[38]	2007	NA	256	1141	7%	2%[1]	87%	93%
Hazard *et al*[39]	2009	3.9	573	3040	NA	NA	71%	84%
[2]Saraste *et al*[41]	2013	NA	448	3246	11.2%	2.9%	81%	92%

[1]Statistically significant; [2]Mix of T1 and T2 tumors. SR: Standard resection; TAE: Transanal excision; NA: Not available.

and 91%, compared to 79% and 89%, respectively, in 20 patients with unfavorable tumor histology.

Since then, several single institution case series have been published that compared transanal local excision to standard resection in T1 rectal cancers[30-33]. These results are summarized in Table 1. Overall, there is a significantly increased 5 year local recurrence rate with transanal surgery (7%-18%) compared to standard resection (0%-3%). The 5 year overall survival in the transanal local excision group was also noted to be substantially lower (72%-87%) than in the standard resection groups (80%-96%). The most recent of these studies by Nash *et al*[33] found a 20% incidence of lymph node metastasis in the standard resection group despite the tumor histological profile being similar between the 2 groups. This high prevalence of lymph node metastasis for early T tumors is about double the expected number from previously published reports[34-36]. At 7 years, cancer related deaths were 17% in the TAE group compared to 6% in patients undergoing a standard oncological resection. The differences in both local recurrence and 5 year overall survival were not only statistically significant but clinically alarming enough for the authors to conclude that transanal surgery even in early rectal cancer offered inferior oncological outcomes and should be restricted to patients that are unable to undergo standard resection[33].

In addition to single institution case series, national cancer registries have recently reported results comparing transanal surgery to standard resection[37-42]. These results are summarized in Table 2. Such registries have the benefit of a much larger sample size at the expense of a lack of detail and standardization (surgical techniques, data incorporation and surveillance protocols). Even though two of the studies included a mix of T1 and T2 rectal tumors in their analysis[38,41], there still appear to be higher than expected local recurrence rates for transanal surgery (5.1%-12.5%) compared to standard resection (1.4%-6.9%). Though not reaching statistical significance, there was a clear trend towards improved overall survival in patients undergoing standard resection (80%-93%) *vs* transanal surgery (70%-87%). An insufficiently analyzed factor contributing to the lower survival in the transanal excision group could be the inherent selection bias prevalent in registry data whereby patients might have been directed towards local excision if they had relevant comorbidities and limited operability.

While there is little doubt about the substantially increased local recurrence rates after transanal surgery compared to standard resection, a key question is whether these recurrences are salvageable with further surgical or adjuvant chemoradiation. Data on this topic are limited to single institution reviews[43]. Data from Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center suggested that a substantial fraction of patients with local recurrences only could be managed with salvage surgery, but that only 30% of these were alive at 6 years[43]. In the most recent data analysis from MD Anderson Cancer Center over an 18 year period, You *et al*[44] demonstrated that recurrent rectal cancer (initial T1-T3 disease) appeared at a median interval of 1.9 years. The majority of patients (87%) were candidates to undergo salvage therapy with an R0 resection being attained in 80% of these patients. However, salvage therapy was associated significant morbidity: sphincter preservation was possible in only a third; a third underwent multi-visceral resection with a perioperative morbidity of 50%. In addition, 5 year

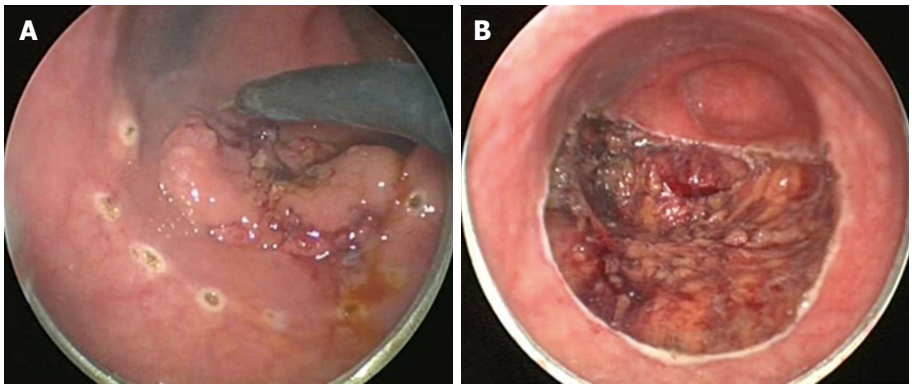


Figure 3 Transanal endoscopic microsurgery-internal view demonstrating an excellent exposure of the lesion. A: Sessile lesion being marked with a dotted line at about 1 cm around the border of the lesion; B: View after full thickness excision with exposed mesorectal fat.

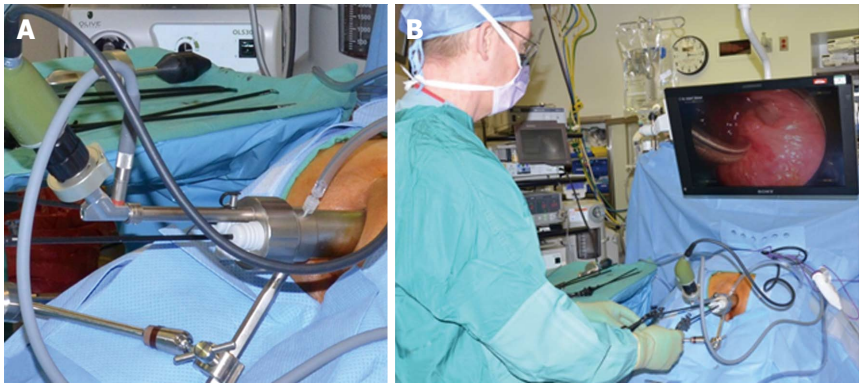


Figure 4 Transanal endoscopic microsurgery-external view. A: Close-up to working anoscope with air insufflation, camera port, and 3 working ports; B: Surgeon and monitor position during procedure with a patient in prone-jackknife position.

overall survival after salvage therapy was significantly lower at 68% compared to the reported 80%-90% survival rate that should be expected in stage 1-2 rectal cancers. Earlier data from other institutions mirror the MD Anderson experience: all demonstrating lower 5 year overall survival in salvage therapy (53%-59%) despite attaining an R0 resection in most cases (79%-97%)[11,12,45].

TEMS

TEMS was originally developed by Buess *et al*[46] in Germany in the early 1980s. This transanal platform which is offered by different vendors includes video optics and an improved visibility due to creation of a pneumorectum (Figure 3). It consists of a 4 cm diameter proctoscope with a variable length of 7.5 to 20 cm allowing for visualization of the entire rectum. An airtight seal is maintained between the proctoscope and the anus allowing for pressure-controlled rectal insufflation with CO_2. The faceplate of the proctoscope has 4 ports allowing for the insertion of the camera and three other working instruments (Figure 4). The ends of the operating instruments are angulated to improve their range of motion in the tight rectal space. The entire unit is fixed to the operating table and stabilized *via* an articulating arm. The procedure is facilitated by positioning the patient such that the target lesion is in the dependent position. Obstacles of this technology are its substantial initial cost to purchase the specialty equipment as well as a steep learning curve[47,48].

As with TAE, there is overall minimal perioperative morbidity associated with TEMS[49-51]. However, given the larger size of the operating proctoscope in relation to traditional handheld anal retractors, a negative impact (stretch injury) on the sphincter would not come as a surprise. In fact, some studies analyzed the effect of TEMS on anorectal function[52-57]; lower sphincter pressures were observed but the squeeze pressures ultimately improved by 1 year after TEMS[57]. Similarly, in study with a 5 year follow up after TEMS, Allaix *et al*[52] demonstrated a return of manometric values to pre-operative levels after 1 year. Utilizing sequential Fecal Incontinence Severity Index (FISI) and Fecal Incontinence Quality of Life scores, Cataldo *et al*[53] and Doornebosch *et al*[54] did not note a decrease in either one after TEMS. The current evidence suggests that TEMS does not have any long lasting deleterious effect on anorectal function.

With the introduction of TEMS, larger and more proximal rectal adenomas are now amenable to local surgical excision. Local recurrence rates after adenoma

Table 3 Recurrence after transanal endoscopic microsurgery resection of benign rectal adenoma

Ref.	Year	Follow-up (yr)	*n*	Recurrence
Said *et al*[67]	1995	3.2	260	6.5%
Platell *et al*[65]	2004	1.5	62	2.4%
Endreseth *et al*[60]	2005	2	64	13%
Whitehouse *et al*[71]	2006	3.3	143	4.8%
McCloud *et al*[63]	2006	2.6	75	16%
Guerrieri *et al*[86]	2008	3.7	588	4.3%
Speake *et al*[68]	2008	1	80	12.5%
Moore *et al*[64]	2008	1.7	40	3%
de Graaf *et al*[59]	2009	2.3	309	6.6%
Ramirez *et al*[66]	2009	3.6	149	5.4%
van den Broek *et al*[70]	2009	1.1	248	9.3%
Guerrieri *et al*[61]	2010	7	402	4%
Tsai *et al*[69]	2010	2	156	5%
de Graaf *et al*[58]	2011	2.7	208	6.1%

excision by TEMS have been reported by numerous largely single institution studies (2.4%-16%)[58-71]. The results are summarized in Table 3. Even though the majority of studies did not strictly compare the two approaches, there appeared overall to be a lower recurrence rate of rectal adenomas excised *via* TEMS compared to TAE (3%-40%) as mentioned earlier. In addition, 2 other studies designed to pitch TEMS against conventional transanal surgery have also demonstrated lower recurrence rates with TEMS[58,64]. De Graaf *et al*[58] resected 216 adenomas *via* TEMS and 43 *via* TAE and found more frequent negative margins (88% *vs* 50%, $P < 0.001$) and lower recurrence rates (6.1% *vs* 28.7%, $P < 0.001$) in the TEMS group. Similarly, Moore *et al*[64] demonstrated a lesser degree of specimen fragmentation (94% *vs* 65%, $P < 0.001$) in addition to increased negative margins (90% *vs* 71%, $P = 0.001$) and lower recurrence rates (5% *vs* 27%, $P = 0.004$) with TEMS. Numerous factors come together and contribute to the better quality and outcomes parameters achieved with TEMS, such as improved operative visualization and magnification, increased stability and decreased need for specimen traction, optimized hemostasis, as well as improved instrumentation, all of which lead to increased completeness of the excision and decreased fragmentation of the specimen. Technical challenges are encountered with either higher lesions or very low lesions. In the upper rectum, the risk of perforation into the peritoneum is higher and particularly true for anterior lesions in female patients. On the other hand, very distal rectal polyps may represent a challenge insofar as the pneumorectum may be difficult to entertain. Furthermore, there is a risk of creating a rectovaginal fistula. Nonetheless, reported complication rates for TEMS are comparably low and range between 3%-15% and includes among others bleeding, infection, urinary retention; retroperitoneal tracking of air can frequently be seen but typically does not require any intervention. Even the majority of perforations into the peritoneum can be managed directly through the transanal approach, hence without a need for an abdominal intervention[62,71-74]. The available evidence suggests that TEMS for rectal adenomas not only avoids major abdominal procedures, but also is safe and achieves acceptable recurrence rates that are favorable compared to TAE.

Given the improved success with management of adenomas with TEMS compared to TAE, the next natural progression would be to ascertain if these results extended to malignant disease. Comparing TEMS to TAE in early rectal cancers (T1, T2), Christoforidis *et al*[75] noted significantly higher rates of negative margins with TEMS (98% *vs* 75%, $P = 0.017$). Although not reaching statistical significance, they also estimated 5 year recurrence rates to be lower (15.4% *vs* 29.1%, $P = 0.108$) and 5 year overall survival rates to be higher (79.9% *vs* 66%, $P = 0.119$) with TEMS. Similarly, Langer *et al*[76] also found lower recurrence rates with TEMS compared to TAE (10% *vs* 15%). The authors surmised that this was likely due to the overall lower rates of R1 resections that resulted from TEMS excision (19% *vs* 37%, $P = 0.001$).

Head to head comparisons of TEMS against standard resection for T1 rectal cancers have also been reported by various single institutions (Table 4)[77-81]. In general, the risk of recurrence after TEMS, although lower than after TAE, remains substantially higher compared to standard oncological resection. Results of data regarding salvage therapy for recurrent disease after TEMS are similar to that reported for TAE[82,83]. Sphincter preservation was improved (50%-70%) compared to TAE (33%)[44]; however, this difference might simply be accounted for by the more proximal location of the lesions excised in the TEMS group thus allowing for more salvage low anterior resections to be performed. Comparable to salvage therapy after TAE, perioperative morbidity was high at 50% and overall 3 year survival after salvage surgery was decreased[82].

For more advanced rectal cancer (T2 and above), significant local recurrence rates have been reported after either TAE or TEMS likewise[84-92]. Lee *et al*[79] reported a 5 year recurrence rate of 20% with TEMS compared to only 9% recurrence with standard resection of T2 rectal cancer. Similarly, the Minnesota experience on utilizing TEMS for T2 and T3 rectal cancers found recurrence rates of 23.5% and 100%, respectively[69]. As a result, some groups have incorporated the use of neoadjuvant chemo and radiation therapy (CRT) prior to TEMS excision in hopes of reducing the unacceptably high local recurrence rates in T2 rectal cancers. Lezoche *et al*[93] reported a substantially decreased local recurrence rate of 5.7% after neoadjuvant CRT and TEMS for T2 cancers. However, the recurrence rate was still double that of standard resection (2.8%). More recently, Marks *et al*[94] demonstrated a recurrence rate of 6.8% with TEMS compared to 0% in the standard resection arm after neoadjuvant CRT. The ACOSOG Z6041 trial, a prospective, multi-center phase-2 trial of neoadjuvant CRT and local excision for T2 rectal

Table 4 Single center comparison of transanal endoscopic microsurgery and standard resection for T1 rectal cancer

Ref.	Year	Follow-up (yr)	*n*		5 yr local recurrence		5 yr overall survival	
			TEMS	SR	TEMS (%)	SR (%)	TEMS (%)	SR (%)
Winde *et al*[81]	1996	3.8[TEMS]/3.4[SR]	24	26	4.2	0	96	96
Heintz *et al*[78]	1998	4.3	46	34	4.3	2.9	79	81
Lee *et al*[79]	2003	2.6[TEMS]/2.9[SR]	52	22	4.1	0	100	92.9
Palma *et al*[80]	2009	7.2[TEMS]/7.8[SR]	34	17	5.9	0	88.23	82.35
De Graaf *et al*[77]	2009	3.5[TEMS]/7[SR]	80	75	24[1]	0[1]	75	77

[1]Statistically significant. SR: Standard resection; TEMS: Transanal endoscopic microsurgery.

cancers recently reported its preliminary results[95]. The neoadjuvant protocol included treatment with capecitabine and oxaliplatin in addition to 50.4 Gy of external beam radiotherapy. Local excision *via* TAE or TEMS was performed 4 wk after completion of neoadjuvant CRT. At the price of substantial toxicity, 34 out of 77 patients completing the protocol (44%) showed a complete pathological response with overall 49 (64%) patient's tumors being downstaged (ypT0-1). Four patients (5%) did progress to ypT3 tumors. Long term follow up on recurrence and overall survival rates are still pending. Furthermore, neoadjuvant CRT protocols will likely further undergo optimization to improve the adverse event profile. The current evidence suggests that local excision for more advanced rectal cancers (T2 and above) risks treatment understaging and leads to significant local recurrence. It should therefore be restricted to palliation of patients that are otherwise not able to undergo standard resection.

A different target for which TEMS has been increasingly used are rectal carcinoids. With growing numbers of colonoscopies being performed, a 10 fold increase in the incidence of rectal carcinoids has been noted in the Surveillance, Epidemiology and end results registry[96]. As a result, there has also been a substantial increase in the number of transanal surgical excisions of the incidental rectal carcinoids. General consensus guidelines for rectal carcinoids consider them amenable to transanal excision include if they are well differentiated, no more than 2 cm in size, are confined to the submucosa and show no lymphovascular invasion[97]. The majority of published data on rectal carcinoids have utilized the TEMS platform as the approach to carry out the transanal excision[98-103]. Kumar *et al*[102] in a review of 24 patients who underwent TEMS excision of rectal carcinoids demonstrated no recurrence. Kinoshita *et al*[100] reported no recurrence or carcinoid-specific mortality after TEMS excision in 27 patients over a follow-up period of 70.6 mo. Likewise, Ishikawa *et al*[99] found no recurrence when rectal carcinoids were excised by either TEMS or conventional transanal surgery after a mean follow-up of 2 years. However, the analysis of 202 patients with rectal carcinoids surprisingly found that up to 30% of carcinoid tumors > 1 cm harbored nodal disease (OR = 32.7, P = 0.006), with lymphovascular invasion being an additional independent risk factor for nodal disease (OR = 19.6, $P < 0.001$)[104]. Despite the limitations of the data and generally rather small cohorts, it appears that transanal excision either by conventional approach or TEMS is appropriate to tumor sizes up to 1 cm.

TAMIS

TAMIS was "accidentally" reported in 2009 and quickly gained attention as a cheap and easily available alternative to the TEMS[105]. A SILS port (Covidien, Mansfield, MA, United States) was used in the beginning. Subsequently, specifically designed single-use transanal port systems (GelPOINT Path, Applied Medical, Rancho Santa Margarita, CA, United States) were developed and made commercially available. The GELPOINT path platform is about 44 mm long with a diameter of 34 mm and was specifically designed for TAMIS. The TAMIS port should sit on the levator ani muscles just above the puborectalis. The port is then optionally secured in place with sutures. Usually, 3 working ports are placed into the GelPOINT path: 2 working instruments and a laparoscopic 5 mm camera. As in TEMS, a seal is created between the anus and the TAMIS port allowing for distention of the rectum with CO_2 insufflation. Unlike TEMS, the camera position is not fixed and the TAMIS port is shorter and not angled at the end: this enables an increased working angle allowing for potentially near/circumferential excision without having to re-position the patient. No specialty laparoscopic instruments are required. However, there some potential drawbacks: The stability of the transanal platform is overall reduced given that there is no stabilizing arm to dock onto. In addition, the laparoscopic camera generally has to be removed quite often and cleaned. To combat this, the use of an endoscope has been employed[106].

Like for TAE and TEMS, morbidity associated with TAMIS has been minimal[105,107-109]. Schiphorst *et al*[109], over a median short term follow-up of 11 mo, recently reported comparable anorectal function based on FISI scores to TEMS after TAMIS.

Given the relatively short interval since TAMIS inception, the majority of data on TAMIS - related the excision of rectal neoplasms is limited to small cohort single institution studies and case reports. A

comprehensive review of the TAMIS experience from 2010-2013 was recently published by Martin-Perez *et al*[5]. The authors reported an overall margin positivity rate of 4.36% (12/275). Local recurrence was 2.7% (7/259) on short term follow-up (mean 7.1 mo). Conversion was only 2.3% (9/390) with a 1.025% (4/390) rate of unintended entry to the peritoneal cavity. In the largest published single institution series, Albert *et al*[107] resected 25 rectal adenomas, 23 malignancies (1 TIS, 16 T1, 3 T2, 3 T3) and 2 neuroendocrine tumors. The authors reported a 94% negative margin rate (47/50) with 4% (2/50) specimen fragmentation. Over a median of 20 mo follow-up, a local recurrence rate of 4% (2/50) was reported. Overall, the preliminary data showed that TAMIS achieved results comparable to TEMS in terms of recurrence rates and morbidity. Head to head comparisons in prospective studies with more long term follow up data are needed before any final recommendation can be made on the preferred transanal platform for local excision.

EMR

In recent years, application of EMR has led to more aggressive endoscopic resection of rectal adenomas and even early rectal cancers in specialized centers. The technique involves circumferentially marking the resection margin as done in transanal surgery. A submucosal injection of mixture of dye, saline and diluted epinephrine is performed to accomplish lifting of the lesion away from the underlying tissue. In some instances, magnification or chromoendoscopy can help further elucidate the true edges of a rectal lesion. Snare excision with cautery is performed whereby lesions < 2 cm are usually resected en bloc, while larger lesions may require several separate excisions. Reported complications include bleeding, post polypectomy syndrome and perforation, the vast majority of which resolve conservatively or require application of endoscopic clips for resolution[110-112].

In an earlier prospective study on use of EMR in resection of rectal adenomas, Hurlstone *et al*[113] resected 62 rectal adenomas (4 T1 cancers, 58 adenomas). The 3 mo local recurrence rate was 8% (5/62): 4 patients underwent repeat EMR and 1 patient had a low anterior resection. After a median follow-up of 14 mo, they noted that 98% (61/62) of the cohort remained free of recurrence. Main complication was bleeding (8%) that was managed with an endoclip placement. Based on this, the authors suggested that EMR for rectal adenomas and early rectal cancers is safe and effective.

More recently, Arezzo *et al*[114] completed a meta-analysis comparing EMR to TEMS in the resection of large rectal lesions. Eleven EMR and 10 TEMS studies involving 2077 patients were included for review. *En bloc* resection rates were 87.8% (CI: 84.3-90.6) for EMR compared to 98.7% (CI: 97.4-99.3) for TEMS. This corresponded to a substantially reduced R0 resection percentage for EMR *vs* TEMS (74.6% *vs* 88.5%, $P < 0.001$). Interestingly, recurrence rates were lower in the EMR group (2.6% *vs* 5.2%, $P < 0.001$). However, this difference could be explained by the significantly longer length of follow-up in the TEMS arm (mean 58.9 mo *vs* 6-12 mo). Even though there was a lower recurrence rate in the EMR group, a larger percentage of EMR patients eventually required standard resection (8.4% *vs* 1.8%, $P < 0.001$). Morbidity was similar at 8% in both groups.

In summary, the available data demonstrate that while feasible, EMR for rectal lesions appears to have poorer results compared to TEMS. No data comparing TAMIS to EMR is available at present, but it seems reasonable to expect similar results given the overall comparability of results obtained between TEMS and TAMIS thus far.

FUTURE APPLICATION OF TRANSANAL SURGERY

Expanding on the principles of NOTES, preliminary case series reported utilizing the transanal route to accomplish TME. An updated assessment of the transanal NOTES experience by Emhoff *et al*[18] included a total of 72 cases where a complete TME excision with largely negative circumferential margins could be obtained. The overall intraoperative and postoperative complication rate was 8.3% and 27.8%, respectively. There was a 2.8% incidence of conversion to open surgery with no 30 d mortality. No recurrence was reported but follow-up periods were generally limited to a few months only. Furthermore, there was an inherent patient selection bias with the majority of patients having early rectal cancer (T1, T2), low body mass indexs (BMIs), non-recurrent tumors and no previous history of pelvic surgery. Of the 10 case series reviewed, only 1 study by Rouanet *et al*[115] included higher risk patients (BMI > 30, narrow pelvis, T3/T4, recurrent and large tumors) with longer follow-up (median 21 mo). Not surprisingly, the results were less favorable: negative margin rates were lower (87% *vs* 95%) compared to lower risk patients in the other studies. Distant disease was noted in 8 patients (26.7%) and local recurrence occurred in 4 patients (13.3%). Overall survival was only 80.5% at 2 years. A 20 patient experience utilizing the TAMIS platform to achieve a TME were comparable to those by Emhoff *et al*[18]: 90% negative margin, 85% complete/near complete TME, and a 5% recurrence rate over median follow-up of 6 mo[17].

Transanal/TAMIS TME are techniques still in their infancy. The current data are limited to single institution cases series and lack a control arm. In addition, functional data are extremely limited with regard to the colo-anal anastomoses that generally ensues from the transanal/TAMIS TME. Data from randomized controlled studies with long term follow-up will ultimately be needed to determine if this new approach to TME

Table 5 Appropriate indications for the use of transanal excision/transanal endoscopic microsurgery/transanal minimally invasive surgery or endoscopic mucosal resection

Category	Primary approach	Secondary or individualized approach
Benign pathology	Low rectum: TAE or TEMS Middle to high rectum: TEMS/TAMIS/EMR or LAR Proximal to rectum: EMR or L/O CR	Very large lesion: LAR
Borderline pathology	Carcinoid < 1 cm with favorable features: TEMS/TAMIS Scar after colonoscopic removal of cancerous polyp: TEMS/TAMIS Uncertain dignity: TEMS/TAMIS mucosal resection as excisional biopsy	Excisional biopsy with TEMS/TAMIS/TAE → LAR if malignant?
Malignant (Rectum)	u/pT1: LAR u/pT2: LAR u/pT3: CRT + LAR Recurrence: CRT + LAR Carcinoid > 1 cm: LAR	u/pT1 + morbidity: TAE/TEMS/TAMIS u/pT2: TAE/TEMS/TAMIS + CRT
Malignant (Colon)	pTis: EMR/polypectomy pT1: L/O CR (unless free stalk > 2 mm) > T1: L/O CR	pTis (large): L/O CR pT1 + morbidity: EMR + observation

LAR: Low anterior resection (laparoscopic, robotic, open); L/O CR: Laparoscopic *vs* open colon resection; TAE: Transanal excision; TAMIS: Transanal minimally invasive surgery; TEMS: Transanal endoscopic microsurgery; TME: Total mesorectal excision; EMR: Endoscopic mucosal resection.

is truly needed and should be adopted on a more universal level.

SYNOPSIS

Transanal surgery has undergone significant technical advances in the last 25 years. The onset of improved video and computer technology and the onset of laparoscopic surgery in general have undoubtedly contributed to the evolution of this field. Conventional TAE remains a widely accepted approach in the management of low rectal adenomas. However, the transanal platforms of TEMS and TAMIS offer improved visualization, reach and allow for a finer and better controlled dissection in the limited rectal space. This likely explains the overall lower recurrence rates observed in the TEMS-/TAMIS-assisted local resection of benign rectal tumors. EMR for rectal lesions, while feasible, requires considerable technical expertise and more importantly offers inferior results compared to transanal or laparoscopic resective surgery. Based on the available evidence, local excision of rectal adenomas (which by definition are limited to the mucosa) is safe technique affording low morbidity without compromising patient outcome.

Data surrounding transanal excision of rectal malignancies remain more of a mixed baggage because the local excision does not achieve a lymphadenectomy and risk implanting malignant cells into the surgical wound. Small size (1 cm or less) rectal carcinoids appear to be amenable to local resection without any long term increase risks of recurrence. However, local recurrence rates of even early rectal adenocarcinoma unquestionably are higher than with a standard oncological resection and cannot reliably be improved with (neo-)adjuvant chemoradiation without substantial morbidity. Salvage therapy after local failure is not always possible but is usually associated with high perioperative morbidity and lower overall long term survival.

The true philosophical question a surgeon should not only ask the patient but also him-/herself is whether vanity and fear from an abdominal surgery, its scars, or a potential stoma are sufficient reason to jeopardize the chances to cure an early cancer (stage Ⅰ) which by all means should have a > 90% of disease-free survival. A wealth of data in the literature has supported the use of laparoscopic surgery in particular for mid and high rectal tumors, not to speak of any colon tumors. Intermediate and long term outcomes from various randomized controlled trials from Europe and Asia (CLASICC, COLOR Ⅱ, COREAN) have demonstrated non-inferiority of laparoscopic surgery compared to traditional open surgery for rectal cancer in regards to completeness of the resection, lymph node harvest, local recurrence rates, and overall survival. In addition, the laparoscopic approach has consistently been associated with shorter length of stay and reduced time to bowel function recovery[116-118]. Even for low tumors, the laparoscopic or robotic approach allows for a sphincter-preserving complete mesorectal excision and colo-anal anastomosis in the overwhelming majority of cases with excellent oncological and acceptable functional outcomes, and with no local recurrence noted for early rectal cancers[119-121]. It therefore seems not justifiable to risk an incomplete excision or seeding the operative field with cancer cells, which in the case of a TAMIS/TME would come to be located right on the freed presacral fascia, pelvic side wall, or the free peritoneal cavity. An unbiased discussion highlighting the risks and benefits of transanal surgery with the patient should assure to make the best informed decision in the setting of rectal adenocarcinoma. Appropriate use of an excellent technology should include self-restriction to define the best selection of pathologies and patients (Table 5). In cases where the diagnosis and/or stage are uncertain, the transanal local excision can be used as excisional biopsies (potentially limited to the mucosa

only to avoid distortion of the mesorectum), but final judgment on the appropriateness of the transanal approach as opposed to the ultimate best treatment should be reserved until the definitive pathology report has been obtained. If more treatment should be needed, it might-for concerns of postsurgical tissue changes-be desirable to postpone it for 4-6 wk.

REFERENCES

1 **Monson JR**, Weiser MR, Buie WD, Chang GJ, Rafferty JF, Buie WD, Rafferty J; Standards Practice Task Force of the American Society of Colon and Rectal. Practice parameters for the management of rectal cancer (revised). *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 535-550 [PMID: 23575392 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31828cb66c]

2 **Kaiser AM**. McGraw-Hill Manual Colorectal Surgery. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2009

3 **Parks AG**, Stuart AE. The management of villous tumours of the large bowel. *Br J Surg* 1973; **60**: 688-695 [PMID: 4582241 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800600908]

4 **Bretagnol F**, Merrie A, George B, Warren BF, Mortensen NJ. Local excision of rectal tumours by transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Br J Surg* 2007; **94**: 627-633 [PMID: 17335125 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5678]

5 **Martin-Perez B**, Andrade-Ribeiro GD, Hunter L, Atallah S. A systematic review of transanal minimally invasive surgery (TAMIS) from 2010 to 2013. *Tech Coloproctol* 2014; **18**: 775-788 [PMID: 24848524 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-014-1148-6]

6 **Zacharakis E**, Freilich S, Rekhraj S, Athanasiou T, Paraskeva P, Ziprin P, Darzi A. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery for rectal tumors: the St. Mary's experience. *Am J Surg* 2007; **194**: 694-698 [PMID: 17936438 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2007.03.005]

7 **Willett CG**, Compton CC, Shellito PC, Efird JT. Selection factors for local excision or abdominoperineal resection of early stage rectal cancer. *Cancer* 1994; **73**: 2716-2720 [PMID: 8194011 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19940601)73:11<2716::AID-CNCR2820731111>3.0.CO;2-9]

8 **Heidary B**, Phang TP, Raval MJ, Brown CJ. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery: a review. *Can J Surg* 2014; **57**: 127-138 [PMID: 24666451 DOI: 10.1503/cjs.022412]

9 **Smart CJ**, Cunningham C, Bach SP. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **28**: 143-157 [PMID: 24485262 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2013.11.005]

10 **You YN**. Local excision: is it an adequate substitute for radical resection in T1/T2 patients? *Semin Radiat Oncol* 2011; **21**: 178-184 [PMID: 21645862 DOI: 10.1016/j.semradonc.2011.02.003]

11 **Friel CM**, Cromwell JW, Marra C, Madoff RD, Rothenberger DA, Garcia-Aguílar J. Salvage radical surgery after failed local excision for early rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 875-879 [PMID: 12130873 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6320-z]

12 **Weiser MR**, Landmann RG, Wong WD, Shia J, Guillem JG, Temple LK, Minsky BD, Cohen AM, Paty PB. Surgical salvage of recurrent rectal cancer after transanal excision. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1169-1175 [PMID: 15793645 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0930-3]

13 **Higaki S**, Hashimoto S, Harada K, Nohara H, Saito Y, Gondo T, Okita K. Long-term follow-up of large flat colorectal tumors resected endoscopically. *Endoscopy* 2003; **35**: 845-849 [PMID: 14551863 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-42622]

14 **Hurlstone DP**, Sanders DS, Cross SS, Adam I, Shorthouse AJ, Brown S, Drew K, Lobo AJ. Colonoscopic resection of lateral spreading tumours: a prospective analysis of endoscopic mucosal resection. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1334-1339 [PMID: 15306595 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.036913]

15 **Kudo S**, Kashida H, Tamura T, Kogure E, Imai Y, Yamano H, Hart AR. Colonoscopic diagnosis and management of nonpolypoid early colorectal cancer. *World J Surg* 2000; **24**: 1081-1090 [PMID: 11036286 DOI: 10.1007/s002680010154]

16 **Hurlstone DP**, Cross SS, Lobo AJ. High-magnification chromoscopic ileoscopy in familial adenomatous polyposis: detection in vivo of colonic metaplasia and microadenoma formation. *Endoscopy* 2004; **36**: 194 [PMID: 14765326 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-814195]

17 **Atallah S**, Martin-Perez B, Albert M, deBeche-Adams T, Nassif G, Hunter L, Larach S. Transanal minimally invasive surgery for total mesorectal excision (TAMIS-TME): results and experience with the first 20 patients undergoing curative-intent rectal cancer surgery at a single institution. *Tech Coloproctol* 2014; **18**: 473-480 [PMID: 24272607 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-013-1095-7]

18 **Emhoff IA**, Lee GC, Sylla P. Transanal colorectal resection using natural orifice translumenal endoscopic surgery (NOTES). *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 1: 29-42 [PMID: 24033375 DOI: 10.1111/den.12157]

19 **Atallah S**, Nassif G, Polavarapu H, deBeche-Adams T, Ouyang J, Albert M, Larach S. Robotic-assisted transanal surgery for total mesorectal excision (RATS-TME): a description of a novel surgical approach with video demonstration. *Tech Coloproctol* 2013; **17**: 441-447 [PMID: 23801366 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-013-1039-2]

20 **Bardakcioglu O**. Robotic transanal access surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 1407-1409 [PMID: 23239290 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2581-0]

21 **Buchs NC**, Pugin F, Volonte F, Hagen ME, Morel P, Ris F. Robotic transanal endoscopic microsurgery: technical details for the lateral approach. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 1194-1198 [PMID: 24022537 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e3182a2ac84]

22 **Atallah S**, Martin-Perez B, Pinan J, Quinteros F, Schoonyoung H, Albert M, Larach S. Robotic transanal total mesorectal excision: a pilot study. *Tech Coloproctol* 2014; **18**: 1047-1053 [PMID: 24957360 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-014-1181-5]

23 **Chiu YS**, Spencer RJ. Villous lesions of the colon. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1978; **21**: 493-495 [PMID: 710241 DOI: 10.1007/BF02586734]

24 **Nivatvongs S**, Balcos EG, Schottler JL, Goldberg SM. Surgical management of large villous tumors of the rectum. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1973; **16**: 508-514 [PMID: 4769227 DOI: 10.1007/BF02588879]

25 **Nivatvongs S**, Nicholson JD, Rothenberger DA, Balcos EG, Christenson CE, Nemer FD, Schottler JL, Goldberg SM. Villous adenomas of the rectum: the accuracy of clinical assessment. *Surgery* 1980; **87**: 549-551 [PMID: 7368104]

26 **Thomson JP**. Treatment of sessile villous and tubulovillous adenomas of the rectum: experience of St. Mark's Hospital. 1963-1972. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1977; **20**: 467-472 [PMID: 902542 DOI: 10.1007/BF02586582]

27 **Hoth JJ**, Waters GS, Pennell TC. Results of local excision of benign and malignant rectal lesions. *Am Surg* 2000; **66**: 1099-1103 [PMID: 11149579]

28 **Sakamoto GD**, MacKeigan JM, Senagore AJ. Transanal excision of large, rectal villous adenomas. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1991; **34**: 880-885 [PMID: 1914721 DOI: 10.1007/BF02049701]

29 **Pigot F**, Bouchard D, Mortaji M, Castinel A, Juguet F, Chaume JC, Faivre J. Local excision of large rectal villous adenomas: long-term results. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 1345-1350 [PMID: 14530673 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6748-1]

30 **Bentrem DJ**, Okabe S, Wong WD, Guillem JG, Weiser MR, Temple LK, Ben-Porat LS, Minsky BD, Cohen AM, Paty PB. T1 adenocarcinoma of the rectum: transanal excision or radical surgery? *Ann Surg* 2005; **242**: 472-477; discussion 477-479 [PMID: 16192807]

31 **Mellgren A**, Sirivongs P, Rothenberger DA, Madoff RD, García-Aguilar J. Is local excision adequate therapy for early rectal cancer? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1064-1071; discussion 1071-1074 [PMID: 10950004 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236551]

32 **Nascimbeni R**, Nivatvongs S, Larson DR, Burgart LJ. Long-term survival after local excision for T1 carcinoma of the rectum. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 1773-1779 [PMID: 15622568 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0706-9]

33 **Nash GM**, Weiser MR, Guillem JG, Temple LK, Shia J, Gonen M, Wong WD, Paty PB. Long-term survival after transanal excision of T1 rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 577-582 [PMID: 19404055 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181a0adbd]

34 **Chang HC**, Huang SC, Chen JS, Tang R, Changchien CR, Chiang JM, Yeh CY, Hsieh PS, Tsai WS, Hung HY, You JF. Risk factors for lymph node metastasis in pT1 and pT2 rectal cancer: a single-institute experience in 943 patients and literature review. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 2477-2484 [PMID: 22396007 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2303-9]

35 **Kobayashi H**, Sugihara K. Surgical management and chemo-radiotherapy of T1 rectal cancer. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25** Suppl 2: 11-15 [PMID: 23617642 DOI: 10.1111/den.12068]

36 **Saraste D**, Gunnarsson U, Janson M. Predicting lymph node metastases in early rectal cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2013; **49**: 1104-1108 [PMID: 23122785 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2012.10.005]

37 **Endreseth BH**, Myrvold HE, Romundstad P, Hestvik UE, Bjerkeset T, Wibe A. Transanal excision vs. major surgery for T1 rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1380-1388 [PMID: 15906120 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0044-6]

38 **Folkesson J**, Johansson R, Påhlman L, Gunnarsson U. Population-based study of local surgery for rectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2007; **94**: 1421-1426 [PMID: 17661311 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5715]

39 **Hazard LJ**, Shrieve DC, Sklow B, Pappas L, Boucher KM. Local Excision vs. Radical Resection in T1-2 Rectal Carcinoma: Results of a Study From the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Registry Data. *Gastrointest Cancer Res* 2009; **3**: 105-114 [PMID: 19626153]

40 **Ptok H**, Marusch F, Meyer F, Schubert D, Koeckerling F, Gastinger I, Lippert H. Oncological outcome of local vs radical resection of low-risk pT1 rectal cancer. *Arch Surg* 2007; **142**: 649-655; discussion 656 [PMID: 17638803 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.142.7.649]

41 **Saraste D**, Gunnarsson U, Janson M. Local excision in early rectal cancer-outcome worse than expected: a population based study. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2013; **39**: 634-639 [PMID: 23414776 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2013.01.004]

42 **You YN**, Baxter NN, Stewart A, Nelson H. Is the increasing rate of local excision for stage I rectal cancer in the United States justified?: a nationwide cohort study from the National Cancer Database. *Ann Surg* 2007; **245**: 726-733 [PMID: 17457165 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000252590.95116.4f]

43 **Paty PB**, Nash GM, Baron P, Zakowski M, Minsky BD, Blumberg D, Nathanson DR, Guillem JG, Enker WE, Cohen AM, Wong WD. Long-term results of local excision for rectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2002; **236**: 522-529; discussion 529-530 [PMID: 12368681 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200210000-00015]

44 **You YN**, Roses RE, Chang GJ, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Feig BW, Slack R, Nguyen S, Skibber JM. Multimodality salvage of recurrent disease after local excision for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 1213-1219 [PMID: 23135578 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e318270837f]

45 **Baron PL**, Enker WE, Zakowski MF, Urmacher C. Immediate vs. salvage resection after local treatment for early rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1995; **38**: 177-181 [PMID: 7851173 DOI: 10.1007/BF02052447]

46 **Buess G**, Theiss R, Hutterer F, Pichlmaier H, Pelz C, Holfeld T, Said S, Isselhard W. [Transanal endoscopic surgery of the rectum - testing a new method in animal experiments]. *Leber Magen Darm* 1983; **13**: 73-77 [PMID: 6621245]

47 **Cataldo PA**. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2006; **86**: 915-925 [PMID: 16905416 DOI: 10.1016/j.suc.2006.06.004]

48 **Papagrigoriadis S**. Transanal endoscopic micro-surgery (TEMS) for the management of large or sessile rectal adenomas: a review of the technique and indications. *Int Semin Surg Oncol* 2006; **3**: 13 [PMID: 16674824 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7800-3-13]

49 **Darwood RJ**, Wheeler JM, Borley NR. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery is a safe and reliable technique even for complex rectal lesions. *Br J Surg* 2008; **95**: 915-918 [PMID: 18496889 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.6018]

50 **Maslekar S**, Beral DL, White TJ, Pillinger SH, Monson JR. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery: where are we now? *Dig Surg* 2006; **23**: 12-22 [PMID: 16675907 DOI: 10.1159/000091957]

51 **Morino M**, Allaix ME. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery: what indications in 2013? *Gastroenterol Rep* (Oxf) 2013; **1**: 75-84 [PMID: 24759812 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/got012]

52 **Allaix ME**, Rebecchi F, Giaccone C, Mistrangelo M, Morino M. Long-term functional results and quality of life after transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Br J Surg* 2011; **98**: 1635-1643 [PMID: 21713758 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.7584]

53 **Cataldo PA**, O'Brien S, Osler T. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery: a prospective evaluation of functional results. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1366-1371 [PMID: 15933798 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0031-y]

54 **Doornebosch PG**, Gosselink MP, Neijenhuis PA, Schouten WR, Tollenaar RA, de Graaf EJ. Impact of transanal endoscopic microsurgery on functional outcome and quality of life. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2008; **23**: 709-713 [PMID: 18379797 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-008-0442-z]

55 **Herman RM**, Richter P, Walega P, Popiela T. Anorectal sphincter function and rectal barostat study in patients following transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2001; **16**: 370-376 [PMID: 11760898 DOI: 10.1007/s003840100325]

56 **Kennedy ML**, Lubowski DZ, King DW. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery excision: is anorectal function compromised? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 601-604 [PMID: 12004207 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6252-7]

57 **Kreis ME**, Jehle EC, Haug V, Manncke K, Buess GF, Becker HD, Starlinger MJ. Functional results after transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 1116-1121 [PMID: 8831526 DOI: 10.1007/BF02081411]

58 **de Graaf EJ**, Burger JW, van Ijsseldijk AL, Tetteroo GW, Dawson I, Hop WC. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery is superior to transanal excision of rectal adenomas. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13**: 762-767 [PMID: 20345967 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2010.02269.x]

59 **de Graaf EJ**, Doornebosch PG, Tetteroo GW, Geldof H, Hop WC. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery is feasible for adenomas throughout the entire rectum: a prospective study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 1107-1113 [PMID: 19581854 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181a0d06d]

60 **Endreseth BH**, Wibe A, Svinsås M, Mårvik R, Myrvold HE. Postoperative morbidity and recurrence after local excision of rectal adenomas and rectal cancer by transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Colorectal Dis* 2005; **7**: 133-137 [PMID: 15720349 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2004.00724.x]

61 **Guerrieri M**, Baldarelli M, de Sanctis A, Campagnacci R, Rimini M, Lezoche E. Treatment of rectal adenomas by transanal endoscopic microsurgery: 15 years' experience. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 445-449 [PMID: 19565297 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0585-1]

62 **Guerrieri M**, Baldarelli M, Morino M, Trompetto M, Da Rold A, Selmi I, Allaix ME, Lezoche G, Lezoche E. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery in rectal adenomas: experience of six Italian centres. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 202-207 [PMID: 16461025 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2005.11.014]

63 **McCloud JM**, Waymont N, Pahwa N, Varghese P, Richards C, Jameson JS, Scott AN. Factors predicting early recurrence after transanal endoscopic microsurgery excision for rectal adenoma. *Colorectal Dis* 2006; **8**: 581-585 [PMID: 16919110 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2006.01016.x]

64 **Moore JS**, Cataldo PA, Osler T, Hyman NH. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery is more effective than traditional transanal excision for resection of rectal masses. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2008; **51**: 1026-1030; discussion 1030-1031 [PMID: 18481147 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-008-9337-x]

65 **Platell C**, Denholm E, Makin G. Efficacy of transanal endoscopic microsurgery in the management of rectal polyps. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **19**: 767-772 [PMID: 15209623 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2004.03364.x]

66 **Ramirez JM**, Aguilella V, Gracia JA, Ortego J, Escudero P, Valencia J, Esco R, Martinez M. Local full-thickness excision as first line treatment for sessile rectal adenomas: long-term results. *Ann Surg* 2009; **249**: 225-228 [PMID: 19212174 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318190496f]

67 **Said S**, Stippel D. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery in large, sessile adenomas of the rectum. A 10-year experience. *Surg Endosc* 1995; **9**: 1106-1112 [PMID: 8553213 DOI: 10.1007/BF00188997]

68 **Speake D**, Lees N, McMahon RF, Hill J. Who should be followed up after transanal endoscopic resection of rectal tumours? *Colorectal Dis* 2008; **10**: 330-335 [PMID: 18190616 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2007.01432.x]

69 **Tsai BM**, Finne CO, Nordenstam JF, Christoforidis D, Madoff RD, Mellgren A. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery resection of rectal tumors: outcomes and recommendations. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 16-23 [PMID: 20010345 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181bbd6ee]

70 **van den Broek FJ**, de Graaf EJ, Dijkgraaf MG, Reitsma JB, Haringsma J, Timmer R, Weusten BL, Gerhards MF, Consten EC, Schwartz MP, Boom MJ, Derksen EJ, Bijnen AB, Davids PH, Hoff C, van Dullemen HM, Heine GD, van der Linde K, Jansen JM, Mallant-Hent RC, Breumelhof R, Geldof H, Hardwick JC, Doornebosch PG, Depla AC, Ernst MF, van Munster IP, de Hingh IH, Schoon EJ, Bemelman WA, Fockens P, Dekker E. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus endoscopic mucosal resection for large rectal adenomas (TREND-study). *BMC Surg*2009; **9**: 4 [PMID: 19284647 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2482-9-4]

71 **Whitehouse PA**, Tilney HS, Armitage JN, Simson JN. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery: risk factors for local recurrence of benign rectal adenomas. *Colorectal Dis* 2006; **8**: 795-799 [PMID: 17032328 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2006.01098.x]

72 **Allaix ME**, Arezzo A, Arolfo S, Caldart M, Rebecchi F, Morino M. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery for rectal neoplasms. How I do it. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 586-592 [PMID: 23093450 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-012-2060-x]

73 **Kumar AS**, Coralic J, Kelleher DC, Sidani S, Kolli K, Smith LE. Complications of transanal endoscopic microsurgery are rare and minor: a single institution's analysis and comparison to existing data. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 295-300 [PMID: 23392142 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31827163f7]

74 **Seman M**, Bretagnol F, Guedj N, Maggiori L, Ferron M, Panis Y. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery (TEM) for rectal tumor: the first French single-center experience. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2010; **34**: 488-493 [PMID: 20621428 DOI: 10.1016/j.gcb.2009.07.040]

75 **Christoforidis D**, Cho HM, Dixon MR, Mellgren AF, Madoff RD, Finne CO. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus conventional transanal excision for patients with early rectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2009; **249**: 776-782 [PMID: 19387326 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181a3e54b]

76 **Langer C**, Liersch T, Süss M, Siemer A, Markus P, Ghadimi BM, Füzesi L, Becker H. Surgical cure for early rectal carcinoma and large adenoma: transanal endoscopic microsurgery (using ultrasound or electrosurgery) compared to conventional local and radical resection. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2003; **18**: 222-229 [PMID: 12673487]

77 **De Graaf EJ**, Doornebosch PG, Tollenaar RA, Meershoek-Klein Kranenbarg E, de Boer AC, Bekkering FC, van de Velde CJ. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus total mesorectal excision of T1 rectal adenocarcinomas with curative intention. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 1280-1285 [PMID: 19487099 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2009.05.001]

78 **Heintz A**, Mörschel M, Junginger T. Comparison of results after transanal endoscopic microsurgery and radical resection for T1 carcinoma of the rectum. *Surg Endosc* 1998; **12**: 1145-1148 [PMID: 9716769 DOI: 10.1007/s004649900802]

79 **Lee W**, Lee D, Choi S, Chun H. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery and radical surgery for T1 and T2 rectal cancer. *Surg Endosc* 2003; **17**: 1283-1287 [PMID: 12739119 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-002-8814-x]

80 **Palma P**, Horisberger K, Joos A, Rothenhoefer S, Willeke F, Post S. Local excision of early rectal cancer: is transanal endoscopic microsurgery an alternative to radical surgery? *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2009; **101**: 172-178 [PMID: 19388797 DOI: 10.4321/S1130-01082009000300003]

81 **Winde G**, Nottberg H, Keller R, Schmid KW, Bünte H. Surgical cure for early rectal carcinomas (T1). Transanal endoscopic microsurgery vs. anterior resection. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 969-976 [PMID: 8797643 DOI: 10.1007/BF02054683]

82 **Doornebosch PG**, Ferenschild FT, de Wilt JH, Dawson I, Tetteroo GW, de Graaf EJ. Treatment of recurrence after transanal endoscopic microsurgery (TEM) for T1 rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 1234-1239 [PMID: 20706065 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181e73f33]

83 **Hermsen PE**, Nonner J, De Graaf EJ, Doornebosch PG. Recurrences after transanal excision or transanal endoscopic microsurgery of T1 rectal cancer. *Minerva Chir* 2010; **65**: 213-223 [PMID: 20548276]

84 **Bleday R**, Breen E, Jessup JM, Burgess A, Sentovich SM, Steele G. Prospective evaluation of local excision for small rectal cancers. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 388-392 [PMID: 9106685 DOI: 10.1007/BF02258381]

85 **Garcia-Aguilar J**, Mellgren A, Sirivongs P, Buie D, Madoff RD, Rothenberger DA. Local excision of rectal cancer without adjuvant therapy: a word of caution. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 345-351 [PMID: 10714627 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200003000-00007]

86 **Guerrieri M**, Baldarelli M, Organetti L, Grillo Ruggeri F, Mantello G, Bartolacci S, Lezoche E. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery for the treatment of selected patients with distal rectal cancer: 15 years experience. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 2030-2035 [PMID: 18553205 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-008-9976-y]

87 **Kim CJ**, Yeatman TJ, Coppola D, Trotti A, Williams B, Barthel JS, Dinwoodie W, Karl RC, Marcet J. Local excision of T2 and T3 rectal cancers after downstaging chemoradiation. *Ann Surg* 2001; **234**: 352-358; discussion 358-359 [PMID: 11524588 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200109000-00009]

88 **Lezoche E**, Guerrieri M, Paganini AM, Baldarelli M, De Sanctis A, Lezoche G. Long-term results in patients with T2-3 N0 distal rectal cancer undergoing radiotherapy before transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Br J Surg* 2005; **92**: 1546-1552 [PMID: 16252312 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5178]

89 **Nastro P**, Beral D, Hartley J, Monson JR. Local excision of rectal cancer: review of literature. *Dig Surg* 2005; **22**: 6-15 [PMID: 15761225 DOI: 10.1159/000084345]

90 **Sengupta S**, Tjandra JJ. Local excision of rectal cancer: what is the evidence? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 1345-1361 [PMID: 11584215 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234796]

91 **Stipa F**, Lucandri G, Ferri M, Casula G, Ziparo V. Local excision of rectal cancer with transanal endoscopic microsurgery (TEM). *Anticancer Res* 2004; **24**: 1167-1172 [PMID: 15154642]

92 **Varma MG**, Rogers SJ, Schrock TR, Welton ML. Local excision of rectal carcinoma. *Arch Surg* 1999; **134**: 863-867; discussion 867-868 [PMID: 10443810 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.134.8.863]

93 **Lezoche G**, Baldarelli M, Guerrieri M, Paganini AM, De Sanctis A, Bartolacci S, Lezoche E. A prospective randomized study with a 5-year minimum follow-up evaluation of transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision after neoadjuvant therapy. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 352-358 [PMID: 17943364 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-007-9596-y]

94 **Marks J**, Nassif G, Schoonyoung H, DeNittis A, Zeger E, Mohiuddin M, Marks G. Sphincter-sparing surgery for adenocarcinoma of the distal 3 cm of the true rectum: results after neoadjuvant therapy and minimally invasive radical surgery or local excision. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 4469-4477 [PMID: 24057070 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3092-3]

95 **Garcia-Aguilar J**, Shi Q, Thomas CR, Chan E, Cataldo P, Marcet J, Medich D, Pigazzi A, Oommen S, Posner MC. A phase II trial of neoadjuvant chemoradiation and local excision for T2N0 rectal cancer: preliminary results of the ACOSOG Z6041 trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 384-391 [PMID: 21755378 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-1933-7]

96 **Scherübl H**. Rectal carcinoids are on the rise: early detection by screening endoscopy. *Endoscopy* 2009; **41**: 162-165 [PMID: 19214898 DOI: 10.1055/s-0028-1119456]

97 **Ramage JK**, Goretzki PE, Manfredi R, Komminoth P, Ferone D, Hyrdel R, Kaltsas G, Kelestimur F, Kvols L, Scoazec JY, Garcia MI, Caplin ME. Consensus guidelines for the management of

patients with digestive neuroendocrine tumours: well-differentiated colon and rectum tumour/carcinoma. *Neuroendocrinology* 2008; **87**: 31-39 [PMID: 18097130 DOI: 10.1159/000111036]

98 **Araki Y**, Isomoto H, Shirouzu K. Clinical efficacy of video-assisted gasless transanal endoscopic microsurgery (TEM) for rectal carcinoid tumor. *Surg Endosc* 2001; **15**: 402-404 [PMID: 11395824 DOI: 10.1007/s004640000332]

99 **Ishikawa K**, Arita T, Shimoda K, Hagino Y, Shiraishi N, Kitano S. Usefulness of transanal endoscopic surgery for carcinoid tumor in the upper and middle rectum. *Surg Endosc* 2005; **19**: 1151-1154 [PMID: 16021383 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-004-2076-8]

100 **Kinoshita T**, Kanehira E, Omura K, Tomori T, Yamada H. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery in the treatment of rectal carcinoid tumor. *Surg Endosc* 2007; **21**: 970-974 [PMID: 17285371 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-006-9155-y]

101 **Kobayashi K**, Katsumata T, Yoshizawa S, Sada M, Igarashi M, Saigenji K, Otani Y. Indications of endoscopic polypectomy for rectal carcinoid tumors and clinical usefulness of endoscopic ultrasonography. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 285-291 [PMID: 15714250 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0765-y]

102 **Kumar AS**, Sidani SM, Kolli K, Stahl TJ, Ayscue JM, Fitzgerald JF, Smith LE. Transanal endoscopic microsurgery for rectal carcinoids: the largest reported United States experience. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 562-566 [PMID: 21831099 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02726.x]

103 **Nakagoe T**, Ishikawa H, Sawai T, Tsuji T, Jibiki M, Nanashima A, Yamaguchi H, Yasutake T. Gasless, video endoscopic transanal excision for carcinoid and laterally spreading tumors of the rectum. *Surg Endosc* 2003; **17**: 1298-1304 [PMID: 12739126 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-002-8580-9]

104 **Shields CJ**, Tiret E, Winter DC. Carcinoid tumors of the rectum: a multi-institutional international collaboration. *Ann Surg* 2010; **252**: 750-755 [PMID: 21037430 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181fb8df6]

105 **Atallah S**, Albert M, Larach S. Transanal minimally invasive surgery: a giant leap forward. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 2200-2205 [PMID: 20174935 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-0927-z]

106 **McLemore EC**, Coker A, Jacobsen G, Talamini MA, Horgan S. eTAMIS: endoscopic visualization for transanal minimally invasive surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 1842-1845 [PMID: 23179071 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2652-2]

107 **Albert MR**, Atallah SB, deBeche-Adams TC, Izfar S, Larach SW. Transanal minimally invasive surgery (TAMIS) for local excision of benign neoplasms and early-stage rectal cancer: efficacy and outcomes in the first 50 patients. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 301-307 [PMID: 23392143 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31827ca313]

108 **Khoo RE**. Transanal excision of a rectal adenoma using single-access laparoscopic port. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 1078-1079 [PMID: 20551763 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181ddf589]

109 **Schiphorst AH**, Langenhoff BS, Maring J, Pronk A, Zimmerman DD. Transanal minimally invasive surgery: initial experience and short-term functional results. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2014; **57**: 927-932 [PMID: 25003287 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000000170]

110 **Poppers DM**, Haber GB. Endoscopic mucosal resection of colonic lesions: current applications and future prospects. *Med Clin North Am* 2008; **92**: 687-705, x [PMID: 18387382 DOI: 10.1016/j.mcna.2008.01.006]

111 **Kudo S**, Rubio CA, Teixeira CR, Kashida H, Kogure E. Pit pattern in colorectal neoplasia: endoscopic magnifying view. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 367-373 [PMID: 11315901 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-826104]

112 **Tamegai Y**, Saito Y, Masaki N, Hinohara C, Oshima T, Kogure E, Liu Y, Uemura N, Saito K. Endoscopic submucosal dissection: a safe technique for colorectal tumors. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 418-422 [PMID: 17516348 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966427]

113 **Hurlstone DP**, Sanders DS, Cross SS, George R, Shorthouse AJ, Brown S. A prospective analysis of extended endoscopic mucosal resection for large rectal villous adenomas: an alternative technique to transanal endoscopic microsurgery. *Colorectal Dis* 2005; **7**: 339-344 [PMID: 15932555 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2005.00813.x]

114 **Arezzo A**, Passera R, Saito Y, Sakamoto T, Kobayashi N, Sakamoto N, Yoshida N, Naito Y, Fujishiro M, Niimi K, Ohya T, Ohata K, Okamura S, Iizuka S, Takeuchi Y, Uedo N, Fusaroli P, Bonino MA, Verra M, Morino M. Systematic review and meta-analysis of endoscopic submucosal dissection versus transanal endoscopic microsurgery for large noninvasive rectal lesions. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 427-438 [PMID: 24149849 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3238-3]

115 **Rouanet P**, Mourregot A, Azar CC, Carrere S, Gutowski M, Quenet F, Saint-Aubert B, Colombo PE. Transanal endoscopic proctectomy: an innovative procedure for difficult resection of rectal tumors in men with narrow pelvis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 408-415 [PMID: 23478607 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e3182756fa0]

116 **Green BL**, Marshall HC, Collinson F, Quirke P, Guillou P, Jayne DG, Brown JM. Long-term follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of conventional versus laparoscopically assisted resection in colorectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 75-82 [PMID: 23132548 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8945]

117 **van der Pas MH**, Haglind E, Cuesta MA, Fürst A, Lacy AM, Hop WC, Bonjer HJ. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer (COLOR II): short-term outcomes of a randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 210-218 [PMID: 23395398 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70016-0]

118 **Jeong SY**, Park JW, Nam BH, Kim S, Kang SB, Lim SB, Choi HS, Kim DW, Chang HJ, Kim DY, Jung KH, Kim TY, Kang GH, Chie EK, Kim SY, Sohn DK, Kim DH, Kim JS, Lee HS, Kim JH, Oh JH. Open versus laparoscopic surgery for mid-rectal or low-rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (COREAN trial): survival outcomes of an open-label, non-inferiority, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 767-774 [PMID: 24837215 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70205-0]

119 **Denost Q**, Adam JP, Pontallier A, Celerier B, Laurent C, Rullier E. Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision with coloanal anastomosis for rectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2015; **261**: 138-143 [PMID: 25185482 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000855]

120 **Park JS**, Choi GS, Jun SH, Hasegawa S, Sakai Y. Laparoscopic versus open intersphincteric resection and coloanal anastomosis for low rectal cancer: intermediate-term oncologic outcomes. *Ann Surg* 2011; **254**: 941-946 [PMID: 22076066 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318236c448]

121 **Lee SD**, Park SC, Park JW, Kim DY, Choi HS, Oh JH. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for stage I rectal cancer: long-term oncologic outcomes. *World J Surg* 2013; **37**: 646-651 [PMID: 23188532]

P- Reviewer: Brisinda G, Djodjevic I, Piccinni G, Stanojevic GZ
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.14

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 14-26
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Techniques that accurately identify the sentinel lymph node in cancer

Kelly J Rosso, S David Nathanson

Kelly J Rosso, S David Nathanson, Department of Surgery, Wayne State Medical School at Henry Ford Health System, Detroit, MI 48202, United States
Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

Correspondence to: S David Nathanson, MD, Department of Surgery, Wayne State Medical School at Henry Ford Health System, 2799 West Grand Blvd, Detroit, MI 48202, United States. dnathan1@hfhs.org
Telephone: +1-800-4367936
Received: September 29, 2014
Peer-review started: September 29, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: January 19, 2015
Accepted: February 4, 2015
Article in press: February 9, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsy has become the gold standard for patients with melanoma and breast cancer but it's clinical application in other solid tumor types such as cancers of the esophagus, stomach, colon and rectum, head and neck, penis, uterine cervix and endometrium has been somewhat limited. Commonly used mapping techniques utilizing the combination of radiocolloid and blue dye may result in reduced SLN detection and increased false negative rates when applied to cancers with more complex lymphatic drainage patterns. Novel localization techniques including near infrared fluorescence, high resolution imaging and molecular targeted agents have been developed to address the limitations of conventional SLN detection practices in many solid tumor types. This article reviews the indications, techniques and detection rates for SLN biopsy in several different solid tumor types as well as the promising novel techniques created to address the contemporary limitations of this procedure.

Key words: Sentinel lymph node biopsy; Carcinoma; Radionucleotide; Blue dye; Techniques; Imaging

Core tip: Novel localization techniques including near infrared fluorescence, high resolution imaging and molecular targeted agents have been developed to address the limitations of conventional sentinel lymph node (SLN) detection practices in many solid tumor types. This article reviews the indications, techniques and detection rates for SLN biopsy in several different solid tumor types as well as the promising novel techniques created to address the contemporary limitations of this procedure.

Rosso KJ, Nathanson SD. Techniques that accurately identify the sentinel lymph node in cancer. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 14-26 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/14.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.14

THE SENTINEL LYMPH NODE: PAST AND PRESENT

The modern understanding of cancer metastasis from primary tumors to regional lymph nodes originated from the observations of anatomists and pathologists. In the mid-19th century, Sappey illustrated breast

lymphatics travelling in the subareolar plexus towards the axilla *via* lymph collecting vessels[1] forming the theoretical basis of the subareolar injection of dye and isotope in the contemporary sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB). In 1860, Virchow[2] observed that an axillary node in breast cancer can be diseased for a long period of time without affecting adjacent nodes or distant organs. He postulated that node functioned as a filter that did not permit harmful particles to travel systemically until the node's barrier function had become insufficient or the node itself had become a new source of independent metastases[2].

One of the first operations based on knowledge of the lymphatics and importance of regional lymph node status was the radical mastectomy, thought to effectively control the orderly, translymphatic contiguous extension of tumor[3,4]. Radical operations for rectal, uterine, pancreatic, colon, stomach, and lung cancers adopted the same principle of removing the primary tumor, the organ from which it arose and regional lymph nodes en bloc[5-8]. Even early operations for melanoma described removal of the primary tumor, the regional lymph nodes and a long strip of contiguous skin and subcutaneous tissue thought to contain the lymphatics[9]. The morbidity of these resections drove surgeons to consider less invasive operations based on increasing knowledge of lymphatics and cancer metastasis[10].

Cabanas, an American-trained urologist, recognized the devastating complications of inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy for the treatment of penile cancer and devised an operation based on the identification and evaluation of the first echelon node draining the penis. By injecting contrast material *via* the dorsal lymphatics of the penis[11], he was able to reliably identify the first lymph node to drain the primary tumor, which he termed the "sentinel lymph node (SLN)". If the SLN was negative for cancer, it followed that cancer had not metastasized to the locoregional nodal basin and the patient would not benefit from inguinofemoral iliac dissection.

The sentinel node era continued to move forward by animal and human studies designed to explore the mechanisms of metastasis. The function of lymph nodes in the spread of cancer was investigated by injection of small particles into afferent lymphatics of animal models[12-15]. Observations from these experiments contradicted both the "filter function" postulated by Virchow and the Halstedian model of contiguous cancer spread, giving rise to new understandings and differing hypotheses of SLN function[16]. Fisher and Fisher observed that the node was not a "filter" that prevented dissemination of tumor cells but that metastatic disease in the lymph node was a "marker" for the presence of systemic disease[13-15]. Hellman proposed locoregional metastasis to be on a "spectrum" of the disease process that was relative to growth and progression of the primary tumor[17]. The subsequent "incubator" hypothesis described by Morton considered the unique immunologic interrelationship between the tumor and host, suggesting immunosuppressive factors released by the primary tumor allow for the growth and cloning of tumor cells in the SLN until the tumor reaches a critical mass, allowing it's movement to upper eschelon nodes or systemic dissemination[18]. By the 1990's, the SLNB had become a valid technique in staging malignant tumors of the skin and breast[19-23].

Accurate identification of the SLN documenting presence of occult regional node metastasis has helped to avoid complete lymphadenectomy in certain patients and may allow upstaging in others. The ideal tracer for SLN identification and lymphatic mapping should be standardized, easily acquired, require minimal preparation, nontoxic, have prompt translocation into the peritumoral lymphatics with reliable rate of travel, be taken up into the first encountered lymph node (SLN) in high amounts with high retention without lingering of radioactive signal in the primary injection site, creating a high signal to noise ratio and minimal "shine through"[24,25].

This ideal tracer does not yet exist, but knowledge of the size and chemical characteristics of clinically available agents can be used to optimize intraoperative, preoperative or postoperative use. Small sized contrast agents (< 5-10 nm) have fast uptake into the lymphatics, leaving only a brief window of SLN visualization before diffusion into upper eschelon nodes occurs. Medium sized agents (50-200 nm) have a slower transport rate through lymphatics but provide a longer imaging window. Larger particles (> 500 nm) tend to migrate very slowly after having been taken up by macrophages and dendritic cells[26] (Table 1).

This article will review the indications, techniques and detection rates for SLN biopsy in several different solid tumor types as well as the promising novel techniques created to address the contemporary limitations of this procedure.

MELANOMA

Indications for lymphatic mapping and subsequent SLNB in melanoma continue to evolve based on the recent results of landmark trials. The Multicenter Selective Lymphadenectomy Trial-Ⅰ was the largest trial to address the role of lymphatic mapping with SLNB in determining prognosis and survival[27]. Ten year follow-up results confirmed the role of lymphatic mapping and SLNB guided lymphadenectomy as a prognostic tool that improves disease specific survival compared to observation in intermediate thickness (1.20 to 3.50 mm) and thick (> 3.50 mm) melanomas[28]. Current National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) Guidelines recommend SLN biopsy for melanoma > 1 mm thick or those ≤ 1 mm thick with high risk features including ulceration or mitotic rate ≥ 1 per square millimeter[29] (Table 2). The American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) guidelines emphasize lymphoscintigraphy followed by lymphatic mapping and SLNB as important components of melanoma staging that should be used to identify occult stage Ⅲ regional

Table 1 Characteristics of common tracers

Blue dyes	Inherent low molecular weight of blue dyes translates into a very rapid migration into and subsequently out of the lymphatics with fairly low SLN retention, relying on surgeon expertize to identify, locate and remove the SLN before the dye spreads to other nodes[111] Better for localization of superficial lymph nodes Methylene blue (tetramethylthionine chloride, C16H18ClN3S) is a heterocyclic aromatic dye, a member of thiazine dyes[112] First line of treatment in methemoglobinemias, is used frequently in the treatment of ifosfamide-induced encephalopathy and has applications in the treatment of memory loss[112]. Has risk of skin necrosis observed with intradermal injection[113]. Excreted primarily in the urine and causes a green-blue discoloration of the urine which can also be observed in saliva and bile that disappears within a few days. Better safety profile when compared to Isosulfan Blue[114] Patent blue (Isosulfan Blue, Lymphazurin) has a vivid affinity for the lymphatics, with particle size small enough to travel through the lymph vessel but large to be trapped in the lymph nodes[115]
Radiolabelled colloid	Variable size, from 100-400 nm[24] Sulphide-based nanoparticles conjugated with Tc-99m are the most commonly used and available[116] Half life is approximately 6 h[116] As the radiocolloid emits high energy gamma radiation (140 keV) which is highly penetrating, allowing for its use in variable tissue depth, density and coloration[116] Gamma detection instruments are needed to localize tracer (hand held gamma probes, gamma cameras, SPECT)
Indocyanine green	ICG is a negatively charged ion tricarbocyanine dye belonging to the large family of cyanine dyes ICG fluoresces at about 800 nm and longer wavelengths, confines to the vascular compartment through binding with plasma proteins, has low toxicity and rapid excretion, almost exclusively into the bile[117] ICG is a low molecular weight contrast agent, and is both rapidly taken up into the lymphatics but also can diffuse from the lymphatics, reducing the local concentrations and contributing to background signal[116] and needs to be readministered
Tilmanocept (99mTc, Lymphoseek)	Radiopharmaceutical that accumulates in lymphatic tissues by binding to a mannose-binding protein on the surface of macrophages[101] The molecule, 99mTc-DTPA-mannosyl-dextran, is composed of a dextran backbone to which multiple units of mannose and DTPA are synthetically attached[101]

DTPA: Diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid; SLN: Sentinel lymph node; ICG: Indocyanine green; SPECT: Single-photon emission computerized tomography.

nodal disease among patients with clinical stage Ⅰ B or Ⅱ melanoma[30].

Blue dye

Morton's landmark research validated the clinical use of intraoperative lymphatic mapping for early stage melanoma[22]. In his study, patent V blue or isosulfan blue (0.5-1 mL) was injected intradermally with a 25 gauge needle at the site of melanoma, gently massaged and repeated every 20 min throughout the duration of the case. The rate of SLN identification with this technique was 81.8% (194 of 237 subjects) with a false negative rate (FNR) of less than 1% (non-SLNs were the sole site of metastasis in only 2 of 3079 nodes).

Radiolabelled colloid

Lymphatic mapping was first described with radio-labelled colloidal gold (198-Au) to predict the often ambiguous lymphatic drainage in truncal melanomas. In a pilot study of 57 patients with truncal melanoma, 0.1 mCi of radiolabelled colloid was injected into the dermis of the primary melanoma site and followed by radionucleotide scanning a day later. The authors reported no lymph node metastases were found at sites other than those taking up the radiolabeled colloid, providing a promising technique to accurately identify the draining nodal basin of the primary tumor[10].

A recent meta-analysis including 71 studies and 25240 patients demonstrated the proportion of successfully mapped SLN to be 98.1% (95%CI: 97.3%-98.6%) using scintigraphy with radiolabeled colloid[31]. The average dose of radiocolloid was 0.98 mCi.

Near infrared fluorescence

Recent clinical trials have used near-infrared (NIR) imaging with indocyanine green (ICG) to identify the SLN in melanoma. NIR imaging has high tissue penetration allowing for transcutaneous visualization of the tracer as it migrates from the peritumoral injection site to the regional lymph node basin in real time. Fluorescent lymphangiography using ICG has proven to be an effective method of SLN identification in patients with cutaneous melanoma and when used in combination with radiolabelled colloid, may replace the use of blue dye. In a recent study examining 52 consecutive patients with cutaneous melanoma of the trunk or extremities, rates of SLN detection were 96.2% for technetium-99m sulfur colloid, 59.6% for isosulfan blue, and 88.5% for ICG[32].

Imaging

Ultrasound relies upon the detection of anatomic changes in nodes with metastatic disease that may not always be apparent until a large nodal tumor burden is present. Loss of the normal fatty hilum and peripheral hypervascularity may indicate presence of nodal metastasis. Ultrasound guided fine needle aspiration performed in the presence of these concerning imaging characteristics increases the sensitivity of ultrasound for the diagnosis of nodal metastasis to approximately 82% with a positive predictive value of 52%[33]. In a

Table 2 National Comprehensive Cancer Network Guidelines for sentinel lymph node biopsy by cancer type

Melanoma (version 4.2014)	In general, SLN biopsy is not recommended for primary melanomas ≤ 0.75 mm thick, unless there is significant uncertainty about the adequacy of microstaging For melanomas 0.76-1.0 mm thick, SLN biopsy may be considered in the appropriate clinical context In patients with thin melanomas (≤ 1.0 mm), apart from primary tumor thickness, there is little consensus as to what should be considered "high-risk features" for a positive SLN. Conventional risk factors for a positive SLN, such as ulceration, high mitotic rate, and LVI, are very uncommon in melanomas ≤ 0.75 mm thick; when present, SLN biopsy may be considered on an individual basis For melanomas > 1 mm thick, discuss and offer SLN biopsy
Breast (version 3.2014)	Performance of SLN mapping and resection in the surgical staging of the clinically negative axilla is recommended for assessment of the pathologic status of the axillary lymph nodes in patients with clinical stage Ⅰ or Ⅱ breast cancer. This recommendation is supported by results of randomized clinical trials showing decreased arm and shoulder morbidity (pain, lymphedema, sensory loss) in patients with breast cancer undergoing SLN biopsy compared with patients undergoing standard axillary lymph node dissection. The patient must be a candidate for SLN biopsy and an experienced SLN team is mandatory for the use of SLN mapping and excision Axillary staging following preoperative systemic therapy may include SLN biopsy or level Ⅰ/Ⅱ dissection SLN mapping injections may be peritumoral, subareolar, or subdermal. However, only peritumoral injections map to the internal mammary lymph node(s) The performance of a SLN procedure should be strongly considered if the patient with apparent pure DCIS is to be treated with mastectomy or with excision in an anatomic location compromising the performance of a future SLN procedure In women with a local breast recurrence after breast conserving surgery who had a prior SNB, a repeat SNB may be technically possible. The accuracy of repeat SNB is unproven and the prognostic significance of repeat SNB after mastectomy is unknown and its use is discouraged The use of blue dye is contraindicated in pregnancy; radiolabelled sulfur colloid appears to be safe for SNB in pregnancy
Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction (version 1.2014)	No guidelines for SLN biopsy exist
Stomach (version 1.2014)	No guidelines for SLN biopsy exist
Colon (version 3.2014)	Examination of the SLN allows an intense histologic and/or immunohistochemical investigation to detect the presence of metastatic carcinoma. At the present time the use of SLNs should be considered investigational, and results should be used with caution in clinical management decisions
Rectum (version 3.2014)	Examination of the SLN allows an intense histologic and/or immunohistochemical investigation to detect the presence of metastatic carcinoma. At the present time the use of SLNs should be considered investigational, and results should be used with caution in clinical management decisions
Head and Neck (version 2.2014)	SLN biopsy is an alternative to elective neck dissections for identifying occult cervical metastasis in patients with early (T1 or T2) oral cavity carcinoma in centers where expertise for this procedure is available. Patients with metastatic disease in their sentinel nodes must undergo a completion neck dissection while those without may be observed
Penis (version 1.2014)	Dynamic SLN biopsies are recommended only in patients with nonpalpable inguinal lymph nodes treated at tertiary care centers that perform greater than 20 per year
Cervix (version 1.2015)	Consider SLN mapping in stage ⅠA1 (with LVSI), ⅠA2 and ⅠB1 Consider SLN mapping for positive margins or dysplasia or carcinoma on cone biopsy for stage ⅠA1 without LVSI
Endometrium (version 1.2015)	SLN mapping can be considered for the surgical staging of apparent uterine-confined malignancy when there is no metastasis demonstrated by imaging studies or no obvious extrauterine disease at exploration Cervical injection with dye has emerged as a useful and validated technique for identification of LNs that are at high risk for metastasis The combination of a superficial (1-3 mm) and deep (1-2 cm) cervical injection leads to dye delivery to the main layers of the lymphatic channel origins in the cervix and corpus

SLN: Sentinel lymph node; SNB: Sentinel node biopsy; LVSI: Lymphovascular space invasion; LVI: Lymphovascular invasion; DCIS: Ductal carcinoma *in situ*; LN: Lymph node.

feasibility study examining non-invasive staging of melanoma by ultrasound, 325 patients with melanoma underwent preoperative SLN ultrasound before SLN biopsy. Overall, sensitivity of ultrasound was 33.8%, specificity 85.7%, positive predictive value 36.5%, and negative predictive value 84.2%[33]. Variable lymphatic drainage patterns and low sensitivity make the routine clinical application of preoperative ultrasound without lymphoscintigraphic localization impractical.

Single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT)/computed tomography (CT) is a multimodal imaging technique that combines single photon emission computed tomography with CT. In melanoma, SPECT may allow for greater sensitivity, resolution, and anatomical localization than conventional lymphoscintigraphy alone, leading to a larger number of metastatic nodes excised (2.40 *vs* 1.87; 95%CI: 1.93-2.18; $P < 0.001$), decreased local recurrence rates (6.8% *vs* 23.8%, $P = 0.03$) and prolonged 4-year disease-free survival (93.9% *vs* 79.2%; $P = 0.02$) in a recent prospective randomized trial[34]. SPECT/CT may be of particular value in melanomas of the trunk and head and neck region, where lymphatic drainage is variable[35].

Failure of SLN detection and false negative rates

Factors that lead to failure of SLN localization in melanoma include inexperience of the surgeon, poor

tracer injection technique or injection away from the biopsy scar, timing of tracer injection, imaging the wrong nodal basin, not imaging all possible nodal basins, and complete replacement of the SLN with neoplastic disease causing the injected tracer to completely bypass the infiltrated node[22,36,37].

The FNR (calculated as number of patients with negative SLN biopsy who recur divided by the number of patients with positive SLN regardless of recurrence combined with the number patient with negative SLN who recur) in a meta-analysis that included data from about 25240 patients in 71 studies was 12.5%[31]. Likewise, collaborative groups worldwide have sited relatively high FNR ranging between 5.6% and 21%[37]. FNR increased with the length of follow-up (P = 0.002) but decreased with greater number of lymph nodes sampled (P = 0.001).

Gold standard

In the meta-analysis mentioned above that included data from about 25000 patients in 71 studies, at least one SLN was extracted in 14481 of 14818 patients, making SLN detection rate approximately 97.5%. All studies in the meta-analysis used scintigraphy, and 89% (63 studies) used blue dye[31]. Successful intraoperative SLN identification rates are generally reported to range between 97% and 100%[38], but this number is vastly discordant from the identification rates of the "true" SLN given the high false positive rates reported with melanoma. Most surgeons have adopted the preoperative use of radiolabeled colloid to detect the location of the SLN *via* lymphoscintigraphy and intraoperative use of a hand held gamma probe in conjunction with blue dye for visualization. The combination of techniques may increase the SLN identification rate when compared to a single technique alone but the lack of international guidelines and consensus for preoperative lymphoscintigraphy and intraoperative identification may contribute to the relatively high FNR continued to be reported in melanoma management[39].

BREAST CANCER

The SLNB has become invaluable in the staging of breast cancer. Although techniques for SLN identification may differ by clinician and institution, the American Society of Clinical Oncology 2014 practice guidelines[40] and NCCN guidelines[29] be viewed as the evidence based standard of care (Table 2). The SLN biopsy can be offered to women with operable breast cancer who have multicentric tumors, ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) with simultaneous mastectomy, history prior breast or axillary surgery and to those who will undergo preoperative or neoadjuvant systemic therapy. There continues to be insufficient evidence to recommend SLNB in large or locally advanced breast cancer (T3/T4), inflammatory breast cancer, DCIS when breast conserving surgery is planned and in pregnancy[40].

Blue dye

The SLNB in breast cancer was pioneered by Guiliano at John Wayne Cancer Institute[24]. Applying contemporary techniques used for intraoperative lymphatic mapping of cutaneous melanoma, his landmark paper described using isosulfan blue vital dye (Lymphazurin, Hirsch Industries, Inc., Richmond, VA) to accurately identify the SLN in breast cancer. His technique became standardized to the use of 3 to 5 mL injected in and around the breast tumor with interval wait time of 5 min from injection to exploration. Although a learning curve was observed, the SLN was identified 65.5% of the time (114 of 174 cases) and accurately predicted axillary nodal status in 95.6% (109 of 114 cases). Since its inception, the SLN identification rates with the use of blue dye alone have been reported to be 70%-98%[41-45]. Blue dye (methylene blue or isosulfan blue vital dye) is readily available and inexpensive, but the risk anaphylaxis remains a concern. Allergic reaction to the dyes isosulfan blue and patent blue V is rare and the reported incidence varies between 0.07% and 2.7%[46].

Radiolabelled colloid

The use of radiolabelled colloid in SLN identification was applied to the staging of breast cancer from its use in melanoma. Krag *et al*[47] first described the injection of 0.4 mCi technetium sulfur colloid in 0.5 mL saline around the breast lesion and the intraoperative use of a hand-held gamma probe to locate the nodes receiving drainage from the breast. A SLN was identified in 81.8% of consecutive patients (18 of 22) in this pilot study. The availability of radiolabeled colloid has been limited by the cost and departmental infrastructure needed to accommodate its parent isotope. A meta-analysis including over 8000 patients sited overall identification rate of 96% and false negative rate of 7.3% with the use of radiolabeled colloid[42].

NIR

NIR using ICG creates a real time image penetrable through tissue up to 2 cm, allowing percutaneous visualization of lymphatic channels and has been suggested for SLN mapping and identification. Based on a recent meta-analysis, ICG was shown to be better than blue dye alone but had no difference when compared to radiocolloid alone in terms of improved SLN identification[48]. Phase Ⅱ trials evaluating the accuracy of ICG have demonstrated an increased rate of SLN localization with the combination of ICG and conventional techniques *vs* blue dye alone. Using both NIR fluorescence and radioactivity, the FNR for SLN mapping was only 1% and the sensitivity of NIR fluorescence for initial localization of SLNs was 98%[49]. A multimodal approach of ICG, blue dye and radioisotope *vs* radioisotope alone demonstrated a significant increase in the average number of SLNs

identified in the multimodal approach group (3.4 ± 1.37 *vs* 2.3 ± 1.04, respectively; $P < 0.001$). Identification of SLNs occurred in all patients (100%) and there were no complications, leading the authors to consider the use of ICG in combination with blue dye and radioisotope safe[50]. The use of NIR may compliment the standard of care in SLN detection but head to head randomized control trials and cost analyses are needed.

Imaging

Imaging modalities including ultrasound (US), US guided SLNB, positron emission tomography (PET)/CT and MRI can identify structural and anatomic atypia in the regional lymph nodes and accurately predict the presence of metastasis in the SLN in breast cancer.

High resolution US is used to identify patients with clinically negative axillae who harbor nodal metastasis and may be candidates for preoperative chemotherapy. Eccentric cortical enlargement, thickening or lobulation, displacement or absence of the fatty hilum, hypoechoic echotexture or round or ovoid nodes are ultrasonographic findings suggestive of nodal metastasis[51-54]. In a meta-analysis of 21 studies using axillary US to identify metastasis (4313 patients), mean sensitivity and specificity were 61.4% (51.2% to 79.4%) and 82% (76.9% to 89.0%), respectively[52]. The addition of US guided biopsy improved both sensitivity and specificity to 79.4% (68.3% to 89%) and 100%, respectively[52]. Pooled data from a 31 study meta-analysis observed a FNR of axillary US with or without image guided biopsy to be 25% (95%CI: 24%-27%)[55]. Despite the high FNR, US guided biopsy has become a useful adjunct to the surgical SLN biopsy in the preoperative staging of patients with breast cancer.

A meta-analysis of 26 studies (2591 patients) evaluating diagnostic accuracy of PET or PET/CT in the axillary nodal metastasis, the mean sensitivity was 63% (95%CI: 52%-74%; range 20%-100%) and mean specificity 94% (95%CI: 91%-96%; range 75%-100%). Of 7 studies evaluating PET/CT (862 patients), the mean sensitivity in SLN identification was 56% (95%CI: 44%-67%) and mean specificity was 96% (95%CI: 90%-99%)[56]. Despite the application of PET/CT imaging in the evaluation of distant metastasis, evidence suggests that PET-based staging of the axilla in breast cancer is not recommended.

The use of MRI in the evaluation of axillary metastasis is also not supported by current evidence. In a meta-analysis, based on the highest sensitivity and specificity reported in each of the nine studies evaluating magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) (307 patients), mean sensitivity was 90% (95%CI: 78%-96%; range 65%-100%) and mean specificity was 90% (95%CI: 75%-96%; range 54%-100%). Estimates of sensitivity and specificity do not support replacement of SLN biopsy with any current MRI technology in this patient group[57].

Intraoperative assessment

Measuring intranodal pressure of the SLN and clinical suspicion based on intraoperative palpation has correlated well with the prediction of SLN macro- and micrometastasis in breast cancer[58]. The "true SLN" may be firmer and larger than other non-SLNs and highly suspicious for metastasis if it is more round than kidney-bean shaped, larger than usual, firm or matted.

Failure of SLN detection and false negative rates

Factors leading to the failure of SLN identification include the presence of altered lymphatic dynamics secondary to increased tumor burden in the nodal basin[59] and the receipt of preoperative chemotherapy (reported detection rates were 80.1% following chemotherapy)[60]. In the ACOSOG Z1071 study, in patients who received neoadjuvant chemotherapy, the use of blue dye alone increased the likelihood of failure to identify the SLN comparted to using radiolabeled colloid alone or with blue dye ($P = 0.006$; OR = 3.82; 95%CI: 1.47-9.92). The SLN identification rate in this study cohort was 78.6% with blue dye alone; 91.4% with radiolabeled colloid and 93.8% with dual mapping agents[61].

Gold standard

The gold standard of SLN identification in breast cancer remains the dual technique of blue dye and radioisotope injection[48]. The randomized EORTC AMAROS trial reported a SLN identification rate of 97% (1888 of 1953 patients) for which the majority (1744 patients) had the combined blue dye and isotope technique[62]. In the SENTINA trial, the SLN detection rate was 99.1% (95%CI: 98.3-99.6; 1013 of 1022 patients) in patients prior to receiving neoadjuvant chemotherapy[60].

ESOPHAGEAL CANCER

Minimally invasive esophageal resections for cancer have recently been shown to decrease the rate of comorbidities associated with open esophagectomy[63]. Prognosis however, remains dependent on extent of lymphatic spread and nodal metastasis[64]. The application of the SLNB to esophageal resection might be useful for accurate intraoperative decision making in determining the extent of lymphadenectomy in patients with early stage adenocarcinoma who are high surgical risk or in consideration for endoscopic resection[65].

Accurate identification of SLNs in esophageal cancer is most important in a cancer where direction of metastases is somewhat unpredictable[66,67]. The use of radiolabelled colloid (technetium 99m), blue dye and CT lymphoscintigraphy have provided individual detection rates of approximately 97%[65]. These tracers are most commonly injected around the tumor with endoscopic guidance. Increased detection rates are seen with smaller, thinner tumors, and adenocarcinoma (when compared to squamous cell carcinoma)[68].

Advocates of the widespread application of SLNB in esophageal cancer site increased ability to tailor and individualize cancer resection. "Ultrastaging" the most important lymph nodes by serial sectioning, immunohistochemistry and/or reverse transcriptase chain reaction, enables the identification of micro-metastatic disease that may guide decision-making in the administration of chemotherapy[69,70].

GASTRIC CANCER

The widespread application and clinical value of SLNB in gastric cancer is not well established. Gastrectomy with D2 lymphadenectomy remains the standard surgical treatment for gastric cancer worldwide[29,71] and a minimum of 15 lymph nodes submitted for pathological analysis has been shown to improve the prognostic ability if the AJCC guidelines to more accurately predict 5 year disease specific and overall survival[72]. This resection is not without morbidity, including bleeding, pancreatitis, subdiaphragmatic abscess, lymphorrhea and chylous ascites[73], leading to the application of the sentinel node theory in the management of early stage gastric cancer with the possibility that patients with small primary tumors (T1 or T2, less than or equal to 4 cm), clinically undetectable perigastric nodes (by imaging and endoscopy) with true pN0 gastric cancer may avoid extensive resections.

In a meta-analysis of 26 articles evaluating the FNR of different tracer methods in SLN biopsy in gastric cancer, FNR (defined as number of false negatives divided by number of true positives) were found to be 34.7% (95%CI: 21.2-48.1), 18.5% (95%CI: 9.1-28.0) and 13.1% (95%CI: 0.9-27.2) for blue dye, radiolabelled colloid and a combination of the two techniques, respectively[74]. A recent meta-analysis of 38 articles (2128 patients) reported a pooled identification rate of 93.7% (95%CI: 91.1-95.6) with combined tracer methods. Early T stage and submucosal injection resulted in a higher sensitivity but stressed the need for further studies to standardize the procedure and selection criteria[75].

Prospective trials have also demonstrated promising results in SLNB in gastric cancer. A prospective multicenter trial in Japan that included 397 patients with clinical T1N0M0 or T2N0M0 adenocarcinoma of the stomach used a dual tracer method (Technitium 99m labeled colloid and 1% isosulfan blue) to perform SLN mapping[76]. On the day prior to surgery, 20 mL of technetium 99m colloid (0.3 mCi) was injected into four quadrants of the submucosal layer of the lesion utilizing endoscopy. Intraoperatively, the gastrocolic ligament was divided to visualize lymphatic flow around the stomach. Isosulfan blue was then injected with the use of intraoperative endoscopy and a hand-held gamma probe was used. SLN detection rate was 97.5%. Pathology revealed four cases of false SLNs that were negative for carcinoma and nonSLN were positive, three of which were pT2 tumors (> 4 cm). SLNB using ICG has also been described with good detection rates (99.6%)[77] but real limitations of this method include the need for multiplanes of visualization, use of imprint cytology and open surgery by experienced surgeons. The JCOG0302 study concluded that the proportion of false negatives (46%) remains too high for the intraoperative "real time" evaluation of SLNs and further improvement on the application of the SLN concept in gastric cancer is needed[78].

COLORECTAL CANCER

Intraoperative SLN identification techniques have been described in the staging of colorectal cancer but there is no consensus on the application or validity of such practice. Regional lymph-node metastasis represents one of the most important indications for adjuvant chemotherapy in colorectal cancer. The use of blue dye to identify pericolonic lymph nodes that would have otherwise been overlooked intraoperatively can provide surgeons with a practical means to improve the staging of node negative patients. Early investigative studies defined SLNs as being those nodes closest to and receiving the most direct drainage from the tumor. When 1 mL of Lymphazurin 1% was injected in the subserosa of the primary tumor circumferentially, the SLN was correctly identified in 98.8% of cases (85 of 86 patients) and may have upstaged 18% of patients from stage Ⅰ/Ⅱ to stage Ⅲ disease[79].

There is no gold standard for this technique, which has been described using different tracers (methylene blue, isosulfan blue, patent blue, technetium 99m, ICG), modes of injection (four quadrant, peritumoral) and stages of surgery (*in situ, ex vivo*)[80]. A meta-analysis of 1168 patients (912 with colon cancer, 256 with rectal cancer) observed a SLN detection rate of 94% (95%CI: 92-95) with a mean weighted sensitivity of 76% (95%CI: 72-80; range 25-100) and rate of upstaging of 11% (95%CI: 6-22). Because of the potential to improve staging in colorectal cancer and based on the results of this study, the authors suggested that for every patient diagnosed with colon or rectal cancer without clinical evidence of lymph node involvement or metastatic disease, a SLN procedure, in addition to conventional resection, should be considered[80].

CANCER OF THE HEAD AND NECK

Lymph node status is an important prognostic factor in cancer of the upper aerodigestive tract. It is universally accepted that head and neck squamous cell cancer (HNSCC) with regional metastasis has to be addressed by either surgery with or without adjuvant chemoradiation or by primary chemoradiation, but the management of the clinically node negative neck remains controversial. In 2014, the NCCN guidelines were updated to include the use of SLNB in early (T1/T2) cancers (Table 2)[29]. Implementation of SLNB

in clinically node negative disease can potentially spare the morbidity of elective neck dissections and chemotherapy in three-quarters of patients[81,82]. In HNSCC, a clinically negative neck must have a negative physical examination and imaging including CT, MRI, ultrasound guided fine needle aspiration, and/or PET or PET/CT according to recent practice guidelines[83]. In these guidelines, the SLNB is performed with preoperative lymphoscintigraphy using planar or SPECT/CT followed by intraoperative detection with a portable gamma probe with or without the addition of blue dye. Two recent meta-analyses (1753 patients) examining the diagnostic value of the SLN concluded that SLNB is a valid diagnostic technique with sensitivity of over 90% and detection rates of over 95%[82,84]. Lower detection rates and sensitivity, however have been reported in cancers of the floor of the mouth[85,86]. SLN should be successfully located in greater than 90% of patients, positive SLN should match that of the observed rate of positive nodes in a formal neck dissections (20%-30%) and rate of false negatives should be < 5%[81-83]. Evidence favoring SLNB in T1/T2 HNSCC as a staging tool continues to grow with promising results of trials with longer term follow-up[85].

PENILE CANCER

Since the landmark work of lymphatic mapping and SLN identification by Cabanas[11], the routine implementation of SLN biopsy in penile cancer still remains in its infancy. NCCN guidelines no longer recommend lymphangiograms due to high reported FNR (over 20%)[87,88]. Dynamic SLN biopsies are recommended only in patients with nonpalpable inguinal lymph nodes treated at tertiary care centers that perform greater than 20 of these cases per year[29]. This method involves preoperative lymphoscintigraphy by intradermal injection of technetium 99m around the primary tumor and intraoperative use of gamma probe and intradermal blue dye injection. The addition of groin ultrasonography with or without fine needle aspiration preoperatively can potentially identify occult nodal metastases in patients with clinical N0 penile cancer. SLN biopsy alone might miss between 5%-10% of metastases[89]. Despite the advent of SLN biopsy in penile cancer leading to decreased inguinal dissection, 5 year disease specific mortality has decreased in clinical N0 disease[90]. A recent literature review examining management of inguinal nodes in penile cancer from 1977-2010 concluded that in order to obtain the lowest possible FNRs, performing a SLN biopsy in penile cancer requires urologists, radiologists and pathologists working together as a multidisciplinary team in a high volume center[91].

CERVICAL CANCER

NCCN guidelines recommend SLN mapping in cervical cancer for in stage Ⅰ A1 [with lymphovascular space invasion (LVSI)], Ⅰ A2 and IB1 and for positive margins, dysplasia or carcinoma on cone biopsy for stage Ⅰ A1 without LVSI[29]. SLN mapping studies have reported greater than 80% of identified SLNs are peri-iliac, contained in the common, external and internal iliac regions[92,93].

Precise detection of the SLN may allow for accurate prediction of pelvic lymph node status[94] which is a crucial factor for optimized treatment of cervical cancer. Initial studies using both radiocolloid (technitium 99m injected one day preoperatively in the 3, 6, 9 and 12 o'clock position into the cervix) and blue dye (injected into the same locations intraoperatively) reported SLN detection rates of 78% and established currently used injection protocols[95]. SLN detection with ICG seems to have similar detection rates to that of radiocolloid and blue dye[96].

Preoperative SPECT/CT in addition to radiolabeled colloid and intraoperative blue dye has demonstrated better anatomic correlation and improved rates of SLN detection (approaching 100%) compared to planar lymphoscintigraphy[97].

The SENTICOL Study is the largest multi-institutional trial in women with early stage cervical cancer (Ⅰ A1 and Ⅰ B1) who underwent dual tracer guided SLN biopsy (radiocolloid and blue dye) followed by pelvic lymphadenectomy. Detection rates of 97.8% were reported, leading the authors to conclude that SLN biopsy is a highly sensitive and important technique in women with early stage cervical cancer[98].

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

Prognosis for endometrial cancer is correlated with lymph node status but complete pelvic lymphadenectomy for all patients regardless of risk is a subject of debate. In a recent multicenter study, SLN biopsy was associated with "ultrastaging" that was helpful in guiding adjuvant therapies[99]. Four quadrant cervical injection of technetium sulfur colloid (around the 3, 6, 9 and 12 o'clock) was performed on the day prior to surgery and patent blue dye was injected intraoperatively with a SLN detection rate of 86.4%. In this study, complete pelvic lymphadenectomy was performed in all patients and results recommended the routine use of SLNB in low- and medium-risk patients to guide chemotherapy. The SENTI-ENDO prospective multicenter study also reported the upstaging of 10% of low risk patients and 15% of intermediate risk patients[100]. Although it is not the standard of care, implementation of SLNB and subsequent "ultrastaging" in endometrial cancer may lead to more individualized treatment options for these patients.

DISCUSSION

The SLN biopsy created a paradigm shift away from

invasive, morbid surgical resections and towards more individualized care. Despite the increased use of SLNB in different solid tumor types and improvement in techniques, failure or false detection of the true SLN can still result in poor locoregional control and decreased survival. Further understanding of the molecular mechanisms of lymphatic metastasis has led to the creation of novel tracers and mapping techniques.

Protein receptors on the surface of lymphoid cells have become promising targets in SLN identification. Tilmanocept (99mTc, Lymphoseek) is a synthetic radiotracer that relies on carbohydrate moieties to target the CD206 receptor on the surface of macrophages and reticuloendothelial cells in lymphatics. It has demonstrated highly concordant SLN detection rates compared to traditional tracers[101-103] and was recently approved by the Food and Drug Administration for SLNB[104,105]. Gold nanoparticles bioconjugated anti-CD45 antibodies demonstrate high affinity for CD45 expressing cells in the lymph node, have rapid lymphatic uptake and significant retention in the nodes after 6 and 24 h[106]. The increased binding, uptake and retention of these new immunotracers may allow for their use in solid tumors that are in close anatomical proximity to their SLN or in those tumors with unpredictable or multiple nodal drainage patterns.

Novel maging techniques have been studied to increase the *in vivo* detection rates of the SLN as well. The use of intradermally injected microbubbles containing sulphur hexafluoride gas and high resolution contrast enhanced US have allowed for real time identification of lymphatic channels that can be traced up to the draining nodal basin. This technique has been shown to facilitate accurate SLN identification and targeted SLNB in pre-operative breast cancer patients[107]. The use of MRI with peripherally injected iron oxide nanoparticles has been shown to successfully identify the SLN but has failed to gain wide exceptance in clinical practice[108,109].

US-guided spectroscopic photoacoustic imaging of molecularly activated plasmonic nanosensors can detect lymph node metastasis as small as 50 microns with high sensitivity in animal models, suggesting promising clinical applications for the detection of SLN micrometastasis in the future[110].

As more is known about the unique molecular identity of the SLN itself, the peritumoral and intervening lymphatics, and the cells involved in lymphatic metastasis, tracers can be formulated to identify and irreversibly bind those unique biochemical targets, allowing for more accurate identification of the SLN and ultimately, patient individualized SLN guided lymphadenectomy in more solid tumor types.

REFERENCES

1 **Sappey PC.** Traitéd'anatomie descriptive. Masson, 1864
2 **Virchow RLK**. Cellular pathology. John Churchill, 1860
3 **Halsted WS**. I. The Results of Radical Operations for the Cure of Carcinoma of the Breast. *Ann Surg* 1907; **46**: 1-19 [PMID: 17861990 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-190707000-00001]
4 **Halsted WS**. I. The Results of Operations for the Cure of Cancer of the Breast Performed at the Johns Hopkins Hospital from June, 1889, to January, 1894. *Ann Surg* 1894; **20**: 497-555 [PMID: 17860107 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-189407000-00075]
5 **Onuigbo WI**. Historical trends in cancer surgery. *Med Hist* 1962; **6**: 154-161 [PMID: 14482076 DOI: 10.1017/S0025727300027125]
6 **Cripps H**. Rectal Cancer: Rectal Excision for Cancer: The Selection of Suitable Cases and the Prognosis. *Br Med J* 1892; **2**: 1277-1279 [PMID: 20753958]
7 **Ginn C**. Cancer of the cervix. *Am J Surg* 1915; **29**: 300
8 **Coleman FP**. Primary Carcinoma of the Lung, with Invasion of the Ribs: Pneumonectomy and Simultaneous Block Resection of the Chest Wall. *Ann Surg* 1947; **126**: 156-168 [PMID: 17858982 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-194708000-00003]
9 **Guiss LW**, Macdonald I. The role of radical regional lymphadenectomy in treatment of melanoma. *Am J Surg* 1962; **104**: 135-142 [PMID: 13902879 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(62)90314-8]
10 **Holmes EC**, Moseley HS, Morton DL, Clark W, Robinson D, Urist MM. A rational approach to the surgical management of melanoma. *Ann Surg* 1977; **186**: 481-490 [PMID: 907393 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-197710000-00010]
11 **Cabanas RM**. An approach for the treatment of penile carcinoma. *Cancer* 1977; **39**: 456-466 [PMID: 837331]
12 **Zeidman I**, BUSS JM. Experimental studies on the spread of cancer in the lymphatic system. I. Effectiveness of the lymph node as a barrier to the passage of embolic tumor cells. *Cancer Res* 1954; **14**: 403-405 [PMID: 13160971]
13 **Fisher B**, Fisher ER. Transmigration of lymph nodes by tumor cells. *Science* 1966; **152**: 1397-1398 [PMID: 5949244 DOI: 10.1126/science.152.3727.1397]
14 **Fisher B**, Fisher ER. Barrier function of lymph node to tumor cells and erythrocytes. II. Effect of x-ray, inflammation, sensitization and tumor growth. *Cancer* 1967; **20**: 1914-1919 [PMID: 6061628]
15 **Fisher B**, Fisher ER. Barrier function of lymph node to tumor cells and erythrocytes. I. Normal nodes. *Cancer* 1967; **20**: 1907-1913 [PMID: 6061627 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(196711)20:11<1907::AID-CNCR2820201117>3.0.CO;2-L]
16 **Nathanson SD**. Insights into the mechanisms of lymph node metastasis. *Cancer* 2003; **98**: 413-423 [PMID: 12872364 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.11464]
17 **Hellman S**. Karnofsky Memorial Lecture. Natural history of small breast cancers. *J Clin Oncol* 1994; **12**: 2229-2234 [PMID: 7931493]
18 **Morton DL**, Hoon DS, Cochran AJ, Turner RR, Essner R, Takeuchi H, Wanek LA, Glass E, Foshag LJ, Hsueh EC, Bilchik AJ, Elashoff D, Elashoff R. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymphadenectomy for early-stage melanoma: therapeutic utility and implications of nodal microanatomy and molecular staging for improving the accuracy of detection of nodal micrometastases. *Ann Surg* 2003; **238**: 538-549; discussion 549-550 [PMID: 14530725 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000086543.45557.cb]
19 **Fisher B**, Wolmark N, Redmond C, Deutsch M, Fisher ER. Findings from NSABP Protocol No. B-04: comparison of radical mastectomy with alternative treatments. II. The clinical and biologic significance of medial-central breast cancers. *Cancer* 1981; **48**: 1863-1872 [PMID: 7284980]
20 **Fisher B**, Wolmark N, Bauer M, Redmond C, Gebhardt M. The accuracy of clinical nodal staging and of limited axillary dissection as a determinant of histologic nodal status in carcinoma of the breast. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1981; **152**: 765-772 [PMID: 7244951]
21 **Morton DL**, Wen DR, Wong JH, Economou JS, Cagle LA, Storm FK, Foshag LJ, Cochran AJ. Technical details of intraoperative lymphatic mapping for early stage melanoma. *Arch Surg* 1992; **127**: 392-399 [PMID: 1558490 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1992.01420040034005]
22 **Ross MI**, Reintgen D, Balch CM. Selective lymphadenectomy: emerging role for lymphatic mapping and sentinel node biopsy in the management of early stage melanoma. *Semin Surg Oncol* 1993; **9**: 219-223 [PMID: 8516607]

23 **Giuliano AE**, Kirgan DM, Guenther JM, Morton DL. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymphadenectomy for breast cancer. *Ann Surg* 1994; **220**: 391-398; discussion 398-401 [PMID: 8092905 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199409000-00015]

24 **Wilhelm AJ**, Mijnhout GS, Franssen EJ. Radiopharmaceuticals in sentinel lymph-node detection - an overview. *Eur J Nucl Med* 1999; **26**: S36-S42 [PMID: 10199931 DOI: 10.1007/s002590050576]

25 **Sondak VK**, King DW, Zager JS, Schneebaum S, Kim J, Leong SP, Faries MB, Averbook BJ, Martinez SR, Puleo CA, Messina JL, Christman L, Wallace AM. Combined analysis of phase III trials evaluating [99mTc]tilmanocept and vital blue dye for identification of sentinel lymph nodes in clinically node-negative cutaneous melanoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 680-688 [PMID: 23054107 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2612-z]

26 **Rao DA**, Forrest ML, Alani AW, Kwon GS, Robinson JR. Biodegradable PLGA based nanoparticles for sustained regional lymphatic drug delivery. *J Pharm Sci* 2010; **99**: 2018-2031 [PMID: 19902520 DOI: 10.1002/jps.21970]

27 **Morton DL**, Thompson JF, Cochran AJ, Mozzillo N, Elashoff R, Essner R, Nieweg OE, Roses DF, Hoekstra HJ, Karakousis CP, Reintgen DS, Coventry BJ, Glass EC, Wang HJ. Sentinel-node biopsy or nodal observation in melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 1307-1317 [PMID: 17005948 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa060992]

28 **Morton DL**, Thompson JF, Cochran AJ, Mozzillo N, Nieweg OE, Roses DF, Hoekstra HJ, Karakousis CP, Puleo CA, Coventry BJ, Kashani-Sabet M, Smithers BM, Paul E, Kraybill WG, McKinnon JG, Wang HJ, Elashoff R, Faries MB. Final trial report of sentinel-node biopsy versus nodal observation in melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 599-609 [PMID: 24521106 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1310460]

29 National comprehensive cancer network. NCCN clinical practice guidelines in oncology breast cancer. Available from: URL: http://www.nccn.org

30 **Gershenwald JE**, Soong SJ, Balch CM. 2010 TNM staging system for cutaneous melanoma...and beyond. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 1475-1477 [PMID: 20300965]

31 **Valsecchi ME**, Silbermins D, de Rosa N, Wong SL, Lyman GH. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy in patients with melanoma: a meta-analysis. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1479-1487 [PMID: 21383281 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.1884]

32 **Cloyd JM**, Wapnir IL, Read BM, Swetter S, Greco RS. Indocyanine green and fluorescence lymphangiography for sentinel lymph node identification in cutaneous melanoma. *J Surg Oncol* 2014; **110**: 888-892 [PMID: 25124992 DOI: 10.1002/jso.23745]

33 **Voit C**, Van Akkooi AC, Schäfer-Hesterberg G, Schoengen A, Kowalczyk K, Roewert JC, Sterry W, Eggermont AM. Ultrasound morphology criteria predict metastatic disease of the sentinel nodes in patients with melanoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 847-852 [PMID: 20065175 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.25.7428]

34 **Stoffels I**, Boy C, Pöppel T, Kuhn J, Klötgen K, Dissemond J, Schadendorf D, Klode J. Association between sentinel lymph node excision with or without preoperative SPECT/CT and metastatic node detection and disease-free survival in melanoma. *JAMA* 2012; **308**: 1007-1014 [PMID: 22968889 DOI: 10.1001/2012.jama.11030]

35 **van der Ploeg IM**, Valdés Olmos RA, Kroon BB, Wouters MW, van den Brekel MW, Vogel WV, Hoefnagel CA, Nieweg OE. The yield of SPECT/CT for anatomical lymphatic mapping in patients with melanoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 1537-1542 [PMID: 19184226 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0339-2]

36 **Gershenwald JE**, Colome MI, Lee JE, Mansfield PF, Tseng C, Lee JJ, Balch CM, Ross MI. Patterns of recurrence following a negative sentinel lymph node biopsy in 243 patients with stage I or II melanoma. *J Clin Oncol* 1998; **16**: 2253-2260 [PMID: 9626228]

37 **Manca G**, Rubello D, Romanini A, Mariani G. False-negative sentinel lymph node biopsy in melanoma patients. *Nucl Med Commun* 2014; **35**: 989-994 [PMID: 25148652 DOI: 10.1097/MNM.0000000000000171]

38 **Thompson JF**, Stretch JR, Uren RF, Ka VS, Scolyer RA. Sentinel node biopsy for melanoma: Where have we been and where are we going? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2004; **11**: 147S-151S [PMID: 15023742 DOI: 10.1007/BF02523619]

39 **Rossi CR**, De Salvo GL, Trifirò G, Mocellin S, Landi G, Macripò G, Carcoforo P, Ricotti G, Giudice G, Picciotto F, Donner D, Di Filippo F, Montesco MC, Casara D, Schiavon M, Foletto M, Baldini F, Testori A. The impact of lymphoscintigraphy technique on the outcome of sentinel node biopsy in 1,313 patients with cutaneous melanoma: an Italian Multicentric Study (SOLISM-IMI). *J Nucl Med* 2006; **47**: 234-241 [PMID: 16455628]

40 **Lyman GH**, Temin S, Edge SB, Newman LA, Turner RR, Weaver DL, Benson AB, Bosserman LD, Burstein HJ, Cody H, Hayman J, Perkins CL, Podoloff DA, Giuliano AE. Sentinel lymph node biopsy for patients with early-stage breast cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline update. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 1365-1383 [PMID: 24663048 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.54.1177]

41 **Kern KA**. Sentinel lymph node mapping in breast cancer using subareolar injection of blue dye. *J Am Coll Surg* 1999; **189**: 539-545 [PMID: 10589589 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(99)00200-8]

42 **Kim T**, Giuliano AE, Lyman GH. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy in early-stage breast carcinoma: a metaanalysis. *Cancer* 2006; **106**: 4-16 [PMID: 16329134 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.21568]

43 **Hirano A**, Kamimura M, Ogura K, Kim N, Hattori A, Setoguchi Y, Okubo F, Inoue H, Miyamoto R, Kinoshita J, Fujibayashi M, Shimizu T. A comparison of indocyanine green fluorescence imaging plus blue dye and blue dye alone for sentinel node navigation surgery in breast cancer patients. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 4112-4116 [PMID: 22782671 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2478-0]

44 **Khanzada Z**, Kabir SA, Yassin M, Baker Q, Graja T. Blue dye alone as an intraoperative method of axillary sentinel lymph node detection in invasive breast cancer. *Online J Clin Audits* 2013; **6**

45 **Mukherjee A**, Kharkwal S, Charak K. Assessment of the efficacy and safety of methylene blue dye for sentinel lymph node mapping in early breast cancer with clinically negative axilla. *Archives of International Surgery* 2014; **4**: 6

46 **Bézu C**, Coutant C, Salengro A, Daraï E, Rouzier R, Uzan S. Anaphylactic response to blue dye during sentinel lymph node biopsy. *Surg Oncol* 2011; **20**: e55-e59 [PMID: 21074413 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2010.10.002]

47 **Krag DN**, Weaver DL, Alex JC, Fairbank JT. Surgical resection and radiolocalization of the sentinel lymph node in breast cancer using a gamma probe. *Surg Oncol* 1993; **2**: 335-339; discussion 340 [PMID: 8130940 DOI: 10.1016/0960-7404(93)90064-6]

48 **Ahmed M**, Purushotham AD, Douek M. Novel techniques for sentinel lymph node biopsy in breast cancer: a systematic review. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: e351-e362 [PMID: 24988938 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70590-4]

49 **Verbeek FP**, Troyan SL, Mieog JS, Liefers GJ, Moffitt LA, Rosenberg M, Hirshfield-Bartek J, Gioux S, van de Velde CJ, Vahrmeijer AL, Frangioni JV. Near-infrared fluorescence sentinel lymph node mapping in breast cancer: a multicenter experience. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2014; **143**: 333-342 [PMID: 24337507 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-013-2802-9]

50 **Jung SY**, Kim SK, Kim SW, Kwon Y, Lee ES, Kang HS, Ko KL, Shin KH, Lee KS, Park IH, Ro J, Jeong HJ, Joo J, Kang SH, Lee S. Comparison of sentinel lymph node biopsy guided by the multimodal method of indocyanine green fluorescence, radioisotope, and blue dye versus the radioisotope method in breast cancer: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 1254-1259 [PMID: 24356798 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3437-0]

51 **Bedrosian I**, Bedi D, Kuerer HM, Fornage BD, Harker L, Ross MI, Ames FC, Krishnamurthy S, Edeiken-Monroe BS, Meric F, Feig BW, Akins J, Singletary SE, Mirza NQ, Hunt KK. Impact of clinicopathological factors on sensitivity of axillary ultrasonography in the detection of axillary nodal metastases in patients with breast cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 1025-1030 [PMID: 14597440 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.12.017]

52 **Houssami N**, Ciatto S, Turner RM, Cody HS, Macaskill P. Preoperative ultrasound-guided needle biopsy of axillary nodes in invasive breast

cancer: meta-analysis of its accuracy and utility in staging the axilla. *Ann Surg* 2011; **254**: 243-251 [PMID: 21597359 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31821f1564]

53 **Garcia-Ortega MJ**, Benito MA, Vahamonde EF, Torres PR, Velasco AB, Paredes MM. Pretreatment axillary ultrasonography and core biopsy in patients with suspected breast cancer: diagnostic accuracy and impact on management. *Eur J Radiol* 2011; **79**: 64-72 [PMID: 20047809 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2009.12.011]

54 **Krishnamurthy S**, Sneige N, Bedi DG, Edieken BS, Fornage BD, Kuerer HM, Singletary SE, Hunt KK. Role of ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration of indeterminate and suspicious axillary lymph nodes in the initial staging of breast carcinoma. *Cancer* 2002; **95**: 982-988 [PMID: 12209680 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.10786]

55 **Diepstraten SC**, Sever AR, Buckens CF, Veldhuis WB, van Dalen T, van den Bosch MA, Mali WP, Verkooijen HM. Value of preoperative ultrasound-guided axillary lymph node biopsy for preventing completion axillary lymph node dissection in breast cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 51-59 [PMID: 24008555 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3229-6]

56 **Cooper KL**, Harnan S, Meng Y, Ward SE, Fitzgerald P, Papaioannou D, Wyld L, Ingram C, Wilkinson ID, Lorenz E. Positron emission tomography (PET) for assessment of axillary lymph node status in early breast cancer: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2011; **37**: 187-198 [PMID: 21269795 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2011.01.003]

57 **Harnan SE**, Cooper KL, Meng Y, Ward SE, Fitzgerald P, Papaioannou D, Ingram C, Lorenz E, Wilkinson ID, Wyld L. Magnetic resonance for assessment of axillary lymph node status in early breast cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2011; **37**: 928-936 [PMID: 21855267 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2011.07.007]

58 **Nathanson SD**, Shah R, Chitale DA, Mahan M. Intraoperative clinical assessment and pressure measurements of sentinel lymph nodes in breast cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 81-85 [PMID: 24046111 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3249-2]

59 **Dordea M**, Colvin H, Cox P, Pujol Nicolas A, Kanakala V, Iwuchukwu O. Clinical and histopathological factors affecting failed sentinel node localization in axillary staging for breast cancer. *Surgeon* 2013; **11**: 63-66 [PMID: 22281369 DOI: 10.1016/j.surge.2011.10.006]

60 **Kuehn T**, Bauerfeind I, Fehm T, Fleige B, Hausschild M, Helms G, Lebeau A, Liedtke C, von Minckwitz G, Nekljudova V, Schmatloch S, Schrenk P, Staebler A, Untch M. Sentinel-lymph-node biopsy in patients with breast cancer before and after neoadjuvant chemotherapy (SENTINA): a prospective, multicentre cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 609-618 [PMID: 23683750 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70166-9]

61 **Boughey JC**, Suman VJ, Mittendorf EA, Ahrendt GM, Wilke LG, Taback B, Leitch AM, Flippo-Morton TS, Kuerer HM, Bowling M. Factors affecting sentinel lymph node identification rate after neoadjuvant chemotherapy for breast cancer patients enrolled in ACOSOG Z1071 (alliance). *Ann Surg* 2014; **261**: 547-552 [DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000551]

62 **Straver ME**, Meijnen P, van Tienhoven G, van de Velde CJ, Mansel RE, Bogaerts J, Duez N, Cataliotti L, Klinkenbijl JH, Westenberg HA, van der Mijle H, Snoj M, Hurkmans C, Rutgers EJ. Sentinel node identification rate and nodal involvement in the EORTC 10981-22023 AMAROS trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 1854-1861 [PMID: 20300966 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-0945-z]

63 **Biere SS**, van Berge Henegouwen MI, Maas KW, Bonavina L, Rosman C, Garcia JR, Gisbertz SS, Klinkenbijl JH, Hollmann MW, de Lange ES, Bonjer HJ, van der Peet DL, Cuesta MA. Minimally invasive versus open oesophagectomy for patients with oesophageal cancer: a multicentre, open-label, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 1887-1892 [PMID: 22552194 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60516-9]

64 **Akutsu Y**, Matsubara H. The significance of lymph node status as a prognostic factor for esophageal cancer. *Surg Today* 2011; **41**: 1190-1195 [PMID: 21874413 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-011-4542-y]

65 **Filip B**, Scarpa M, Cavallin F, Alfieri R, Cagol M, Castoro C. Minimally invasive surgery for esophageal cancer: a review on sentinel node concept. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 1238-1249 [PMID: 24281431 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3314-8]

66 **Ando N**, Ozawa S, Kitagawa Y, Shinozawa Y, Kitajima M. Improvement in the results of surgical treatment of advanced squamous esophageal carcinoma during 15 consecutive years. *Ann Surg* 2000; **232**: 225-232 [PMID: 10903602 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200008000-00013]

67 **Dresner SM**, Lamb PJ, Bennett MK, Hayes N, Griffin SM. The pattern of metastatic lymph node dissemination from adenocarcinoma of the esophagogastric junction. *Surgery* 2001; **129**: 103-109 [PMID: 11150040 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2001.110024]

68 **Dabbagh Kakhki VR**, Bagheri R, Tehranian S, Shojaei P, Gholami H, Sadeghi R, Krag DN. Accuracy of sentinel node biopsy in esophageal carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the pertinent literature. *Surg Today* 2014; **44**: 607-619 [PMID: 23715926 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-013-0590-9]

69 **Thompson SK**, Bartholomeusz D, Jamieson GG. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in esophageal cancer: should it be standard of care? *J Gastrointest Surg* 2011; **15**: 1762-1768 [PMID: 21809166 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-011-1634-3]

70 **Balalis GL**, Thompson SK. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in esophageal cancer: an essential step towards individualized care. *Ann Surg Innov Res* 2014; **8**: 2 [PMID: 24829610 DOI: 10.1186/1750-1164-8-2]

71 **Okines A**, Verheij M, Allum W, Cunningham D, Cervantes A. Gastric cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2010; **21** Suppl 5: v50-v54 [PMID: 20555102 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdq164]

72 **Deutsch GB**, O'Connor V, Sim MS, Lee JH, Bilchik AJ. Incorporating surgical quality into the AJCC 7th edition improves staging accuracy in gastric cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2015; **22**: 11-16 [PMID: 25192676 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-4004-z]

73 **Kim MC**, Kim HH, Jung GJ, Lee JH, Choi SR, Kang DY, Roh MS, Jeong JS. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel node biopsy using 99mTc tin colloid in gastric cancer. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 383-387 [PMID: 15075656 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000114227.70480.14]

74 **Cardoso R**, Bocicariu A, Dixon M, Yohanathan L, Seevaratnam R, Helyer L, Law C, Coburn NG. What is the accuracy of sentinel lymph node biopsy for gastric cancer? A systematic review. *Gastric Cancer* 2012; **15** Suppl 1: S48-S59 [PMID: 22262403 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-011-0103-8]

75 **Wang Z**, Dong ZY, Chen JQ, Liu JL. Diagnostic value of sentinel lymph node biopsy in gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 1541-1550 [PMID: 22048632 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-2124-2]

76 **Kitagawa Y**, Takeuchi H, Takagi Y, Natsugoe S, Terashima M, Murakami N, Fujimura T, Tsujimoto H, Hayashi H, Yoshimizu N, Takagane A, Mohri Y, Nabeshima K, Uenosono Y, Kinami S, Sakamoto J, Morita S, Aikou T, Miwa K, Kitajima M. Sentinel node mapping for gastric cancer: a prospective multicenter trial in Japan. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 3704-3710 [PMID: 24019550 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.50.3789]

77 **Miyashiro I**, Hiratsuka M, Kishi K, Takachi K, Yano M, Takenaka A, Tomita Y, Ishiguro S. Intraoperative diagnosis using sentinel node biopsy with indocyanine green dye in gastric cancer surgery: an institutional trial by experienced surgeons. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 542-546 [PMID: 22941164 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2608-8]

78 **Miyashiro I**, Hiratsuka M, Sasako M, Sano T, Mizusawa J, Nakamura K, Nashimoto A, Tsuburaya A, Fukushima N. High false-negative proportion of intraoperative histological examination as a serious problem for clinical application of sentinel node biopsy for early gastric cancer: final results of the Japan Clinical Oncology Group multicenter trial JCOG0302. *Gastric Cancer* 2014; **17**: 316-323 [PMID: 23933782]

79 **Saha S**, Dan AG, Viehl CT, Zuber M, Wiese D. Sentinel lymph node mapping in colon and rectal cancer: its impact on staging, limitations, and pitfalls. *Cancer Treat Res* 2005; **127**: 105-122 [PMID: 16209079 DOI: 10.1007/s10434-000-0120-z]

80 **van der Pas MH**, Meijer S, Hoekstra OS, Riphagen II, de Vet

HC, Knol DL, van Grieken NC, Meijerink WJ. Sentinel-lymph-node procedure in colon and rectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 540-550 [PMID: 21549638 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70075-4]

81 **Shah JP**. Patterns of cervical lymph node metastasis from squamous carcinomas of the upper aerodigestive tract. *Am J Surg* 1990; **160**: 405-409 [PMID: 2221244 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(05)80554-9]

82 **Thompson CF**, St John MA, Lawson G, Grogan T, Elashoff D, Mendelsohn AH. Diagnostic value of sentinel lymph node biopsy in head and neck cancer: a meta-analysis. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2013; **270**: 2115-2122 [PMID: 23263205 DOI: 10.1007/s00405-012-2320-0]

83 **Alkureishi LW**, Burak Z, Alvarez JA, Ballinger J, Bilde A, Britten AJ, Calabrese L, Chiesa C, Chiti A, de Bree R, Gray HW, Hunter K, Kovacs AF, Lassmann M, Leemans CR, Mamelle G, McGurk M, Mortensen J, Poli T, Shoaib T, Sloan P, Sorensen JA, Stoeckli SJ, Thomsen JB, Trifiro G, Werner J, Ross GL. Joint practice guidelines for radionuclide lymphoscintigraphy for sentinel node localization in oral/oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 3190-3210 [PMID: 19795174]

84 **Yamauchi K**, Kogashiwa Y, Nakamura T, Moro Y, Nagafuji H, Kohno N. Diagnostic evaluation of sentinel lymph node biopsy in early head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: a meta-analysis. *Head Neck* 2015; **37**: 127-133 [PMID: 24478151 DOI: 10.1002/hed.23526]

85 **Alkureishi LW**, Ross GL, Shoaib T, Soutar DS, Robertson AG, Thompson R, Hunter KD, Sorensen JA, Thomsen J, Krogdahl A, Alvarez J, Barbier L, Santamaria J, Poli T, Sesenna E, Kovács AF, Grünwald F, Barzan L, Sulfaro S, Alberti F. Sentinel node biopsy in head and neck squamous cell cancer: 5-year follow-up of a European multicenter trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 2459-2464 [PMID: 20552410 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1111-3]

86 **Civantos FJ**, Zitsch RP, Schuller DE, Agrawal A, Smith RB, Nason R, Petruzelli G, Gourin CG, Wong RJ, Ferris RL, El Naggar A, Ridge JA, Paniello RC, Owzar K, McCall L, Chepeha DB, Yarbrough WG, Myers JN. Sentinel lymph node biopsy accurately stages the regional lymph nodes for T1-T2 oral squamous cell carcinomas: results of a prospective multi-institutional trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 1395-1400 [PMID: 20142602 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.20.8777]

87 **Tanis PJ**, Lont AP, Meinhardt W, Olmos RA, Nieweg OE, Horenblas S. Dynamic sentinel node biopsy for penile cancer: reliability of a staging technique. *J Urol* 2002; **168**: 76-80 [PMID: 12050496 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)64835-5]

88 **Spiess PE**, Izawa JI, Bassett R, Kedar D, Busby JE, Wong F, Eddings T, Tamboli P, Pettaway CA. Preoperative lymphoscintigraphy and dynamic sentinel node biopsy for staging penile cancer: results with pathological correlation. *J Urol* 2007; **177**: 2157-2161 [PMID: 17509308 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2007.01.125]

89 **Crawshaw JW**, Hadway P, Hoffland D, Bassingham S, Corbishley CM, Smith Y, Pilcher J, Allan R, Watkin NA, Heenan SD. Sentinel lymph node biopsy using dynamic lymphoscintigraphy combined with ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration in penile carcinoma. *Br J Radiol* 2009; **82**: 41-48 [PMID: 19095815 DOI: 10.1259/bjr/99732265]

90 **Djajadiningrat RS**, Graafland NM, van Werkhoven E, Meinhardt W, Bex A, van der Poel HG, van Boven HH, Valdés Olmos RA, Horenblas S. Contemporary management of regional nodes in penile cancer-improvement of survival? *J Urol* 2014; **191**: 68-73 [PMID: 23917166 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2013.07.088]

91 **Yeung LL**, Brandes SB. Dynamic sentinel lymph node biopsy as the new paradigm for the management of penile cancer. *Urol Oncol* 2013; **31**: 693-696 [PMID: 23158262]

92 **Marnitz S**, Köhler C, Bongardt S, Braig U, Hertel H, Schneider A. Topographic distribution of sentinel lymph nodes in patients with cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2006; **103**: 35-44 [PMID: 16600355 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2006.01.061]

93 **Bats AS**, Mathevet P, Buenerd A, Orliaguet I, Mery E, Zerdoud S, Le Frère-Belda MA, Froissart M, Querleu D, Martinez A, Leblanc E, Morice P, Daraï E, Marret H, Gillaizeau F, Lécuru F. The sentinel node technique detects unexpected drainage pathways and allows nodal ultrastaging in early cervical cancer: insights from the multicenter prospective SENTICOL study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 413-422 [PMID: 22911367 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2597-7]

94 **Medl M**, Peters-Engl C, Schütz P, Vesely M, Sevelda P. First report of lymphatic mapping with isosulfan blue dye and sentinel node biopsy in cervical cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2000; **20**: 1133-1134 [PMID: 10810409]

95 **Malur S**, Krause N, Köhler C, Schneider A. Sentinel lymph node detection in patients with cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2001; **80**: 254-257 [PMID: 11161868 DOI: 10.1006/gyno.2000.6041]

96 **Furukawa N**, Oi H, Yoshida S, Shigetomi H, Kanayama S, Kobayashi H. The usefulness of photodynamic eye for sentinel lymph node identification in patients with cervical cancer. *Tumori* 2010; **96**: 936-940 [PMID: 21388055]

97 **Klapdor R**, Mücke J, Schneider M, Länger F, Gratz KF, Hillemanns P, Hertel H. Value and advantages of preoperative sentinel lymph node imaging with SPECT/CT in cervical cancer. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2014; **24**: 295-302 [PMID: 24401983 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000032]

98 **Lécuru F**, Mathevet P, Querleu D, Leblanc E, Morice P, Daraï E, Marret H, Magaud L, Gillaizeau F, Chatellier G, Dargent D. Bilateral negative sentinel nodes accurately predict absence of lymph node metastasis in early cervical cancer: results of the SENTICOL study. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1686-1691 [PMID: 21444878 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.32.0432]

99 **Ballester M**, Naoura I, Chéreau E, Seror J, Bats AS, Bricou A, Daraï E. Sentinel node biopsy upstages patients with presumed low- and intermediate-risk endometrial cancer: results of a multicenter study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 407-412 [PMID: 23054119 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2683-x]

100 **Ballester M**, Dubernard G, Lécuru F, Heitz D, Mathevet P, Marret H, Querleu D, Golfier F, Leblanc E, Rouzier R, Daraï E. Detection rate and diagnostic accuracy of sentinel-node biopsy in early stage endometrial cancer: a prospective multicentre study (SENTI-ENDO). *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 469-476 [PMID: 21489874]

101 **Wallace AM**, Hoh CK, Vera DR, Darrah DD, Schulteis G. Lymphoseek: a molecular radiopharmaceutical for sentinel node detection. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 531-538 [PMID: 12794019 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.07.012]

102 **Wallace AM**, Han LK, Povoski SP, Deck K, Schneebaum S, Hall NC, Hoh CK, Limmer KK, Krontiras H, Frazier TG, Cox C, Avisar E, Faries M, King DW, Christman L, Vera DR. Comparative evaluation of [(99m)tc]tilmanocept for sentinel lymph node mapping in breast cancer patients: results of two phase 3 trials. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 2590-2599 [PMID: 23504141 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-2887-8]

103 Comparison of tc 99m-tilmanocept and filtered tc 99m-sulfur colloid for breast lymphatic mapping. Society of nuclear medicine annual meeting abstracts. Soc Nuclear Med, 2014

104 **DiGiulio S**. FDA approves lymphoseek, first new lymph node mapping drug in 30 years. Oncology Times, 2013

105 **DiGiulio S**. FDA's orphan drug designation to lymphoseek for new indication in head and neck cancers. Oncology Times, 2014

106 **Liu T**, Cousins A, Chien CC, Kempson I, Thompson S, Hwu Y, Thierry B. Immunospecific targeting of CD45 expressing lymphoid cells: towards improved detection agents of the sentinel lymph node. *Cancer Lett* 2013; **328**: 271-277 [PMID: 23043762 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2012.09.024]

107 **Cox K**, Sever A, Jones S, Weeks J, Mills P, Devalia H, Fish D, Jones P. Validation of a technique using microbubbles and contrast enhanced ultrasound (CEUS) to biopsy sentinel lymph nodes (SLN) in pre-operative breast cancer patients with a normal grey-scale axillary ultrasound. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2013; **39**: 760-765 [PMID: 23632319 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2013.03.026]

108 **Harada T**, Tanigawa N, Matsuki M, Nohara T, Narabayashi I. Evaluation of lymph node metastases of breast cancer using ultrasmall superparamagnetic iron oxide-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging. *Eur J Radiol* 2007; **63**: 401-407 [PMID: 17398053 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2007.02.010]

109 **Madru R**, Kjellman P, Olsson F, Wingårdh K, Ingvar C, Ståhlberg F, Olsrud J, Lätt J, Fredriksson S, Knutsson L, Strand SE. 99mTc-labeled superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles for multimodality SPECT/MRI of sentinel lymph nodes. *J Nucl Med* 2012; **53**: 459-463 [PMID: 22323777 DOI: 10.2967/jnumed.111.092437]

110 **Luke GP**, Myers JN, Emelianov SY, Sokolov KV. Sentinel lymph node biopsy revisited: ultrasound-guided photoacoustic detection of micrometastases using molecularly targeted plasmonic nanosensors. *Cancer Res* 2014; **74**: 5397-5408 [PMID: 25106426 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-14-0796]

111 **Subramanian S**, Dandekar P, Jain R, Pandey U, Samuel G, Hassan PA, Patravale V, Venkatesh M. Technetium-99m-labeled poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) nanoparticles as an alternative for sentinel lymph node imaging. *Cancer Biother Radiopharm* 2010; **25**: 637-644 [PMID: 21204757 DOI: 10.1089/cbr.2010.0817]

112 **Oz M**, Lorke DE, Hasan M, Petroianu GA. Cellular and molecular actions of Methylene Blue in the nervous system. *Med Res Rev* 2011; **31**: 93-117 [PMID: 19760660 DOI: 10.1002/med.20177]

113 **Stradling B**, Aranha G, Gabram S. Adverse skin lesions after methylene blue injections for sentinel lymph node localization. *Am J Surg* 2002; **184**: 350-352 [PMID: 12383900 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(02)00945-5]

114 **Thevarajah S**, Huston TL, Simmons RM. A comparison of the adverse reactions associated with isosulfan blue versus methylene blue dye in sentinel lymph node biopsy for breast cancer. *Am J Surg* 2005; **189**: 236-239 [PMID: 15720998 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2004.06.042]

115 **Varghese P**, Abdel-Rahman AT, Akberali S, Mostafa A, Gattuso JM, Carpenter R. Methylene blue dye--a safe and effective alternative for sentinel lymph node localization. *Breast J* 2008; **14**: 61-67 [PMID: 18186867 DOI: 10.1111/j.1524-4741.2007.00519.x]

116 **Cousins A**, Thompson SK, Wedding AB, Thierry B. Clinical relevance of novel imaging technologies for sentinel lymph node identification and staging. *Biotechnol Adv* 2014; **32**: 269-279 [PMID: 24189095 DOI: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2013.10.011]

117 **Alander JT**, Kaartinen I, Laakso A, Pätilä T, Spillmann T, Tuchin VV, Venermo M, Välisuo P. A review of indocyanine green fluorescent imaging in surgery. *Int J Biomed Imaging* 2012; **2012**: 940585 [PMID: 22577366 DOI: 10.1155/2012/940585]

P- Reviewer: Antonelli A **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.27

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 27-40
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Mesorectal excision: Surgical anatomy of the rectum, mesorectum, and pelvic fascia and nerves and clinical relevance

Mahmoud N Kulaylat

Mahmoud N Kulaylat, Buffalo General Medical Center, Department of Surgery, State University of New York at Buffalo, Buffalo, NY 14203, United States

Author contributions: Kulaylat MN solely contributed to this manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The author declares there is no conflict of interest to disclose.

Correspondence to: Mahmoud N Kulaylat, MD, Associate Professor of Surgery, Buffalo General Medical Center, Department of Surgery, State University of New York at Buffalo, 100 High Street, Buffalo, NY 14203,
United States. mkulaylat@kaleidahealth.org
Telephone: +1-716-8592050
Fax: +1-716-8594580
Received: September 16, 2014
Peer-review started: September 18, 2014
First decision: October 16, 2014
Revised: December 10, 2014
Accepted: December 29, 2014
Article in press: December 31, 2014
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Biologic behavior and management of rectal cancer differ significantly from that of colon cancer. The surgical treatment is challenging since the rectum has dual arterial blood supply and venous drainage, extensive lymphatic drainage and is located in a bony pelvic in close proximity to urogenital and neurovascular structures that are invested with intricate fascial covering. The rectum is encased by fatty lymphovascular tissue (mesorectum) that is surrounded by perirectal fascia that act as barrier to the spread of the cancer and constitute the surgical circumferential margin. Locoregional recurrence after rectal cancer surgery is influenced by tumor-related factors and adequacy of the resection. Local recurrence is associated with incomplete excision of circumferential margin, violation of perirectal fascia, transmesorectal dissection, presence of isolated deposits in the mesorectum and tumor in regional lymph nodes and incomplete lymph node clearance. Hence to eradicate the primary rectal tumor and control regional disease, the rectum, first area of lymph node drainage and surrounding tissue must be completely excised while maintaining an intact fascial envelope around the rectum and preserving surrounding structures. This is achieved with extrafascial dissection and removal of the entire mesorectum including the portion distal to the tumor (total mesorectal excision) within its enveloping fascia as an intact unit. Total mesorectal excision is the standard of care surgical treatment of mid and low rectal cancer and can be performed in conjunction with low anterior resection, abdominoperineal resection, extralevator abdominoperineal resection, and extraregional dissection. To accomplish such a resection, thorough knowledge of the surgical anatomy of the rectum and pelvic structures and fascial planes is paramount.

Key words: Mesorectum; Pelvic fascia; Mesorectal excision

Core tip: Radical resection of rectal cancer entails removal of the rectum with its fascia as an intact unit while preserving surrounding vital structures. The procedure is technically challenging because of the complex multilayered pelvic fascia and intimate

relationship between the rectum and vital surrounding structures. Despite the clear-cut "text book" description of surgical technique and straightforward manner of handling different structures in the pelvis, there are many variations and contradictory accounts reported in the literature as to the nature, anatomy and significance of some of the structures, proper plane of dissection, and the optimal technique to achieve oncological resection while decreasing urogenital and bowel dysfunction.

Kulaylat MN. Mesorectal excision: Surgical anatomy of the rectum, mesorectum, and pelvic fascia and nerves and clinical relevance. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 27-40 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/27.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.27

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer is the most common gastrointestinal malignancy in the United States and the second leading cause of death in the western countries. About 30% of the cancers are located in the rectum and 40000-42500 new cases of rectal cancer are diagnosed in the United States every year. The biologic behaviour and management of rectal cancer differ from colon cancer since it arises from an organ that has dual arterial supply and venous drainage and complex and extensive lymphatic drainage and is located in the pelvic in close proximity to the anal sphincter complex, surrounded by major neurovascular structures and constrained by the bony pelvis. Surgery remains the mainstay treatment modality. The primary goals of treatment are to cure the cancer, reduce local recurrence, maximize disease-free survival, maintain function, and optimize quality of life (Qol). Mortality of rectal cancer is related to metastatic spread prior to resection and local recurrence after resection. About 50%-75% of local recurrences are confined to the pelvis (locoreginal)[1]. The 5-year survival with local recurrence is < 5% and Qol is severely impaired by symptoms associated with local recurrence[2,3]. Locoregional recurrence is influenced by surgery-related factors and tumor-related factors and one of the most important surgery-related factors is adequacy of the resection.

Treatment of rectal cancer continues to evolve and change is brought about by improved preoperative staging of the cancer, better understanding of the biologic behavior of the cancer, development of new instruments and the introduction of new and effective chemotherapeutic agents. The surgical resection has also become a more refined and accurate procedure as a result of better understanding of the surgical anatomy of the rectum and endopelvic fascia, topographic relationship between the rectum and surrounding structures and adherence to the principles of oncologic surgery. As a result, there has been a reduction in the number of locoregional recurrences, increased utility of reconstructive surgery and minimally invasive laparoscopic and robotic surgery, and decreased bowel, urinary and sexual dysfunction.

DISCUSSION

The rectum

Surgical anatomy: The rectum resides in the pelvis and extends from the rectosigmoid junction to the anal canal. It commences where the tenia coli of the sigmoid colon fuse to form a single continuous longitudinal muscle coat around the rectum. According to anatomists, it begins at third sacral vertebra (S3) and according to surgeons at the sacral promontory[4]. The junction of the rectum with the anal canal is demarcated by anorectal ring where the puborectalis muscle blends with the deep external anal sphincter (EAS). Although often described to measure 13-18 cm in length, the rectum is situated within the true pelvis (the part of the pelvis located distal to a line drawn from the sacral promontory to the symphysis pubis) is rarely 15 cm long[5]. The rectum has intraperitoneal and extraperitoneal components and is divided into upper, middle and lower parts. The upper rectum is intraperitoneal surrounded by peritoneum except for a small segment posteriorly where the superior hemorrhoidal vessels descend through the mesorectum to supply the rectum. It is situated 10-15 cm from the anal verge. The middle rectum is covered by peritoneum only anteriorly and is situated 6-10 cm from the anal verge. The lower rectum is extraperitoneal and situated 5 cm from the anal verge[5]. The peritoneum covering the upper third of the rectum is reflected onto the pelvic sidewalls to form the pararectal fossa and onto the seminal vesicles in the male and vagina in the female to form the rectovesical and rectovaginal pouch respectively.

The rectum possesses an outer longitudinal and inner circular smooth muscle layer. The outer surface lacks the appendices epiploica and the inner surface lacks the haustra found in the sigmoid colon. The outer longitudinal layer mixes with some of the fibers of the levator ani and forms the conjoint longitudinal muscle. This muscle extends in the intersphincteric plane between the internal anal sphincter (IAS) and EAS and sends fibers that traverse the EAS, ischioanal space, and the IAS. The EAS is a striated muscle that surrounds the IAS. The deepest portion of the EAS is intimately related to the puborectalis muscle and the superficial part is attached to the anococcygeal ligament posteriorly and perineal body anteriorly. The outer surface of the rectum has three lateral curves and the luminal surface has three folds that constitute the valves of Houston. The middle valve (Kohlrasch's valve) is the most consistent and marks the anterior peritoneal reflection that is about 7-9 cm above the anal verge in men and 5-7.5 cm in women.

The rectum is surrounded with the mesorectum

that is in turn wrapped by the perirectal fascia. The intraperitoneal part of the rectum is related to the uterine appendages laterally and the upper part of the vagina in females anteriorly. Loops of small bowel, sigmoid colon and the ovaries and fallopian tubes often reside in the rectovesical or rectouterine recess. The lower two thirds of the rectum follow the curve of the sacral hollow. The extra-peritoneal part of the rectum is related to the sacrum and the coccyx posteriorly, pararectal space laterally, and the urogenital organs anteriorly.

The rectum is surrounded with potential spaces: pararectal, retrorectal and supralevator. The pararectal space is an extraperitoneal space on the lateral side of the rectum and composed of loose and partly dense connective tissue. It is bound superiorly by the peritoneum, rectum medially, pelvic side wall and obturator internus laterally, and the levator ani inferiorly. The supralevator space is located between the peritoneum superiorly, levator inferiorly, rectum medially and obturator fascia laterally. The retrorectal space is located between the fascia propria of the rectum anteriorly, presacral fascia posteriorly, rectosacral ligament inferiorly, and lateral rectal ligaments laterally. The retrorectal space is continuous with the retroperitoneum superiorly.

Clinical relevance: Treatment of rectal cancer depends on its location in the rectum and extent of involvement of rectal wall and regional lymph nodes (LN) by primary tumor.

The level of the tumor in the rectum can be determined clinically in relation to the anorectal ring and endoscopically in relation to the rectal valves. The anorectal ring is felt on rectal examination as a muscular band that corresponds to the proximal shelf of the anal canal[5]. Kohlrasch's valve marks the anterior peritoneal reflection that is 7-9 cm above the anal verge in men and 5-7.5 cm in women. Cancers of the intraperitoneal rectum (upper third) behave like cancers of the colon with regards to recurrence patterns and prognosis but cancers of the extraperitoneal rectum constitute the rectum from the oncologic standpoint. Cancers of the upper and proximal part of the middle rectum are treated with an anterior resection and a straight colorectal anastomosis. Cancers of the distal middle and lower rectum are treated with abdominoperineal resection (APR) and end colostomy, sphincter sparing procedure or intersphincteric resection. For distal rectal cancer, sphincter sparing is possible if the lower edge of the tumor is at least 3 cm from the anorectal ring so as to allow a 2 cm distal magin. A 2 cm is considered adequate since any distal intramural spread is almost always within 1.5 cm of the primary and only 4%-10% have spread > 1 cm and any spread beyond 1.5 cm is associated with high grade or widely metastatic tumors[6-9]. A 1 cm margin is considered adequate for tumors < 5 cm from the anal verge especially when neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy is used[10]. With sphincter-sparing procedure, an extended or ultralow anterior resection with a straight colo- or colonic-pouch-low rectal/anal anastomosis is performed. The coloanal anastomosis may be performed hand sewn transanally at the dendate line after excision of the mucosa from the dentate line to the anorectal junction or stapled at the anorectal junction. With intersphincteric resection, dissection is performed in the intersphincteric plane starting at the intersphincteric groove with partial or complete removal of the internal sphincter and a hand-sewn anastomosis performed transanally.

Select cases of early stage rectal cancer (Stage Ⅰ) may be treated with conservative resection, *i.e.*, local excison, either through a posterior approach (Kraske posterior proctotomy and York-Mason trans-sphincteric excision) or per anal approach (Park's per anal excision)[11-13]. The posterior approach is an established procedure but not frequently practiced because of associated morbidity and the advent of newer, less invasive and refined transanal procedures, *i.e.*, transanal endoscopic microresection (TEM), transanal minimally invasive surgery (TAMIS) and Robotic-TEM. With peranal excision (Parks' transanal local excision) the tumor is excised under direct visualization through the anal orifice. The procedure is limited to T1 or T2 small tumors (< 3-4 cm or < 30% of the circumference of rectal lumen), 8-10 cm from the anal verge and not fixed to the levator muscle. With TEM, TAMIS and Robotic-TEM, more proximal, larger or advanced lesions can be excised.

PELVIC FASCIA AND MESORECTUM

Surgical anatomy

Pelvic fascia: The pelvic fascia is associated with the pelvic wall and viscera and fills spaces between pelvic viscera and is continuous at the pelvic brim with the extraperitoneal abdominal fascia.

In pelvic dissection for low rectal cancer, Takahashi *et al*[14] described the "visceral and parietal endopelvic fasciae" as downward extension from the fascia in retroperitoneal space in the abdomen. In the abdomen, the visceral fascia runs under the peritoneum anterior to the aorta and cava, extends into the pelvis and envelops the rectum and mesorectum as the visceral endopelvic fascia. The parietal fascia runs posterior to the aorta and cava and extends into the pelvis along the entire pelvic wall as the parietal endopelvic fascia. In the true pelvis posteriorly, there is a potenial space between the two fasciae filled with loose areolar tissue and devoid of vessels and nerves[14]. Anteriorly at the level of the peritoneal reflection, the visceral endopelvic fascia envelops Denonvilliers' fascia on the anterior side of the rectum. Below the peritoneal reflection the circular continuity of the visceral endopelvic fascia is interrupted laterally by the presence of the lateral rectal ligaments and pelvic nerve fibers that arise from S3 and S4 foramina. At the distal side of the lateral

ligaments is a free space that extends between the endopelvic fasciae to the levator ani muscles[14].

Others divide the pelvic fascial arrangement into thin connective tissue layers covering surfaces of organs and connective tissue condensations of varying thickness that separate compartments. The parietal endopelvic fascia is described as a multilayered fascial tissue condensation that contain the hypogastric nerves together with the pelvic splanchnic nerves (PSN)[15-17]. Posteriorly, the fascia and embedded nerves can be easily separated as a compact structure from the anterior surface of the sacrum to uncover another thin fascia in front of the sacrum[16]. The fascia fuses with mesorectal fascia in the mid line posteriorly at the level of S4 creating a connective tissue bridge that can be quite dense and corresponds to the rectosacral ligament[17,18]. Antero-laterally, thin connective tissue continuations spread out medially from the fascia to interweave with the lateral extension of Denonvilliers' fascia that separates the rectum from the prostate and vagina[16]. The parietal endopelvic fascia exhibits an inner and outer lamella[15,19]. The continuity of the 2 lamellae varies, as does the thickness of tissue between them. The inner lamella envelops the mesorectal fascia posteriorly and laterally, thus confining the retrorectal space. Laterally the inner lamella and mesorectal fascia fuse thus the retrorectal space does not extend anterolateral[14,16]. The outer lamella extends between the iliac vessels on both sides and borders the presacral fascia posteriorly creating another plane that could be mistaken for the retrorectal space[19]. Laterally, the outer lamella cannot be delineated as distinctly as posteriorly since it is pierced by the PSN and blood vessels. The PSN emerging from the sacral roots and the hypogastric nerves originating from the superior hypogastric plexus, join the inferior pelvic plexus within the parietal pelvic fascia from and send several fine branches that diverge in a fan-like pattern towards the distal ureter, vas deferens, seminal vesicles, urinary bladder, prostate and the rectum[16]. The autonomic nerve fibers innervating the rectum pierce the lateral aspect of the fascia and enter the rectal wall (T-junction)[16,20].

Presacral fascia: On the posterior abdominal wall, a connective tissue sheath associated with the kidneys, ureters and genital vessels (urogenital fascia) descends into the pelvis below the promontory of the sacrum for few cm in front of S1, rarely S2, where it ends anterior to presacral fascia sometimes as a conspicuous border arched between the hypogastric nerves[21,22]. The urogenital fascia invests the ureters always lateral to the hypogastric nerves on the pelvic wall under the peritoneum of the pararectal fossa[21,22].

The presacral fascia (retrorectal fascia, Waldeyer's fascia) originates from S2 and S3 as thickened part of the parietal endopelvic fascia[23,24]. In the mid line posteriorly it descends in front of the sacrum, coccyx, the middle sacral artery and presacral veins, fuses with the periosteum of the sacrum and coccyx and covers the piriformis muscle. At the sacral foramina it ensheathes the nervi erigentes. The presacral fascia and the interface with the backside of the parietal pelvic fascia mimic the retrorectal space and the posterior aspect of the mesorectum[16]. The lateral margin of the fascia is connected with loose tissue to the sheath around the PSN[25]. At the level of S3-S4, the fascia sends extensions, the rectosacral ligament (posterior rectal ligament), in an anterior inferior direction or may become adherent to the fascia propria of the rectum 3-5 cm above the anorectal ring[16,18,21,25-27]. Sato *et al*[26] noted that the rectosacral ligament varies from several layers of parietal fascia passing forward and attaching to fascia propria as a "ligament" to a diffuse adherence between the two fasciae. It separates the retrorectal space from the subfascial space[21]. The composition of the rectosacral ligament is not well studied. Although few vessels and nerves are identified in cadavers, the rectosacral fascia does not contain any significant vessels. Distal to the rectosacral ligament between the fascia propria of the rectum and presacral fascia, lays the horizontal last 2-3 cm of the rectum[21]. The presacral fascia in that area becomes thinner and fascia propria thicker and may be composed of two layers.

Perirectal fascia: The rectum is "cocooned" within the mesorectum that is surrounded by perirectal fascia (or fascia propria) that fixes it in the pelvis and isolates it from the other adjacent pelvic organs. Fascia propria is an extension of the abdominal retroperitoneal visceral fascia or represents an upward capsular extension from the superior fascia of the pelvic floor that reflects off the pelvic sidewalls to become continuous with the subperitoneal loose connective tissues of the pelvis covering the pelvic floor musculature[14,28].

Thomas Jonnesco[29] (1901) was the first to describe the perirectal fascia as a strong, nonyielding, no more than 2-3 mm thick serofibrous sheath that encapsulated the rectum, fat, and the superior hemorrhoidal vessels and its branches and tributaries.

Bisset *et al*[27] likened fascia propria to a "sock", a shiny continuous sheath that completely surrounded the rectum and the surrounding mesorectum fusing with the peritoneum where the peritoneum reflects off the rectum. The sheath extended cranially around the rectum as far as the upper limit of the ampulla and continued into the retroperitoneum in a plane posterior to the inferior mesenteric vessels. Caudally it adhered to the presacral fascia opposite the S4 as the rectosacral ligament. Most distally as the mesorectum thinned out to the point where the fascia propria adhered intimately to the longitudinal muscle layer of the rectum at the anorectal junction. Anteriorly the fascia did not extend as high but rather merged with the peritoneum reflection (rectovesical or rectovaginal pouch). Below the peritoneal reflection, the fascia lied immediately posterior to the fascia of Denonvilliers' and could not be demonstrated as a separate layer.

At the lateral border of the pouch it fused with the submesothelial fibrous layer of the peritoneum lateral to the rectum and thin connective tissue continuation spread out medially to interweave with lateral extensions of the Denonvilliers' fascia. On histologic and electron microscopy examination, fascia propria appeared as a multilayered structure (in 80% of cases) of variable thickness ranging from 20 to 1000 um with an average thickness (measured *in vitro*) of about 150 um made up of multiple bundles of collagen fibers. It appeared thicker posteriorly than anteriorly. Anteriorly the fascia could not be demonstrated as a separate layer.

Mesorectum: The mesentery of the rectum, *i.e.*, mesorectum, is the perirectal fatty lymphovascular tissue extending the length of the rectum[5]. The mesorectum encases the rectum as a thick cushion mainly posteriorly and laterally. Posteriorly it has a characteristic bilobed appearance[21,27,28,30]. Inferiorly it thins out and tapers down to the anorectal junction. The mesorectum is enclosed with the perirectal fascia[27].

The superior, middle and inferior hemorrhoidal arteries (SHA, MHA and IHA respectively) provide blood supply to the rectum and anal canal. The SHA is a direct continuation of the inferior mesenteric artery (IMA) that arises from the anterior surface of the aorta at the undersurface of the third part of the duodenum. It descends in the mesosigmoid colon to the level of S3 where it bifurcates into right and left branches then further divides into anterior and posterior branches. These branches penetrate rectal wall into the submucosa and descend in that plane to the level of columns of Morgagni. The MHA shows great variability in its origin, presence, size and number. The artery may arise from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery (IIA) or have an anomalous origin from the inferior vesicle, inferior gluteal, or internal pudendal artery[26,31,32]. The MHA is identified in 12% to 100% of cases depending on size of vessel described[26,31,32]. The artery is bilaterally present in 14%-48% of cases and unilateral in 24%-31%[26,33]. When present bilaterally the origin is not always identical on both sides[32]. The artery is long and tortuous, passes down and medially below the peritoneal reflection on top the levator muscle, pierces the pelvic plexus during its course, enters the anterolateral aspect of the rectum between the superior and inferior rectal branches of the pelvic plexus, and gives several branches to the muscular coat of the lower rectum and submucosal plexus[25,32,33]. The size of the artery is variable and the point of insertion in rectum is 5-6 cm from the anus[25,32,33]. Immediately at the insertion, it is anterolateral to the rectum related anteriorly to the prostate and seminal vesicle or upper vagina. It then passes obliquely and medially traversing Denonvilliers' fascia[25,31,33,34]. The branching PSN arise posterior to the origin of the MHA and run in an anteromedial direction and reach the rectum at a similar height above the pelvic floor as the MHA. The MHA is closer to the pelvic floor and crosses the mesorectum independent of any structure. The vessel does not go through the lateral rectal ligaments and only accessory branches are found in 25% of cases and pass through the lateral ligaments[31,35]. By injection technique, the superior rectal field is filled by virtue of anastomotic connections with branches of MHA, the anastomosis between the SHA and MHA occurs both in the wall and extramurally, and connections between the SHA and MHA with the IHA are not demonstrable[31]. Since the presence of the MHA is variable and mostly is absent and its blood goes mainly to the muscle of the rectum and mostly to the prostate, its contribution to the viability of the rectum is considered insignificant[32]. The IHA is a branch of the anterior division of the internal pudendal artery that is a branch of the IIA and is mainly extrapelvic. The endopelvic fascia invests it as it passes out of the pelvis below the piriformis muscle through the greater sciatic foramina. It courses for a short distance in the buttocks then reenters the pelvis after passing over the sacrospinous ligament to enter Alcock's canal in the lateral wall of the ischioanal fossa. The vessel crosses the ischioanal fossa, traverses the EAS to reach the submucosa of the anal canal and ascends in that plane. Its main significance is to supply the sphincter complex[31]. The venous drainage of the rectum is partly hepatic and partly systemic: through the inferior mesenteric vein to the portal vein or through middle and inferior hemorrhoidal veins that drain into the iliac vein then the inferior vena cava. Information on the middle rectal vein is sparse but its rate of appearance is similar to that of the artery and drains into the internal iliac vein[26].

The lymphatic drainage of the rectum follows the vascular supply. Drainage occurs to mesorectal (perirectal) lymph nodes (LN) then upward along the SHA toward the mesenteric LN along the IMA to lateral aortic and para-aortocaval LN[36,37]. The mesenteric LN stations include central intermediate LN (from origin of last sigmoid artery to the origin of the left colic artery) and central LN (from the left colic artery to origin of IMA). Drainage into paracolic LN is unusual. The lower rectum however has a cloacal origin and its lymphatic channels are part of the pedicles draining to lateral LN[38]. From the middle and lower rectum lymphatic drainage is mainly up wards along SHA and lateral to pelvic LN; downward spread is uncommon. Lateral drainage occurs to intermediate lateral LN (LN along the MHA outside fascia propria) and lateral main LN (along IIA and obturator artery) to para-aortic LN[36]. The number of LN found in the mesorectum ranges from 14-28 depending on the method of preparation of specimens[39,40]. The majority of the mesorectal LN are located posteriorly with few on each side. There are relatively few LN in the mesorectum of the lower rectum.

Clinical relevance

At presentation, about 70%-80% of rectal cancers are advanced either due to direct extension or lymphatic invasion. The mesorectum and outermost perirectal fascia act as barrier to the spread of the cancer and constitute the surgical "circumferential margin". Rectal cancer can spread outside the rectal wall in a continuous fashion or as discontinuous tumor extensions or deposits into the mesorectum up to 5 cm distal to the tumor margin[30,41-46]. Discrete nodules found in the extramural adipose tissue may represent LN replaced by tumor. In the absence of residual nodal tissue, nodules > 3 mm are classified as pN disease and ⩽ 3 mm are classified in the pT3 category as discontinuous extramural tumor[47]. Involvement of circumferential margin by tumor is the main cause of local recurrence after rectal cancer surgery[46,48]. Circumferential margin is the nonperitonealized surface of the rectal specimen created by mesorectal dissection at surgery. Circumferential margin is considered positive if the distance between the deepest extent of the tumor and closest surgical clearance around the tumor, *i.e.*, circumferential resection margin (CRM), is 0 to 1 mm. CRM is an independent predictor of outcome in patients with rectal cancer[49-51]. When CRM is < 1 mm, local recurrence rate is 22% and when > 1 mm, the rate drops to 5%. Furthermore, CRM < 1mm is predictive of an increased risk of distant metastases (37% *vs* 15% for those with CRM > 1 mm) and shorter survival (70% *vs* 90% at 2 years for those with CRM > 1 mm). However, other investigators have considered 2 mm as the cutoff point. Nagtegaal *et al*[52] reported that the local recurrence was 16% for CRM < 2 mm *vs* 6% for patients with radial margins > 2 mm. Although the ideal CRM has not been universally accepted, resection with as wide of a CRM margin as possible must be accomplished. Circumferential margin for distal tumors is problematic since the mesorectum encases the rectum as a thick cushion mainly posteriorly and laterally proximally and inferiorly it thins out and tapers down to the anorectal junction making it impossible to obtain a 2 cm cuff of marginal tissue circumferentially. Lymph node involvement is the most important prognostic factor and a major determining factor whether a patient is candidate for adjuvant therapy. The overall survival is determined by number of LN involved. Violation of the perirectal fascia and transmesorectal dissection is associated with high local recurrence rate[24]. Local recurrence after rectal cancer surgery is associated with incomplete excision of circumferential margin, presence of isolated deposits in the mesorectum and tumor in regional LN and incomplete LN clearance[43,53,54]. To eradicate the primary rectal tumor and control regional disease, the rectum, first area of LN drainage (mesorectal LN) and surrounding tissue must be completely excised while maintaining an intact fascial envelope around the rectum and protecting and preserving surrounding structures, including the ureters, gonado iliac vessels, sacral venous plexus and pelvic autonomic nerves. To achieve such a radical resection, thorough knowledge of the pelvic structures and fascial planes is paramount.

Total mesorectal excision (TME), originally described by Abel[55] in 1931 and later adopted by other surgeon, implies removal of the entire mesorectum including portion distal to the tumor within its enveloping fascia as an intact unit[27,30,45,53,56,57]. TME is performed in conjunction with low anterior resection (LAR), abdominoperineal resection (APR), extralevator APR (ELAPR), and extraregional dissection (extended lymphadenectomy; lateral clearance). For mid- to low-rectal cancer, LAR with TME has been demonstrated to minimize locoregional recurrences[30,56-61]. For upper rectal cancer, or tumors > 10 cm from the anal verge, where a distal margin of 5 cm can be achieved, tumor specific mesorectal excision (TSMRE), *i.e.*, dividing the rectum and the mesorectum at the same level, is sufficient and is associated with results similar to that achieved with TME[53,62-64]. With, APR, the operative plane follows the mesorectum to the muscular tube of the rectal wall stopping at the puborectalis sling. The anus is removed by perineal approach and dissection is performed outside the edge of the EAS and leaving the ischioanal fat. With ELAPR, abdominal dissection stops at the rectosacral ligament and the anus, coccyx and most of the levator muscle are removed by perineal approach[19]. Lateral LN dissection may be performed with TME as part of an extraregional dissection (lateral clearance) for lower rectal cancer but the reported outcome is no different than that with TME[40,57,65]. Whether TME or TSMRE is performed, the technique of the excision is key: precise, sharp dissection is performed under vision outside the fascia propria of the rectum in the plane between the fascia propria and parietal pelvic fascia, *i.e.*, extrafascial dissection so as to remove the rectum with the enveloping fascia, as an intact package, without violating the fascial envelop of the rectum[16,27,30,45,58-60]. Sharp dissection facilitates identification and preservation of the autonomic nerves, allows adequate hemostasis and avoids tearing of the fascial envelope around the mesorectum. The inferior mesenteric vessels are divided and retracted with the rectosigmoid junction anteriorly, and extrafascial dissection is commenced.

Identification and preservation of the hypogastric nerves is discussed later. Dissection is performed between the fascia propria of the rectum and the presacral fascia posteriorly in the retrorectal space that contains loose areolar tissue and is devoid of vessels and nerves and pelvic wall laterally. Sharp dissection is performed under vision down to the rectosacral ligament posteriorly and lateral rectal ligaments laterally. The rectosacral ligament is divided so as to gain access and mobilize the last 2-3 cm of the rectum and the anorectal junction[21]. However with ELAPR, dissection stops at the rectosacral ligament. The mesorectal fascia is not detached from the parietal pelvic fascia and the levator muscle is not separated

from the sacrococcygeal junction[19]. The sacrococcygeal junction is disconnected through the perineal phase to detach the coccyx that is the insertion of the midline raphe of the levator muscle. The parietal pelvic fascia is divided in the midline through the disconnected sacrococcygeal junction and the levator is divided laterally at both sides[19]. The anterior plane of dissection to separate the rectum from the prostate gland and vagina is controversial and is discussed later. However, dissection is performed inside the pelvic autonomic nerves down to the top of the anorectal junction where the rectum has little mesorectal fat and appears as a bare tube[25,31,32]. Laterally the lateral rectal ligaments are divided (detailed discussion to follow). Damage to the accessory branches rather than the main of the MHA may occur MHA during division of the lateral ligaments. The point of insertion of the MHA into the rectum is 5-6 cm from the anus. Damage to the main MHA occurs during dissection of the rectum anteriorly and anterolaterally on the pelvic floor, when it is being dissected off the seminal vesicle and prostate gland or vagina (vide infra). With extrafascial mesorectal excision, regional LN's (mesorectal LN) are removed. In surgical terms, the lymphatic spread of cancer occurs to perirectal (mesorectal LN) and upwards to intermediate central and central LN along the SHA and IMA. Down ward spread is uncommon. Lateral spread to lateral pelvic LN is more clinically important in tumors with lower margin below 5 cm from the dendate line and the incidence becomes significantly higher with lower margin below 3 cm above the dendate line[14,36,40]. Superior LN metastasis occurs in more than 30%-40% of rectal cancer patients and has great clinical significance[66]. Lateral spread from the lower rectum to the iliac LN occurs in about 15% of cases[14]. Lateral spread occurs to LN's along the MHA that lie outside fascia propria. With extended resection, *i.e.*, mesorectal excision with extraregional lymphadenectomy, lateral pelvic and or lumboaortic LN are removed. The number of LN removed with extrafascial mesorectal excision depends on level of the tumor. Canessa *et al*[39] in a study in formalin-fixed cadavers noted that the mean number of LN was 8.4 per specimen. The LN ranged in size from 2 to 10 mm. Most of the LN's (71.4%) were found around the branches of the SHA proximal to the peritoneal reflection and 28.6% were found distal to the peritoneal reflection. Topor *et al*[67] using LN clearing solution identified 25 LN per patient (average 14/mesorectum and about 5 for each pelvic side wall). The majority of LN's (> 80%) were small (≤ 3 mm) and majority (56%) located posteriorly and most (92%) located within the mesentery of the proximal two thirds of the posterior mesorectum. The lower third of the rectum contained the fewest nodes (8% of LN) and most of LN's on the sidewall were located in the area of the middle rectum. It is shown that 12-15 LN must be examined to accurately determine node negativity and any less limits the predictive value of the pathologic examination[68,69]. The role of extended resections is controversial since randomized studies on survival benefits from the procedure are still missing. Opponents of lateral pelvic lymphadenectomy question the benefit of the procedure since only small percentage of patients have lateral LN involvement. The operative time with extended resections is prolonged and morbidity is high. Furthermore, their presence is indicative of systemic disease and hence patient's prognosis is poor. In addition some studies have shown lateral pelvic lymphadenectomy is not necessary in terms of curability for patients with advanced lower rectal cancer who undergo preoperative radiotherapy[70]. Several other studies reported the outcome with TME to be no different from the data on extended lymphadenectomy. Hence many surgeons in the Western World, Europe, to some extent in Japan favored the mesorectal excision only. The number of regional LN removed varies with location of the tumor and surgical technique.

LATERAL RECTAL LIGAMENTS

Considerable anatomical, surgical and physiological importance has been attached to the lateral ligaments of the rectum. Anatomists consider the ligaments as fascial bridge that act as a pathway for nerve fibers, small vessels and lymphatics from and to the rectum[28,50]. Surgeons recognize the ligaments as extraperitoneal thick bundle of dense connective tissue that provide pathway to lymphatic channels and contribute to the support of the rectum and in which the MHA and plexuses are embedded[71,72]. Proper handling of the ligaments during surgery has an important bearing on colonic, anorectal, sexual and urinary function as well as the prevention of local recurrence of the cancer[56,61,73-75]. To gain access to the depths of the lateral pelvis, full mobilization of the mid-lower rectum requires identification of the lateral rectal ligaments that are then clamped, divided and ligated to avoid intra- and post-operative hemorrhage since the MHA are large and do not respond to electro cautery[61]. Despite this clear-cut description and straightforward handling of the ligaments, there are many variations and contradictory accounts reported in the literature as to the nature, anatomy, and contents of the lateral rectal ligaments.

Surgical anatomy

Thomas Jonnesco[29] (1901) was the first to describe the lateral rectal ligaments as a continuation of the parietal fascia predominantly surrounding the origin of MHA from the IIA. Miles[76] (1910) in describing his technique with the APR stated that the dissection is carried downward on either side of the rectum until "the lateral ligaments can be realized as firm vertical bands of fascia requiring division with scissors". Goligher *et al*[61] (1984) described the ligaments, as seen from above, as having a triangular shape with the base on the pelvic sidewall and the apex joining the side of the rectum. Hojo[77] (1986) considered the ligaments as

rectal structures that should be removed completely. Heald in original and subsequent articles (1980s)[30,45] and Reynolds *et al*[78] did not mention the lateral ligaments in their description of TME. Enker[75] (1992) recognized the ligament as an important landmark during autonomic nerve sparing sidewall dissection for rectal cancer. Takahashi *et al*[14] described the ligament as a bundle of dense connective tissue in the pararectal space with variable thickness and length that extends from the peripheral part of the IIA to the sidewall of the midrectum between the peritoneum and levator muscle. The hypogastric nerve fibers reach the center of the ligament where they unite with the PSN as they emerge from the sacral roots and form the inferior hypogastric nerve plexus inside the ligament[14]. Thus the ligament is divided into a lateral part that contains the MHA and inferior vesicle arteries and the medial part that holds nerve fibers to the rectum together with branches of MHA. In addition to branches of IIA and autonomic nerves, the lateral ligament provides a route for lymph vessels that penetrate the inferior hypogastric plexus and reach LN around the origin of the MHA.

Jones *et al*[34] in a study performed on cadavers embalmed in formalin found very insubstantial connective tissue strands and at times no definite connective tissue structure crossing from the pelvic sidewall to the rectum. The strands of fibrous tissue were inconsistent in direction, variable in height above the pelvic floor and often absent all together or present unilaterally. The MHA was present in 50% of pelves mostly as a unilateral structure, was closer to the pelvic floor and crossed the mesorectum independent of any structure. The branching PSN arose posterior to the origin of the MHA, ran in an anteromedial direction and reached the rectum at a similar height above the pelvic floor as the MHA. Boxall *et al*[31] described similar findings during anterior resections and found only accessory branches of the MHA crossing to the rectum in condensations of fascia in 25% of cases. Nano *et al*[33] in a study on fresh cadavers and embalmed pelves viewed the lateral ligaments as extensions of the lateral aspect of the mesorectum as approximately trapezoid structures with their apex towards the rectum. The ligaments ran caudally and distally and anchored to the endopelvic fascia. The ligaments contained fatty tissue in communication with mesorectal fat but did not contain any significant vascular structures. When present, in some cases unilaterally, the MHA crossed together with the nervi recti that arose from the inferior hypogastric plexus transverse almost perpendicular to the inferior aspect of the ligament at its distal end before entering the anteromedial aspect of the rectal wall. The urogenital bundle ran just above the lateral ligament at its insertion of the endopelvic fascia. Sato *et al*[26] visualized the ligaments in human as composed of three components, the MHA, middle rectal vein and the pelvic plexus. The most constant component was the PSN as the middle rectal vessels were often absent, identified in 22% of cases, and when present occurred unilaterally. When present the artery was long and tortuous and pierced the pelvic plexus. The MHA divided the ligament into medial and lateral segments. The artery entered the rectum mid-way between the superior and inferior branches of the pelvic plexus. The PSN arose somewhere posterior and inferior to the MHA. The lateral segment consists of two sheaths one surrounding the MHA and one around the PSN. The medial segment share a common sheath with the nerves and follow the same course as that of the rectal branches of the pelvic plexus. Pak-art *et al*[35] during sharp dissection on "soft cadavers" (cadavers freshly embalmed with CU-formula I solution, a preservative that renders muscles soft) recognized the lateral ligaments as white, opaque bands of connective tissue distinct from surrounding areolar tissue traversing the space between the posterolateral aspect of the rectum and mesorectum and the lateral aspect of the anterior surface of the third and fourth sacral vertebrae. These ligaments were closer to the coccyx than the promontory of the sacrum. Components of the ligaments were loose connective tissue containing multiple small nerves. Small arterioles and venules were present in the ligament in 11% of cases. Muntean[22] described the rectal stalks as the paraproctium that arise from the pelvic fascia and run medially and dorsally to reach the anterolateral wall of the rectal wall at 10 and 2 o'clock. The paraproctium houses the rectal nerves and middle rectal vessels when present.

Clinical relevance

The lateral rectal ligaments vary from insubstantial connective tissue strands to no definite connective tissue structure crossing from the pelvic sidewall to the rectum. The incidence of the vessels occupying the ligament varies from 22% to 100% depending on the caliber of the vessel present and exact relationship of the vessels to the ligament. The main MHA does not traverse the lateral ligament but rather send minor branches through them, unilateral or bilateral in only 25% of cases. Hence the ligaments can be divided with diathermy. The nervi erigentes lie in and under the endopelvic fascia and are close to the lateral margin of the ligament and together with the MHA do not run below them. The ligaments contain mesorectal fat and must be divided close to the pelvic wall to ensure optimal oncologic clearance. Leaving behind remnants of the ligaments implies inadequate adequate lateral clearance of the mesorectum[45]. Traction on the rectum may tent the endopelvic fascia with its enclosed nerves and puts the nerve at jeopardy during division of the ligament[22].

DENONVILLIERS' FASCIA

Separating the rectum from the anterior urogenital structures is a layer of tissue that is an important anatomical structure to the colorectal and urology surgeons

for oncologic and functional reasons, particularly in males. Denonvilliers[79] was the first to describe in 1836 the "prostatoperitoneal membranous layer" as a thin layer of tissue that separates the rectum from the urinary bladder, seminal vesicles and prostate gland in men. A similar structure consisting of essentially the same tissues was found in female pelves separating the rectum from the vagina often referred to as the "rectovaginal septum"[80]. Denonvilliers' fascia and the rectovaginal septum are also referred to as the "rectogenital septum". There is controversy as to origin, morphology, function and anatomical relationship to the fascia propria and urogenital structures and whether it can be identified during surgery and the precise plan of anterior rectal dissection for rectal cancer.

Surgical anatomy

Earlier studies have suggested that the septum is formed either as a result of incomplete partition between the rectum and urogenital organs or represents peritoneal fusion or condensation of loose areolar tissue after peritoneal fusion[80-82]. Aigner *et al*[83] on the other hand noted that local condensation of collagenous fibers is present between the rectum and urogenital organs from the beginning of fetal development and subsequent increase in dense collagen fibers and longitudinal smooth muscle cells produced the anatomical partition.

Kourambas *et al*[20] found in autopsies of adult males that Denonvilliers' fascia was easily seen as a sheet of fibrous tissue lying between the prostate and the rectum that had no defined layers or lateral edges. The fascia widened laterally and became continuous with the perirectal fascia posteriorly and the lateral pelvic fascia between the levator ani and prostate anteriorly. Stelzner *et al*[16] noted in human cadaver pelvises thin connective tissue continuations spread out medially from the parietal pelvic fascia to interweave with lateral extensions of the Denonvilliers' fascia that separates the rectum from the vagina and prostate capsule. The fascia splits into a number of laminae laterally[16,19-21]. Prominent nerves are seen intermingled with the lateral aspects of Denonvilliers' fascia and its fascial continuations and extended medially almost to the midline. Others identified Denonvilliers' fascia as it ran almost vertically between the peritoneal reflection of the rectovesical pouch and the pelvic floor anterior and separate from fascia propria of the extraperitoneal rectum[18,27,84]. The septum forms an anatomical incomplete partition between the middle and posterior compartments in the female and the anterior and posterior compartments in the male that is completed by the perineal body distally[83]. Immediately anterior to the lateral borders of the fascia, the parasympathetic cavernous nerves run to supply the corpora and govern erectile function and are in jeopardy during deep anterior dissection of the rectum and are jeopardy[85].

Histologically, the rectogenital septum is predominantly made of connective tissue and contains smooth muscle fibers and sensory neurons[18,20,27,79,80,83]. The connective tissue consists mainly of dense collagenous fibers and few course elastic fibers derived from mesenchymal condensation[27,80,83]. The origin of the smooth muscle bundles may be traced to the external longitudinal muscle sheath of the ventral wall of the rectum at the level of the middle transverse fold of the rectum (Kohlrausch's valve) where the muscle layer appears thicker[83]. Similar muscle fibers are also noted within the anal sphincter musculature[83]. The smooth muscle fibers in the ventral rectal wall give origin to the longitudinal muscle of the anal canal and also bend caudally to traverse the rectogenital septum terminating in the perineal body that is a dense connective tissue that separates the urogenital hiatus from the anal hiatus. The longitudinal smooth muscle fibers are accompanied by small nerve bundles attached to the connective tissue of the perineal body. Neurovascular bundles coming from the autonomic inferior hypogastic plexus intermingle with the lateral margin of the septum and cross the midline between the septum and the rectum[83].

The precise function of the rectogenital septum is not clear but there is evidence to suggest an important role in urinary and fecal continence. In one study, intrinsic innervation was confirmed by the presence of parasympathetic nerves innervating the septum and sensory neurons present within the septum was demonstrated[83]. Neurovascular bundles coming from the autonomic inferior hypogastric plexus intermingled with the lateral margin of the septum and crossed the midline between the septum and the rectum. The rectogenital septum and its smooth muscle component share the same innervation as the longitudinal muscle layer of the rectum. The longitudinal muscle fibers in the septum terminate in the perineal body and act as anchors and when the muscle contracts it results foreshortening and opening of the anal canal[83].

Clinical relevance

To mobilize the midrectum, anterior dissection is performed to separate the anterior wall of the rectum from the urogenital structures. From the surgical point, there is controversy as to the appearance of the septum and whether it can be identified during surgery and plane of dissection during proctectomy.

Many surgeons believe the fascia is more closely applied to the prostate gland and seminal vesicles than the rectum[28,86]. Others describe the fascia as more closely adherent to the rectum than the prostate[87]. The operative appearance of the fascia varies considerably from a fragile translucent layer to a tough leathery dense membrane but overall it is more obvious and substantial than fascia propria which is a thin membrane enveloping the mesorectum[28,87]. It is often more prominent in the young and becomes less prominent with increasing age and women and becomes more prominent after preoperative radiotherapy or if there is transmural rectal inflammation as in Crohn's disease[37,65]. Heald *et al*[30] noted the fascia on the anterior surface of

the mesorectum with a distinct plane separating this shiny fascia and the seminal vesicles. Thus during TME dissection takes the surgeon anterior to the fascia and thus resecting the fascia. Nano *et al*[88] suggested that the fascia "represented a plane of cleavage both with the rectum and between the two leaves that made it up" and that "the anterior leaf of the fascia is closely applied to the seminal vesicles." They believed dissection splits the fascia into two. Northover[89] and Bisset *et al*[27] on the other hand described dissection anterior to the fascia cranially then breaching it distally by dividing it transversely 1 cm below the base of the prostate in the male and opposite the vault of the vagina in the female to dissect posterior to it caudally. Others have maintained that excision of the fascia depends on location of the tumor in the rectum[59,64,84]. Lindsey *et al*[84] found Denonvilliers' fascia is left on the prostate and seminal vesicles during the usual anterior dissection in TME. For anterior and circumferential tumors in which the anterior margin is threatened, it is often taken with the specimen to gain maximal margin control[18]. In these cases the dissection is considered extramesorectal resulting in excision of the fascia[18,84]. With cancers sparing the anterior rectum, extramesorectal excision is not performed and in approximately half of anterior cancers dissection is extramesorectal and Denonvilliers' fascia is excised[18]. The risk of impotence is higher when tumors involve the anterior quadrant of the rectum because of the relationship of the cavernous nerves to Denonvilliers' fascia. In cases where the anterior circumferential margin is not threatened resection that does not jeopardize erectile dysfunction must be employed. To these cases the caudal portion of the ventral rectal wall including the septum must be left undissected[83]. Staying anterior to the septum behind the bladder and then posterior to it more caudally will prevent injury to the cavernous nerves and in consequence prevent erectile dysfunction[28,86]. Hence, in the male the peritoneum on the seminal vesicles is incised and dissection is carried anterior to Denonvilliers' fascia to the base of the prostate gland. In the female the peritoneum is incised in the pouch of Douglas. If the layers of the fascia are defined, the fascia propria and Denonvilliers' equivalent are excised with the specimen and if not defined stay close to posterior vagina. Dissection plane may be kept close to the rectum leaving the facia on the back of the vagina or prostate gland or between fascia propria and part of or all layers of Denonvilliers' fascia and equivalent fascia in the female[27,86].

The parasympathetic cavernous nerves run anteriorly, in close proximity to the lateral borders of the fascia to supply the corpora and govern erectile function[90]. These nerves are in jeopardy during deep anterior dissection of the rectum[85]. When disrupted during dissection of the distal aspect of ventral wall of the rectum during restorative proctectomy, the anchoring mechanism of the septum is interfered with and incontinence may result[90]. On the other hand when the caudal portion of the ventral rectal wall including the septum are left undisturbed during sphincter preserving procedure potency and continence are preserved[90].

PELVIC NERVES

Surgical anatomy

Parasympathetic innervation to the proximal colon down to the transverse colon runs *via* the vagus nerve and sympathetic innervation *via* postganglionic fibers from the paravertebral sympathetic chain. The left colon and rectum receive sympathetic innervation from the preaortic plexus and presaral nerves and retrograde parasympathetic innervation from neural efferents running through the lateral ligaments.

The sympathetic nerves arise from the thoracolumbar center T11-L2. Preganglionic fibers synapse in the pre-aortic plexus and postganglionic fibers follow the branches of the IMA and SHA to the left colon and upper rectum. The presacral nerves formed by fusion of aortic plexus and lumbar splanchnic nerves form the superior hypogastric plexus that gives rise to the right and left hypogastric nerves that innervate the lower rectum. The hypogastric nerves run between the presacral fascia and fascia propria and send nerves to the pelvic plexus (also termed inferior hypogastric plexus)[65]. The retroperitoneal fascia covers the lumbar sympathetic nerves and superior hypogastric plexus and the plexus is situated directly in the visceral fascia above the bifurcation of the aorta[65]. The hypogastric nerves separate from the plexus and descend caudad and laterally passing for a short distance through the visceral endopelvic fascia. The right and left hypogastric nerves run distally about 1 cm lateral to the midline and 1-2 cm medial to the ureters[27]. Thereafter the hypogastric nerve fibers are situated close to the visceral endopelvic fascia[14].

The parasympathetic nerves are formed largely by visceral efferent preganglionic fibers that arise from sacral nerves (mainly S3-S4, at times S2) and contain sensory nerves (PSN)[26,71]. The PSN are identified as two bundles on either side that emerge from the sacral roots, travel over the piriformis muscle covered by the endopelvic fascia[26,65]. The largest branch is S3 that runs caudal to the middle rectal artery and vein. The PSN pass laterally, forward and upwards and join the parietal pelvic fascia and the pelvic plexus within it very close to the anterolateral aspect of the lower rectum and the upper lateral wall of the vagina or posterolateral aspect of the prostate[16,65]. The inferior pelvic plexus is a complex network of sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, located between the internal iliac vessels and the rectum on the pelvic sidewall amid the parietal pelvic fascia well outside the fascia propria of the rectum and is divides the MHA into a lateral and medial segments[16,26-28,91]. It is the center of autonomic innervation of the pelvic visceral. Branches from the inferior pelvic plexus diverge in fanlike pattern and innervate the urinary bladder, distal ureters, seminal

vesicles, prostate, membranous urethra, corpora cavernosa, uterus and vagina, rectum and the perineal body[16,26,65,71]. The nerve to the rectum diverge directly from the plexus into the rectal wall (T-junctions) and the remaining nervous network form the neurovascular bundles[16]. The nerves to the rectum arise from the pelvic plexus as a 1 cm long band course towards the rectum accompanied by small vessels along fascial fibers (lateral ligaments) and reach the rectal wall 6 cm above the anus or similar height above pelvic floor as the MHA[25,34].

Clinical relevance

Damage to the pelvic nerves results in sexual and urinary dysfunction[92]. In conventional surgery for rectal cancer as well as TME as initially described and extraregional dissection (lateral clearance) performed by the Japanese in the 1970's and 1980's, the autonomic nerves are sacrificed to achieve radical surgery[30,83,92]. In the mid 80's and thereafter, autonomic nerve preservation (ANP) was adopted by the Japanese and European surgeons and applied by the Western surgeons to preserve urologic and sexual function while maintaining oncological principles[14,27,58,91-93]. Surgical procedures for treatment of rectal cancer have changed to TME, and TME and extraregional dissection (lateral clearance) with ANP. ANP may be total where major components of the pelvic nerves are identified and preserved or partial where one or more component is sacrificed unilaterally or bilaterally[65].

During TME, the superior hypogastric plexus and nerves, PSN and the pelvic plexus are encountered and adequate mobilization of the mesorectum can be achieved while preserving these nerves. The superior hypogastric plexus can be identified on the front of the aorta at the level of the aortic bifurcation[94]. The right and left hypogastric nerves are identified about 1 cm lateral to the midline and 1-2 cm medial to the ureters[27]. Thereafter the hypogastric nerve fibers are situated close to the visceral endopelvic fascia. Extrafascial dissection is performed along a plane medial to the hypogastric nerves that are followed laterally and caudally[27]. The ureters invested in the urogenital fascia pass over the iliac vessels normally at the bifurcation of the iliac vessels then run laterally always lateral to the hypogastric nerves on the pelvic wall under the peritoneum of the pararectal fossa[22,23]. In females, the ureter crosses dorsal to the ovary and underneath the broad ligament within 2 cm of the uterine vessels. In males, the vas deferens crosses ventral to the ureter as it courses from the midline prostate to join the gonadal vessels laterally near the internal inguinal ring. The lateral rectal ligaments are divided sharply and in the process the nerves to the rectum arising from the pelvic plexus (T-junction) are sharply transected thus separating the mesorectum from the pelvic autonomic nerves undamaged on the lateral pelvic wall. The inferior hypogastric plexus and pelvic nerves lie on the pelvic sidewalls amid the parietal pelvic fascia well outside the fascia propria of the rectum[27,28,91].

Preservation of the urinary bladder nerves requires identification of the vesicorectal interspace[65]. The vesicorectal interspace emerges when the anterior rectal wall is mobilized. Branch to the urinary sphincter is found in a groove between the rectum and levator muscle beneath the levator fascia. From its origin in the inferior hypogastric plexus the pelvic nerve to the urinary bladder sphincter courses in a groove inferomedial to the rectum. At the level of prostatic apex it courses around the rectum en route to the urinary sphincter and there it susceptible to injury when the levator muscles are divided during APR. As the plans between the rectum and prostate is developed, if Denonvilliers' fascia is violated the continence nerve near the apex of the prostate can be injured.

CONCLUSION

Extrafascial dissection describes removal of the rectum, regional LN and mesorectum as a package with an intact envelope while protecting and preserving surrounding structures.

Sharp dissection is performed under vision in the plane between fascia propria of the rectum and parietal pelvic fascia posteriorly and pelvic wall laterally. The superior hypogastric plexus is identified on the front of the aorta at the level of the aortic bifurcation. The right and left hypogastric nerves are identified about 1 cm lateral to the midline and 1-2 cm medial to the ureters. Thereafter the hypogastric nerve fibers are situated close to the visceral endopelvic fascia. The ureters pass over the iliac vessels normally at the bifurcation of the iliac vessels then run laterally always lateral to the hypogastric nerves on the pelvic wall under the peritoneum of the pararectal fossa. In females, the ureter crosses dorsal to the ovary and underneath the broad ligament within 2 cm of the uterine vessels. In males, the vas deferens crosses ventral to the ureter as it courses from the midline prostate to join the gonadal vessels laterally near the internal inguinal ring. The recto-scaral ligament is divided to gain access and mobilize the last 2-3 cm of the rectum and the anorectal junction when an APR is performed or not divided when ELAPR is performed. The lateral rectal ligaments are divided close to the pelvic wall with diathermy close to the pelvic wall since the main MHA does not traverse the lateral ligament but rather sends minor branches through them. The nerves to the rectum arising from the pelvic plexus (T-junction) along the ligament are sharply transected in the process thus separating the mesorectum from the pelvic autonomic nerves undamaged on the lateral pelvic wall. The inferior hypogastric plexus and pelvic nerves lie on the pelvic sidewalls amid the parietal pelvic fascia well outside the fascia propria of the rectum. Denonvilliers' fascia is left anteriorly on the seminal vesicles and prostate gland or dissection is carried anterior to the fascia cranially

then the fascia is breached distally by dividing it transversely 1 cm below the base of the prostate in the male and opposite the vault of the vagina in the female. However, for anterior and circumferential tumors in which the anterior margin is threatened, the fascia is taken (extrafascial dissection) with the specimen to gain maximal margin control. Extrafascial dissection is performed along a plane medial to the hypogastric nerves that are followed laterally and caudally.

Extrafascial dissection is a safe and oncologically sound radical resection associated with low locoregional recurrence and satisfactory urogenital and intestinal functional results. The treatment can be achieved only with thorough knowledge of the surgical anatomy and topographic relationship of the rectum to the surrounding structures and adherence to sound oncologic principles.

REFERENCES

1 **Abulafi AM**, Williams NS. Local recurrence of colorectal cancer: the problem, mechanisms, management and adjuvant therapy. *Br J Surg* 1994; **81**: 7-19 [PMID: 8313126 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800810106]

2 **Pilipshen SJ**, Heilweil M, Quan SH, Sternberg SS, Enker WE. Patterns of pelvic recurrence following definitive resections of rectal cancer. *Cancer* 1984; **53**: 1354-1362 [PMID: 6692324 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19840315)53:6<1354::AID-CNCR2820530623>3.0.CO;2-J]

3 **Miller AR**, Cantor SB, Peoples GE, Pearlstone DB, Skibber JM. Quality of life and cost effectiveness analysis of therapy for locally recurrent rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1695-1701; discussion 1701-1703 [PMID: 11156453 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236852]

4 **Stoss F**. Investigations of the muscular architecture of the rectosigmoid junction in humans. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1990; **33**: 378-383 [PMID: 2328626 DOI: 10.1007/BF02156262]

5 **Lowry AC**, Simmang CL, Boulos P, Farmer KC, Finan PJ, Hyman N, Killingback M, Lubowski DZ, Moore R, Penfold C, Savoca P, Stitz R, Tjandra JJ. Consensus statement of definitions for anorectal physiology and rectal cancer. *Colorectal Dis* 2001; **3**: 272-275 [PMID: 12790974 DOI: 10.1046/j.1463-1318.2001.00269.x]

6 **Nelson H**, Petrelli N, Carlin A, Couture J, Fleshman J, Guillem J, Miedema B, Ota D, Sargent D. Guidelines 2000 for colon and rectal cancer surgery. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2001; **93**: 583-596 [PMID: 11309435 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/93.8.583]

7 **Wolmark N**, Fisher B. An analysis of survival and treatment failure following abdominoperineal and sphincter-saving resection in Dukes' B and C rectal carcinoma. A report of the NSABP clinical trials. National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project. *Ann Surg* 1986; **204**: 480-489 [PMID: 3532972 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198610000-00016]

8 **Madsen PM**, Christiansen J. Distal intramural spread of rectal carcinomas. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1986; **29**: 279-282 [PMID: 3948622 DOI: 10.1007/BF02553041]

9 **Williams NS**, Dixon MF, Johnston D. Reappraisal of the 5 centimetre rule of distal excision for carcinoma of the rectum: a study of distal intramural spread and of patients' survival. *Br J Surg* 1983; **70**: 150-154 [PMID: 6831156 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800700305]

10 **Moore HG**, Riedel E, Minsky BD, Saltz L, Paty P, Wong D, Cohen AM, Guillem JG. Adequacy of 1-cm distal margin after restorative rectal cancer resection with sharp mesorectal excision and preoperative combined-modality therapy. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 80-85 [PMID: 12513965 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.04.010]

11 **Kraske P**. Zur exstirpation hoch sitzender mast-darmkrebse. *Verh Dtsch Ges Chir* 1885; **14**: 464

12 **Mason AY**. Transsphincteric approach to rectal lesions. *Surg Annu* 1977; **9**: 171-194 [PMID: 882892]

13 **PARKS AG**, PORTER NH, MELZAK J. Experimental study of the reflex mechanism controlling the muscle of the pelvic floor. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1968; **5**: 407-414 [PMID: 13941531 DOI: 10.1007/BF02616644]

14 **Takahashi T**, Ueno M, Azekura K, Ohta H. Lateral node dissection and total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: S59-S68 [PMID: 11052480 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237228]

15 **Ercoli A**, Delmas V, Fanfani F, Gadonneix P, Ceccaroni M, Fagotti A, Mancuso S, Scambia G. Terminologia Anatomica versus unofficial descriptions and nomenclature of the fasciae and ligaments of the female pelvis: a dissection-based comparative study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2005; **193**: 1565-1573 [PMID: 16202758 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2005.05.007]

16 **Stelzner S**, Holm T, Moran BJ, Heald RJ, Witzigmann H, Zorenkov D, Wedel T. Deep pelvic anatomy revisited for a description of crucial steps in extralevator abdominoperineal excision for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2011; **54**: 947-957 [PMID: 21730782 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31821c4bac]

17 **Kirkham AP**, Mundy AR, Heald RJ, Scholefield JH. Cadaveric dissection for the rectal surgeon. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2001; **83**: 89-95 [PMID: 11320936]

18 **García-Armengol J**, García-Botello S, Martinez-Soriano F, Roig JV, Lledó S. Review of the anatomic concepts in relation to the retrorectal space and endopelvic fascia: Waldeyer's fascia and the rectosacral fascia. *Colorectal Dis* 2008; **10**: 298-302 [PMID: 18257849 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2007.01472.x]

19 **Kinugasa Y**, Niikura H, Murakami G, Suzuki D, Saito S, Tatsumi H, Ishii M. Development of the human hypogastric nerve sheath with special reference to the topohistology between the nerve sheath and other prevertebral fascial structures. *Clin Anat* 2008; **21**: 558-567 [PMID: 18567017 DOI: 10.1002/ca.20654]

20 **Kourambas J**, Angus DG, Hosking P, Chou ST. A histological study of Denonvilliers' fascia and its relationship to the neurovascular bundle. *Br J Urol* 1998; **82**: 408-410 [PMID: 9772880 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-410X.1998.00749.x]

21 **Clausen N**, Wolloscheck T, Konerding MA. How to optimize autonomic nerve preservation in total mesorectal excision: clinical topography and morphology of pelvic nerves and fasciae. *World J Surg* 2008; **32**: 1768-1775 [PMID: 18521663 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-008-9625-6]

22 **Muntean V**. The surgical anatomy of the fasciae and the fascial spaces related to the rectum. *Surg Radiol Anat* 1999; **21**: 319-324 [PMID: 10635095 DOI: 10.1007/BF01631332]

23 **Redman JF**. Anatomy of the retroperitoneal connective tissue. *J Urol* 1983; **130**: 45-50 [PMID: 6864913]

24 **Sjödahl R**. The role of total mesorectal excision in rectal cancer surgery. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2001; **27**: 440-441 [PMID: 11504511 DOI: 10.1053/ejso.2000.1082]

25 **Roberts WH**, Taylor WH. The presacral component of the visceral pelvic fascia and its relation to the pelvic splanchnic innervation of the bladder. *Anat Rec* 1970; **166**: 207-212 [PMID: 5414691 DOI: 10.1002/ar.1091660209]

26 **Sato K**, Sato T. The vascular and neuronal composition of the lateral ligament of the rectum and the rectosacral fascia. *Surg Radiol Anat* 1991; **13**: 17-22 [PMID: 2053040 DOI: 10.1007/BF01623135]

27 **Bisset IP**, Chau KY, Hill GL. Extrafascial excision of the rectum: surgical anatomy of the fascia propria. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 903-910 [PMID: 10910234]

28 **Church JM**, Raudkivi PJ, Hill GL. The surgical anatomy of the rectum--a review with particular relevance to the hazards of rectal mobilisation. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1987; **2**: 158-166 [PMID: 3309101 DOI: 10.1007/BF01648000]

29 **Jonnesco T**. Appareil digestif. In: Poirier P, Charpy A, editors. Traité d'anatomie humaine. Volume IV, 2nd ed. Masson et Cie, Paris, 1901: 372-373

30 **Heald RJ**, Ryall RD. Recurrence and survival after total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer. *Lancet* 1986; **1**: 1479-1482 [PMID: 2425199 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(86)91510-2]

31 **Boxall TA**, Smart pj, Griffiths JD. The blood-supply of the distal

segment of the rectum in anterior resection. *Br J Surg* 1963; **50**: 399-404 [PMID: 14014659 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.18005022209]
32 **DiDio LJ**, Diaz-Franco C, Schemainda R, Bezerra AJ. Morphology of the middle rectal arteries. A study of 30 cadaveric dissections. *Surg Radiol Anat* 1986; **8**: 229-236 [PMID: 3107146 DOI: 10.1007/BF02425072]
33 **Nano M**, Dal Corso HM, Lanfranco G, Ferronato M, Hornung JP. Contribution to the surgical anatomy of the ligaments of the rectum. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1592-1597; discussion 1597-1598 [PMID: 11089599 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236746]
34 **Jones OM**, Smeulders N, Wiseman O, Miller R. Lateral ligaments of the rectum: an anatomical study. *Br J Surg* 1999; **86**: 487-489 [PMID: 10215819 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.1999.01080.x]
35 **Pak-art R**, Tansatit T, Mingmalairaks C, Pattana-arun J, Tansatit M, Vajrabukka T. The location and contents of the lateral ligaments of the rectum: a study in human soft cadavers. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1941-1944 [PMID: 16175322 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0156-z]
36 **Hida J**, Yasutomi M, Tokoro T, Kubo R. Examination of nodal metastases by a clearing method supports pelvic plexus preservation in rectal cancer surgery. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 510-514 [PMID: 10215053 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234178]
37 **Japanese Research Society for Cancer of the Colon and Rectum**. General rules for clinical and pathological studies on cancer of the colon, rectum and anus, 5th ed. Tokyo: Kanehara, 1994: 14-25
38 **Godlewski G**, Prudhomme M. Embryology and anatomy of the anorectum. Basis of surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; **80**: 319-343 [PMID: 10685155 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6109(05)70408-4]
39 **Canessa CE**, Badía F, Fierro S, Fiol V, Háyek G. Anatomic study of the lymph nodes of the mesorectum. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 1333-1336 [PMID: 11584211 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234794]
40 **Hida J**, Yasutomi M, Maruyama T, Fujimoto K, Uchida T, Okuno K. Lymph node metastases detected in the mesorectum distal to carcinoma of the rectum by the clearing method: justification of total mesorectal excision. *J Am Coll Surg* 1997; **184**: 584-588 [PMID: 9179114]
41 **Nagtegaal ID**, Marijnen CA, Kranenbarg EK, van de Velde CJ, van Krieken JH. Circumferential margin involvement is still an important predictor of local recurrence in rectal carcinoma: not one millimeter but two millimeters is the limit. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2002; **26**: 350-357 [PMID: 11859207 DOI: 10.1097/00000478-200203000-00009]
42 **Ono C**, Yoshinaga K, Enomoto M, Sugihara K. Discontinuous rectal cancer spread in the mesorectum and the optimal distal clearance margin in situ. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 744-749; discussion 742-743 [PMID: 12072624 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6290-1]
43 **Scott N**, Jackson P, al-Jaberi T, Dixon MF, Quirke P, Finan PJ. Total mesorectal excision and local recurrence: a study of tumour spread in the mesorectum distal to rectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 1995; **82**: 1031-1033 [PMID: 7648142 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800820808]
44 **Sauer I**, Bacon HE. Influence of lateral spread of cancer of the rectum on radicability of operation and prognosis. *Am J Surg* 1951; **81**: 111-120 [PMID: 14799702 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(51)90196-1]
45 **Heald RJ**, Husband EM, Ryall RD. The mesorectum in rectal cancer surgery--the clue to pelvic recurrence? *Br J Surg* 1982; **69**: 613-616 [PMID: 6751457 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800691019]
46 **Quirke P**, Durdey P, Dixon MF, Williams NS. Local recurrence of rectal adenocarcinoma due to inadequate surgical resection. Histopathological study of lateral tumour spread and surgical excision. *Lancet* 1986; **2**: 996-999 [PMID: 2430152 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(86)92612-7]
47 **Wittekind C**, Henson DE, Hutter RVP, Sobin LH. TNM Supplement. A Commentary on Uniform Use, 2nd ed. New York: Wiley-Liss, 2001
48 **Quirke P**. Limitations of existing systems of staging for rectal cancer: the forgotten margin. In: Rajagopalan NT, editor. Rectal Cacer Research. New York: Springer-Verlog, 2001: 63-81 [DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-60514-7_5]
49 **Adam IJ**, Mohamdee MO, Martin IG, Scott N, Finan PJ, Johnston D, Dixon MF, Quirke P. Role of circumferential margin involvement in the local recurrence of rectal cancer. *Lancet* 1994; **344**: 707-711 [PMID: 7915774 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(94)92206-3]
50 **Kotova EN**, Tugarinova VN. [Change in the content of cytochromes in the mitochondrial respiratory chain of rabbit liver in the state of precirrhosis]. *Patol Fiziol Eksp Ter* 2002; (**2**): 25-28 [PMID: 1187205 DOI: 10.1046/j.0007-1323.2001.02024.x]
51 **Nagtegaal ID**, van Krieken JH. The role of pathologists in the quality control of diagnosis and treatment of rectal cancer-an overview. *Eur J Cancer* 2002; **38**: 964-972 [PMID: 11978521 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-8049(02)00056-4]
52 **Nagtegaal ID**, Quirke P. What is the role for the circumferential margin in the modern treatment of rectal cancer? *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 303-312 [PMID: 18182672 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.12.7027]
53 **Faerden AE**, Naimy N, Wiik P, Reiertsen O, Weyessa S, Trønnes S, Andersen SN, Bakka A. Total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: difference in outcome for low and high rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 2224-2231 [PMID: 16228823 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0191-9]
54 **Lee SH**, Hernandez de Anda E, Finne CO, Madoff RD, Garcia-Aguilar J. The effect of circumferential tumor location in clinical outcomes of rectal cancer patients treated with total mesorectal excision. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 2249-2257 [PMID: 16400512 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0186-6]
55 **Abel AL**. The modern treatment of cancer of the rectum. Milwaukee Proc, 1931: 296-300
56 **MacFarlane JK**, Ryall RD, Heald RJ. Mesorectal excision for rectal cancer. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 457-460 [PMID: 8094488 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736-0140-6736(93)90207-W]
57 **Tocchi A**, Mazzoni G, Lepre L, Liotta G, Costa G, Agostini N, Miccini M, Scucchi L, Frati G, Tagliacozzo S. Total mesorectal excision and low rectal anastomosis for the treatment of rectal cancer and prevention of pelvic recurrences. *Arch Surg* 2001; **136**: 216-220 [PMID: 11177145 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.136.2.216]
58 **Bissett IP**, Hill GL. Extrafascial excision of the rectum for cancer: a technique for the avoidance of the complications of rectal mobilization. *Semin Surg Oncol* 2000; **18**: 207-215 [PMID: 10757886 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1098-2388(200004/05)18:3<207::AID-SSU4>3.0.CO;2-D]
59 **Zirngibl H**, Husemann B, Hermanek P. Intraoperative spillage of tumor cells in surgery for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1990; **33**: 610-614 [PMID: 2361432 DOI: 10.1007/BF02052218]
60 **McCall JL**, Cox MR, Wattchow DA. Analysis of local recurrence rates after surgery alone for rectal cancer. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1995; **10**: 126-132 [PMID: 7561427 DOI: 10.1007/BF00298532]
61 **Goligher JC**, Duthie HL. Surgical anatomy and physiology of the colon, rectum and anus. In: Goligher JE, editor. Surgery of the Anus, Rectum, and Colon, 5th ed. London: Balliere, 1984: 4-7
62 **Hainsworth PJ**, Egan MJ, Cunliffe WJ. Evaluation of a policy of total mesorectal excision for rectal and rectosigmoid cancers. *Br J Surg* 1997; **84**: 652-656 [PMID: 9171754 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.1997.02638.x]
63 **Leong AF**. Selective total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1237-1240 [PMID: 11005489 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237427]
64 **Killingback M**, Barron P, Dent OF. Local recurrence after curative resection of cancer of the rectum without total mesorectal excision. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 473-483; discussion 483-486 [PMID: 11330574 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234317]
65 **Morita T**, Murata A, Koyama M, Totsuka E, Sasaki M. Current status of autonomic nerve-preserving surgery for mid and lower rectal cancers: Japanese experience with lateral node dissection. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: S78-87; discussion S87-88 [PMID: 14530662 DOI: 10.1097/01.DCR.0000089111.95420.BD]
66 **Hojo K**, Koyama Y, Moriya Y. Lymphatic spread and its prognostic value in patients with rectal cancer. *Am J Surg* 1982; **144**: 350-354 [PMID: 7114377 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(82)90018-6]
67 **Topor B**, Acland R, Kolodko V, Galandiuk S. Mesorectal lymph nodes: their location and distribution within the mesorectum.

Dis Colon Rectum 2003; **46**: 779-785 [PMID: 12794580 DOI: 10.1097/01.DCR.0000069955.51592.56]

68 **Compton CC**, Fielding LP, Burgart LJ, Conley B, Cooper HS, Hamilton SR, Hammond ME, Henson DE, Hutter RV, Nagle RB, Nielsen ML, Sargent DJ, Taylor CR, Welton M, Willett C. Prognostic factors in colorectal cancer. College of American Pathologists Consensus Statement 1999. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2000; **124**: 979-994 [PMID: 10888773]

69 **Tepper JE**, O'Connell MJ, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis D, Compton C, Benson AB, Cummings B, Gunderson L, Macdonald JS, Mayer RJ. Impact of number of nodes retrieved on outcome in patients with rectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2001; **19**: 157-163 [PMID: 11134208]

70 **Nagawa H**, Muto T, Sunouchi K, Higuchi Y, Tsurita G, Watanabe T, Sawada T. Randomized, controlled trial of lateral node dissection vs. nerve-preserving resection in patients with rectal cancer after preoperative radiotherapy. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 1274-1280 [PMID: 11584199 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234784]

71 **Smith PH**, Ballantyne B. The neuroanatomical basis for denervation of the urinary bladder following major pelvic surgery. *Br J Surg* 1968; **55**: 929-933 [PMID: 5727156 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800551212]

72 **Gray DJ**. Rectum and anal canal. In: Gardner E, Gray DJ, O'Rahilly R, Henselmann C, editors. Anatomy: a regional study of human structure. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1969: 502-508

73 **Mollen RM**, Kuijpers JH, van Hoek F. Effects of rectal mobilization and lateral ligaments division on colonic and anorectal function. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1283-1287 [PMID: 11005498 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237437]

74 **Speakman CT**, Madden MV, Nicholls RJ, Kamm MA. Lateral ligament division during rectopexy causes constipation but prevents recurrence: results of a prospective randomized study. *Br J Surg* 1991; **78**: 1431-1433 [PMID: 1773316 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800781207]

75 **Enker WE**. Potency, cure, and local control in the operative treatment of rectal cancer. *Arch Surg* 1992; **127**: 1396-1401; discussion 1402 [PMID: 1365683 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1992.01420120030005]

76 **Miles WE**. The radical abdominoperineal operation for cancers of the rectum and of the pelvic colon. *Brit Med J* 1910; **2**: 941-943

77 **Hojo K**. Anastomotic recurrence after sphincter-saving resection for rectal cancer. Length of distal clearance of the bowel. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1986; **29**: 11-14 [PMID: 3940798 DOI: 10.1007/BF02555276]

78 **Reynolds JV**, Joyce WP, Dolan J, Sheahan K, Hyland JM. Pathological evidence in support of total mesorectal excision in the management of rectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 1996; **83**: 1112-1115 [PMID: 8869320]

79 **Denonvilliers CP**. Anatomie du perinee (1838). Paris: Bull Soc Anat 3rd Series, 1838: 105-106

80 **Ludwikowski B**, Hayward IO, Fritsch H. Rectovaginal fascia: An important structure in pelvic visceral surgery? About its development, structure, and function. *J Pediatr Surg* 2002; **37**: 634-638 [PMID: 11912525 DOI: 10.1053/jpsu.2002.31624]

81 **van Ophoven A**, Roth S. The anatomy and embryological origins of the fascia of Denonvilliers: a medico-historical debate. *J Urol* 1997; **157**: 3-9 [PMID: 8976203 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(01)65266-2]

82 **Stelzner F**. Die Chirurgische Anatomie der Genitalnerven des Mannes und ihre Schonung bei der Excision des Rectums. *Chirurg* 1989; **60**: 228-334

83 **Aigner F**, Zbar AP, Ludwikowski B, Kreczy A, Kovacs P, Fritsch H. The rectogenital septum: morphology, function, and clinical relevance. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 131-140 [PMID: 15043282 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-003-0031-8]

84 **Lindsey I**, Guy RJ, Warren BF, Mortensen NJ. Anatomy of Denonvilliers' fascia and pelvic nerves, impotence, and implications for the colorectal surgeon. *Br J Surg* 2000; **87**: 1288-1299 [PMID: 11044153 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.2000.01542.x]

85 **Lindsey I**, Mortensen NJ. Iatrogenic impotence and rectal dissection. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 1493-1494 [PMID: 12445056 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.2002.02282.x]

86 **Huland H**, Noldus J. An easy and safe approach to separating Denonvilliers' fascia from rectum during radical retropubic prostatectomy. *J Urol* 1999; **161**: 1533-1534 [PMID: 10210390 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)68946-X]

87 **Goligher JC**. Anterior resection. In: Goligher JC, editor. Operative Surgery of the Colon, Rectum and Anus, 3rd ed. London: Butterworths, 1980: 143-156

88 **Nano M**, Levi AC, Borghi F, Bellora P, Bogliatto F, Garbossa D, Bronda M, Lanfranco G, Moffa F, Dörfl J. Observations on surgical anatomy for rectal cancer surgery. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1998; **45**: 717-726 [PMID: 9684122 DOI: 10.1093/fampra/cmp051]

89 **Northover JM**. The dissection in anterior resection for rectal cancer. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1989; **4**: 134-138 [PMID: 2746134 DOI: 10.1007/BF01646875]

90 **Lindsey I**, George B, Kettlewell M, Mortensen N. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of sildenafil (Viagra) for erectile dysfunction after rectal excision for cancer and inflammatory bowel disease. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 727-732 [PMID: 12072621 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6287-9]

91 **Shirouzu K**, Ogata Y, Araki Y. Oncologic and functional results of total mesorectal excision and autonomic nerve-preserving operation for advanced lower rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 1442-1447 [PMID: 15486739 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0618-8]

92 **Cosimelli M**, Mannella E, Giannarelli D, Casaldi V, Wappner G, Cavaliere F, Consolo S, Appetecchia M, Cavaliere R. Nerve-sparing surgery in 302 resectable rectosigmoid cancer patients: genitourinary morbidity and 10-year survival. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1994; **37**: S42-S46 [PMID: 8313791 DOI: 10.1007/BF02048430]

93 **Masui H**, Ike H, Yamaguchi S, Oki S, Shimada H. Male sexual function after autonomic nerve-preserving operation for rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 1140-1145 [PMID: 8831531 DOI: 10.1007/BF02081416]

94 **Rutegård J**, Sandzén B, Stenling R, Wiig J, Heald RJ. Lateral rectal ligaments contain important nerves. *Br J Surg* 1997; **84**: 1544-1545 [PMID: 9393275 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800841114]

P- Reviewer: Agresta F, Meshikhes AWN, M'Koma A
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.41

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 41-57
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Caval reconstruction techniques in orthotopic liver transplantation

Eliza W Beal, Shaylyn C Bennett, Bryan A Whitson, Elmahdi A Elkhammas, Mitchell L Henry, Sylvester M Black

Eliza W Beal, Shaylyn C Bennett, Bryan A Whitson, Elmahdi A Elkhammas, Mitchell L Henry, Sylvester M Black, Department of Surgery, the Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, Columbus, OH 43210, United States

Bryan A Whitson, Division of Cardiothoracic Surgery, Department of Surgery, the Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, Columbus, OH 43210, United States

Elmahdi A Elkhammas, Mitchell L Henry, Sylvester M Black, Division of Transplantation Surgery, Department of Surgery, the Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, Columbus, OH 43210, United States

Author contributions: Beal EW involved in the drafting, editing and design of the manuscript; Black SM involved in the conception, design and revision of the manuscript; Bennett SC, Whitson BA, Elkhammas EA and Henry ML contributed equally to the conception, review and revision of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest: All authors declare that they have no commercial, personal, political, intellectual or religious interests in relation to the submitted work.

Correspondence to: Sylvester M Black, MD, PhD, Department of Surgery, the Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center, 395 W 12th Ave, Suite 150, Columbus, OH 43210-1267, United States. sylvester.black@osumc.edu

Telephone: +1-614-2933212
Fax: +1-614-2936720

Received: September 29, 2014
Peer-review started: September 29, 2014
First decision: January 8, 2015
Revised: January 28, 2015
Accepted: February 10, 2015
Article in press: February 12, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

There are several caval reconstruction techniques currently in use for orthotopic liver transplantation. These include caval replacement or the conventional technique, performed with or without venovenous bypass, piggyback technique with anastomosis with two or three hepatic veins with or without cavotomy and modifications of the piggyback technique including end-to-side and side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis. There are few randomized controlled trials comparing the use of these techniques and our knowledge of their comparability is based on a few multi- and many single-center retrospective and prospective reviews. Although there are advantages and disadvantages for each technique, it is advisable that the surgeon perform the technique with which they have the most the experience and at which they are the most skilled as excellent outcomes can be obtained with any of the caval reconstruction options discussed.

Key words: Caval replacement; Piggyback technique; Conventional liver transplant; Standard liver transplant; Venovenous bypass; Portocaval shunt

Core tip: There are multiple options available for caval reconstruction currently in use for orthotopic liver transplantation. Those options include caval replacement or the conventional technique, performed with or without venovenous bypass, piggyback technique with anastomosis with two or three hepatic veins with or without cavotomy and modifications of the piggyback technique including end-to-side and side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis. There is currently no consensus in regards to the best technique although

there are advantages and disadvantages for each. Excellent outcomes can be obtained with any of the described techniques and the surgeon's comfort and skill with the technique is likely the most important factor.

Beal EW, Bennett SC, Whitson BA, Elkhammas EA, Henry ML, Black SM. Caval reconstruction techniques in orthotopic liver transplantation. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 41-57 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/41.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.41

INTRODUCTION

Conventional liver transplantation includes total hepatectomy and resection of the recipient retrohepatic inferior vena cava (IVC) with interposition and anastomosis of the donor IVC as first described by Starzl *et al*[1] in 1963. In the conventional orthotopic liver transplantation (OLT) the recipient retrohepatic IVC is removed above the renal veins to the hepatic vein confluence at the diaphragm and replaced with the segment of donor retrohepatic IVC in an end-to-end fashion. The conventional technique reduces cardiac preload secondary to IVC clamping which can present hemodynamic challenges during the anhepatic phase of the operation. Venovenous bypass (VVB) was first utilized to increase cardiac preload and reduce venous and portal congestion thereby improving hemodynamic stability during the transplant procedure at the cost of increasing complexity.

The piggyback technique was first described by Calne *et al*[2] in 1968 and further developed by Tzakis *et al*[3]. The piggyback technique seeks to simplify the liver transplant by generally obviating the need for VVB by allowing venous return through the IVC. This technique involves full preservation of the recipient IVC with anastomosis of the donor IVC directly to the hepatic veins of the recipient[2,3]. The middle hepatic vein (MHV) and left hepatic vein (LHV) are frequently used as a common orifice for the anastomosis. It is also possible to use the MHV, LHV and right hepatic vein (RHV) or to use the MHV and RHV. Additionally some authors make further modification by adding a 1 to 3 centimeter cavotomy, in order to enlarge the anastomosis[4,5], or make a triangular cavotomy at the level of the RHV[6].

Belghiti *et al*[7,8] introduced a modified version of the piggyback technique in 1992, with a side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis (STSCCA) with partial clamping of the IVC. A temporary portocaval shunt (TPCS) was used during the procedure to preserve the portal venous flow thereby reducing intestinal congestion during the anhepatic phase[7,8]. Tzakis *et al*[9] also introduced the use of a TPCS in patients with intraoperative hemodynamic compromise.

Although these techniques have been compared in single-center prospective and retrospective studies there are only two randomized controlled trials comparing techniques and they have differing conclusions[10,11].

The issue of whether or not to use VVB with the conventional or piggyback technique or its' modifications or whether to use a TPCS are explored as a separate issue.

CONVENTIONAL OLT WITH VVB

OLT begins with a bilateral subcostal incision with or without a vertical midline extension. Left and right triangular ligaments are divided. If VVB is to be used, it is introduced at this point[12].

To establish VVB, catheters may be placed by percutaneous puncture of the femoral vein and internal jugular vein or alternatively by open exposure of the axillary vein and femoral vein. A catheter is placed in the portal vein after it is divided during the native hepatectomy[12]. Vascular clamps are placed on the infra- and suprahepatic vena cava and VVB is initiated[13]. Other authors describe cannulation of the left axillary vein and left iliac vein by way of the left greater saphenous vein[12].

The portal vein, infrahepatic and suprahepatic IVC are sequentially clamped. The recipient hepatectomy is completed. A running monofilament suture is used for completion of the suprahepatic and infrahepatic venous anastomosis. The portal vein, hepatic artery and common bile duct anastomosis are performed in the standard fashion as described elsewhere[12].

The conventional technique requires cross-clamping of the IVC and the portal vein during the anhepatic phase[14], and end-to-end interposition of the donor vena cava to the recipient vena cava[15].

THE PIGGYBACK TECHNIQUE

The piggyback technique is begun with mobilization of the native liver by division of the left and right triangular, coronary, and gastrohepatic ligaments. After dissection of the porta hepatis, the cystic duct, common hepatic duct, right hepatic artery and left hepatic arteries are ligated and divided. The portal vein is skeletonized with selective ligation and division of the anterior pancreatoduodenal vein[12].

The right lobe of the liver is reflected to the left exposing the retrohepatic IVC and the IVC ligament is divided. Several authors describe this division as the key to dissecting the retrohepatic vena cava[16]. The small hepatic veins draining the caudate lobe and right accessory vein(s) are ligated[12,14,16]. Some authors also describe the isolation and division of the RHV to prevent bleeding from the parenchymal side while mobilizing the liver[14,16], this vein is then oversewn[12]. The portal vein is clamped. The MHV and LHV are isolated and clamped[14,16]. In the piggyback technique the orifices of the LHV and MHV are joined into a common orifice[12,16]. Some authors also include

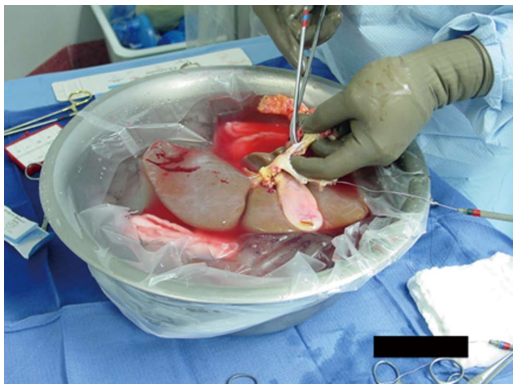


Figure 1 Liver back bench with clearing of tissue and flushing from donor inferior vena cava.

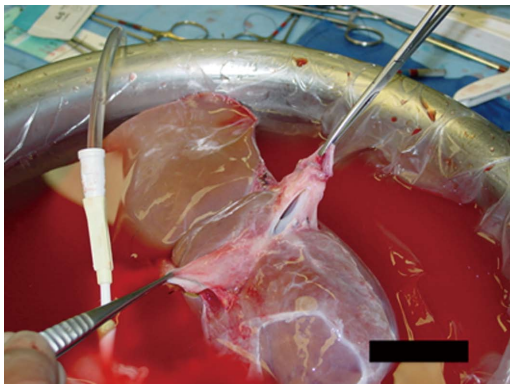


Figure 2 Longitudinal cavotomy is made in the donor inferior vena cava in preparation for the side to side caval anastomosis.

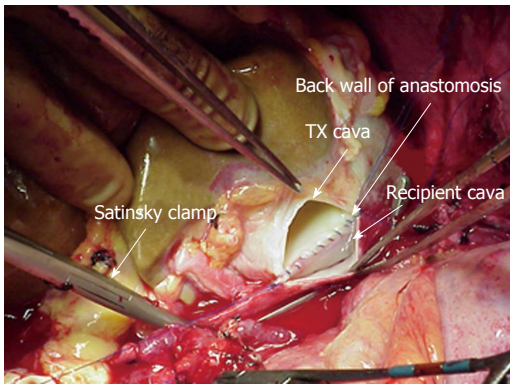


Figure 3 Side to side cavocaval anastomosis.

the RHV or an additional cavotomy of 1 to 3 cm[4,5]. An alternative approach is suggested by Gerber *et al*[6] who make a triangular cavotomy at the level of the RHV. If the donor and recipient are of similar weights and size the donor suprahepatic caval opening will fit the ostium created from the recipient hepatic veins. If not, it may be necessary to enlarge the anastomotic orifice[16]. Some authors suggest that in this case it may be necessary to cross-clamp the IVC. If this is poorly tolerated, VVB may be required[16].

Robles *et al*[17] report differing approach to the piggyback technique depending on whether they are completing the anastomosis with two or three suprahepatic veins. When they are using the MHV and LHV they dissect and suture the RHV, clamp the portal vein, complete the piggyback on the left until the common patch between the MHV and LHV is isolated and then transversely clamp the patch without occluding the retrohepatic IVC. When they use all three veins they dissect the retrohepatic vena cava on both sides, delaying portal venous clamping as long as possible and reaching the posterior face of the three veins without separating them. They then dissect the retrohepatic vena cava above the exit of the suprahepatic veins and free them from the diaphragm. They fit a transverse clamp. An end-to-end anastomosis is then performed between the two or three suprahepatic veins and the donor vena cava[17]. There are several detailed descriptions available in the literature of how to achieve a three-vein anastomosis in the piggyback technique. Tayar *et al*[18] recommend creating a common ostium from the three hepatic veins to provide a wide channel that is unlikely to obstruct or lead to symptoms of blocked outflow, positioning the anastomosis on the anterior and right aspect of the vena cava and shortening the graft suprahepatic IVC to avoid redundancy and kinking[18]. The portal vein, hepatic artery and biliary anastomosis are then completed in standard fashion.

STSCCA (PIGGYBACK VARIANT)

The donor hepatectomy is performed in the standard fashion. The upper cava cuff of the donor IVC is shortened flush to the hepatic veins. Both ends of the donor IVC are closed with running sutures, usually 4-0[16] or 5-0[19] polypropylene suture, or using a vascular stapler or EndoGIA stapler[20]. The IVC is flushed (Figure 1) to explore for and repair any leaks[20].

The porta hepatis is dissected and hepatic artery and common bile duct are transected. The portal vein is prepared and dissected. The hepatocaval ligament is dissected and RHV is oversewn or divided with an EndoGIA stapler. The MHV and LHV are then stapled. The recipient liver is removed[20].

A 3-4[15] or 6[16,20] centimeter long cavotomy is made on the posterior side of the donor IVC (Figure 2) encompassing the orifices of the major hepatic veins. This will allow future transjugular biopsy or transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunting placement if necessary. The donor liver is then implanted using one large anastomosis between the recipient IVC anteriorly and the posterior wall of the donor IVC (Figure 3). The anastomosis is performed from the left side using two running 4-0 polypropylene[15,16].

Akbulut *et al*[21] report an additional modification of this technique in which they use a linear stapler to complete this anastomosis. The upper and lower orifices of the donor IVC are closed on the back table

Table 1 Randomized controlled trial comparing conventional technique with venovenous bypass and piggyback technique

Variable	Conventional	Piggyback	*P*-value
n	34	33	
Age	46.5 (24-73)	48 (18-66)	0.831
Child-Pugh Score			0.931
A	5	5	
B	21	19	
C	8	9	
Anesthesia time (min) median (range)	795 (540-1115)	690 (510-1140)	0.162
Operative time (min) median (range)	647 (420-925)	600 (370-960)	0.270
Graft cold ischemia time (min) median (range)	536 (261-900)	497 (330-930)	0.205
Duration of mechanical ventilation (min) median (range)	712 (200-8070)	650 (0-26555)	0.429
Length of hospital stay (d) median (range)	15.5 (6-72)	17.0 (10-45)	0.846
Operative mortality (30 d)	0	1.3%	1.000
Red blood cells (units) median (range)	5.5 (0-34)	5.0 (0-35)	0.940
Fresh frozen plasma (units) median (range)	22.5 (0-84)	19.0 (0-82)	0.890
Platelet concentrate (units) median (range)	9.5 (0-40)	0.0 (0-30)	0.209
Aferesis platelet concentrate (units) median (range)	0.0 (0-3)	1.0 (1-10)	0.486
Crystalloid solution	1.5 (0-7.5)	1.5 (0-10)	0.985

Adapted from Isern *et al*[10], 2004.

with running 5-0 polypropylene suture. Three stay sutures are placed in the caudal parts of recipient and donor cava with 5-millimeter venotomies. An endoscopic linear stapler is placed upward through the orifice and fired. A second stapler is placed more cranially and also fired. This creates an 8-9 cm long cavocavostomy. This anastomosis was performed in 4 min. The insertion points are then closed with running 4-0 polypropylene suture[21]. The portal vein, hepatic artery and biliary anastomosis are then completed in standard fashion.

END-TO-SIDE CAVOCAVAL ANASTOMOSIS (PIGGYBACK VARIANT)

Polak *et al*[22] describe the end-to-side cavocaval anastomosis. First, recipient hepatectomy is performed in a standard manner. The hepatoduodenal ligament is dissected and the common bile duct is ligated and transected. After mobilization of the liver, the RHV is oversewn, or stapled. On the back table the caudal end of the donor IVC is shortened and closed over a silastic tube with a purse string suture around it. The opening of the suprahepatic IVC is extended by longitudinal midline incision on the posterior wall. Next, the native hepatic artery and portal vein, are ligated and transected. The MHV and LHV are oversewn and the liver is removed. TPCS is only used in selective cases, by most authors, to minimize the risk of splanchnic congestion in patients without portal hypertension or in the case of a very large caudate lobe that encircled the IVC[22,23]. After tangential clamping of recipient IVC, occluding approximately a third[22] to one-half[23] of its lumen, the anterior wall of the IVC is incised longitudinally and the graft is placed orthotopically. End-to-side anastomosis is performed between donor and recipient IVC using two running sutures[22,23]. The portal vein, hepatic artery and biliary anastomosis are then completed in standard fashion.

TECHNIQUES COMPARED

There are two randomized controlled trials (RCTs) comparing techniques for caval reconstruction in liver transplantation. There are a multitude of prospective and retrospective multi- and single-center reviews. The results of these will now be discussed.

RANDOMIZED CONTROLLED TRIALS AND COCHRANE REVIEW

Isern *et al*[10] in 2004 in Brazil performed a RCT in which 33 patients were randomized to the piggyback technique with no TPCS and 34 patients were randomized to the standard technique with VVB. There were no differences between the two groups noted in their primary outcomes, which included post-operative mortality, chest complications, transfusion requirements and hospital stay. There was no difference reported in anesthesia time ($P = 0.162$), operative time ($P = 0.270$), cold ischemia time ($P = 0.205$), duration of mechanical ventilation ($P = 0.429$), length of hospital stay ($P = 0.846$) or operative mortality ($P = 1.000$) (Table 1). There was also no difference reported in red blood cell use ($P = 0.940$), fresh frozen plasma use ($P = 0.890$), platelet concentrate use ($P = 0.209$), apheresis platelet concentrate use ($P = 0.486$) or use of crystalloid solution ($P = 0.985$) (Table 1)[10].

Jovine *et al*[11] in 1997 in Italy performed a RCT in which 20 patients were randomized to the piggyback technique with no TPCS and 19 patients were randomized to the standard technique with VVB. The

primary outcomes examined included primary graft nonfunction, renal failure, transfusion requirements, intensive therapy unit stay and hospital stay. They determined that there was a decrease in warm ischemia time (48.5 ± 13 min for piggy-back *vs* 60 ± 12 min for the conventional method) and in postoperative renal failure (zero cases in piggyback group *vs* four cases in conventional group) in the piggyback technique group. These results are conflicting with the RCT reported above in which there was no difference in these and other variables[11].

Additionally, a Cochrane Review published in 2011 performed a systematic review which included both of these studies[24]. They considered three trials in their review, the randomized controlled trials mentioned above: Isern *et al*[10] and Jovine *et al*[11] which both compared the standard technique with VVB to the piggyback technique without TPCS, and a randomized controlled trial by Figueras *et al*[25] which compared piggyback technique with and without TPCS.

For the Cochrane Review the following primary outcomes were chosen: post-operative mortality, graft failure and retransplantation. Post-operative mortality was only reported in one of the two studies, Isern *et al*[10], and there was no difference between the two groups (P = 0.49). Graft failure due to primary nonfunction was only reported in one study, Jovine *et al*[11] and there was no difference between the groups (P = 0.96). Long-term graft function and retransplantation were not reported in either trial[24].

The secondary outcomes included: adverse events, vascular morbidity, renal failure, transfusion requirements, intensive therapy unit stay, hospital stay, operating time, warm ischemia time. Specific adverse events were reported in both trials. Vascular morbidity was reported only in Jovine *et al*[11] and there were none. There was no difference in post-operative renal failure as defined by the need for hemodialysis (P = 0.50), transfusion of blood or platelets (P = 0.65), intensive care unit (ICU) stay (P = 0.37), hospital length of stay (P = 0.10) or operating time (P = 0.05). Warm ischemia time was only reported in Jovine *et al*[11] and it was lower in the piggyback group (P < 0.01). A higher proportion of chest complications were reported in the piggyback group (P = 0.01). This includes chest infections and pleural effusions[24].

These two RCTs and the associated Cochrane Review do not provide sufficient information on which to base a decision regarding which procedure to use in practice, and in fact provide conflicting information.

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES

There are a plethora of prospective and retrospective studies available in the literature comparing the different caval reconstruction techniques.

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES: THE PIGGYBACK TECHNIQUE

Several authors report exclusively on their experience with the piggyback technique (Table 2). Anastomosis using the LHV and MHV is abbreviated LM. Anastomosis using the LHV, MHV and RHV is abbreviated LMR. Anastomosis using LHV and MHV and an added cavotomy is abbreviated LM+.

In 1994 Fleitas *et al*[26] report a series of 39 patients who underwent 44 transplants with the piggyback technique and concluded that the piggyback operation could be performed in most patients undergoing OLT and should not be restricted based on anatomic considerations. They did a complex analysis of hemodynamic parameters including mean arterial pressure, IVC pressure, renal perfusion pressure, cardiac index and systemic vascular index and concluded that hemodynamic parameters were maintained throughout the procedures. They concluded that lateral IVC clamping and unclamping resulted in good hemodynamic stability. Vascular complications, retransplantation, blood requirements and overall survival were similar to that reported in the literature for the conventional technique[26].

Belghiti *et al*[8] in 1995 report the use of the piggyback technique with TPCS in 51 consecutive patients. They concluded that portocaval anastomosis was minimally time consuming with a mean time to perform of 9 min, and a range of 5 to 17 min, and that they were able to perform satisfactory portal venous anastomosis. They also conclude that the preservation of portal and caval flows as achieved with the piggyback operation with TPCS may have special importance in transplantation of partial livers[8].

Levi *et al*[27] performed a retrospective study comparing two different eras of their own experience. Era Ⅰ was from 1994 to 2002 and era Ⅱ from 2002 to 2010. They noted that they increasingly used the piggyback technique over time (P < 0.0002). Over time had shorter warm ischemia time (P = 0.0004) and less frequent need for VVB (P = 0.001). From era Ⅰ to era Ⅱ they noticed that their median operative time (P = 0.0000) and hospital length of stay (P = 0.0000) improved. Hepatic venous outflow obstruction was rarely encountered in their series. There were nine reported cases of hepatic venous outflow, six in era Ⅰ and three in era Ⅱ. The authors report that, "twice, it was recognized and corrected intraoperatively. Seven patients presented with refractory ascites. Six were successfully treated (4 balloon dilatation, 2 surgical revision), one patient died after attempted dilatation[27]".

Several authors in this series and others report on hepatic venous outflow obstructions, which do appear to be common with the piggyback technique[5,28]. There are a multitude of potential solutions to this problem, including the ones reported above: angioplasty with

Table 2 The piggyback technique

Ref.	*n*	Anastomosis	VVB	TPCS	Complications reported	Conclusion
Fleitas *et al*[26] single center	44 OLTs 39 patients	LM	No	No	Hepatic artery thrombosis (1), suprahepatic stricture (1), retransplant (5 - hepatic artery thrombosis, suprahepatic stricture, primary nonfunction, rejection), relaparotomy for bleeding (2), splenic steal (1)	Piggyback operation could be done in most OLTs, not restricted to certain anatomic situations. Lateral IVC clamping and unclamping results in good hemodynamic stability. Vascular complications, blood requirements, retransplantation, overall survival similar to that reported with standard technique
Belghiti *et al*[8] single center	51	LM	No	Yes, 100%	Four postoperative deaths (sepsis and primary nonfunction - 2, nosocomial pneumonitis at 3 and 5 mo - 2), no pulmonary embolism, NO IVC stump thrombosis	Piggyback technique was always technically feasible irrespective of graft size, VVB not required
Levi *et al*[27] single center	Era Ⅰ: 945 of 1080 (87.5%)	LMR when possible	177 (18.7%)	No	Outflow obstruction (6)	Increasingly used piggyback technique over time ($P < 0.0002$). Over time had shorter warm ischemia time ($P = 0.0004$), less frequent need for VVB ($P = 0.001$). Hepatic venous outflow obstruction rarely encountered
	Era Ⅱ: 851 of 920 (92.5%)	LMR when possible	97 (11.4%)	No	Outflow obstruction (3)	
Ducerf *et al*[5]	88 OLTs, 81 patients	LM *vs* LM+ 3-cm cavotomy	No	No	No outflow obstruction (0)	Preservation of the IVC with recipient caval anastomosis with MHV and LHV is reliable. Associated cavotomy is not necessary
Parrilla *et al*[13] multi-center	1112	440 LM 672 LMR	No	6 at one center	Abdominal bleeding (2), acute outflow obstruction (9), ascites (3), intraoperative complications (28 - 2 venous tears, 26 congestion), graft failure (11)	Complications inherent to the piggyback technique including intraoperative venous congestion and acute and chronic Budd Chiari syndrome were more common when patients underwent anastomosis with two suprahepatic veins *vs* three ($P < 0.001$)
Cescon *et al*[4]	431	LM, LMR, LM+ 1 cm cavotomy	No	No	Complications related to anastomosis (20, 4.6%)	Increase in complications related to caval anastomosis in patients with two-vein anastomosis (LM *vs* LM+ $P < 0.0001$, LM *vs* LMR $P = 0.065$, LM+ *vs* LMR $P = 0.4$). Orifice formed with two veins is not sufficient. Advocate balloon angiography for dilation of anastomotic narrowing in most cases
Robles *et al*[17]	171	87 LM 84 LMR	No	No	Hepatic venous outflow obstruction in 7 patients with LM (8%) and in 1 patient with LMR (1.2%)	Increase in hepatic venous outflow obstruction in patients with two-vein anastomosis ($P < 0.05$)

LM: Anastomosis with left hepatic vein and middle hepatic vein; LMR: Anastomosis with left, middle and right hepatic veins; VVB: Venovenous bypass; TPCS: Temporary portocaval shunt; OLT: Orthotopic liver transplant; MHV: Middle hepatic vein; LHV: Left hepatic vein; IVC: Inferior vena cava.

or without stent placement[19,20,27,29,30], surgical revision of the anastomosis[13,20,27,30] creation of a, "neo-bed," or suturing the peritoneum covering Gerota's fascia of the right kidney to the diaphragm, which reduces the size of the recipients' hepatic fossa[13,17] and retransplantation[19,20,30].

There have been many studies published on possible rescue techniques for hepatic venous outflow obstruction. These include the use of venous patches[19], lifting and suspending the liver the the diaphragm[19], conversion to termino-terminal cavo-cavostomy[31], end-to-side anastomosis[4,28,32] and side-to-side cavo-cavostomy[16], and side-to-side cavocavostomy with an endovascular stapler[30].

Several authors have undertaken studies comparing the piggyback operation with two-vein anastomosis *vs* three-vein anastomosis to analyze feasibility of these techniques and the rates of complications with somewhat conflicting results.

Ducerf *et al*[5] compared a group of patients who had undergone suprahepatic caval anastomosis between the graft suprahepatic IVC and the recipient left and MHVs to a group of patients that had an associated 3 centimeter vertical cavotomy with partial clamping of the recipient vena cava. Twenty patients from each group had pressure and gradient measurements done 20 mo post-operatively to assess the hepatic veins, right atria and retrohepatic vena cava. The authors concluded that preservation of the IVC with recipient caval anastomosis at the ostia of the

middle and LHVs is a reliable technique. Furthermore they concluded that there is no alteration in hepatic venous outflow and that associated cavotomy is not necessary[5].

In contrast, Parilla *et al*[13] compare anastomosis with two hepatic veins to anastomosis with three hepatic veins and conclude that venous congestion and acute or chronic Budd Chiari syndrome are more common with anastomosis performed with two veins than when it is performed with three ($P < 0.001$)[13].

Cescon *et al*[4] compare three types of piggyback anastomosis: (1) anastomosis incorporating a cuff of the recipient LM; (2) anastomosis with the MHV and LHV plus one-centimeter cavoplasty (LM+); and (3) anastomosis with the LMR. They found an increased rate of complications with the group undergoing anastomosis with the MHV and LHV in comparison to those undergoing anastomosis with the MHV and LHV with associated cavotomy ($P < 0.0001$). They report their complications including four cases of thrombosis all of which required early retransplantation. For patients with anastomotic stricture, two were offered retransplantation and this was successful. The remaining cases were treated with balloon dilation during cavography (13, 65%) or anastomotic revision with end-to-side cavo-caval anastomosis between the distal stump of the donor vena cava and the recipient vena cava. Balloon dilation was successful in one session in eight patients and in two sessions in two patients. One patient in this group died from unrelated causes. In one patient balloon dilation was only partially successful and they were retransplanted. In another patient anastomotic kinking was demonstrated and cavo-caval anastomosis was attempted, but the patient required retransplant and then died soon after. Another patient had partial benefit from one session of balloon dilation and total recovery after cavo-caval anastomosis, but died of independent causes[4]. In contrast to the findings of Ducerf *et al*[5], they conclude that the caval anastomosis can be performed using the orifice formed by the MHV and LHV with associated cavotomy greater than one-centimeter and that the orifice formed by the two veins alone is not sufficient. Additionally, they advocate angiographic balloon dilation for anastomotic narrowing in most cases[4].

Robles *et al*[17] also compare the use of two-vein *vs* three-vein anastomosis, reporting that hepatic venous outflow complications were more common, and more serious, when two suprahepatic veins were used compared to the use of three ($P < 0.05$). There were six patients who presented with severe venous congestion of the graft intraoperatively which was attributed to suprahepatic vein kinking, which was treated with neo-bed creation. Five of these cases were in patients with two-vein anastomosis and one in a patient with three-vein anastomosis. Additionally, there were two patients who presented with post-operative hepatic venous outflow complications. One presented with acute Budd-Chiari syndrome due to stenosis of the anastomosis and required immediate retransplantation. A second presented with chronic Budd-Chiari syndrome with ascites and moderate graft dysfunction and was treated with diuretics. Both of these patients had two-vein anastomosis. There were no postoperative hepatic venous outflow complications in patients with three-vein anastomosis[17].

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES: PIGGYBACK *VS* CONVENTIONAL TECHNIQUE

There are several retrospective and prospective studies that compare the use of the piggyback technique to the conventional technique (Table 3).

Tzakis *et al*[3] compared 24 patients who had undergone piggyback operations to 24 matched controls who had undergone the standard operation (Table 3). They reported no difference in blood loss, retransplantation rate, portal vein or hepatic artery thrombosis or biliary tract complications (no *P*-values reported). They asserted that favorable anatomic conditions are required for use of the piggyback technique[3]. The least favorable circumstances tend to be with small cirrhotic livers and that the most favorable are patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis or primary biliary cirrhosis as patients with these conditions have hepatic veins which are relatively normal and accessible[3]. Tzakis *et al*[9] later report the use of the piggyback technique with TPCS in four hemodynamically unstable children with no established portosystemic collateral circulation[9].

Busque *et al*[33] report their experience with attempting the piggyback technique in 131 patients (Table 3). They were successful at performing the piggyback technique in 75% of their patients. The authors report, "reasons for conversion to the standard technique were: anatomical (22 transplants), severe portal hypertension requiring VB (8 transplants), tumor (1 transplant), and other reasons (2 transplants)[33]". They reported that piggyback technique without caval occlusion is possible, safe and reduced the need for VVB. Additionally, the authors report that it, "avoids retrocaval dissection, facilitates retransplantation, and is associated with a short anhepatic phase, low blood product usage, and short intensive care unit stay[33]". They report that partial outflow obstruction caused by the rotation of a small donor liver in large abdominal cavity at the hepatic vein anastomosis can be prevented by sewing the graft in counterclockwise[33].

Reddy *et al*[14] report their single center experience and compare the standard technique with VVB and the piggyback technique with selective VVB (Table 3). They report that the piggyback technique is safe, can be performed in the majority of patients, reduced the use of VVB (94% *vs* 22%), is associated with shorter anhepatic phase ($P < 0.0001$) and total operating time ($P = 0.002$), lower blood product use ($P = 0.023$) and

Table 3 Comparison of standard and piggyback technique with and without venovenous bypass

Ref.	Comparison	Results
Tzakis *et al*[3]	24 piggyback, selective VVB 24 standard, selective VVB	No difference in blood loss, retransplantation rate, portal vein or hepatic artery thrombosis or biliary tract complications
Busque *et al*[33]	98 piggyback 33 standard, 15% VVB	Attempted piggyback in 131 patients. Were able to complete in 98
Reddy *et al*[14]	40 standard, routine VVB 36 piggyback, selective VVB	Piggyback associated with shorter anhepatic phase, shorter total operating time, less red blood cell use, trend towards shorter hospital stay, reduced hospital charges
Gerber *et al*[6]	75 piggyback 127 standard	Piggyback here done with triangular vagotomy at level of right hepatic vein. Decreased operative time, use of blood products, caval complications in piggyback group
Hosein Shokouh-Amiri *et al*[34]	34 piggyback 56 standard, routine VVB	Piggyback with 60% reduction in anhepatic phase, decreased operative time, higher core body temperature, decrease in fluid, plasma, platelets, RBC volume, 30% shorter ICU stay, hospital stay. Significant reduction in hospital costs
Barshes *et al*[12]	122 piggyback 98 standard, 76% VVB	Trend towards shorter operating time and ischemia time in piggyback group. Similar amount of blood products transfused. No hepatic vein thrombosis or strictures, no IVC strictures or thrombosis, no hepatic vein obstruction, no anastomotic strictures, no hemorrhagic complications
Nishida *et al*[35]	918 piggyback, 19.7% VVB 149 standard, 79.2% VVB	Blood transfusion, warm ischemia time, use of VVB were less in piggyback group. Liver, renal function similar
Sakai *et al*[36]	104 standard, with VVB 148 piggyback, with VVB 174 piggyback, without VVB	Piggyback without VVB required less RBCs, FFP, cryoprecipitate, cell-saver return, less acute renal failure, better patient and graft survival. The piggyback with VVB group had shorter operative time, warm ischemia time, and less acute renal failure than the standard with VVB group
Vieira de Melo *et al*[37]	125 standard, without VVB 70 piggyback, without VVB	Piggyback group had reduced surgical time, warm ischemia time, red blood cell use, FFP use, mortality at 30 d. No difference in cold ischemia time, length of stay, use of vasoactive drugs in ICU, period of intubation, duration of hospital stay, renal or graft function, need for reoperation, incidence of sepsis, biliary complications, vascular complications, need for retransplantation, 1-yr mortality. Cumulative survival at 1 yr significantly better in PB patients
Cabezuelo *et al*[38]	84 standard 20 standard with VVB 80 piggyback	Standard technique in comparison to piggyback technique is an independent risk factor for post-operative renal failure. VVB does not ameliorate this effect

VVB: Venovenous bypass; IVC: Inferior vena cava; ICU: Intensive care unit; RBC: Red blood cell; FFP: Fresh frozen plasma; PB: Piggyback.

a trend towards shorter hospital stay (17 d *vs* 11 d) and reduced hospital charges ($105439 *vs* $91779) when compared with the standard technique with VVB. With the piggyback technique they reduced their rate of VVB use to 20%. In their patient population 34 of 36 patients were able to undergo the piggyback operation. In 8 of these patients VVB was used. For three of these patients VVB use was elective and in the remaining 5 it was used when the patient became hemodynamically unstable during the hepatectomy[14].

Gerber *et al*[6] introduced a further modification of the piggyback technique in which they make a triangular venotomy at the level of the RHV of the recipient (Table 3). The LHV and MHV are oversewn. A triangular venotomy is created on the posterior wall of the donor IVC. The cavo-caval anastomosis is completed with 3 running sutures. This incision allows the liver to settle into a dependent position in the right subdiaphragmatic space. They report significantly reduced operative time ($P < 0.05$), use of blood products ($P < 0.05$) and decreased caval complications in their piggyback group (3.9% *vs* 1.3%)[6].

Hosein Shokouh-Amiri *et al*[34] performed a prospective study comparing patients undergoing standard OLT with VVB to those undergoing the piggyback technique (Table 3). They concluded that the piggyback procedure resulted in a 60% reduction of the anhepatic phase ($P < 0.001$), reduction in operative time ($P < 0.003$), higher core body temperature ($P < 0.002$) and associated decrease in the requirements for fluid ($P \leqslant 0.03$), plasma ($P \leqslant 0.06$), platelets (< 0.009) and red blood cells ($P = 0.18$), 30% shorter ICU stays ($P < 0.008$) and similar reduction in overall hospital stay ($P \leqslant 0.05$). A reduction in hospital charges was also seen in the piggyback group ($P \leqslant 0.002$). The authors assert that what time is added in dissection in the piggyback group is eliminated because you do not have to place bypass catheters or spend as long achieving retroperitoneal hemostasis. There is also one less anastomosis in the piggyback technique providing significant time savings[34].

Barshes *et al*[12] report that operative time [5:20 *vs* 5:47, P = non-significant (NS)] and ischemia time (5:32 *vs* 6:06, P = NS) were shorter in the piggyback group (Table 3). There was no significant survival difference between the two groups ($P = 0.65$). Two patients in the piggyback group developed graft congestion after requiring massive fluid volumes to maintain hemodynamic stability and were rescued with end-to-side donor infrahepatic IVC to recipient vena-cava cavostomy. There were no hepatic vein thrombosis or strictures, IVC strictures or thrombosis or hemorrhagic complications. Similar amounts of blood were transfused. Eight patients in each group

had post-operative ascites without evidence of hepatic vein obstruction or anastomotic stricture. All of these resolved without further intervention[12].

Nishida *et al*[35] performed a retrospective study looking at 1067 transplants in 965 patients. Nine hundred and eighteen underwent the piggyback technique with two or three hepatic vein anastomosis *vs* 149 patients who underwent the conventional technique. Blood transfusions (P = 0.000202), warm ischemia time (P = 0.000000) and the use of VVB (P = 0.000000) were less with the piggyback group. Liver and renal function between the two groups in the postoperative period was similar. On univariate analysis cava reconstruction method, cold ischemia time, warm ischemia time, amount of transfusion, length of hospital stay, donor age and tumor presence were significant factors influencing graft survival (P < 0.05). On multivariate analysis cold ischemia time, donor age, amount of transfusion, and hospital stay were independent prognostic factors for graft survival (P < 0.05). Importantly caval reconstruction method as an independent marker did not show prognostic impact on graft and patient survival[35]. The authors report undertaking the conventional techniques for, "presence of tumor close to the IVC, presence of the intrahepatic cava, Budd-Chiari syndrome, or technical difficulties including the presence of the large caudate lobe or severe inflammation and adhesion between the caudate lobe and the retrohepatic IVC[35]". Additionally, they report that, "the reasons for using VVB were as follows: hypotension due to intolerance of IVC clamping, previous TIPS procedure, previous abdominal surgery making dissection in the portal hilum difficult, anatomic reasons including fulminant liver failure without the collateral veins, or intrahepatic inferior IVC or large caudate lobes[35]".

Sakai *et al*[36] compared the standard technique with VVB to the piggyback technique with and without VVB (Table 3). The choice of procedure was based on surgeon preference. The piggyback without VVB group required less intraoperative red blood cells (P = 0.006), fresh frozen plasma (P = 0.005), cryoprecipitate and cell-saver return (P = 0.007), had less acute renal failure (P = 0.001), better patient (P = 0.039) and graft survival (P = 0.003). The piggyback with VVB group had shorter operative time (P = 0.0001), warm ischemia time (P = 0.0001) and less acute renal failure (P = 0.001) than the conventional with VVB group[36].

Vieira de Melo *et al*[37] compared the conventional technique and piggyback technique, both without VVB or TPCS. The piggyback group had reduced surgical time, warm ischemia time, the use of red blood cells and fresh frozen plasma, and mortality at 30 d (P < 0.05). There was no difference demonstrated in cold ischemia time, length of stay or use of vasoactive drugs in ICU, period of intubation, duration of hospital stay, renal function, graft function, need for reoperation, incidence of sepsis, biliary complications, vascular complications, need for retransplantation or 1-year mortality (P-value not reported). The piggyback group had higher cumulative survival at one year (P = 0.03). There were similar rates of postoperative complications between groups[37].

Cabezuelo *et al*[38] compared the conventional technique, the conventional technique with VVB and the piggyback technique. They concluded that the conventional technique, in comparison with the piggyback technique, appears to be an independent risk factor for postoperative renal failure. They specifically looked at renal function in the first week after transplant and defined acute renal failure as serum creatinine > 1.5 mg/dL, an increase of 50% in the baseline creatinine or oliguria requiring renal replacement therapy. They analyzed which factors were associated with postoperative renal failure and demonstrated that intraoperative fresh frozen plasma and cryoprecipitate transfusion, intraoperative complications, postreperfusion syndrome, need for noradrenaline or dopamine, standard surgical technique verses piggyback and conventional technique with VVB *vs* piggyback were associated with postoperative renal failure (P < 0.01). In logistic regression analysis they demonstrated that conventional technique *vs* piggyback (P < 0.01), conventional technique with VVB *vs* piggyback (P = 0.02) and > 20 U of cryoprecipitate (P = 0.01) had independent prognostic value for the development of postoperative renal failure. They concluded that the conventional technique was an independent risk factor for postoperative renal failure and that the use of VVB did not ameliorate this effect[38].

RETROSPECTIVE AND PROSPECTIVE STUDIES: STSCCA

Durand *et al*[39] presents their experience with s STSCCA with a specific focus on post-operative renal function (Table 4). They report that STSCCA results in low rates of postoperative renal failure in their small prospective study. STSCCA is associated with preserved renal perfusion pressure throughout the procedure and preserved cardiac index and mean arterial pressure in the anhepatic phase[39].

Hesse *et al*[40] compared patients undergoing STSCCA with IVC preservation, STSCCA with VVB and STSCCA with TPCS (Table 4). In contrast to what is reported by other authors they reported the lowest perioperative blood loss in their VVB group and the highest rate of red blood cell and fresh frozen plasma transfusion in the group without VVB or TPCS (P = 0.002). Post-operative ICU stay and ventilation days did not differ between groups (no P-value reported). The changes in pre-operative and post-operative creatinine levels were most pronounced in patients that had construction of a temporary portacaval shunt (not significant, no P-value reported)[40].

Mehrabi *et al*[20] explored their single center

Table 4 Side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis

Ref.	Anastomosis	Conclusion
Durand *et al*[39]	STSCCA	Low rates of postoperative renal failure. Maintained postoperative creatinine clearance. Preserved renal perfusion pressure, mean arterial pressure, cardiac index throughout procedure
Hesse *et al*[40]	STSCCA *vs* STSCCA with VVB *vs* STSCCA with TPCS	Lowest blood loss in group with VVB (no *P*-value reported). Highest red blood cell and fresh-frozen plasma transfusion in group without VVB or TPCS ($P = 0.002$). Changes in pre- and post-operative creatinine most pronounced in group with TPCS (not significant, no *P*-value reported)
Mehrabi *et al*[20]	STSCCA	Technique feasible in all patients, no anatomic limitations. Minimizes need for VVB or TPCS. Some patients with hepatic venous outflow obstruction managed with stenting, early revision or retransplant. Can apply technique in retransplants
Pisaniello *et al*[19]	STSCCA	Safe technique. Can be performed in most patients. Recommend post-anastomotic doppler ultrasonography

STSCCA: Side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis; VVB: Venovenous bypass; TPCS: Temporary portocaval shunt.

Table 5 Comparing standard technique with venovenous bypass to side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis

Ref.	Anastomosis	Conclusion
Zieniewicz *et al*[42]	STSCCA *vs* conventional with VVB	Reduction in warm ischemia time ($P < 0.001$) and blood loss in the STSCCA group ($P < 0.001$)
Remiszewski *et al*[43]	STSCCA *vs* conventional with VVB	Reduced complication rate (36% *vs* 30%) and reduced cost (*P*-value not reported) in STSCCA group
Khan *et al*[44]	STSCCA *vs* conventional with VVB	Reduced FFP ($P = 0.03$) and platelets ($P = 0.04$) transfused, shorter ICU stay ($P = 0.005$), less patients requiring ventilation after POD1 ($P = 0.03$) and less total days on the ventilator ($P = 0.04$) in STSCCA group. Comparable operating time, warm ischemia time, length of stay (*P*-value not reported). Outflow obstruction in 1.2% of STSCCA patients. Report hematoma formation as complication associated with VVB
Schmitz *et al*[45]	STSCCA *vs* conventional with VVB	Shorter warm ischemia times, reduced red blood cell ($P = 0.000$) and platelet transfusion ($P = 0.002$) in STSCCA group. Increased risk of hepatic artery stenosis ($P = 0.045$) and biliary leaks ($P = 0.042$) in the STSCCA group

STSCCA: Side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis; VVB: Venovenous bypass; ICU: Intensive care unit; FFP: Fresh frozen plasma.

experience with 500 OLTs performed with STSCCA (Table 4). They determined that the technique was feasible in all patients without anatomic limitations. At the beginning of their experience there were 7 cases of Budd-Chiari like syndrome due to compression of the liver on the IVC or kinking of the hepatic veins. They attributed these to long donor suprahepatic IVC or misplacement of the caval incision. These cases were managed with stenting, early revision or retransplantation. They also assert that this technique can be applied in retransplants[20].

Pisaniello *et al*[19] report a single center series of patients who underwent liver transplant with STSCCA, concluding that it is safe technique that can be performed in most patients even in the retransplant setting with low incidence of hepatic venous outflow obstruction (Table 4). They recommend routine postanastomotic Doppler ultrasonography[19].

Several authors report that retransplantation is easy and can performed without interfering with caval flow in patients who have undergone a STSCCA. Lerut *et al*[16] discuss that this is one reason that they prefer a side-to-side anastomosis to an end-to-side anastomosis, it allows removal of the failed allograft without interfering with caval flow. They also advocate for the use of a side-to-side anastomosis in delayed retransplantation because it allows the surgeon to access the most accessible and least hemorrhagic plane[16]. Mosimann *et al*[41] reported that patients who underwent procedures with side-to-side anastomosis could easily undergo retransplantation in a quick and safe procedure. This finding has been confirmed by other authors as well[16,33].

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES: COMPARING STANDARD AND STSCCA

Zieniewicz *et al*[42] report their experience with the first 79 transplants in their program (Table 5). Sixty-eight of these were done with standard technique with VVB and the remaining 11 with the STSCCA. They report reduced warm ischemia time ($P < 0.001$) and blood loss in the STSCCA group ($P < 0.001$)[42].

Remiszewski *et al*[43] compared the conventional technique with VVB to the STSCCA in a retrospective study (Table 5). They concluded that individualization is important in choosing which procedure to use for a particular patient. Their survival ($P = 0.473$) and lengths of stay ($P = 0.63$) were similar between groups. They do report a reduced complication rate (36% *vs* 30%, *P*-value not reported) and cost (*P*-value not reported) in the STSCCA group, although they do

Table 6 End-to-side cavocaval anastomosis

Ref.	Anastomosis	Conclusion
Polak *et al*[22]	ETSCCA	Simple and safe procedure. Allows wide anastomosis and eliminates risk of venous outflow tract obstruction. Can be performed without routine TPCS. Minimal intraoperative blood products used. Can be used in first and second retransplantations
Wojcicki *et al*[23]	ETSCCA	Low risk of vascular outflow obstruction complications with ETSCCA. Partial portal and mesenteric vein thrombosis not a contraindication for OLT, can treat with eversion thrombectomy
Belghiti *et al*[47]	STSCCA, ETSCCA	Caval preservation possible in most patients. Patients tolerate transient cross-clamping of the IVC prior to reperfusion when necessary to create wide anastomosis

STSCCA: Side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis; TPCS: Temporary portocaval shunt; ETSCCA: End-to-side cavocavostomy; IVC: Inferior vena cava; OLT: Orthotopic liver transplant.

not provide specifics regarding cost[43].

Khan *et al*[44] in prospective study compared patients undergoing conventional technique with VVB to patients undergoing STSCCA (Table 5). The STSCCA group patients required less fresh frozen plasma (P = 0.03) and platelets (P = 0.04), had decreased cold ischemia time (P = 0.01), shorter ICU stays (P = 0.005), less patients requiring ventilation after post-operative day 1 (POD1) (P = 0.03) and less total days on the ventilator (P = 0.04). The two groups had comparable operating time, warm ischemia time, red cell usage, requirement for renal support and POD3 creatinine, and total hospital stay length (P = NS, value not reported). Three patients in the piggyback group developed outflow obstruction (1.2%), which the authors refer to as, "piggyback syndrome." They also reported complications related to VVB in the conventional technique group which included 16 patients who developed hematomas at the VVB site in the axilla[44].

Schmitz *et al*[45] performed a retrospective study comparing patients undergoing the standard technique with VVB to patients undergoing STSCCA. The STSCCA group had shorter warm ischemia times (P = 0.000), reduced transfusion of red blood cell (P = 0.002) and fresh frozen plasma (FFP) (P = 0.004). They also demonstrated an increased risk of hepatic artery stenosis (P = 0.045) and biliary leaks in the STSCCA group (P = 0.042)[45].

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES: END-TO-SIDE ANASTOMOSIS

Polak *et al*[22] demonstrated that end-to-side cavo-cavostomy (ETSCCA), as originally described by Cherqui *et al*[46], between the end of the donor suprahepatic IVC and a longitudinal incision on the anterior wall of the recipient IVC can be used successfully (Table 6). They obtained consistent patient and graft survival rates with few anastomosis related complications, performed this technique for patients who had previously had this or another type of liver transplant and had minimal intraoperative blood product requirements[22].

Wojcicki *et al*[23] also report a retrospective single center study of ETSCCA (Table 6). They determined that there was a low rate of vascular complications with ETSCCA and that partial portal or mesenteric vein thrombosis is no longer a contraindication to OLT and can be managed with eversion thrombovenectomy[23].

Belghiti *et al*[47] present their experience with ETSCCA. They conclude that IVC preservation is feasible in almost all candidates, as it was in 90% of the patients in their series. They initial performed STSCCA, but transitioned to ETSCCA after 1993 to provide improved exposure with larger grafts and allow for post-operative transjugular biopsies when necessary. They report that they were able to perform most of their procedures with preservation of caval flow, but in cases where they were not, transient IVC cross-clamping prior to reperfusion was well tolerated. When done after reperfusion it results in a high rate of early graft failure[47].

PROSPECTIVE AND RETROSPECTIVE STUDIES: COMPARING MULTIPLE TECHNIQUES

In a single-center retrospective study Lerut *et al*[16] compared patients undergoing conventional technique with VVB, patients undergoing piggyback technique with VVB and patients undergoing STSCCA without VVB or TPCS (Table 7). The piggyback and STSCCA groups had reduced warm ischemia time (P < 0.001), reduced need for intraoperative blood products (P < 0.01) and lower rates of reoperation for bleeding (P < 0.01). Additionally, the STSCCA group had a significantly higher frequency of immediate extubation (P < 0.001) compared to the other two groups. The authors suggest that partial clamping of the IVC leads to reduced requirement for fluid administration which may contribute to the higher rate of immediate extubation. They assert that STSCCA preserves the advantages of piggyback OLT including reduced implantation time and need for blood products while also eliminating VVB and reducing ventilation time[16].

Navarro *et al*[48] report a retrospective multi-center study involving 17 centers in France (Table 7). They compare three groups of patients: piggyback technique, STSCCA and ETSCCA. They report an increase in the

Table 7 Comparing standard, piggyback and side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis

Ref.	Anastomosis	Conclusion
Lerut *et al*[16]	Conventional with routine VVB, piggyback with selective VVB, STSCCA	Piggyback and STSCCA groups had reduced warm ischemia time ($P < 0.001$), reduced need for intraoperative blood products ($P < 0.01$), lower rates of reoperation for bleeding ($P < 0.01$). STSCCA had higher frequency of immediate extubation ($P < 0.001$). STSCCA preserves advantages of piggyback technique including reduced implantation time and need for blood products while also eliminating VVB and reducing ventilation time
Navarro *et al*[48]	Piggyback, STSCCA, ETSCCA	Reduced vascular complication in STSCCA compared to piggyback group with less cases of Budd Chiari syndrome and fewer releases of the cavocaval running suture (no *P*-value reported)
Hesse *et al*[15]	Conventional with selective VVB, piggyback with selective VVB, STSCCA	Use of packed red blood cells higher in piggyback group than standard group ($P = 0.01$). Use of packed red blood cells ($P = 0.01$), number of patients operated on for hemorrhage (0.002) and use of VVB ($P = 0.02$) lower in STSCCA than other two groups. Perioperative FFP, time in ICU, postoperative graft function and survival similar between the three groups (P = NS, values not reported)
Lai *et al*[49]	Conventional with VVB, piggyback, STSCCA	STSCCA group with lowest median cold ($P = 0.001$) and warm ischemia times ($P < 0.0001$), best immediate postoperative graft function ($P < 0.0001$), lowest transaminase peak ($P = 0.007$) and best bile output ($P = 0.003$). No complications reported
González *et al*[50]	Conventional with VVB, conventional without VVB, IVC preservation	Total operating time ($P = 0.004$), packed red blood cell ($P = 0.009$), fresh frozen plasma ($P = 0.005$) transfusion lower in the IVC preservation group. Postoperative kidney and renal function did not differ between groups. Incidence of complications similar between groups

STSCCA: Side-to-side cavocaval anastomosis; ETSCCA: End-to-side cavocavostomy; IVC: Inferior vena cava; VVB: Venovenous bypass; ICU: Intensive care unit; NS: Non-significant.

vascular complication rate in the piggyback group *vs* the STSCCA group with an increase in Budd Chiari syndrome and release of the cavocaval running suture (*P*-value not reported). They report a 1.5% rate of venous obstruction complications, which were treated with rotation of the graft, reconstruction of the caval anastomosis, placement of a Blakemore catheter, omentoplasty, placement of a second caval anastomosis, endoluminal anastomotic dilation, conversion to conventional technique with caval replacement and retransplantation. They do report some anatomical limitations to the vena cava preservation techniques including inadequate graft size. They report performing conventional OLT for a patient with fibrous stenosis of the IVC and the death of a patient with IVC agenesis[48].

Hesse *et al*[15] compare three groups: conventional technique with selective VVB, piggyback technique with selective VVB and STSCCA with selective VVB (Table 7). They concluded that the use of packed red blood cells was higher in the piggyback group than the conventional group, which conflicts the results of many other studies. The use of packed red blood cells post-operatively ($P = 0.02$), postoperative hemorrhage and the number of patients operated on for hemorrhage ($P = 0.002$) were lower in the STSCCA group than the other two groups. Perioperative FFP time in the ICU, postoperative graft function and survival rates were similar between the three groups (P = NS, values not reported). The STSCCA had significantly reduced use of VVB ($P = 0.02$). The authors concluded that preservation of the vena cava can reduce, but not avoid the use of VVB[15].

Lai *et al*[49] did a retrospective single-center study comparing conventional technique with VVB, piggyback and STSCCA (Table 7). They determined that STSCCA had lowest median cold ischemia time ($P = 0.001$), lowest warm ischemia time ($P < 0.0001$), best immediate postoperative graft function ($P < 0.0001$), lowest transaminase peak ($P = 0.007$) and best bile output ($P = 0.003$). They did not report or discuss complications[49].

González *et al*[50] compared the conventional technique with VVB, the conventional technique without VVB and IVC preservation (Table 7). The total operating time ($P = 0.004$), packed red blood cell ($P = 0.009$) and fresh frozen plasma ($P = 0.005$) requirements were all significantly lower in the IVC preservation group. Postoperative liver and renal function did not differ between the three groups. The incidence of complications was similar between the three groups[50].

CHOICE OF TECHNIQUE IN THE PRESENCE OF HEPATOCELLULAR CARCINOMA

One retrospective study, Mangus *et al*[51], published in 2008 evaluated outcomes for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) who underwent conventional and piggyback liver transplantation (Table 8). The study does not demonstrate a difference in HCC recurrence ($P = 0.47$) or patient survival (1-year $P = 0.49$, 2-year $P = 0.55$) between groups, although their piggyback group did have higher median tumor size ($P = 0.09$) and a higher percentage of patients with bilateral tumors (24.40% *vs* 15.80%) (Table 8). They concluded that the

Table 8 Comparison of piggyback and conventional in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma

	Conventional	Piggyback	*P*-value
n	19, 14%	119, 86%	
Age (yr) (mean, median, range)	52, 52, 41-66	57, 57, 21-73	0.09
MELD at transplant (mean, median, range)	21, 22, 8-30	20, 22, 6-36	0.02
Total cold ischemia time (h) (mean, median, range)	8, 8, 4-13	7, 7, 3-17	0.03
Total warm ischemia time (min) (mean, median, range)	56, 59, 29-78	38, 29, 18-103	< 0.001
Outside milan criteria	15.80%	33.60%	0.18
Tumor number (mean, median, range)	2, 1, 1-4+	2, 1, 1-4+	0.6
Maximum tumor size (mean, median, range)	2.6, 2.7, 0.4-8.0	3.2, 3.0, 0.4-8.2	0.09
Tumor location bilateral	15.80%	24.40%	0.41
Lymphovascular invasion	21.10%	14.30%	0.49
Chemoembolization	10.50%	37.80%	0.02
1-yr overall survival	89.50%	83.20%	0.49
2-yr overall survival	84.20%	75.90%	0.55
Any HCC recurrence	5.30%	14.30%	0.47

Adapted from Mangus *et al*[51]. HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; MELD: Model for end stage liver disease.

two groups did not differ in survival within or outside of Milan criteria and that the presence of HCC should not preclude the use of the piggyback technique[51].

COST

Several authors assert that the piggyback technique is cheaper, especially in comparison to the conventional technique with VVB. Specific information about costs, however, is not plentiful in the literature.

Reddy *et al*[14] compare the median hospital charges between patients undergoing conventional OLT and those undergoing piggyback technique with anastomosis with three suprahepatic veins. They report that the median hospital charges for patients undergoing conventional OLT was $105439 and the median hospital charges for patients undergoing the piggyback technique was $91779 ($P$ = NS, P-value not reported)[14].

Hesse *et al*[15] report that the avoidance of VVB saves time and reduces cost, but do not provide specific values. Lerut *et al*[16] reports that the side-to-side anastomosis represents another means of reducing the cost of liver transplantation, but do not provide specific values. Zieniewicz *et al*[42] assert that the piggyback technique is less expensive, but do not provide specific values. Remiszewski also reports reduced cost of the piggyback technique, but does not provide specific values[43].

Hosein Shokouh-Amiri *et al*[34] in 2000 reported a statistically significant difference in the cost of liver transplantation. They report the mean cost for patients undergoing the piggyback technique to be $90412 ± 5753 and the cost of the conventional technique $113838 ± 4483 ($P \leqslant 0.002$). The authors suggest that the added cost of the standard technique is accounted for by the added cost of machines, catheters and personnel for VVB[34].

VVB

In 1984 Shaw *et al*[52] published a study in which they compared outcomes in patients who underwent liver transplantation with and without VVB. They determined that patients with VVB had better postoperative renal function ($P < 0.001$), required less blood during surgery ($P < 0.01$) and had improved 30-d survival (no P-value reported)[52]. Several of the previously mentioned studies offer a comparison of the standard technique with and without VVB in addition to comparisons with one or another type of caval preservation. It has been suggested that in patients without significant collateral circulation, excessive hemorrhage and major portal hypertension VVB or TPCS must be used to maintain hemodynamic stability[40].

Fonouni *et al*[53] published a review paper on the use of VVB in liver transplantation in 2008. They concluded that the piggyback technique with preservation of the IVC can be used in most cases of primary transplant and retransplant without VVB. They do recommend that VVB be used in selective cases including in patients with a intraoperative hemodynamic instability and those who fail a test of transient IVC occlusion[53]. Other authors agree with the assertion that the piggyback technique with IVC preservation obviates the need for VVB in many cases[26,40].

Proposed advantages of VVB that are reported in the literature include: maintaining cerebral, pulmonary and cardiovascular flow[51], reduced need for fluid resuscitation[34], maintaining kidney perfusion[54], maintaining hemodynamic stability during the anhepatic phase[16,34,52,55-57], providing longer anhepatic phase[24], better maintenance of core body temperature[34], reduction of intraoperative blood loss[24,56] and improving the clinical outcome[24,56].

Regarding maintaining blood flow and hemodynamic stability, Lerut *et al*[16] did detailed hemodynamic comparisons between patients undergoing classical OLT with VVB and those undergoing STSCCA and report that there are no significant differences in hemodynamic parameters. They suggest that this means that partial IVC clamping fulfills the function of VVB. This group determines the need for VVB based on a decrease in mean arterial pressure of more than

50% or decrease in cardiac index (> 50%) during the occlusion test[16].

Most authors agree that in patients without preoperative renal failure who tolerate a clamping trial well VVB is not required to maintain post-operative renal function and should be used selectively[54-56]. In a randomized controlled trial VVB was shown not to be associated with any clear benefit in renal function and the authors of the trial concluded that its use is not justified on this basis[54].

Complications related to VVB that have been reported in the literature include: access site problems including delayed healing of bypass access site, seroma, nerve injury[15,16,34], as well as intraoperative pulmonary or air embolism[16,52,55,58], longer operating and warm ischemia times, hypothermia[57] thrombosis of axillary and femoral veins[16] and higher cost associated with machine, catheters and personnel[34,59,60]. Many authors assert that VVB increases intraoperative blood loss. Lerut *et al*[16] report that there is an additional 500-1000 mL of blood loss when VVB is used.

Most authors of recent publications assert that it is most appropriate to use VVB selectively, although the criteria for its use are not always agreed upon. Hesse *et al*[15] in 2000 report that their decision about whether to use VVB is made based on recipient intraoperative hemodynamics, using it when the mean arterial pressure decreases by more than 30% or the cardiac index decreases by more than 50% or both during a trial clamping of the portal vein and IVC[29]. They also use VVB when excessive hemorrhage occurs due to portal hypertension and a small size recipient is preventing sufficient venous return to the heart during lateral vena cava clamping[15].

Steib *et al*[61] compared the conventional technique with VVB to the piggyback technique with TPCS in a small prospective study. They determined that two important intraoperative parameters, cardiac output and systemic oxygen delivery, were improved in the piggyback group with TPCS. They also determined that that graft function between the two groups was adequate and comparable[61].

It was originally asserted that the piggyback technique without VVB resulted in significant hemodynamic compromise that was not tolerated well by patients. Lázaro *et al*[62] completed a prospective study of the hemodynamics of a small group of patients undergoing the piggyback technique and concluded that there was a minimal hemodynamic disturbance and that this was well tolerated by patients[26].

TPCS

It has been suggested that portacaval shunting helps avoid splanchnic congestion and the sequestration of third spaced fluids. An additional proposed advantage of TPCS is improved hemodynamic stability secondary to increased venous return[5].

Cherqui *et al*[46] proposed using TPCS systematically to achieve hemodynamic instability. Contrarily, Busque *et al*[33] report that they used TPCS in only 3 of 98 patients who underwent OLT with the piggyback technique. Reddy *et al*[14] completed 34 transplants using the piggyback technique and only performed a TPCS in one patient with severe portal hypertension, to decrease the risk of bleeding.

Belghiti *et al*[8] in 1995 report the use of the piggyback technique with 51 consecutive patients. The primary purpose of this paper was to report the use of a TPCS in 51 consecutive patients undergoing the piggyback technique. The mean time to perform the temporary portocaval anastomosis was 9 min with a range of 5 min to 17 min. They concluded that portocaval anastomosis was minimally time consuming and that they were able to perform satisfactory portal venous anastomosis. They also conclude that the preservation of portal and caval flows as achieved with the piggyback operation with ETSCCA and TPCS may have special importance in transplantation of partial livers[8].

Tzakis *et al*[9] in 1995 report the successful use of a TPCS in 4 pediatric patients experiencing hemodynamic instability in whom VVB was difficult or impossible to use.

Belghiti *et al*[47] in 2001 reported that they routinely use a TPCS in patients who do not have prior surgical portosystemic shunts or large spontaneous porto-systemic shunts. In their series a TPCS was performed in 218 (79%) of cases. There were 57 cases in which a shunt was not performed: 45 with large spontaneous portosystemic shunt, 4 with previous portosystemic shunt, and 8 with portal vein thrombosis[47].

There is one randomized controlled trial comparing patients undergoing OLT with the piggyback technique with (n = 40) and without (n = 40) TPCS. They report that the decrease in cardiac output during the anhepatic phase is lower the TPCS group (P = 0.005). There was reduced transfusion of red blood cells in the TPCS group with 45% of patients not requiring transfusions *vs* 22% in the non-TPCS group (P = 0.05). The groups received similar quantities of of red blood cells (P = 0.09), fresh-frozen plasma (P = 0.76) and platelets (P = 0.88). The TPCS had greater diuresis during the anhepatic phase (P = 0.005). The authors report that patients undergoing OLT with TPCS have improved hemodynamic status, reduced intraoperative transfusion requirements and preservation of renal function[25].

DISCUSSION

There are advantages and disadvantages to each caval reconstruction technique in OLT. Although many authors conclude that there is lower operative and warm ischemia time, and decreased transfusion of blood products including red blood cells and fresh frozen plasma, with the piggyback technique and its' modifications, especially when compared with

conventional technique with VVB, there are centers where this has not been the case. The conventional technique certainly maintains a position in the surgical repertoire and is practiced by many surgeons at many centers with excellent results. Improvements in anesthesia management, ICU care, improved immunosuppression, and complication management have played at least as large a role in the excellent outcomes obtained with modern liver transplantation as the techniques described in this review. Having familiarity with the variety of options available for reconstruction of the IVC and tailoring these techniques to the individual patient when needed is advantageous. However, surgeons should utilize the techniques that they are most comfortable with and perform well as the quality of the operation is more important than the specific technique employed in achieving excellent outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Starzl TE**, Marchioro TL, Vonkaulla KN, Hermann G, Brittain RS, Waddell WR. Homotransplantation of the liver in humans. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1963; **117**: 659-676 [PMID: 14100514]

2 **Calne RY**, Williams R. Liver transplantation in man. I. Observations on technique and organization in five cases. *Br Med J* 1968; **4**: 535-540 [PMID: 4881063 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.4.5630.535]

3 **Tzakis A**, Todo S, Starzl TE. Orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of the inferior vena cava. *Ann Surg* 1989; **210**: 649-652 [PMID: 2818033 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198911000-00013]

4 **Cescon M**, Grazi GL, Varotti G, Ravaioli M, Ercolani G, Gardini A, Cavallari A. Venous outflow reconstructions with the piggyback technique in liver transplantation: a single-center experience of 431 cases. *Transpl Int* 2005; **18**: 318-325 [PMID: 15730493 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2004.00057.x]

5 **Ducerf C**, Rode A, Adham M, De la Roche E, Bizollon T, Baulieux J, Pouyet M. Hepatic outflow study after piggyback liver transplantation. *Surgery* 1996; **120**: 484-487 [PMID: 8784401 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(96)80067-5]

6 **Gerber DA**, Passannante A, Zacks S, Johnson MW, Shrestha R, Fried M, Fair JH. Modified piggyback technique for adult orthotopic liver transplantation. *J Am Coll Surg* 2000; **191**: 585-589 [PMID: 11085741 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(00)00702-X]

7 **Belghiti J**, Panis Y, Sauvanet A, Gayet B, Fékété F. A new technique of side to side caval anastomosis during orthotopic hepatic transplantation without inferior vena caval occlusion. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1992; **175**: 270-272 [PMID: 1514163]

8 **Belghiti J**, Noun R, Sauvanet A. Temporary portocaval anastomosis with preservation of caval flow during orthotopic liver transplantation. *Am J Surg* 1995; **169**: 277-279 [PMID: 7840394 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(99)80151-2]

9 **Tzakis AG**, Reyes J, Nour B, Marino IR, Todo S, Starzl TE. Temporary end to side portacaval shunt in orthotopic hepatic transplantation in humans. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1993; **176**: 180-182 [PMID: 8421808]

10 **Isern MR**, Massarollo PC, de Carvalho EM, Baía CE, Kavakama J, de Andrade Lima P, Mies S. Randomized trial comparing pulmonary alterations after conventional with venovenous bypass versus piggyback liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10**: 425-433 [PMID: 15004772 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20067]

11 **Jovine E**, Mazziotti A, Grazi GL, Ercolani G, Masetti M, Morganti M, Pierangeli F, Begliomini B, Mazzetti PG, Rossi R, Paladini R, Cavallari A. Piggy-back versus conventional technique in liver transplantation: report of a randomized trial. *Transpl Int* 1997; **10**: 109-112 [PMID: 9089994 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.1997.tb00550.x]

12 **Barshes NR**, Lee T, Kiliç M, Goss JA. Reconstruction of the hepatic venous outflow in piggyback liver transplantation. *Exp Clin Transplant* 2004; **2**: 189-195 [PMID: 15859927]

13 **Parrilla P**, Sánchez-Bueno F, Figueras J, Jaurrieta E, Mir J, Margarit C, Lázaro J, Herrera L, Gómez-Fleitas M, Varo E, Vicente E, Robles R, Ramirez P. Analysis of the complications of the piggy-back technique in 1,112 liver transplants. *Transplantation* 1999; **67**: 1214-1217 [PMID: 10342311 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199905150-00003]

14 **Reddy KS**, Johnston TD, Putnam LA, Isley M, Ranjan D. Piggyback technique and selective use of veno-venous bypass in adult orthotopic liver transplantation. *Clin Transplant* 2000; **14**: 370-374 [PMID: 10946773 DOI: 10.1034/j.1399-0012.2000.14040202.x]

15 **Hesse UJ**, Berrevoet F, Troisi R, Pattyn P, Mortier E, Decruyenaere J, de Hemptinne B. Hepato-venous reconstruction in orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of the recipients' inferior vena cava and veno-venous bypass. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2000; **385**: 350-356 [PMID: 11026707 DOI: 10.1007/s004230000149]

16 **Lerut JP**, Molle G, Donataccio M, De Kock M, Ciccarelli O, Laterre PF, Van Leeuw V, Bourlier P, de Ville de Goyet J, Reding R, Gibbs P, Otte JB. Cavocaval liver transplantation without venovenous bypass and without temporary portocaval shunting: the ideal technique for adult liver grafting? *Transpl Int* 1997; **10**: 171-179 [PMID: 9163855 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.1997.tb00681.x]

17 **Robles R**, Parrilla P, Acosta F, Bueno FS, Ramirez P, Lopez J, Lujan JA, Rodriguez JM, Fernandez JA, Picó F. Complications related to hepatic venous outflow in piggy-back liver transplantation: two- versus three-suprahepatic-vein anastomosis. *Transplant Proc* 1999; **31**: 2390-2391 [PMID: 10500634 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(99)00395-4]

18 **Tayar C**, Kluger MD, Laurent A, Cherqui D. Optimizing outflow in piggyback liver transplantation without caval occlusion: the three-vein technique. *Liver Transpl* 2011; **17**: 88-92 [PMID: 21254349 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22201]

19 **Pisaniello D**, Marino MG, Perrella A, Russo F, Campanella L, Marcos A, Cuomo O. Side-to-side cavocavostomy in adult piggyback liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2012; **44**: 1938-1941 [PMID: 22974877 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.06.047]

20 **Mehrabi A**, Mood ZA, Fonouni H, Kashfi A, Hillebrand N, Müller SA, Encke J, Büchler MW, Schmidt J. A single-center experience of 500 liver transplants using the modified piggyback technique by Belghiti. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 466-474 [PMID: 19399735 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21705]

21 **Akbulut S**, Wojcicki M, Kayaalp C, Yilmaz S. Liver transplantation with piggyback anastomosis using a linear stapler: a case report. *Transplant Proc* 2013; **45**: 1031-1033 [PMID: 23622617 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2013.02.098]

22 **Polak WG**, Nemes BA, Miyamoto S, Peeters PM, de Jong KP, Porte RJ, Slooff MJ. End-to-side caval anastomosis in adult piggyback liver transplantation. *Clin Transplant* 2006; **20**: 609-616 [PMID: 16968487 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0012.2006.00525.x]

23 **Wojcicki M**, Post M, Pakosz-Golanowska M, Zeair S, Lubikowski J, Jarosz K, Czuprynska M, Milkiewicz P. Vascular complications following adult piggyback liver transplantation with end-to-side cavo-cavostomy: a single-center experience. *Transplant Proc* 2009; **41**: 3131-3134 [PMID: 19857694 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2009.07.092]

24 **Gurusamy KS**, Pamecha V, Davidson BR. Piggy-back graft for liver transplantation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; (**1**): CD008258 [PMID: 21249703 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008258.pub2]

25 **Figueras J**, Llado L, Ramos E, Jaurrieta E, Rafecas A, Fabregat J, Torras J, Sabate A, Dalmau A. Temporary portocaval shunt during liver transplantation with vena cava preservation. Results of a prospective randomized study. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 904-911 [PMID: 11679990 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.27870]

26 **Fleitas MG**, Casanova D, Martino E, Maestre JM, Herrera L, Hernanz F, Rabanal JM, Pulgar S, Solares G. Could the piggyback operation in liver transplantation be routinely used?

Arch Surg 1994; **129**: 842-845 [PMID: 8048855 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1994.01420320068013]

27 **Levi DM**, Pararas N, Tzakis AG, Nishida S, Tryphonopoulos P, Gonzalez-Pinto I, Tekin A, Selvaggi G, Livingstone AS. Liver transplantation with preservation of the inferior vena cava: lessons learned through 2,000 cases. *J Am Coll Surg* 2012; **214**: 691-698; discussion 698-699 [PMID: 22364695 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2011.12.039]

28 **Stieber AC**, Gordon RD, Bassi N. A simple solution to a technical complication in "piggyback" liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 1997; **64**: 654-655 [PMID: 9293882]

29 **Bilbao JI**, Herrero JI, Martínez-Cuesta A, Quiroga J, Pueyo JC, Vivas I, Delgado C, Pardo F. Ascites due to anastomotic stenosis after liver transplantation using the piggyback technique: treatment with endovascular prosthesis. *Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol* 2000; **23**: 149-151 [PMID: 10795843 DOI: 10.1007/s002709910031]

30 **Quintini C**, Miller CM, Hashimoto K, Philip D, Uso TD, Aucejo F, Kelly D, Winans C, Eghtesad B, Vogt D, Fung J. Side-to-side cavocavostomy with an endovascular stapler: Rescue technique for severe hepatic vein and/or inferior vena cava outflow obstruction after liver transplantation using the piggyback technique. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 49-53 [PMID: 19109837 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21667]

31 **Zamboni F**, Sampietro R. Conversion to termino-terminal cavo-cavostomy as a rescue technique for infrahepatic obstruction after piggyback liver transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2008; **21**: 1008-1010 [PMID: 18564987 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2008.00715.x]

32 **Merenda R**, Gerunda GE, Neri D, Barbazza F, Di Marzio E, Bruttocao A, Valmasoni M, Angeli P, Faccioli AM. Infrahepatic terminolateral cavo-cavostomy as a rescue technique in complicated "modified" piggyback liver transplantation. *J Am Coll Surg* 1997; **185**: 576-579 [PMID: 9404883 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(97)00101-4]

33 **Busque S**, Esquivel CO, Concepcion W, So SK. Experience with the piggyback technique without caval occlusion in adult orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 1998; **65**: 77-82 [PMID: 9448148 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199801150-00015]

34 **Hosein Shokouh-Amiri M**, Osama Gaber A, Bagous WA, Grewal HP, Hathaway DK, Vera SR, Stratta RJ, Bagous TN, Kizilisik T. Choice of surgical technique influences perioperative outcomes in liver transplantation. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 814-823 [PMID: 10816624 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200006000-00005]

35 **Nishida S**, Nakamura N, Vaidya A, Levi DM, Kato T, Nery JR, Madariaga JR, Molina E, Ruiz P, Gyamfi A, Tzakis AG. Piggyback technique in adult orthotopic liver transplantation: an analysis of 1067 liver transplants at a single center. *HPB* (Oxford) 2006; **8**: 182-188 [PMID: 18333273 DOI: 10.1080/13651820500542135]

36 **Sakai T**, Matsusaki T, Marsh JW, Hilmi IA, Planinsic RM. Comparison of surgical methods in liver transplantation: retrohepatic caval resection with venovenous bypass (VVB) versus piggyback (PB) with VVB versus PB without VVB. *Transpl Int* 2010; **23**: 1247-1258 [PMID: 20723178 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2010.01144.x]

37 **Vieira de Melo PS**, Miranda LE, Batista LL, Neto OC, Amorim AG, Sabat BD, Cândido HL, Adeodato LC, Lemos RS, Carvalho GL, Lacerda CM. Orthotopic liver transplantation without venovenous bypass using the conventional and piggyback techniques. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 1327-1333 [PMID: 21620122 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.03.061]

38 **Cabezuelo JB**, Ramirez P, Acosta F, Torres D, Sansano T, Pons JA, Bru M, Montoya M, Rios A, Sánchez Bueno F, Robles R, Parrilla P. Does the standard vs piggyback surgical technique affect the development of early acute renal failure after orthotopic liver transplantation? *Transplant Proc* 2003; **35**: 1913-1914 [PMID: 12962846 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(03)00598-0]

39 **Durand F**, Aschehoug J, Sauvanet A, Bernuau J, Benhamou JP, Erlinger S, Belghiti J. Preservation of renal perfusion and postoperative renal function by side-to-side cavo-caval anastomosis in liver transplant recipients. *Transpl Int* 1995; **8**: 407-410 [PMID: 7576026 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.1995.tb01545.x]

40 **Hesse UJ**, Berrevoet F, Troisi R, Mortier E, Pattyn P, de Hemptinne B. Liver transplantation by preservation of the caval flow with temporary porto-caval shunt or veno-venous bypass. *Transplant Proc* 1997; **29**: 3609-3610 [PMID: 9414858 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(97)01044-0]

41 **Mosimann F**, Gillet M. Retransplantation of the liver after side-to-side caval anastomosis. *Transpl Int* 1995; **8**: 157-158 [PMID: 7766299 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.1995.tb01492.x]

42 **Zieniewicz K**, Krawczyk M, Nyckowski P, Pawlak J, Michałowicz B, Paluszkiewicz R, Patkowski W, Grzelak I, Alsharabi A, Wróblewski T, Smoter P, Hevelke P, Remiszewski P, Skwarek A, Pszenny C, Dudek K, Grodzicki M. Liver transplantation: comparison of the classical orthotopic and piggyback techniques. *Transplant Proc* 2002; **34**: 625-627 [PMID: 12009644 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(01)02867-6]

43 **Remiszewski P**, Zieniewicz K, Krawczyk M. Early results of orthotopic liver transplantations using the technique of inferior vena cava anastomosis. *Transplant Proc* 2006; **38**: 237-239 [PMID: 16504712 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2005.12.021]

44 **Khan S**, Silva MA, Tan YM, John A, Gunson B, Buckels JA, David Mayer A, Bramhall SR, Mirza DF. Conventional versus piggyback technique of caval implantation; without extra-corporeal veno-venous bypass. A comparative study. *Transpl Int* 2006; **19**: 795-801 [PMID: 16961770 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2006.00331.x]

45 **Schmitz V**, Schoening W, Jelkmann I, Globke B, Pascher A, Bahra M, Neuhaus P, Puhl G. Different cava reconstruction techniques in liver transplantation: piggyback versus cava resection. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2014; **13**: 242-249 [PMID: 24919606 DOI: 10.1016/S1499-3872(14)60250-2]

46 **Cherqui D**, Lauzet JY, Rotman N, Duvoux C, Dhumeaux D, Julien M, Fagniez PL. Orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of the caval and portal flows. Technique and results in 62 cases. *Transplantation* 1994; **58**: 793-796 [PMID: 7940712 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199410150-00007]

47 **Belghiti J**, Ettorre GM, Durand F, Sommacale D, Sauvanet A, Jerius JT, Farges O. Feasibility and limits of caval-flow preservation during liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 983-987 [PMID: 11699035 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.28242]

48 **Navarro F**, Le Moine MC, Fabre JM, Belghiti J, Cherqui D, Adam R, Pruvot FR, Letoublon C, Domergue J. Specific vascular complications of orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of the retrohepatic vena cava: review of 1361 cases. *Transplantation* 1999; **68**: 646-650 [PMID: 10507483 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199909150-00009]

49 **Lai Q**, Nudo F, Molinaro A, Mennini G, Spoletini G, Melandro F, Guglielmo N, Parlati L, Mordenti M, Ginanni Corradini S, Berloco PB, Rossi M. Does caval reconstruction technique affect early graft function after liver transplantation? A preliminary analysis. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 1103-1106 [PMID: 21620063 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.01.136]

50 **González FX**, García-Valdecasas JC, Grande L, Pacheco JL, Cugat E, Fuster J, Lacy AM, Taurá P, López-Boado MA, Rimola A, Visa J. Vena cava vascular reconstruction during orthotopic liver transplantation: a comparative study. *Liver Transpl Surg* 1998; **4**: 133-140 [PMID: 9516565 DOI: 10.1002/lt.500040206]

51 **Mangus RS**, Fridell JA, Vianna RM, Cooper AB, Jones DT, Tector AJ. Use of the piggyback hepatectomy technique in liver transplant recipients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Transplantation* 2008; **85**: 1496-1499 [PMID: 18497692 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e31816feec0]

52 **Shaw BW**, Martin DJ, Marquez JM, Kang YG, Bugbee AC, Iwatsuki S, Griffith BP, Hardesty RL, Bahnson HT, Starzl TE. Venous bypass in clinical liver transplantation. *Ann Surg* 1984; **200**: 524-534 [PMID: 6385876 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198410000-00013]

53 **Fonouni H**, Mehrabi A, Soleimani M, Müller SA, Büchler MW, Schmidt J. The need for venovenous bypass in liver transplantation. *HPB* (Oxford) 2008; **10**: 196-203 [PMID: 18773054 DOI: 10.1080/13651820801953031]

54 **Grande L**, Rimola A, Cugat E, Alvarez L, García-Valdecasas JC, Taurá P, Beltrán J, Fuster J, Lacy AM, González FJ, Tabet J, Cifuentes A, Rull R, Ramos C, Visa J, Rodés J. Effect of venovenous bypass on perioperative renal function in liver transplantation: results of a randomized, controlled trial. *Hepatology* 1996; **23**: 1418-1428 [PMID: 8675159 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510230618]

55 **Chari RS**, Gan TJ, Robertson KM, Bass K, Camargo CA, Greig PD, Clavien PA. Venovenous bypass in adult orthotopic liver transplantation: routine or selective use? *J Am Coll Surg* 1998; **186**: 683-690 [PMID: 9632158 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(98)00101-X]

56 **Veroli P**, el Hage C, Ecoffey C. Does adult liver transplantation without venovenous bypass result in renal failure? *Anesth Analg* 1992; **75**: 489-494 [PMID: 1530159 DOI: 10.1213/00000539-199210000-00004]

57 **Acosta F**, Sansano T, Rodriguez MA, Contreras RF, Reche M, Beltran R, Roques V, Robles R, Bueno FS, Ramirez P, Parrilla P. Need for venovenous bypass in patients with familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy treated with liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 1999; **31**: 2394-2395 [PMID: 10500636 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(99)00385-1]

58 **Reddy K**, Mallett S, Peachey T. Venovenous bypass in orthotopic liver transplantation: time for a rethink? *Liver Transpl* 2005; **11**: 741-749 [PMID: 15973707 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20482]

59 **Hilmi IA**, Planinsic RM. Con: venovenous bypass should not be used in orthotopic liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2006; **20**: 744-747 [PMID: 17023301 DOI: 10.1053/j.jvca.2006.06.004]

60 **Kuo PC**, Alfrey EJ, Garcia G, Haddow G, Dafoe DC. Orthotopic liver transplantation with selective use of venovenous bypass. *Am J Surg* 1995; **170**: 671-675 [PMID: 7492024 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(99)80039-7]

61 **Steib A**, Saada A, Clever B, Lehmann C, Freys G, Levy S, Boudjema K. Orthotopic liver transplantation with preservation of portocaval flow compared with venovenous bypass. *Liver Transpl Surg* 1997; **3**: 518-525 [PMID: 9346795 DOI: 10.1002/lt.500030507]

62 **Lázaro JL**, Charco R, Revhaug A, Murio E, Balsells J, Hidalgo E, Mora A, Cortés C, Margarit C. Hemodynamics in human liver transplantation with inferior vena cava preservation. *Transplant Proc* 1997; **29**: 2851-2852 [PMID: 9365589]

P- Reviewer: Iwasaki Y, Tanoglu A **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.58

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 58-64
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

New approaches in laparoscopic surgery for colorectal diseases: The totally laparoscopic and single-incision approaches

Hiroki Akamatsu, Masahiro Tanemura, Kentaro Kishi, Mitsuyoshi Tei, Toru Masuzawa, Masaki Wakasugi

Hiroki Akamatsu, Masahiro Tanemura, Kentaro Kishi, Mitsuyoshi Tei, Toru Masuzawa, Masaki Wakasugi, Department of Surgery, Osaka Police Hospital, Osaka 543-0035, Japan
Author contributions: All authors contributed to this work.
Conflict-of-interest: No conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Hiroki Akamatsu, MD, PhD, Department of Surgery, Osaka Police Hospital, 10-31 Kitayama-cho, Tennoji-ku, Osaka 543-0035, Japan. h.akamatsu@me.com
Telephone: +81-6-67716051
Fax: +81-6-67752838
Received: September 25, 2014
Peer-review started: September 25, 2014
First decision: November 27, 2014
Revised: December 27, 2014
Accepted: January 9, 2015
Article in press: January 12, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

More than 20 years have passed since the first report of laparoscopic colectomy in 1991. Thereafter, laparoscopic surgery for the management of colorectal diseases has been widely accepted as a prevailing option because of improved cosmetic outcomes, less postoperative pain, and shorter hospital stay in comparison with open surgery. To further the principle of minimally invasive surgery, two new approaches have been developed in this rapidly evolving field. The first is the totally laparoscopic approach. Currently most of standard techniques inevitably involve an abdominal incision for retrieval of the specimen and preparation for anastomosis, which might compromise the benefits of laparoscopic surgery. The totally laparoscopic approach dispenses with this incision by combining completely intraperitoneal anastomosis with retrieval of the specimen *via* a natural orifice, such as the anus or the vagina. Our new and reliable technique for intraperitoneal anastomosis is also described in detail in this article. The second is the single-incision approach. While three to six ports are needed in standard laparoscopic surgery, the single-incision approach uses the umbilicus as the sole access to the abdominal cavity. All of the laparoscopic procedures are performed entirely through the umbilicus, in which the surgical scar eventually becomes hidden, achieving virtually scarless surgery. This article reviews the current status of these two approaches and discusses the future of minimally invasive surgery for colorectal diseases.

Key words: Totally laparoscopic surgery; Minimally invasive surgery; Single-incision laparoscopic surgery; Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery; Natural orifice specimen extraction

Core tip: We reviewed the current status of two new approaches in laparoscopic surgery for colorectal diseases: the totally laparoscopic and single-incision approaches, and showed our own data concerning these two approaches. We also discussed the future of minimally invasive surgery.

Akamatsu H, Tanemura M, Kishi K, Tei M, Masuzawa T, Wakasugi M. New approaches in laparoscopic surgery for colorectal diseases: The totally laparoscopic and single-incision approaches. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 58-64 Available

from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/58.htm
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.58

INTRODUCTION

There is a famous maxim in the surgical community: "the greater the surgeon, the bigger the incision", meaning that great surgeons make big incisions and perform complex and challenging operations. However, now we are in the era of "the greater the surgeon, the smaller the incision". Surgical treatment has been constantly evolving over the last 30 years in the quest for minimal invasiveness irrespective of the complexity and difficulty of the procedure. In 1986, the German surgeon Eric Mühe reported the first cases of laparoscopic cholecystectomy at the Congress of the German Surgical Society, but his concept did not attract much attention. Although his pioneering work was not properly recognized at first, this event represents a epochal paradigm shift from conventional open surgery to minimally invasive surgery. Thereafter, the trend that began with laparoscopic cholecystectomy progressed to include other more technically challenging abdominal procedures[1-5]. Improvements in techniques and instruments now make it feasible to perform complicated surgical procedures in a minimally invasive fashion. Moreover, the principle of minimally invasive surgery eventually reached the next stage in surgical access, natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES), which does not require any anterior abdominal wall incision.

In the field of colorectal surgery, more than 20 years have passed since the first report of laparoscopic colectomy by Jacobs *et al*[6] in 1991. Since then, laparoscopic surgery for the management of colorectal diseases has been widely accepted as a prevailing option because of improved short-term outcomes in comparison with open surgery, as prospective randomized trials have demonstrated its safe clinical application for malignant diseases[7-10].

At present, to further the principle of minimally invasive surgery, two new approaches have been developed in the field of colorectal surgery, namely the totally laparoscopic approach and the single-incision approach.

Currently standard procedures of laparoscopic colectomy inevitably involve an additional abdominal incision for delivery of the specimen and preparation for anastomosis. The totally laparoscopic approach dispenses with this incision by combining completely intraperitoneal anastomosis with delivery of the specimen *via* a natural orifice, which is the anus or the vagina.

The single-incision laparoscopic surgery uses the umbilicus as the sole access to the abdominal cavity, whereas three to six ports are needed in standard laparoscopic surgery. All of the laparoscopic procedures are performed entirely through the umbilicus, in which the surgical scar becomes hidden, achieving virtually scarless surgery.

Undoubtedly, incisionless surgery using the NOTES technique is the most minimally invasive treatment method up to the present. However, NOTES, which faces obvious safety hurdles, is still far from being widely accepted in the standard surgical practice. This article reviews the current status of these two alternative approaches to enhance the advantages of laparoscopic surgery, *i.e.*, the totally laparoscopic and single-incision approaches, and discusses the future of minimally invasive surgery for colorectal diseases.

TOTALLY LAPAROSCOPIC APPROACH

The advent of laparoscopic surgery has brought great changes in the surgical management of colorectal diseases because it involves less postoperative pain, improved cosmetic outcomes, earlier return of bowel function, and shorter hospital stay in comparison with open surgery. Currently most laparoscopic colectomies are performed in a "laparoscopy-assisted" fashion including extracorporeal procedures, such as bowel division and preparation for anastomosis, following laparoscopic mobilization of the bowel and lymph nodes dissection. Therefore, these procedures ineluctably necessitate an additional abdominal incision to the trocar placement sites. There have been many reports of completely intraperitoneal anastomosis combined with delivery of the specimen *via* a natural orifice, such as the anus or the vagina, which dispenses with a larger abdominal incision other than trocar placement sites[11-15]. Natural orifice specimen extraction (NOSE) has been postulated as an alternative approach to extracting the resected specimen out of the peritoneal cavity through an anatomic passage rather than an additional abdominal incision. Moreover, in the transition period from conventional laparoscopic surgery to true "scarless surgery", hybrid techniques combining laparoscopic resection and NOSE technique is a convincing alternative in minimally invasive surgery to circumvent the safety hurdles which NOTES faces.

Obviously, extraction of a left-side colon specimen *via* the anus is not particularly difficult. However, the ensuing completely intraperitoneal anastomosis poses the major challenge in laparoscopic colectomy. In completely intraperitoneal anastomosis using a circular stapling device, in particular, placement and fixation of the anvil are the most difficult steps. For fixation of the anvil in the proximal end of the colon, a procedure using an Endo-loop and a procedure involving a hand-sewn purse-string suture have been two major options[11,13]. These two techniques have their strong and weak points. On the one hand, ligation using an Endo-loop is a very simple technique in itself, whereas it may be less reliable in comparison with a hand-sewn purse-string suture mainly due to difficulty in stabilizing the colonic stump while putting the ligature in place and

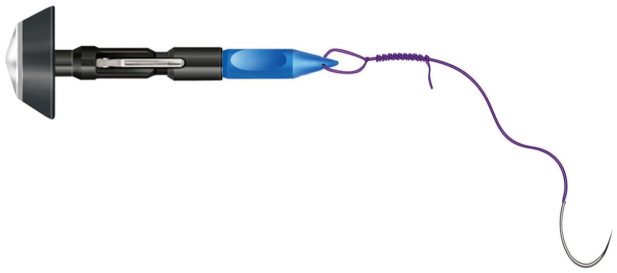


Figure 1 The anvil of a circular stapling device with its center rod secured with a 2-0 monofilament suture at the hole of the tip, is shown. The suture is tied over 10 times so that the thread that is pulled completely out of the colon does not slip into the intraluminal cavity.

tightening the loop around the center rod of the anvil. On the other hand, the technique using a hand-sewn purse-string suture is naturally more time-consuming and involves extensive skills in laparoscopic suturing. We have developed a simple and reliable technique for placement of the anvil in the esophageal stump in laparoscopic total gastrectomy using a linear stapling device[16,17]. We have also reported application of this technique to totally laparoscopic sigmoid colectomy[18] and totally laparoscopic low anterior resection[19]. Our technique, named the "efficient purse-string stapling technique", achieves transection of the colon and placement of the anvil of a circular stapling device on the colonic stump at the same time using a linear stapling device. Our totally laparoscopic procedure using this technique is described in Figures 1-3[18-22].

Specimen extraction *via* the anorectal canal is applicable to both male and female patients. However, the application of the transvaginal route is limited only to female patients, whereas it is more complicated due to the necessity of colpotomy in comparison with the transanal route. Moreover, Franklin *et al*[23] reported that one characteristic complication of transvaginal extraction was accidental damage of the sigmoid colon and rectum, at a rate of 7.7%, because of the narrowness of Douglas's pouch. On the other hand, regarding the transanal route, there are concerns over intra-abdominal fecal contamination and infectious complications. Leroy *et al*[24] reported that there was no infectious complications in 16 patients who underwent laparoscopic colectomy with transanal specimen extraction for sigmoid diverticulitis, whereas all peritoneal cultures were positive for polybacterial growth. However, inherent limitations of the transanal route have been pointed out; namely, this route is not applicable to patients with large tumor or narrow anorectal canal[25].

Bernstein *et al*[26] compared a complete laparoscopic procedure with a conventional laparoscopic procedure and found no statistically significant differences in terms of the hospitalization period or the duration of postoperative ileus. Moreover, a recent systematic review of the current literature concerning left-sided laparoscopic colectomy with transanal specimen extraction pointed out a lack of standardization of techniques and concluded that the level of the evidence supporting laparoscopic colectomy with transanal specimen extraction is low[27].

SINGLE-INCISION APPROACH

Recently, the endeavor to enhance the advantages of laparoscopic surgery has led minimally invasive surgeons to seek to minimize the number and the size of incisions. Especially, the development of single-incision laparoscopic surgery has been attracting increasing attention in the field of minimally invasive surgery. While three to six ports are needed in standard laparoscopic surgery, the single-incision approach uses the umbilicus as the sole access to the abdominal cavity.

The technique of single-incision surgery was first applied to appendectomy, thereafter to cholecystectomy[28]. Pelosi *et al*[29] reported single-puncture laparoscopic appendectomy in 1992, and in 1997, Navarra *et al*[30] performed laparoscopic cholecystectomy using only transumbilical trocars. Recently, the single-incision approach has been applied to more complicated procedures including inguinal hernia repair, colectomy, and gastrectomy[31-37]. The authors utilized the umbilicus, which some researchers call an embryologic natural orifice, as the sole access to the abdominal cavity to perform a surgical procedure that will leave a concealed surgical scar, thus achieving an essentially scarless surgical procedure. Unlike NOTES, which requires further development of techinique and the instrument, single-incision transumbilical laparoscopic surgery is ready for widespread implementation. This is because single-incision procedures can be performed using standard laparoscopic instruments, which would enable surgeons to conform to standard surgical principles and techniques. However, conflicts between laparoscopic instruments when used through a narrow single incision often make it infeasible to get adequate retraction and exposure, which necessitates surgeons to have extensive skills in standard laparoscopic surgery.

In the field of colorectal surgery, the first single-access laparoscopic colectomies were reported in 2008. Bucher *et al*[33,34] have described single-port access laparoscopic right hemicolectomy and left colectomy. They placed two standard laparoscopic ports, a 12-mm umbilical port and a 5-mm port, in a 2-cm umbilical incision, and used a 10-mm laparoscope with a 6-mm working channel. To facilitate dissection, suspension and exposition of the colon was achieved by placing transparietal stitches anchored on the mesentery or the colon wall. Only standard straight laparoscopic instruments were used. The authors pointed out that a low possibility of triangulation and the absence of off-axis vision would make the procedure complex. Remzi *et al*[35] performed laparoscopic right hemicolectomy using a

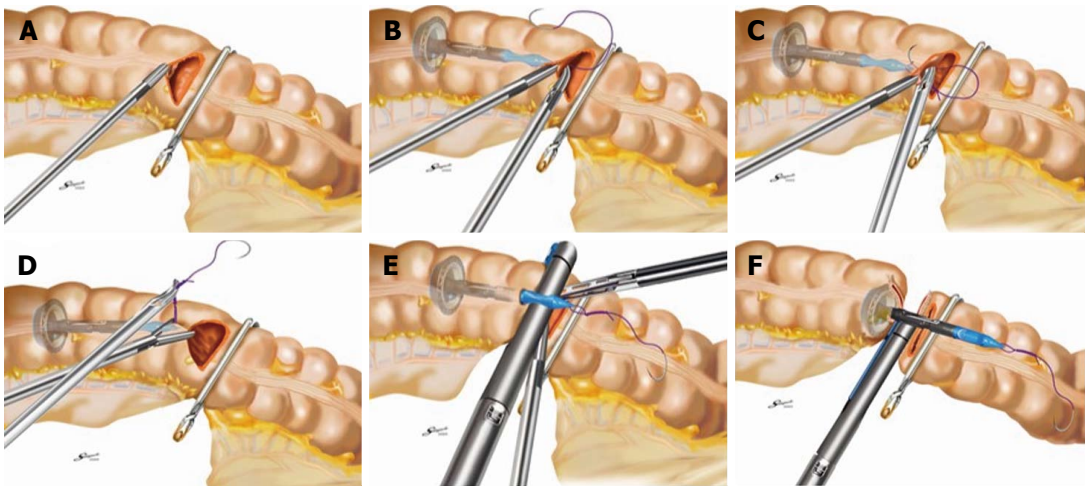


Figure 2 Efficient purse-string stapling technique. A: A semi-circumferential colotomy is performed at the colonic wall just proximal to the forceps; B: Anvil insertion into the colon *via* a semi-circumferential colotomy: An anvil with suture is held by a grasper and fully inserted into the proximal colon; C: The accompanying needle is advanced through the anterior colonic wall; D: The suture is pulled out of the colon until all knots are completely exposed; E: While pulling the suture to the right side horizontally, the colon is clamped using a linear stapling device with disposable gastrointestinal cartridge; F: The colon is then transected by firing the instrument to secure the anvil on the colonic stump.

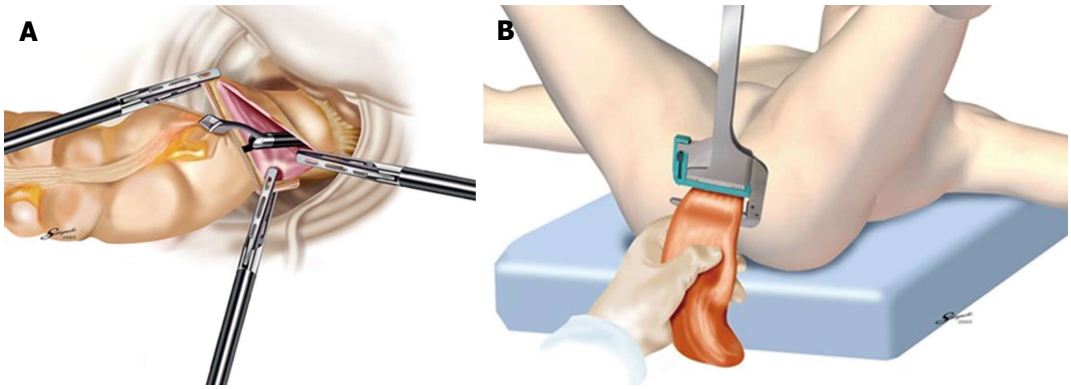


Figure 3 Transanal specimen extraction. A: In sigmoid colectomy, a grasping forceps is brought through the rectum, and the specimen is extracted through the colotomy made at the distal staple line; B: In low anterior resection, a grasping forceps is inserted under laparoscopic vision from the anus to grasp the staple in the stump, and the distal rectum is everted and pulled transanally outside the body.

special multichannel umbilical port and specially designed curved instruments. They emphasized that the flexible steerable laparoscope and instruments helped to reduce the difficulties of dissection due to loss of triangulation. Leroy *et al*[38] performed sigmoidectomy in a patient with diverticulitis using a multichannel umbilical port that allows the insertion of three laparoscopic instruments concurrently. To facilitate dissection of the mesentery, they used a sigmoidoscope to supplement retraction by means of tip angulation and instrument torque. For placement of the anvil of the circular stapler in the proximal end of the colon, they used an extracorporeal magnet to lock the metal anvil in position. They pointed out that the use of different curved or straight instruments of varying caliber allowed triangulation of the working instruments. They also mentioned the possibility of direct translation of their procedure into a NOTES format. At the same time, they emphasized that their procedure did not allow full mesenteric dissection and therefore was not suitable in its current format for oncological resections. Recently, Takemasa *et al*[39] reported the technical feasibility and safety of laparoscopic complete mesocolic excision with central vascular ligation for colon cancer.

We introduced single-incision laparoscopic colectomy in our institute in 2009. Gradually expanding the indication to include advanced colorectal cancer, single-incision laparoscopic colectomy is now a standard procedure for colorectal cancer from the cecum to the rectosigmoid in our institute. Our typical setting for single-incision laparoscopic colectomy is shown (Figure 4). A 10-mm flexible laparoscope and standard straight laparoscopic instruments are used, of which, in particular, the flexible laparoscope that allows off-axis vision is extremely useful for single-incision laparoscopic surgery. We studied 429 consecutive patients who underwent single-incision laparoscopic colectomy in our institute from 2009 to 2013. The conversion rate to conventional multi-port laparoscopic colectomy was 3.3%. None of the patients was converted to open surgery. The rate

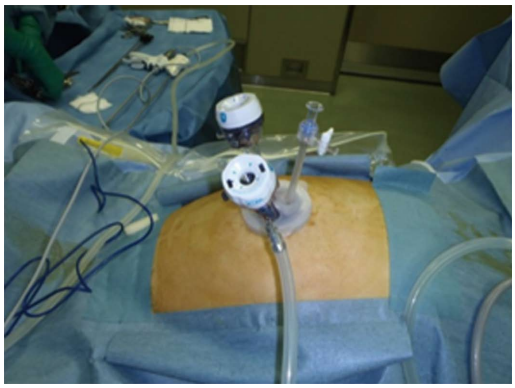


Figure 4 Intra-operative view of single-incision laparoscopic colectomy. We make an 2.5-cm long vertical incision in the umbilicus, and typically use E-Z Access (Hakko Co. Ltd., Nagano, Japan) on the Lap Protector™ (Hakko Co. Ltd., Nagano, Japan) for the insertion of two 5-mm trocars and one 12-mm trocar for a right colectomy, and one 5-mm trocar and two 12-mm trocars for a left colectomy, sigmoidectomy or rectal resection.

of postoperative complications was comparable with those in other reports of multi-port laparoscopic surgery. We also compared two groups of patients: patients with previous abdominal surgery and those with no previous abdominal surgery. There were no significant differences between the two groups in terms of blood loss, operative time, and short-term postoperative outcomes. Therefore, we concluded that single-incision colectomy is safe and feasible even in patients with previous abdominal surgery. Moreover, patients with advanced colorectal cancer were included in this series. Complete mesocolic excision with central vascular ligation can now be performed with our single-incision procedure, corresponding to the standard surgical procedures for advenced colorectal cancer in Japan. This study also showed that the single-incision method was comparable with the multi-port method in terms of resection margin and the number of harvested lymph nodes[40].

After single-incision laparoscopic colectomy for colon cancer was introduced by Remzi *et al*[35] and Bucher *et al*[33] in 2008, the feasibility of the procedure was examined in several case-control studies and two randomized controlled trials, which compared short-term outcomes between patients who underwent single-incision laparoscopic colectomy and those who underwent multi-port laparoscopic colectomy. Although single-incision laparoscopic colectomy provides a better cosmetic result and reduces postoperative pain, its impact on the length of hospital stay remains controversial[39,41-45].

DISCUSSION

Totally laparoscopic colectomy with natural orifice specimen extraction has been safely introduced to general surgical practice. Diana *et al*[46] reviewed 19 studies that reported transanal extraction of the specimen, and they concluded that transanal extraction is a feasible option to minimize incisions in colorectal surgery. At the same time, the concept of single-incision laparoscopic surgery is appealing to surgeons performing minimally invasive procedures and is evolving at a surprisingly rapid rate[29-37].

Undoubtedly, incisionless surgery using the NOTES technique is the final and ultimate goal for minimally invasive surgeons. Furthermore, a survey has shown that patients would prefer NOTES to standard laparoscopic surgery if the risks associated with the two approaches were comparable[47]. However, in spite of the initial enthusiasm after the first advent, NOTES currently remains in the area of experimental surgery mainly due to concerns over the surgical platform, accidental organ injury, and viscerotomy closure.

What is necessary for safe introduction of NOTES in clinical practice, while it takes time for the development of a new surgical platform or reliable techniques for viscerotomy-closure? The optimal transluminal access route for NOTES is now an area of active investigation. Initial work rather focused on transgastric and transvaginal NOTES, and transcolonic NOTES has been the least explored approach because of concerns related to fecal contamination and intra-abdominal infectious complications. Over time, however, transrectal accesss has in fact proved more practical than the former routes[48]. The benefits of transcolonic access include in-line endoscopic visualization, which dispenses with the need for scope retroflection for visualization of upper abdominal organs, more compliance of the anorectum than the esophagus, and suitability for both male and female patients[49]. Moreover, the transanal route has two major advantages over other routes. Firstly, there are reliable surgical platforms: Transanal Endoscopic Microsurgery (TEM) and Transanal Endoscopic Operation (TEO). Since Buess *et al*[50] introduced TEM in the 1980s, there has been accumulation of extensive human clinical experience with complex transanal surgery. TEO is a modification of TEM. Incorporated with an ordinary laparoscopic imaging system and readily available laparoscopic instruments, TEO allows precice dissection under magnified and high-definition view that is as effective as TEM. Secondly, in the case of rectosigmoid resection, viscerotomy can be removed as part of the specimen or incorporated into the anastomosis. Zhang *et al*[51] reported the first clinical case of pure transanal NOTES with total mesorectal excision (TME) in 2013. They used a three-channel single-port laparoscopic cannula placed in the procedure of prolapse and hemorrhoids anoscope as the surgical platform, and after removal of the specimen, they made a colorectal anastomosis at the site of the viscerotomy using a circular stapling device. Approximately at the same time, Leroy *et al*[52] also reported a clinical case of pure transanal NOTES with TME. They used the TEO device as the surgical platform. After the specimen was delivered transanally, a hand-sewn coloanal anastomosis was fashioned so that the viscerotomy was incorporated into the anastomosis. They emphasized the advantages of the

transanal route, which include easy accessibility to the anus, reliable surgical platforms like the TEO system, the possibility to eliminate viscerotomy-closure, and the use of currently available laparoscopic instrumentation.

Although two clinical cases of transanal NOTES were successfully carried out, it is unlikely for their procedure to be widely accepted in general practice in the near future. At present, the hybrid NOTES technique seems to be the most pragmatic way to enhance the concept of minimal invasiveness. There are several reports of hybrid NOTES procedures in humans. In all cases, a hybrid laparoscopic technique with one to three transabdominal trocars was used[53-55]. Techniques for totally laparoscopic colectomy with NOSE and single-incision colectomy are well established. Therefore, some of these techniques seem to be feasible and useful even in the hybrid NOTES setting. For example, our technique, *i.e.*, the "efficient purse-string stapling technique", could be performed in the hybrid NOTES format using standard laparoscopic instruments and stapling devices brought into the peritoneal cavity *via* the transvaginal port, followed by extraction of the specimen through the vagina[18,19].

The totally laparoscopic approach with NOSE and single-incision approach have been enhanced by both innovative port technology and technical expertise learned by developing NOTES. Conversely, new techniques and technology gained in clinical experience of totally laparoscopic colectomy and single-incision surgery may be ultimately used for NOTES procedures. Therefore, it is of utmost importance that all minimally invasive surgeons constantly keep up with new developments in these two approaches in this rapidly evolving field.

REFERENCES

1 **Reynolds W**. The first laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *JSLS* 2001; **5**: 89-94 [PMID: 11304004]
2 **Jani K**, Rajan PS, Sendhilkumar K, Palanivelu C. Twenty years after Erich Muhe: Persisting controversies with the gold standard of laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *J Minim Access Surg* 2006; **2**: 49-58 [PMID: 21170235]
3 **Kaiser AM**, Corman ML. History of laparoscopy. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am* 2001; **10**: 483-492 [PMID: 11685923]
4 **Perissat J**, Collet D, Belliard R. Gallstones: laparoscopic treatment--cholecystectomy, cholecystostomy, and lithotripsy. Our own technique. *Surg Endosc* 1990; **4**: 1-5 [PMID: 2138361]
5 **Cuschieri A**, Berci G, McSherry CK. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Am J Surg* 1990; **159**: 273 [PMID: 2137679]
6 **Jacobs M**, Verdeja JC, Goldstein HS. Minimally invasive colon resection (laparoscopic colectomy). *Surg Laparosc Endosc* 1991; **1**: 144-150 [PMID: 1688289]
7 **Lacy AM**, García-Valdecasas JC, Delgado S, Castells A, Taurá P, Piqué JM, Visa J. Laparoscopy-assisted colectomy versus open colectomy for treatment of non-metastatic colon cancer: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 2224-2229 [PMID: 12103285]
8 **Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy Study Group**. A comparison of laparoscopically assisted and open colectomy for colon cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 2050-2059 [PMID: 15141043]
9 **Guillou PJ**, Quirke P, Thorpe H, Walker J, Jayne DG, Smith AM, Heath RM, Brown JM. Short-term endpoints of conventional versus laparoscopic-assisted surgery in patients with colorectal cancer (MRC CLASICC trial): multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1718-1726 [PMID: 15894098]
10 **Veldkamp R**, Kuhry E, Hop WC, Jeekel J, Kazemier G, Bonjer HJ, Haglind E, Påhlman L, Cuesta MA, Msika S, Morino M, Lacy AM. Laparoscopic surgery versus open surgery for colon cancer: short-term outcomes of a randomised trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2005; **6**: 477-484 [PMID: 15992696]
11 **Franklin ME Jr**, Diaz-E JA. Laparoscopic left hemicolectomy with transanal extraction of the specimen. In: Ballantyne GH, editor. Atlas of Laparoscopic Surgery. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Co, 2000: 386-404
12 **Franklin ME**, Kelley H, Kelley M, Brestan L, Portillo G, Torres J. Transvaginal extraction of the specimen after total laparoscopic right hemicolectomy with intracorporeal anastomosis. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2008; **18**: 294-298 [PMID: 18574421 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.0b013e3181772d8b]
13 **Bergamaschi R**, Arnaud JP. Intracorporeal colorectal anastomosis following laparoscopic left colon resection. *Surg Endosc* 1997; **11**: 800-801 [PMID: 9266637]
14 **Inoue Y**, Noro H, Komoda H, Kimura T, Mizushima T, Taniguchi E, Yumiba T, Itoh T, Ohashi S, Matsuda H. Completely laparoscopic total colectomy for chronic constipation: report of a case. *Surg Today* 2002; **32**: 551-554 [PMID: 12107785]
15 **Darzi A**, Super P, Guillou PJ, Monson JR. Laparoscopic sigmoid colectomy: total laparoscopic approach. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1994; **37**: 268-271 [PMID: 8137674]
16 **Omori T**, Oyama T, Mizutani S, Tori M, Nakajima K, Akamatsu H, Nakahara M, Nishida T. A simple and safe technique for esophagojejunostomy using the hemidouble stapling technique in laparoscopy-assisted total gastrectomy. *Am J Surg* 2009; **197**: e13-e17 [PMID: 19101245 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2008.04.019]
17 **Omori T**, Oyama T, Akamatsu H, Tori M, Ueshima S, Nakahara M, Toshirou N. A simple and safe method for gastrojejunostomy in laparoscopic distal gastrectomy using the hemidouble-stapling technique: efficient purse-string stapling technique. *Dig Surg* 2009; **26**: 441-445 [PMID: 20068314 DOI: 10.1159/000239760]
18 **Akamatsu H**, Omori T, Oyama T, Tori M, Ueshima S, Nakahara M, Abe T, Nishida T. Totally laparoscopic sigmoid colectomy: a simple and safe technique for intracorporeal anastomosis. *Surg Endosc* 2009; **23**: 2605-2609 [PMID: 19266229 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0406-6]
19 **Akamatsu H**, Omori T, Oyama T, Tori M, Ueshima S, Nishida T, Nakahara M, Abe T. Totally laparoscopic low anterior resection for lower rectal cancer: combination of a new technique for intracorporeal anastomosis with prolapsing technique. *Dig Surg* 2009; **26**: 446-450 [PMID: 20068315 DOI: 10.1159/000239761]
20 **Corman ML**. Classic articles in colonic and rectal surgery. A new method of excising the two upper portions of the rectum and the lower segment of the sigmoid flexure of the colon -- by H. Widenham Maunsell. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1991; **24**: 649-654 [PMID: 7032864]
21 Classic articles in colonic and rectal surgery. Robert Fulton Weir (1838-1927): an improved method of treating high-seated cancers of the rectum. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1982; **25**: 503-507 [PMID: 7047107]
22 **Knight CD**, Griffen FD. An improved technique for low anterior resection of the rectum using the EEA stapler. *Surgery* 1980; **88**: 710-714 [PMID: 7434211]
23 **Franklin ME**, Liang S, Russek K. Natural orifice specimen extraction in laparoscopic colorectal surgery: transanal and transvaginal approaches. *Tech Coloproctol* 2013; **17** Suppl 1: S63-S67 [PMID: 23250638 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-012-0938-y]
24 **Leroy J**, Costantino F, Cahill RA, D'Agostino J, Morales A, Mutter D, Marescaux J. Laparoscopic resection with transanal specimen extraction for sigmoid diverticulitis. *Br J Surg* 2011; **98**: 1327-1334 [PMID: 21560119 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.7517]
25 **Leung AL**, Cheung HY, Li MK. Advances in laparoscopic colorectal surgery: a review on NOTES and transanal extraction of specimen. *Asian J Endosc Surg* 2014; **7**: 11-16 [PMID: 24165166 DOI: 10.1111/ases.12070]
26 **Bernstein MA**, Dawson JW, Reissman P, Weiss EG, Nogueras

JJ, Wexner SD. Is complete laparoscopic colectomy superior to laparoscopic assisted colectomy? *Am Surg* 1996; **62**: 507-511 [PMID: 8651539]
27 **Wolthuis AM**, Van Geluwe B, Fieuws S, Penninckx F, D'Hoore A. Laparoscopic sigmoid resection with transrectal specimen extraction: a systematic review. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 1183-1188 [PMID: 22022977 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02869.x]
28 **Chamberlain RS**, Sakpal SV. A comprehensive review of single-incision laparoscopic surgery (SILS) and natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) techniques for cholecystectomy. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2009; **13**: 1733-1740 [PMID: 19412642 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-009-0902-y]
29 **Pelosi MA**, Pelosi MA. Laparoscopic appendectomy using a single umbilical puncture (minilaparoscopy). *J Reprod Med* 1992; **37**: 588-594 [PMID: 1387906]
30 **Navarra G**, Pozza E, Occhionorelli S, Carcoforo P, Donini I. One-wound laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Br J Surg* 1997; **84**: 695 [PMID: 9171771]
31 **Wakasugi M**, Akamatsu H, Tori M, Ueshima S, Omori T, Tei M, Masuzawa T, Nishida T. Short-term outcome of single-incision laparoscopic totally extra-peritoneal inguinal hernia repair. *Asian J Endosc Surg* 2013; **6**: 143-146 [PMID: 23602002 DOI: 10.1111/ases.12011]
32 **Wakasugi M**, Masuzawa T, Tei M, Omori T, Ueshima S, Tori M, Akamatsu H. Single-incision totally extraperitoneal inguinal hernia repair: our initial 100 cases and comparison with conventional three-port laparoscopic totally extraperitoneal inguinal hernia repair. *Surg Today* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24973058]
33 **Bucher P**, Pugin F, Morel P. Single port access laparoscopic right hemicolectomy. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2008; **23**: 1013-1016 [PMID: 18607608 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-008-0519-8]
34 **Bucher P**, Pugin F, Morel P. Single-port access laparoscopic radical left colectomy in humans. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 1797-1801 [PMID: 19966617 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181b551ce]
35 **Remzi FH**, Kirat HT, Kaouk JH, Geisler DP. Single-port laparoscopy in colorectal surgery. *Colorectal Dis* 2008; **10**: 823-826 [PMID: 18684153 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2008.01660.x]
36 **Omori T**, Oyama T, Akamatsu H, Tori M, Ueshima S, Nishida T. Transumbilical single-incision laparoscopic distal gastrectomy for early gastric cancer. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 2400-2404 [PMID: 21298524 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1563-3]
37 **Omori T**, Masuzawa T, Akamatsu H, Nishida T. A simple and safe method for Billroth I reconstruction in single-incision laparoscopic gastrectomy using a novel intracorporeal triangular anastomotic technique. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 613-616 [PMID: 24297650 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2419-7]
38 **Leroy J**, Cahill RA, Asakuma M, Dallemagne B, Marescaux J. Single-access laparoscopic sigmoidectomy as definitive surgical management of prior diverticulitis in a human patient. *Arch Surg* 2009; **144**: 173-179; discussion 179 [PMID: 19221330]
39 **Takemasa I**, Uemura M, Nishimura J, Mizushima T, Yamamoto H, Ikeda M, Sekimoto M, Doki Y, Mori M. Feasibility of single-site laparoscopic colectomy with complete mesocolic excision for colon cancer: a prospective case-control comparison. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 1110-1118 [PMID: 24202709]
40 **Tei M**, Wakasugi M, Omori T, Ueshima S, Tori M, Akamatsu H. Single-port laparoscopic colectomy is safe and feasible in patients with previous abdominal surgery. *Am J Surg* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25223720]
41 **Papaconstantinou HT**, Thomas JS. Single-incision laparoscopic colectomy for cancer: assessment of oncologic resection and short-term outcomes in a case-matched comparison with standard laparoscopy. *Surgery* 2011; **150**: 820-827 [PMID: 22000196 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2011.07.060]
42 **Chen WT**, Chang SC, Chiang HC, Lo WY, Jeng LB, Wu C, Ke TW. Single-incision laparoscopic versus conventional laparoscopic right hemicolectomy: a comparison of short-term surgical results. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 1887-1892 [PMID: 21359907 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1481-4]
43 **Champagne BJ**, Papaconstantinou HT, Parmar SS, Nagle DA, Young-Fadok TM, Lee EC, Delaney CP. Single-incision versus standard multiport laparoscopic colectomy: a multicenter, case-controlled comparison. *Ann Surg* 2012; **255**: 66-69 [PMID: 22104563 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3182378442]
44 **Poon JT**, Cheung CW, Fan JK, Lo OS, Law WL. Single-incision versus conventional laparoscopic colectomy for colonic neoplasm: a randomized, controlled trial. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 2729-2734 [PMID: 22538676]
45 **Huscher CG**, Mingoli A, Sgarzini G, Mereu A, Binda B, Brachini G, Trombetta S. Standard laparoscopic versus single-incision laparoscopic colectomy for cancer: early results of a randomized prospective study. *Am J Surg* 2012; **204**: 115-120 [PMID: 22178484 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2011.09.005]
46 **Diana M**, Wall J, Costantino F, D'agostino J, Leroy J, Marescaux J. Transanal extraction of the specimen during laparoscopic colectomy. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13** Suppl 7: 23-27 [PMID: 22098513 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02774.x]
47 **Varadarajulu S**, Tamhane A, Drelichman ER. Patient perception of natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery as a technique for cholecystectomy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 854-860 [PMID: 18355816 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.09.053]
48 **Autorino R**, Yakoubi R, White WM, Gettman M, De Sio M, Quattrone C, Di Palma C, Izzo A, Correia-Pinto J, Kaouk JH, Lima E. Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES): where are we going? A bibliometric assessment. *BJU Int* 2013; **111**: 11-16 [PMID: 23323699 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2012.11494.x]
49 **Rieder E**, Whiteford MH. Transrectal natural orifice translumenal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) for colorectal resection. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13** Suppl 7: 51-54 [PMID: 22098519 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02780.x]
50 **Buess G**, Theiss R, Günther M, Hutterer F, Pichlmaier H. Endoscopic surgery in the rectum. *Endoscopy* 1985; **17**: 31-35 [PMID: 3971938]
51 **Zhang H**, Zhang YS, Jin XW, Li MZ, Fan JS, Yang ZH. Transanal single-port laparoscopic total mesorectal excision in the treatment of rectal cancer. *Tech Coloproctol* 2013; **17**: 117-123 [PMID: 22936590 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-012-0882-x]
52 **Leroy J**, Barry BD, Melani A, Mutter D, Marescaux J. No-scar transanal total mesorectal excision: the last step to pure NOTES for colorectal surgery. *JAMA Surg* 2013; **148**: 226-230; discussion 231 [PMID: 23682369]
53 **Tuech JJ**, Bridoux V, Kianifard B, Schwarz L, Tsilividis B, Huet E, Michot F. Natural orifice total mesorectal excision using transanal port and laparoscopic assistance. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2011; **37**: 334-335 [PMID: 21266304 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2010.12.016]
54 **de Lacy AM**, Rattner DW, Adelsdorfer C, Tasende MM, Fernández M, Delgado S, Sylla P, Martínez-Palli G. Transanal natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) rectal resection: "down-to-up" total mesorectal excision (TME)--short-term outcomes in the first 20 cases. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 3165-3172 [PMID: 23519489 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-2872-0]
55 **Zorron R**, Phillips HN, Wynn G, Neto MP, Coelho D, Vassallo RC. "Down-to-Up" transanal NOTES Total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: Preliminary series of 9 patients. *J Minim Access Surg* 2014; **10**: 144-150 [PMID: 25013331 DOI: 10.4103/0972-9941.134878]

P- Reviewer: Contini S, Kirshtein B, Nash GF, Romeo C
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.65

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 65-74
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

How would we deal with hypothalamic hamartomas?

Kyu Won Shim, Eun Kyung Park, Ju Seong Kim, Dong-Seok Kim

Kyu Won Shim, Eun Kyung Park, Ju Seong Kim, Dong-Seok Kim, Department of Pediatric Neurosurgery, Severance Children's Hospital, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Brain Korea 21 Project for Medical Science, Seoul 120-752, South Korea
Author contributions: All authors contributed to this work.
Conflict-of-interest: There is no conflict of interests

Correspondence to: Dong-Seok Kim, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Neurosurgery Pediatric Neurosurgery, Severance Children's Hospital, Yonsei University College of Medicine, Seoul 120-752, South Korea. dskim33@yuhs.ac
Telephone: +82-2-22282150
Fax: +82-2-3939979
Received: September 28, 2014
Peer-review started: October 10, 2014
First decision: December 17, 2014
Revised: December 26, 2014
Accepted: January 15, 2015
Article in press: January 19, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Hypothalamic hamartoma (HH) is usually associated with refractory epilepsy, cognitive impairment, and behavioral disturbance. There is now increasing evidence that HH can be treated effectively with a variety of neurosurgical approaches. Treatment options for intractable gelastic seizure in HH patients include direct open surgery with craniotomy, endoscopic surgery, radiosurgery with gamma knife and stereotactic radiofrequency thermocoagulation. Selection of treatment modalities depends on type and size of the HH and the surgeon's preference. Two surgical techniques, resection and disconnection, had been described with favorable outcomes. Pretreatment evaluation, patient selection, surgical techniques, complications, and possible selection of treatment are discussed.

Key words: Hypothalamic hamartoma; Epilepsy; Gelastic seizure; Transcallosal resection; Endoscopic surgery; Radiosurgery; Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation

Core tip: Neuronavigation-assisted neuroendoscopic surgery has been remarkably advancing. Furthermore high definition video recording system becomes its basic visualization system to facilitate the differentiation between normal tissue and abnormal tissue of hypothalamic hamartomas. Neuroendoscopic disconnection has been suggested to reduce the Gelastic seizure by the isolation of hypothalamic hamartomas (HHs) from surrounding structures. We are getting more powerful tools for performing sophisticated endoscopic disconnection surgery. Neuroendoscopic disconnection surgery used to be an optional surgery, but it becomes the first choice of surgery for HH with Gelastic seizure.

Shim KW, Park EK, Kim JS, Kim DS. How would we deal with hypothalamic hamartomas? *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 65-74 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/65.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.65

INTRODUCTION

The compulsive bursts of laughter were first introduced at 1873. Since Gumpert *et al*[1] described the feature of gelastic seizure (GS) Gascon *et al*[2] suggested the diagnostic criteria of gelastic epilepsy. Gelastic seizures represent the most common clinical expression of epilepsy and cause the patient to present sudden,

brief, uncontrollable attacks of laughter. These gelastic attacks progress as the patient ages, and other types of seizure, cognitive deterioration, and behavioral problems appear, frequently developing late in first decade of life, together with drop attacks and other secondary generalized epilepsy symptoms[3]. It has been demonstrated that epileptic focus originates from the hamartoma and from neocortical foci strictly related to Hypothalamic hamartomas (HHs)[4,5]. HHs are rare non-neoplastic congenital lesions of the inferior hypothalamus and consist of an abnormal mixture of neuronal and glial tissue. They issue from the floor of the third ventricle, tuber cinereum, or mammillary bodies. Hypothalamic hamartoma can be classified as sessile or pedunculated, depending on the width of their attachment to hypothalamus. Various symptoms have been associated with the sessile type of HH, including refractory epilepsy, central precocious puberty, intellectual impairment, and behavioral problems[6]. On the other hand, HHs causing isosexual precocious puberty are more likely to be pedunculated lesions that "hang" below the tuber cinereum. Close anatomic connections between HH and diencephalic hypothalamic structures also explain the autonomic, mainly sympathetic, symptoms and hormonal changes that accompanying GS[7-9]. GS appears in early childhood and quickly becomes refractory to medical treatment. The severity of the syndrome might depend, at least in part, on the size (small *vs* large), localization (tuber cinereum *vs* mamillary bodies), type of attachment (pedunculate *vs* sessile) and degree of hypothalamic displacement of the HH (lacking *vs* marked)[10-13]. Since Paillas *et al*[14] reported successful seizure outcome after resection of HHs in some patients in 1969, surgical intervention for these lesions has been attempted with variable seizure outcome[14]. Since 2000 the understanding and management of HH has increased dramatically especially in terms of intractable epilepsy. The state of the art of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and neuronavigation have developed synchronously by the turn of the millennium. Eventually we can have the tools for the safe and effective treatment of lesions in critical areas of the brain and without physically demonstrable borders between the offending lesion and critical areas of the brain such as the hypothalamus[15].

Focal (frontal or temporal) resections have never resolved GS, even when associated with depth electrode studies[16-19], whereas surgical and gamma-knife ablation, and radiofrequency coagulation of HH resulted in good seizure control[4,18-25]. Four surgical treatments have been introduced to treat HH: direct open surgery with craniotomy, endoscopic surgery, radiosurgery with gamma knife (GKS), and stereotactic radiofrequency thermocoagulation. Two techniques for HH surgery are used: resection or disconnection of hamartoma. The concept of disconnection had been introduced by Delalande *et al*[26] and it showed dramatic improvement in the patient. The technique disconnects the connecting tract between the hamartoma and the surrounding normal tissue.

Between 1990 and 2000, case reports on the successful surgical management of HH began to surface. These reports presumably reflected the increasing availability of contemporary imaging techniques. The first computed tomography (CT) scanner was installed in the United States in 1973[15]. A neurosurgeon removing or disconnecting an HH sees tissue that looks just like normal brain. The ability to identify the HH-brain interface depends on the subtle differences in signal intensity seen on MRI and shown by the navigation system. The surgical view is through the microscope, utilizing the endoscope or stereotactic equipment for Gamma Knife or the implantation of radiofrequency electrodes. The surgical approach to the lesion should be tailored to each case. No single approach is best for every patient.

Presurgical evaluation includes routine electro-encephalographic (EEG) monitoring and video-EEG monitoring with scalp electrodes, interictal and ictal 99m-Tc hexamethylprophyleneamine oxime single photon emission CT, MRI, neuropsychological evaluation, ophthalmological assessments with perimetry, and endocrinological investigations. The dimensions of the HHs and the anatomy surrounding the tuber cinereum can be seen clearly by high-resolution coronal and sagittal T1-weighted MRI. Endocrine assessment includes measurement of basal gonadotrophin and growth hormone levels, thyroid function, prolactin level, and cortisol reserve with glucagon stimulation. Deep electrode insertion into the HH with EEG monitoring may be necessary in some cases. Intractable seizure of the predominant gelastic type is an indication for surgical treatment. Gelastic seizures refractory to medication, neurobehavioral deterioration and direct or indirect evidence of hypothalamic seizure origin, and the absence of a cortical lesion on MRI are recommended for surgical treatment. The potential risks to memory, endocrine function, behavior, and vision have to be explained to the parents[25,27,28].

Endoscopic surgery

In patients with gelastic epilepsy-HH syndrome, the hamartoma is usually sessile; pedunculated HH is an occasional finding or may be related to endocrinological disturbances and/or to visual impairment[13,29]. Choi *et al*[27] suggested the modified classification of sessile HH, which was introduced by Delalande *et al*[26] (Figure 1). Small HHs (< 20 mm) were classified as midline (Type Ⅰ), lateral (Type Ⅱ), or intraventricular (Type Ⅲ) according to the location of the HH relative to the hypothalamus and third ventricle. A large hamartoma (> 20 mm) was de fined as giant HH (Type Ⅳ). Delalande *et al*[26] first reported on the use of endoscopic disconnection only for intraventricular

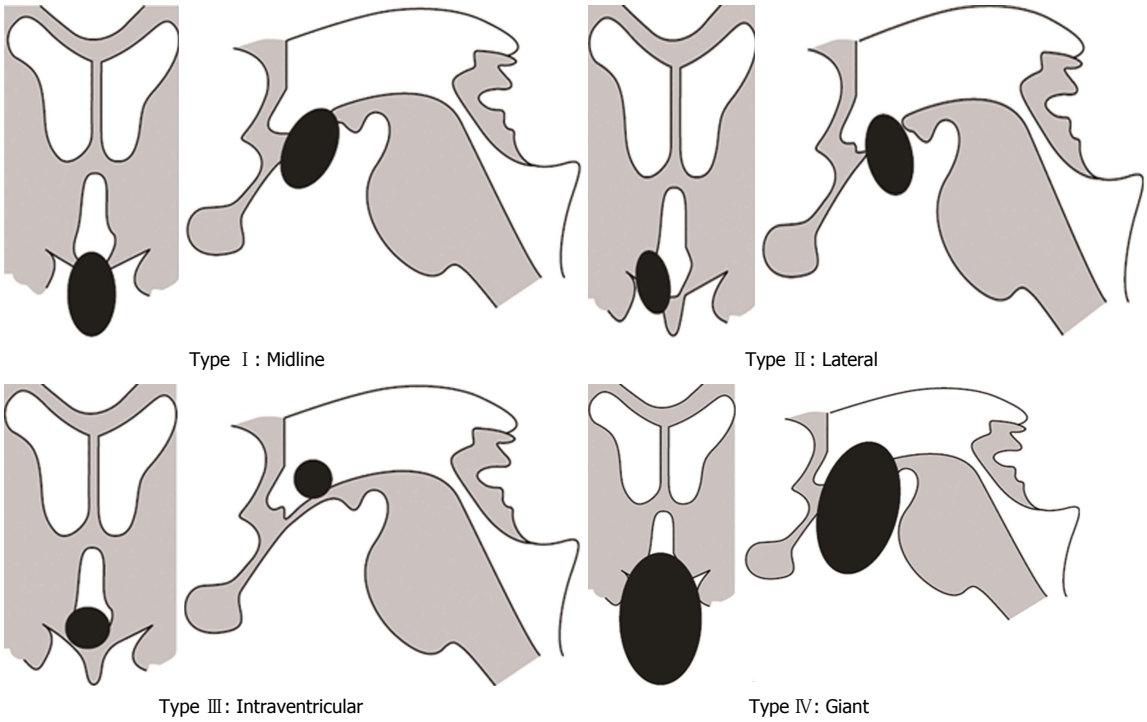


Figure 1 Classification of sessile hypothalamic hamartoma. (Modified by Choi *et al*[27] from that proposed by Delalande *et al*[26]). The hypothalamic hamartomas (HHs) were divided into four categories based on MRI findings demonstrating the relationship between the hamartoma and hypothalamus or the third ventricle. A large hamartoma (> 20 mm) was defined as a giant HH (Type Ⅳ). Small HHs (< 20 mm) were classified as midline (Type Ⅰ), lateral (Type Ⅱ), and intraventricular (Type Ⅲ) according to their relative location to the third ventricle. MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging.

type of hamartoma (Type Ⅲ) in 2003[3]. They also did endoscopic procedures in addition to conventional open surgery to treat other types of hamartoma. However, Choi *et al*[27] had tried endoscopic disconnection for Type Ⅰ, Type Ⅱ, and Type Ⅲ as the primary option of treatment and also used endoscopic surgery as an additional procedure for Type Ⅳ HH. Since Choi *et al*[27] suggested this approach Rekate *et al*[30] have found that most HHs within the third ventricle are excellent candidates for this type of excision[27,31]. Even the seizure returns redo endoscopic disconnection can be an effective rescue. Pati *et al*[32] reported their experience of repeat HHs surgery that they did re-endoscopic surgery for 8 of 21 patients and 50% of success rate.

Shim *et al*[25] (the authors' group) reported their experience with endoscopic disconnection in 11 patients in 2008. Six of 11 patients were seizure-free (Engel's class 1) immediately after surgery. Improvement in behavior was also noted in these patients after 2 mo. Outcome in three patients was class 2. In two other complicated cases which were treated with gamma knife surgery previously, seizure control was not satisfactory (class 3 or 4), but most cases showed complete resolution or a reduction of gelastic seizures. Procaccini *et al*[33] (the Delalande group) reported the results of 13 patients treated with frameless stereotactic endoscopic surgery in 2006[33]. Seizure-free recovery (Engel class 1) was achieved in 54% of the patients, and 46% of the patients showed improvement (Engel class 3). For the intraventricular type of HH, 90% of patients became seizure-free postoperatively. Ng *et al*[31] reported their experience with endoscopic removal in 44 patients based on early results. Ideal candidates for this surgery have been those with a lesion smaller than 1.5 cm in diameter. Patients with larger lesions also may be candidates as long as 6 mm of clearance is present to the top of the third ventricle. By the advance of high resolution of neuroimaging and technology of neuronavigation system the size of HHs might not be a critical point of decision for endoscopic surgery any more even though most of HHs patients have small ventricle[25,34]. In the Ng *et al*[31]'s report among 37 patients who underwent endoscopic resection 18 patients (48.6%) were seizure free at last follow-up (median 21 mo, range 13-28 mo). Seizures were reduced in 34 of 37 patients (91.9%)[30]. For giant HHs staged endoscopic disconnection becomes a one of the choice of treatment by the advent of neuronavigational neuroendoscope with high definition visualization system. The entry point, trajectory, and entry for small ventricle can be guided perfectly by this system. High definition visualization system can show a distinct cleft or indentation, the border of the HH attachment to the hypothalamus[25].

In Rekate's series, early complications occurred in 11 (25%) of 44 patients but resolved within 3 mo in all but three patients (6.8%), including one patient with postoperative hemiparesis and two patients with

short-term memory loss. Early complications included transient short-term memory loss, weight gain, thalamic infarction with memory loss, and hemiparesis[31,35]. Five of the 37 patients (13.5%) treated endoscopically experienced immediate short-term memory loss and permanent short term memory loss in 3 patients (8.2%) in endoscopic surgery group in Ng *et al*[31]'s series[30]. Choi *et al*[27] observed postoperative disconnection-like syndrome in three patients, which included mental dullness, verbal anomia, unilateral tactile anomia, and lack of somesthetic transfer. This disconnection-like syndrome disappeared spontaneously within 10 d. Even with multiple staging endoscopic disconnection the morbidity has been acceptable[25,32,36]. For minimizing complications proper trajectory directly to HHs, no anterior wiping motion of endoscope, not breaching arachnoid or pia mater keeping within third ventricle, and keep disconnection margin straight are very essential instructions. If the piarachnoid membrane was breached unilateral thalamic infarction can be resulted in about 30%[30]. However, many of these patients are so clinically and socially impaired that clinically significant damage to a mammillary body or fornix would not be evident. For this reason, it is reasonable to be more aggressive in pursuing resection or disconnection and in tolerating damage to relieve epilepsy in severely affected patients[36].

Although not all lesions are possibly deal with the endoscopic disconnection the feasibility of successful disconnection depends on a number of factors, including the plane and extent of attachment of the HH to the hypothalamus[37]. Some large lesions may require a multistep approach in which several disconnective procedures are used, or a combination of microsurgical resection and endoscopic disconnection. Larger lesion (> 15 mm) has been reported as an invincible with endoscopic disconnection. If you want to remove the HH completely, it will be nearly impossible with an HH that is over 1.5 cm. However, as we have reported, disconnection of the lesion from the brain is possible. The size of the lesion is not a major problem in disconnecting the lesion from the brain[25].

Open surgery with craniotomy

Multiple surgical approaches to the resection of HH have been described. Transbasal approaches with variations, such as the standard pterional approach, extended pterional approach with orbitotomy, and subfrontal approach, were reported but unfortunately many of these techniques were associated with high complication rates, including infarction of the internal capsule and thalamus, cranial nerve palsy (third nerve, olfactory nerve, and optic nerve), endocrinopathy, and memory loss. There also were difficulties in completely excising the lesion which extended into third ventricle[15,25,28]. Through these approaches, it was difficult or impossible to remove or disconnect the part of the mass that lay within the third ventricle, even after the lamina terminalis was opened[15]. The exposure is usually inadequate, and critical tissue borders are not readily apparent. Seizures were cured or reduced in 52% of patients undergoing approaches from below[6]. Delalande *et al*[26] introduced disconnecting surgical treatment for extraventricular HH in 2003. Dramatic improvement in 53% of those who underwent the procedure using pterional approach was reported. Two of 14 disconnection surgeries showed ischemic complications.

Rosenfeld *et al*[38] reported their experience with the transcallosal interforniceal approach in 2000[38,39]. Complete or nearly complete resection of HHs can be safely achieved *via* this approach with the possibility of seizure freedom and neurobehavioral improvement[39-41]. This approach can be used alone to treat large type Ⅱ and Ⅲ lesions. Many type Ⅳ lesions require a staged approach. If the lesion is entirely medial to the line of sight down the wall of each hypothalamus, then a large type Ⅲ or Ⅳ lesion can be disconnected during 1 operation[28,36]. Wait *et al*[36] described this approach at length.

Rosenfeld *et al*[21] reported complete or near total resection (> 95%) of HH in about 62% of the patients and 75%-95% resection was possible in about 24% of the patients. Harvey *et al*[42] reported that transcallosal resection of HH was effective treatment for intractable epilepsy, with 54%-76% of the patients being seizure-free or having a > 90% reduction in seizures. There also were improvements in behavior and cognition in 65%-88%. With univariate analysis, the likelihood of a seizure-free outcome correlated with younger age, shorter lifetime duration of epilepsy, smaller volume of HH, and total HH resection[42]. Postoperative complications were stroke, short-term memory disturbance, weight gain, diabetes insipidus, and other endocrine disturbances. Stroke is probably the result of injury of perforating vessels surrounding HH and short-term memory disturbance is due to surgical trauma of the septal, forniceal, or mammillary body. Five of the 37 patients (13.5%) treated endoscopically experienced immediate short-term memory loss, compared with 15 of 26 transcallosal patients (57.7%; $P = 0.7281$, Fishers exact test) in Ng *et al*[31]'s series[30] and permanent short term memory loss in 3 patients (8.2%) in endoscopic surgery group. Endocrinological morbidity is likely due to injury of neurovascular structure or pituitary stalk. Injuries to the optic tract and cranial nerve were rare with the transcallosal approach, but these injuries have been reported more with the traditional pterional and subfrontal approaches[43]. If the laterobasal approach is desired the orbitozygomatic approach should be preferred. Orbitozygomatic approach provides minimal brain retraction, maximum working space and light, and more favorable approach angle to HHs[44,45]. For lesions with ipsilateral attachment, the supraorbital eyebrow

approach may be sufficient[36]. Transcallosal anterior interforniceal approach used to resect HHs seems to be associated with a higher risk of postoperative memory difficulty than are approaches from below. The risk of endocrinological and hypothalamic damage may be higher, evidenced by diabetes insipidus, hypothyroidism, changes in appetite, decreased energy, and lethargy. This risk may reflect the potential for bilateral hypothalamic damage when approaching from above and midline compared with laterobasal access[40]. Potential long-term endocrinological deficits consist of permanent diabetes insipidus and hypothyroidism, which reported exclusively in patients after transcallosal anterior interforniceal approach approaches[40]. It is tremendously important to identify and follow the piarachnoid membrane 360° to disconnect HHs completely and avoid injury to critical structures, optic tract and perforating arteries of the basilar and posterior cerebral arteries. The overall rate of major permanent hypothalamic complications appeared to be slightly lower for the orbitozygomatic osteotomy group[40]. However there is a report for good cognitive outcomes with proper surgical resection for HHs of younger patients with relatively normal intelligence prior to surgery and shorter duration of epilepsy in case of no surgical complication[46].

Radiosurgery

Destruction of the HH lesion using focused ionizing radiation (gamma knife) is an attractive approach that does not require invasive surgery. Although a delayed (4-6 mo) response to gamma knife treatment is expected, early results suggest variable outcomes. Régis *et al*[47] reported excellent early seizure response. However, results in terms of long-term seizure freedom are not clear. The treatment goal of radiosurgery for HH is to deliver doses high enough to affect epileptogenesis without exceeding the tolerance of nearby critical structures. Modern radiosurgical devices such as Gamma Knife (Elekta AG), Cyber Knife (Accuray Inc.), and Novalis (BrainLab AG) can deliver conformal high-dose radiation with steep gradients providing a chance to achieve seizure freedom without hypothalamic or cranial nerve damage. Achievement of an excellent outcome following radiosurgery is related to the dose delivered. Régis *et al*[47] observed that four patients who received a peripheral dose of 18 Gy with the Gamma Knife became seizure free. Careful treatment planning and very tight dose distribution are essential to delivering similar doses without injuring the optic chiasm, optic tracts, pituitary stalk, fornices, mammillary bodies, and hypothalamic nuclei. The mean size of HH in a large series of radiosurgery was 19 mm in diameter, but radiosurgery can be accomplished in lesions smaller than 30 mm by using steep dose gradients around the target[47], while the size for ideal surgical candidate was reported less than 16 mm[48]. No serious complication has been reported with radiosurgery but temporary worsening of seizures can be seen as early as 2 mo after the procedure. Successful radiosurgical treatment of epileptogenic HHs was first reported in 1998 by Arita *et al*[22]. Régis *et al*[47] found a clear correlation between dose and efficacy; the marginal dose was > 17 Gy in all patients in whom seizure freedom was achieved and all patients who received < 13 Gy showed incomplete seizure control. Updated outcome of a large series (over 60 patients) by Régis *et al*[47] reported that thirty-one patients were evaluated for at least 3 years after radiosurgery; of these, satisfactory follow-up was available in 27. Only 10 (37%) of these 27 patients achieved seizure freedom; 6 others (22%) experienced a significant decrease in frequency of seizures[47]. The median prescribed marginal dose was 17 Gy (range 13-26 Gy). The authors judiciously used a beam blocking strategy to reduce the dose delivered to critical surrounding structures. However, in the other series in which doses ranging from 12 to 14 Gy were used, outcome of seizure control was variable[25,49].

Several other groups have reported their experience with GKS for treating intractable epilepsy related to HHs[25,50-56]. These studies demonstrate that GKS is an effective treatment modality for selected patients with HH-associated epilepsy. However, it is important to remember that, similar to the complications of microsurgical resection of the HH, radiosurgery can result in permanent neurological sequelae[57,58]. Also, there seems to be a dose-dependent response in which improved seizure control rates are attained with marginal doses > 16 Gy[59]. However, one of the main disadvantages is that clinical response can be very slow; the patient remains exposed to the risks of persistent seizures for up to 2 years after the radiosurgical procedure[60].

Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation

In 1999 Fukuda *et al*[61] reported on a single patient with HH treated by stereotactic radiofrequency thermocoagulation in the course of exploration with a depth electrode implanted within the lesion. Gelastic seizures ceased postoperatively and tonic seizures disappeared 4 mo later. Finally, this patient became seizure free within 14 mo. Kameyama *et al*[62] and Homma *et al*[63] reviewed results from 25 consecutive patients with HH and gelastic seizures who were treated with radiofrequency thermocoagulation. They divided HHs into 3 types based on coronal MRI findings: intrahypothalamic, parahypothalamic, and mixed type. Complete seizure freedom was seen in 19 (76%) of 25 patients over a mean follow-up of 2.3 years. Transient postoperative complications included hyperthermia, hyperphagia, hyponatremia, Horner syndrome, and short-term memory problems. Complications included low-grade fever (4 patients) and hyperphagia (2 patients) and occurred transiently as local hypothalamic symptoms. These transient symptoms resolved within

Table 1 Advantages and disadvantages between modalities

Treatment modality	Advantages	Disadvantages
Endoscopic surgery	Minimally invasive Low possibility to injure adjacent critical structures Critical tissue borders are readily apparent Relatively low complication even with Re-do surgery Relatively easy approach to the intrathird ventricular lesion	Multiple approaches for large HHs Dependent on surgeon's experience
Open surgery with craniotomy		
The standard pterional approach	The risk of endocrinological and hypothalamic damage may be lower than transcallosal approach	High complication rates Difficulties in completely excising the lesion which extended into third ventricle Inadequate exposure is usual Critical tissue borders are not readily apparent
Transcallosal interforniceal approach	Complete or nearly complete resection of HHs can be safely achieved *via* this approach Can be used alone to treat large HHs Injuries to the optic tract and cranial nerve were rare	Surgical trauma to the septal, forniceal, or mammillary body The risk of endocrinological and hypothalamic damage may be higher
Radiosurgery	Does not require invasive surgery Provide a chance to achieve seizure freedom without hypothalamic or cranial nerve damage	Delayed (4-6 mo) response Long-term seizure freedom are not clear Lesions smaller than 30 mm Dose-dependent response
Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation	Effective for a small hamartoma Immediate response	Effective for a small hamartoma Inexact volume of tissue ablation Multiple trajectories to treat larger hamartomas
Neuromodulation	No behavioral, endocrinological, or neurological side effects has been reported	No definite change in overall seizure frequency

HHs: Hypothalamic hamartomas.

1 wk after surgery after perifocal edema disappeared; no permanent complications were noted. All 10 patients who had behavior disturbances preoperatively showed complete resolution of their behavioral abnormalities following radiofrequency ablation.

This procedure seems to be effective for a small hamartoma but a long-term study of a large series will be necessary to con firm the efficacy and safety of this treatment[63-65]. The results with stereotactic radiofrequency ablation, unlike with stereotactic radiosurgery, can be seen immediately following the procedure. However, drawbacks of the technique include inexact volume of tissue ablation and the need for multiple trajectories to treat larger hamartomas, thereby adding to the risk of injury to the surrounding neurovascular structures compared with a single pass[25].

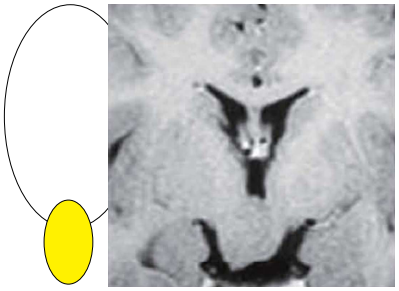
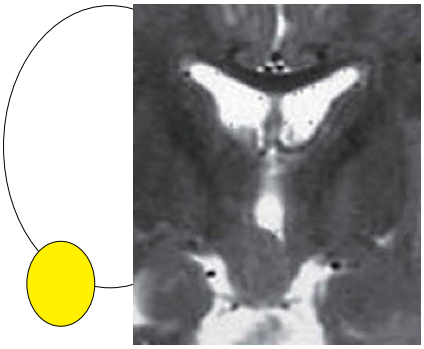
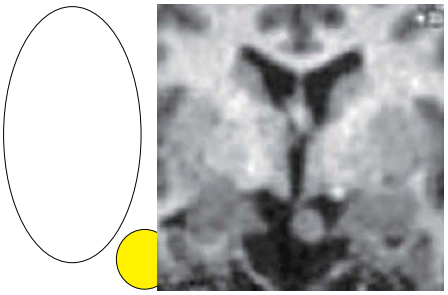
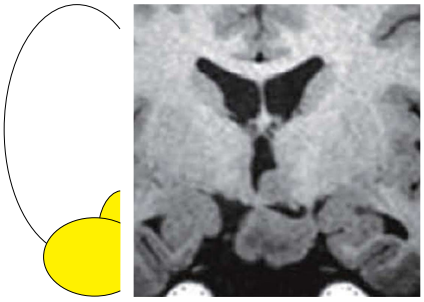
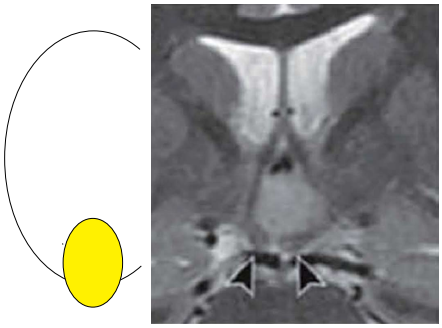
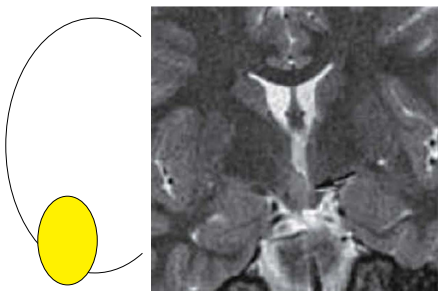
Neuromodulation

Deep brain stimulation and vagal nerve stimulation have tried to override epileptogenic activity from HHs[40,66-69]. No definite change in her overall seizure frequency (complex partial and gelastic seizures) as well as no behavioral, endocrinological, or neurological side effects has been reported. These palliative techniques are not effective in controlling gelastic seizures, and therefore have a very limited role in the treatment of patients with HH-associated gelastic seizures. Certainly, further work needs to be done to determine the role of these techniques in the treatment of epilepsy related to HHs.

Selection of the neurosurgical procedure to perform depends on the surgeon's preference and experience, but reasonable approaches can be selected according to the location, shape, and size of the HH. Possible treatment selections according to subdivided types of hypothalamic hamartoma are given in Figure 2, although treatment options can be different depending on the viewpoint of the surgeon[28].

No single approach is the best approach or is appropriate in all cases (Table 1). Adequate treatment requires individualization of the approach based on a patient's age and condition, on the anatomy of the HH, and on the surgeon's experience. It is becoming increasingly clear that a 1-stage approach to all HHs is probably inappropriate[36]. About 16% of patients required more than one procedure. By the nature and pathophysiology of HHs the complete disconnection from the surrounding structure and tracts which spread out its epileptogenic discharge to frontotemporal region will be enough to achieve the appropriate control of accompanying problems. If an HH can be disconnected completely from the hypothalamus, resection may not be necessary to eliminate seizures[4,30].

It is important to remember that a HH cannot be distinguished from normal hypothalamus under microsurgical view. Only the abnormal anatomy that it forms allows the surgeon to determine where to stop resection. Careful evaluation of the patient's preoperative MRI study and use of intraoperative stereotactic guidance

Type of hamartoma		Possible selection of treatment
Type Ⅰ midline		1 Radiosurgery 2 Endoscopic surgery 3 Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation
Type Ⅱ lateral Type ⅡA partially intraventricular		1 Radiosurgery 2 Endoscopic surgery 3 Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation
Type ⅡB totally extraventricular		1 Radiosurgery 2 Stereotaqctic radiolrequency ablation 3 Open craniotomy; pterional approach
Type ⅡC mixed		1 Endoscopic surgery + open craniotomy pterional 2 Staged radiosurgery
Type Ⅲ intraventricular Type ⅢA midline intraventricular		1 Endoscopic surgery 2 Open craniotomy; transcallosal approach
Type ⅢB lateral intraventricular		1 Endoscopic surgery 2 Open craniotomy; transcallosal approach

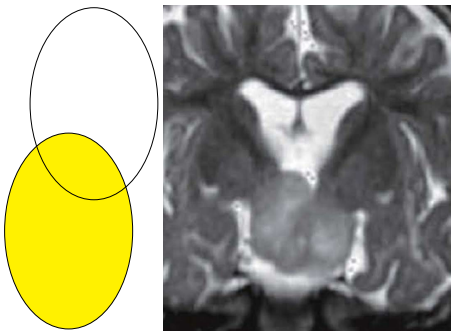


Figure 2 Possible treatments for subdivided types of hypothalamic hamartoma[28]. (Modification from Delalande *et al*[26]'s and Choi *et al*[27]'s classification).

help clarify the aforementioned limits of resection[36].

REFERENCES

1 **Gumpert J**, Hansotia P, Upton A. Gelastic epilepsy. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1970; **33**: 479-483 [PMID: 5505675]
2 **Gascon GG**, Lombroso CT. Epileptic (gelastic) laughter. *Epilepsia* 1971; **12**: 63-76 [PMID: 5282883]
3 **Berkovic SF**, Arzimanoglou A, Kuzniecky R, Harvey AS, Palmini A, Andermann F. Hypothalamic hamartoma and seizures: a treatable epileptic encephalopathy. *Epilepsia* 2003; **44**: 969-973 [PMID: 12823582]
4 **Kuzniecky R**, Guthrie B, Mountz J, Bebin M, Faught E, Gilliam F, Liu HG. Intrinsic epileptogenesis of hypothalamic hamartomas in gelastic epilepsy. *Ann Neurol* 1997; **42**: 60-67 [PMID: 9225686 DOI: 10.1002/ana.410420111]
5 **Munari C**, Kahane P, Francione S, Hoffmann D, Tassi L, Cusmai R, Vigevano F, Pasquier B, Betti OO. Role of the hypothalamic hamartoma in the genesis of gelastic fits (a video-stereo-EEG study). *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol* 1995; **95**: 154-160 [PMID: 7555906]
6 **Likavec AM**, Dickerman RD, Heiss JD, Liow K. Retrospective analysis of surgical treatment outcomes for gelastic seizures: a review of the literature. *Seizure* 2000; **9**: 204-207 [PMID: 10775517 DOI: 10.1053/seiz.1999.0352]
7 **Kahane P**, Di Leo M, Hoffmann D, Munari C. Ictal bradycardia in a patient with a hypothalamic hamartoma: a stereo-EEG study. *Epilepsia* 1999; **40**: 522-527 [PMID: 10219284]
8 **Arroyo S**, Santamaría J, Sanmartí F, Lomena F, Catafau A, Casamitjana R, Setoain J, Tolosa E. Ictal laughter associated with paroxysmal hypothalamopituitary dysfunction. *Epilepsia* 1997; **38**: 114-117 [PMID: 9024192]
9 **Cerullo A**, Tinuper P, Provini F, Contin M, Rosati A, Marini C, Cortelli P. Autonomic and hormonal ictal changes in gelastic seizures from hypothalamic hamartomas. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol* 1998; **107**: 317-322 [PMID: 9872433]
10 **Sturm JW**, Andermann F, Berkovic SF. "Pressure to laugh": an unusual epileptic symptom associated with small hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurology* 2000; **54**: 971-973 [PMID: 10690995]
11 **Striano S**, Striano P, Cirillo S, Nocerino C, Bilo L, Meo R, Ruosi P, Boccella P, Briganti F. Small hypothalamic hamartomas and gelastic seizures. *Epileptic Disord* 2002; **4**: 129-133 [PMID: 12105075]
12 **Valdueza JM**, Cristante L, Dammann O, Bentele K, Vortmeyer A, Saeger W, Padberg B, Freitag J, Herrmann HD. Hypothalamic hamartomas: with special reference to gelastic epilepsy and surgery. *Neurosurgery* 1994; **34**: 949-958; discussion 958 [PMID: 8084405]
13 **Arita K**, Ikawa F, Kurisu K, Sumida M, Harada K, Uozumi T, Monden S, Yoshida J, Nishi Y. The relationship between magnetic resonance imaging findings and clinical manifestations of hypothalamic hamartoma. *J Neurosurg* 1999; **91**: 212-220 [PMID: 10433309 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1999.91.2.0212]
14 **Paillas JE**, Roger J, Toga M, Soulayrol R, Salamon G, Dravet C, Bureau M. [Hamartoma of the hypothalamus. Clinical, radiological and histological study. Results of excision]. *Rev Neurol* (Paris) 1969; **120**: 177-194 [PMID: 4981043]
15 **Rekate HL**. Management of hypothalamic hamartomas: progress due to alignment of the stars. *Neurosurg Focus* 2011; **30**: Introduction [PMID: 21370583]
16 **Breningstall GN**. Gelastic seizures, precocious puberty, and hypothalamic hamartoma. *Neurology* 1985; **35**: 1180-1183 [PMID: 4022351]
17 **Berkovic SF**, Andermann F, Melanson D, Ethier RE, Feindel W, Gloor P. Hypothalamic hamartomas and ictal laughter: evolution of a characteristic epileptic syndrome and diagnostic value of magnetic resonance imaging. *Ann Neurol* 1988; **23**: 429-439 [PMID: 3389755 DOI: 10.1002/ana.410230502]
18 **Cascino GD**, Andermann F, Berkovic SF, Kuzniecky RI, Sharbrough FW, Keene DL, Bladin PF, Kelly PJ, Olivier A, Feindel W. Gelastic seizures and hypothalamic hamartomas: evaluation of patients undergoing chronic intracranial EEG monitoring and outcome of surgical treatment. *Neurology* 1993; **43**: 747-750 [PMID: 8469334]
19 **Palmini A**, Chandler C, Andermann F, Costa Da Costa J, Paglioli-Neto E, Polkey C, Rosenblatt B, Montes J, Martínez JV, Farmer JP, Sinclair B, Aronyk K, Paglioli E, Coutinho L, Raupp S, Portuguez M. Resection of the lesion in patients with hypothalamic hamartomas and catastrophic epilepsy. *Neurology* 2002; **58**: 1338-1347 [PMID: 12011278]
20 **Nishio S**, Morioka T, Fukui M, Goto Y. Surgical treatment of intractable seizures due to hypothalamic hamartoma. *Epilepsia* 1994; **35**: 514-519 [PMID: 8026396]
21 **Rosenfeld JV**, Harvey AS, Wrennall J, Zacharin M, Berkovic SF. Transcallosal resection of hypothalamic hamartomas, with control of seizures, in children with gelastic epilepsy. *Neurosurgery* 2001; **48**: 108-118 [PMID: 11152336]
22 **Arita K**, Kurisu K, Iida K, Hanaya R, Akimitsu T, Hibino S, Pant B, Hamasaki M, Shinagawa S. Subsidence of seizure induced by stereotactic radiation in a patient with hypothalamic hamartoma. Case report. *J Neurosurg* 1998; **89**: 645-648 [PMID: 9761061 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1998.89.4.0645]
23 **Régis J**, Bartolomei F, Hayashi M, Roberts D, Chauvel P, Peragut JC. The role of gamma knife surgery in the treatment of severe epilepsies. *Epileptic Disord* 2000; **2**: 113-122 [PMID: 10954243]
24 **Régis J**, Bartolomei F, de Toffol B, Genton P, Kobayashi T, Mori Y, Takakura K, Hori T, Inoue H, Schröttner O, Pendl G, Wolf A, Arita K, Chauvel P. Gamma knife surgery for epilepsy related to hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurosurgery* 2000; **47**: 1343-1351; discussion 1351-1352 [PMID: 11126905]
25 **Shim KW**, Chang JH, Park YG, Kim HD, Choi JU, Kim DS. Treatment modality for intractable epilepsy in hypothalamic hamartomatous lesions. *Neurosurgery* 2008; **62**: 847-856; discussion 856 [PMID: 18496191 DOI: 10.1227/01.neu.0000318170.82719.7c]
26 **Delalande O**, Fohlen M. Disconnecting surgical treatment of hypothalamic hamartoma in children and adults with refractory epilepsy and proposal of a new classification. *Neurol Med Chir* (Tokyo) 2003; **43**: 61-68 [PMID: 12627881]
27 **Choi JU**, Yang KH, Kim TG, Chang JH, Chang JW, Lee BI, Kim

DS. Endoscopic disconnection for hypothalamic hamartoma with intractable seizure. Report of four cases. *J Neurosurg* 2004; **100**: 506-511 [PMID: 15287464 DOI: 10.3171/ped.2004.100.5.0506]
28 **Choi JU**, Kim DS. Treatment modalities for intractable epilepsy in hypothalamic hamartoma. *Adv Tech Stand Neurosurg* 2012; **39**: 117-130 [PMID: 23250839 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-7091-1360-8_5]
29 **Boyko OB**, Curnes JT, Oakes WJ, Burger PC. Hamartomas of the tuber cinereum: CT, MR, and pathologic findings. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 1991; **12**: 309-314 [PMID: 1902033]
30 **Rekate HL**, Feiz-Erfan I, Ng YT, Gonzalez LF, Kerrigan JF. Endoscopic surgery for hypothalamic hamartomas causing medically refractory gelastic epilepsy. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2006; **22**: 874-880 [PMID: 16770620 DOI: 10.1007/s00381-006-0125-4]
31 **Ng YT**, Rekate HL, Prenger EC, Wang NC, Chung SS, Feiz-Erfan I, Johnsonbaugh RE, Varland MR, Kerrigan JF. Endoscopic resection of hypothalamic hamartomas for refractory symptomatic epilepsy. *Neurology* 2008; **70**: 1543-1548 [PMID: 18427070]
32 **Pati S**, Abla AA, Rekate HL, Ng YT. Repeat surgery for hypothalamic hamartoma in refractory epilepsy. *Neurosurg Focus* 2011; **30**: E3 [PMID: 21374831]
33 **Procaccini E**, Dorfmüller G, Fohlen M, Bulteau C, Delalande O. Surgical management of hypothalamic hamartomas with epilepsy: the stereoendoscopic approach. *Neurosurgery* 2006; **59**: ONS336-ONS344; discussion ONS344-ONS346 [PMID: 17041502 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000233900.06146.72]
34 **Ito E**, Fujii M, Hayashi Y, Zhengang J, Nagatani T, Saito K, Kishida Y, Mori K, Wakabayashi T. Magnetically guided 3-dimensional virtual neuronavigation for neuroendoscopic surgery: technique and clinical experience. *Neurosurgery* 2010; **66**: 342-353; discussion 353 [PMID: 20489524 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000369659.19479.AF]
35 **Lekovic GP**, Gonzalez LF, Feiz-Erfan I, Rekate HL. Endoscopic resection of hypothalamic hamartoma using a novel variable aspiration tissue resector. *Neurosurgery* 2006; **58**: ONS166-ONS169; discussion ONS166-ONS169 [PMID: 16543875 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000193512.87279.69]
36 **Wait SD**, Abla AA, Killory BD, Nakaji P, Rekate HL. Surgical approaches to hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurosurg Focus* 2011; **30**: E2 [PMID: 21374830]
37 **De Ribaupierre S**, Delalande O. Hemispherotomy and other disconnective techniques. *Neurosurg Focus* 2008; **25**: E14 [PMID: 18759615 DOI: 10.3171/FOC/2008/25/9/E14]
38 **Rosenfeld JV**, Freeman JL, Harvey AS. Operative technique: the anterior transcallosal transseptal interforniceal approach to the third ventricle and resection of hypothalamic hamartomas. *J Clin Neurosci* 2004; **11**: 738-744 [PMID: 15337137 DOI: 10.1016/j.jocn.2004.03.008]
39 **Freeman JL**, Harvey AS, Rosenfeld JV, Wrennall JA, Bailey CA, Berkovic SF. Generalized epilepsy in hypothalamic hamartoma: evolution and postoperative resolution. *Neurology* 2003; **60**: 762-767 [PMID: 12629230]
40 **Feiz-Erfan I**, Horn EM, Rekate HL, Spetzler RF, Ng YT, Rosenfeld JV, Kerrigan JF. Surgical strategies for approaching hypothalamic hamartomas causing gelastic seizures in the pediatric population: transventricular compared with skull base approaches. *J Neurosurg* 2005; **103**: 325-332 [PMID: 16270684 DOI: 10.3171/ped.2005.103.4.0325]
41 **Luo S**, Li C, Ma Z, Zhang Y, Jia G, Cheng Y. Microsurgical treatment for hypothalamic hamartoma in children with precocious puberty. *Surg Neurol* 2002; **57**: 356-362; discussion 362 [PMID: 12128318]
42 **Harvey AS**, Freeman JL, Berkovic SF, Rosenfeld JV. Transcallosal resection of hypothalamic hamartomas in patients with intractable epilepsy. *Epileptic Disord* 2003; **5**: 257-265 [PMID: 14975795]
43 **Ng YT**, Rekate HL, Prenger EC, Chung SS, Feiz-Erfan I, Wang NC, Varland MR, Kerrigan JF. Transcallosal resection of hypothalamic hamartoma for intractable epilepsy. *Epilepsia* 2006; **47**: 1192-1202 [PMID: 16886983 DOI: 10.1111/j.1528-1167.2006.00516.x]
44 **Lemole GM**, Henn JS, Zabramski JM, Spetzler RF. Modifications to the orbitozygomatic approach. Technical note. *J Neurosurg* 2003; **99**: 924-930 [PMID: 14609176 DOI: 10.3171/jns.2003.99.5.0924]
45 **Zabramski JM**, Kiriş T, Sankhla SK, Cabiol J, Spetzler RF. Orbitozygomatic craniotomy. Technical note. *J Neurosurg* 1998; **89**: 336-341 [PMID: 9688133 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1998.89.2.0336]
46 **Wethe JV**, Prigatano GP, Gray J, Chapple K, Rekate HL, Kerrigan JF. Cognitive functioning before and after surgical resection for hypothalamic hamartoma and epilepsy. *Neurology* 2013; **81**: 1044-1050 [PMID: 23946307 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e3182a4a3e3]
47 **Régis J**, Scavarda D, Tamura M, Nagayi M, Villeneuve N, Bartolomei F, Brue T, Dafonseca D, Chauvel P. Epilepsy related to hypothalamic hamartomas: surgical management with special reference to gamma knife surgery. *Childs Nerv Syst* 2006; **22**: 881-895 [PMID: 16807727 DOI: 10.1007/s00381-006-0139-y]
48 **Li CD**, Luo SQ, Tang J, Jia G, Ma ZY, Zhang YQ. Classification of hypothalamic hamartoma and prognostic factors for surgical outcome. *Acta Neurol Scand* 2014; **130**: 18-26 [PMID: 24382157 DOI: 10.1111/ane.12209]
49 **Schulze-Bonhage A**, Homberg V, Trippel M, Keimer R, Elger CE, Warnke PC, Ostertag C. Interstitial radiosurgery in the treatment of gelastic epilepsy due to hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurology* 2004; **62**: 644-647 [PMID: 14981188]
50 **Abla AA**, Shetter AG, Chang SW, Wait SD, Brachman DG, Ng YT, Rekate HL, Kerrigan JF. Gamma Knife surgery for hypothalamic hamartomas and epilepsy: patient selection and outcomes. *J Neurosurg* 2010; **113** Suppl: 207-214 [PMID: 21121803]
51 **Barajas MA**, Ramírez-Guzman MG, Rodríguez-Vázquez C, Toledo-Buenrostro V, Cuevas-Solórzano A, Rodríguez-Hernández G. Gamma knife surgery for hypothalamic hamartomas accompanied by medically intractable epilepsy and precocious puberty: experience in Mexico. *J Neurosurg* 2005; **102** Suppl: 53-55 [PMID: 15662781]
52 **Drees C**, Chapman K, Prenger E, Baxter L, Maganti R, Rekate H, Shetter A, Bobrowitz M, Kerrigan JF. Seizure outcome and complications following hypothalamic hamartoma treatment in adults: endoscopic, open, and Gamma Knife procedures. *J Neurosurg* 2012; **117**: 255-261 [PMID: 22680243 DOI: 10.3171/2012.5.JNS112256]
53 **Dunoyer C**, Ragheb J, Resnick T, Alvarez L, Jayakar P, Altman N, Wolf A, Duchowny M. The use of stereotactic radiosurgery to treat intractable childhood partial epilepsy. *Epilepsia* 2002; **43**: 292-300 [PMID: 11906515]
54 **Kida Y**, Yoshimoto M, Hasegawa T. [Radiosurgery of hypothalamic hamartomas]. *No Shinkei Geka* 2008; **36**: 225-232 [PMID: 18341011]
55 **Mathieu D**, Kondziolka D, Niranjan A, Flickinger J, Lunsford LD. Gamma knife radiosurgery for refractory epilepsy caused by hypothalamic hamartomas. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 2006; **84**: 82-87 [PMID: 16790990 DOI: 10.1159/000094036]
56 **Unger F**, Schröttner O, Feichtinger M, Bone G, Haselsberger K, Sutter B. Stereotactic radiosurgery for hypothalamic hamartomas. *Acta Neurochir Suppl* 2002; **84**: 57-63 [PMID: 12379005]
57 **Régis J**, Arkha Y, Yomo S, Bartolomei F, Peragut JC, Chauvel P. [Radiosurgery for drug-resistant epilepsies: state of the art, results and perspectives]. *Neurochirurgie* 2008; **54**: 320-331 [PMID: 18417166 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuchi.2008.02.016]
58 **Romanelli P**, Muacevic A, Striano S. Radiosurgery for hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurosurg Focus* 2008; **24**: E9 [PMID: 18447748 DOI: 10.3171/FOC/2008/24/5/E9]
59 **Quigg M**, Barbaro NM. Stereotactic radiosurgery for treatment of epilepsy. *Arch Neurol* 2008; **65**: 177-183 [PMID: 18268185 DOI: 10.1001/archneurol.2007.40]
60 **Mittal S**, Mittal M, Montes JL, Farmer JP, Andermann F. Hypothalamic hamartomas. Part 2. Surgical considerations and outcome. *Neurosurg Focus* 2013; **34**: E7 [PMID: 23724841 DOI: 10.3171/2013.3.FOCUS1356]
61 **Fukuda M**, Kameyama S, Wachi M, Tanaka R. Stereotaxy for hypothalamic hamartoma with intractable gelastic seizures: technical case report *Neurosurgery* 1999; **44**: 1347-1350 [PMID: 10371639]

62 **Kameyama S**, Murakami H, Masuda H, Sugiyama I. Minimally invasive magnetic resonance imaging-guided stereotactic radiofrequency thermocoagulation for epileptogenic hypothalamic hamartomas. *Neurosurgery* 2009; **65**: 438-449; discussion 449 [PMID: 19687687 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000348292.39252.B5]
63 **Homma J**, Kameyama S, Masuda H, Ueno T, Fujimoto A, Oishi M, Fukuda M. Stereotactic radiofrequency thermocoagulation for hypothalamic hamartoma with intractable gelastic seizures. *Epilepsy Res* 2007; **76**: 15-21 [PMID: 17643965 DOI: 10.1016/j.eplepsyres.2007.06.007]
64 **Fujimoto Y**, Kato A, Saitoh Y, Ninomiya H, Imai K, Hashimoto N, Kishima H, Maruno M, Yoshimine T. Open radiofrequency ablation for the management of intractable epilepsy associated with sessile hypothalamic hamartoma. *Minim Invasive Neurosurg* 2005; **48**: 132-135 [PMID: 16015488 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-830267]
65 **Parrent AG**. Stereotactic radiofrequency ablation for the treatment of gelastic seizures associated with hypothalamic hamartoma. Case report. *J Neurosurg* 1999; **91**: 881-884 [PMID: 10541251 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1999.91.5.0881]
66 **Khan S**, Wright I, Javed S, Sharples P, Jardine P, Carter M, Gill SS. High frequency stimulation of the mamillothalamic tract for the treatment of resistant seizures associated with hypothalamic hamartoma. *Epilepsia* 2009; **50**: 1608-1611 [PMID: 19243422 DOI: 10.1111/j.1528-1167.2008.01995.x]
67 **Marras CE**, Rizzi M, Villani F, Messina G, Deleo F, Cordella R, Franzini A. Deep brain stimulation for the treatment of drug-refractory epilepsy in a patient with a hypothalamic hamartoma. Case report. *Neurosurg Focus* 2011; **30**: E4 [PMID: 21284450 DOI: 10.3171/2010.11.FOCUS10241]
68 **Murphy JV**, Wheless JW, Schmoll CM. Left vagal nerve stimulation in six patients with hypothalamic hamartomas. *Pediatr Neurol* 2000; **23**: 167-168 [PMID: 11020644]
69 **Brandberg G**, Raininko R, Eeg-Olofsson O. Hypothalamic hamartoma with gelastic seizures in Swedish children and adolescents. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol* 2004; **8**: 35-44 [PMID: 15023373 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejpn.2003.10.003]

P- Reviewer: Sarica FB **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.75

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 75-81
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Impact of circulating tumor cells in colorectal cancer patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery

Jung-Jyh Hung, Chun-Chi Lin, Shung-Haur Yang, Wei-Shone Chen

Jung-Jyh Hung, Division of Thoracic Surgery, Department of Surgery, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei 112, Taiwan
Jung-Jyh Hung, Chun-Chi Lin, Shung-Haur Yang, Wei-Shone Chen, Division of Surgery, School of Medicine, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei 112, Taiwan
Chun-Chi Lin, Shung-Haur Yang, Wei-Shone Chen, Division of Colon and Rectal Surgery, Department of Surgery, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei 112, Taiwan
Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manscript.
Conflict-of-interest: None.

Correspondence to: Wei-Shone Chen, MD, PhD, Division of Surgery, School of Medicine, National Yang-Ming University, No 201, Sec 2, Shih-Pai Rd 11217, Taipei 112, Taiwan. wschen@vghtpe.gov.tw
Telephone: +886-2-28757499
Fax: +886-2-28732267
Received: September 27, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: November 14, 2014
Revised: December 15, 2014
Accepted: January 9, 2015
Article in press: January 12, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Laparoscopic surgery has recently been widely used for various benign colorectal diseases as well as colorectal cancer. Although laparoscopic surgery has been shown to be with similar prognostic results for certain groups of colorectal cancer patients. The influence of laparoscopic procedures on the oncologist results, especially free tumor cell spreading is still a concern for some surgeons. Tumor cells found in the peripheral blood of patients with cancer are termed circulating tumor cells (CTCs). Presence of CTCs in the peripheral blood of patients with colorectal cancer has been reported to be associated with disease stage, poor prognosis, tumor progression, response to therapy, and drug resistance. Whether laparoscopic procedure enhances tumor spreading during operation remains unknown. Significantly less CTC detected during laparoscopic surgery than open surgery for colorectal cancer has been reported. In our previous experience, no significant elevation in CTC level was found in most patients during laparoscopic resection of colorectal cancer. We have shown that laparoscopic surgery had no significantly deleterious effect on CTCs in colorectal cancer patients. In this review, we aim at the impact of CTCs in patients with colorectal cancer undergoing laparoscopic surgery. The prognostic significance of CTCs in patients with colorectal cancer will also be addressed.

Key words: Laparoscopic surgery; Circulating tumor cell; Prognosis; Colorectal cancer

Core tip: Although laparoscopic surgery has been widely used for various benign colorectal diseases as well as colorectal cancer, the influence of this procedure on the tumor cell spreading is still unknown. The level of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) in patients with cancer has been reported to be significant prognostic and predictive factors. Whether laparoscopic procedure enhances tumor spreading during operation remains unknown. Significantly less CTC detected during laparoscopic surgery than open surgery for colorectal cancer has been reported. In our previous experience, we have shown that laparoscopic surgery had no significantly deleterious effect on CTCs in colorectal cancer patients.

Hung JJ, Lin CC, Yang SH, Chen WS. Impact of circulating tumor cells in colorectal cancer patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 75-81 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/75.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.75

INTRODUCTION

Laparoscopic surgery has been widely adapted for various benign colorectal conditions[1,2] and now increasingly for colorectal cancer[3] since the first series of laparoscopic colectomy was reported in 1991[4]. Laparoscopic colorectal surgery has the benefits of less postoperative pain, early return of bowel function, improved cosmetic results and equivalent oncologic outcome as compared with open surgery. Therefore, laparoscopic techniques for colorectal cancer surgery are increasingly widespread use and have been regarded as therapeutic option for colorectal cancer. Port site recurrence[5-8], which was considered to be a drawback of laparoscopic cancer surgery, is no more a great concern after the use of protection device; however, the free tumor cell spreading either through the homogenous route or intra-peritoneal cavity during the pneumoperitoneal procedure is still a concern of laparoscopic surgery in cancer patient. Tumor cells found in the peripheral blood of patients diagnosed with cancer are termed circulating tumor cells (CTCs). CTCs were first identified by Ashworth[9] in 1869. Presence of CTCs in the peripheral blood of patients with colorectal cancer has been reported to be associated with poor prognosis, tumor progression and drug resistance[10-12]. This review aims at the prognostic significance of CTCs in patients with colorectal cancer. The impact of CTCs in laparoscopic surgery for patients with colorectal cancer will also be addressed.

LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY FOR COLORECTAL CANCER

Although the aforementioned clinical benefits of laparoscopic surgery, long-term survival and the disease-free interval after surgery are the main concerns adapting the techniques for colorectal cancer. Equivalent intermediate and long-term outcomes of patient survival and tumor recurrence after laparoscopic surgery as compared to open surgery in colorectal cancer have been reported in the literature[13-16], including randomized controlled clinical trials[3,17-21]. The Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy Group[3,20], the report by Leung *et al*[19] and MRC CLASSICC[21] showed that overall survival rate and cancer recurrent rate were similar between laparoscopic surgery and open surgery. In the study by Lacy *et al*[18], cancer-related mortality was lower in patients with stage Ⅲ disease who underwent laparoscopic surgery. There was no significant difference identified in patients with Stage Ⅰ and Ⅱ disease between laparoscopic surgery and open surgery in this trial[18]. Meta-analysis of these randomized controlled trials showed no significant difference in recurrence-free survival and long-term survival between laparoscopic and open surgery[22,23]. For rectal cancer, similar long-term local control and cancer-free survival between laparoscopic surgery and open surgery have been reported in a retrospective comparative study[24]. Long-term outcomes after resection of rectal cancer in CLASICC trail showed that there was no difference in survival, disease-free survival, and local and distant recurrence between laparoscopic surgery and open surgery groups[21,25,26].

CIRCULATING TUMOR CELLS

CTCs are rare in blood and bone marrow. Although CTCs have been identified more than a century[9], CTC-related research did not proceed rapidly until recently due to the lack of sensitive methods to detect these rare cells. CTCs are occurring approximately at the frequency of 1 CTC per 10^5-10^7 peripheral blood mononuclear cells[27-30]. Recent advances in technology make the detection of CTCs from a simple blood test possible[31], including quantitative reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), flow cytometry, immunomagnetic techniques, assays based on molecular phenotyping, *etc*.[32-36]. In principle, these methods can be divided into nucleic-acid-based (*i.e.,* mRNA transcripts evaluated by RT-PCR) and cytometric (*i.e.,* immunocytochemistry, immunofluorescence and flow cytometry) approaches[33,37,38]. The nucleic-acid-based approach is highly sensitive, and quantitative RT-PCR permits relative quantification[33,37]. However, the disadvantage is that cells cannot be visualized directly for enumeration or morphology determination[33,37]. The advantage of cytometric approach is that cells can be directly visualized by immunocytochemistry or immunofluorescence[33,37]. Therefore, CTCs enumeration and morphology evaluation are possible. The disadvantage is that the sensitivity is moderate and epithelial-cell adhesion molecule negative cells may be missed[33,37]. The comparison between the two main approaches for detecting CTCs was listed in Table 1. For RT-PCR approach, both single marker and multiple markers have been used. Due to tumor heterogeneity, the use of multiple marker assay may have higher CTC yield as compared with single marker assay[33,37]. Targeting CTCs directly in vivo and the development of leukapheresis and elutriation for subsequent *ex vivo* CTC analyses are alternative approaches to improve CTC yield[33,37].

The prognostic significance of CTC enumeration has been reported in breast cancer[39,40], prostate cancer[41], lung cancer[42], and colorectal cancer[43,44]. CTC number has also been reported to be associated with radiological outcome in breast cancer[45] and colorectal cancer[46]. Furthermore, the application of CTC number is now extending beyond prognostication. Due to the progress in characterization of molecular profiles in CTCs, the

Table 1 Comparisons of the two main approaches for detection of circulating tumor cells

Approaches	Cell viability	Sensitivity	Specificity	Disadvantages
Nucleic-acid-based approach (*i.e.*, RT-PCR)	No	High	Low	Cytological analysis is not possible Cells cannot be visualized
Cytometric approach (*i.e.*, immunocytochemistry, immunofluorescence and flow cytometry)	Yes	Low	High	EpCAM dependent

RT-PCR: Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction; EpCAM: Epithelial-cell adhesion molecule.

predictive value of response to therapy and drug resistance has been demonstrated. Expression of HER2 in CTCs may be used as a biomarker for treatment of HER2-receptor antagonists in patients with breast cancer[47]. Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations can also be detected from CTCs in patients with lung cancer[48-50], and can be used as a predictive biomarker for treatment with EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors[49]. The convenience of real-time biopsy of CTCs contributes a lot to the development of CTC-guided anticancer therapies and personalized medicine.

PROGNOSTIC IMPACT OF CTC IN COLORECTAL CANCER

Prognostic significance of CTC detection in stage Ⅰ-Ⅲ colorectal cancer

Detection of CTCs has been shown to correlate with the stage of colorectal cancer[11,51,52]. Sastre *et al*[52] showed that stage was the only clinicopathological factor significantly associated with CTC level. The presence of CTCs in the peripheral blood of patients with stage Ⅰ-Ⅳ colorectal cancer has been reported to be associated with poor relapse-free survival and overall survival in a meta-analysis[12]. Several studies have demonstrated the prognostic significance of CTCs in patients with staged Ⅰ-Ⅲ colorectal cancer[53-60]. In a review article, Peach *et al*[58] evaluated the effect of sampling time on prognostic value of CTCs in patients with early stage colorectal cancer. There was no significant difference in detection rate at different sampling time (peri-/early or late postoperative). The presence of CTCs in peripheral blood at least 24 h after resection was a significant prognostic factor for recurrence and poor cancer-specific survival[58]. However, perioperative CTC level was not a significant predictor of recurrence[58].

Prognostic significance of CTC detection in metastatic colorectal cancer

The presence of CTCs in blood has been reported to be associated with worse progression-free survival and overall survival in colorectal cancer patients with metastatic disease[43,44,46,61-64]. Cohen *et al*[43] first demonstrated the predictive significance of CTCs in 430 patients with metastatic colorectal cancer receiving first, second and third lines of chemotherapy. CTC levels correlated not only with worse progression-free survival and overall survival, but with worse outcome for all treatment types. Their study showed that CTCs level can be used as both prognostic and predictive biomarkers[43,44]. In a multicenter phase Ⅲ trial (CAIRO2 trial) of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer who received first-line treatment with capecitabine, oxaliplatin, and bevacizumab ± weekly cetuximab, the CTC count before and during treatment independently predicts progression-free survival and overall survival[46]. In a study of 64 patients receiving oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy for metastatic colorectal cancer, patients with ⩾ 3 CTC at baseline and at 2 and 8-12 wk had a shorter median progression-free survival and overall survival than those with < 3 CTC[64]. No rise in early CTC level was observed among responders to chemotherapy[64]. In a prospective study of 180 metastatic colorectal cancer patients who received first line XELOX (capecitabine and oxaliplatin) with or without bevacizumab, the CTC count is a strong prognostic factor for progression-free survival and overall survival[63].

IMPACT OF CTC IN LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY FOR COLORECTAL CANCER

CTC in laparoscopic surgery for primary colorectal cancer

Animal studies have shown that tumor cells shed into the circulation during resection of primary tumor, thus may increase the possibility of metastases[65]. Ito *et al*[66] demonstrated a significantly higher mean CEA mRNA value in postoperative blood than in preoperative blood by using real-time RT-PCR to detect CTC in peripheral blood of colorectal cancer patients. Their results suggest that tumor cells could be shed into the bloodstream during surgical procedures, and these free tumor cells are accompanied by a poor patient outcome[66]. Weitz *et al*[67] reported that increased intraoperative levels of CTCs were significantly associated with tumor recurrence in colorectal cancer patients. Clearance of CTCs within 24 h of colorectal cancer resection occurred in tumors with the best prognosis[68,69]. Whether laparoscopic surgery inadvertently facilitates tumor spread in colorectal cancer patients remains unknown. Several animal experiments have shown that pneumoperitoneum may enhance tumor growth or tumor cells dissemination[70-72]. However, Lécuru *et al*[73] demonstrated that CO_2 laparoscopy had no deleterious effect on circulating tumor DNA in xenograft ovarian cancer model. To evaluate the potential for tumor cell dissemination at time of curative

Table 2 Relationship between postoperative circulating free tumor cells and status of freedom from recurrence in patients of colorectal cancer undergoing laparoscopic surgery (n = 42)

	No recurrence	With recurrence	*P* value
Post-operative free CTC levels			
≤ 100/10^6 NBCs	28 (82.4%)	2 (25.0%)	0.001
> 100/10^6 NBCs	6 (17.6%)	6 (75.0%)	

CTC: Circulating tumor cell; NBC: Nucleated blood cell.

surgery, Wind *et al*[74] detected and quantified CTCs in peripheral and portal blood of patients who had open or laparoscopic surgery for primary colonic cancer. The detection rate and quantity of CTC were significantly increased intra-operatively and were significantly higher in portal blood compared to peripheral blood[74]. Significantly less CTC were detected during laparoscopic surgery than open surgery[74]. In our previous study[75], we examined the impact of laparoscopic manipulation on circulating CTCs by detecting the guanylyl cyclase C mRNA using real-time RT-PCR in 42 colorectal cancer patients undergoing laparoscopic resections. Quantitation of CTCs was performed preoperatively, intra-operatively, and 14 d after operation. Although there was a trend toward increased CTC level in patients of advanced stage, there was no significant difference in the preoperative CTC level by disease stage. No elevation in CTC level was found during the laparoscopic procedure in most patients, as compared with their preoperative CTC values. We also detected a marginal decrease in CTC level after removing the tumor during laparoscopy, which was sustained at 14 d after surgery. Among the 42 patients, elevated CTC level during the operation was identified in 6 patients. The CTC level concentration returned to undetectable levels or fewer than 100 CTCs/10^6 nucleated blood cells within 14 d after surgery in all the 6 patients. The return of CTC levels was similar to other studies that clearance of CTCs most commonly occurred within 24 h after operation[68,69,76]. Twelve of the 42 patients with persistently high CTC levels (> 100 CTCs/10^6 nucleated blood cells) 2 wk after surgery had significantly poor cancer-related survival when compared with those with undetectable or low CTC levels (≤ 100 CTCs/10^6 nucleated blood cells). Tumor recurrence or metastasis developed in eight patients during follow-up. Persistent high CTC levels at 14 d postoperatively were found in six of these eight patients. The percentage of recurrence in patients with high CTC levels was significantly higher that that in those with low or undetectable CTC levels (P = 0.001) (Table 2). According to our previous published report[75], laparoscopic procedure itself had no significantly deleterious effect on CTCs in colorectal cancer patients.

CTC in laparoscopic surgery for liver metastasis of colorectal cancer

Patients undergoing resection of hepatic metastases of colorectal cancer have a higher risk for extrahepatic tumor recurrence. Weitz *et al*[67] reported that resection of liver metastasis of colorectal cancer carries an increased risk for intraoperative tumor cell dissemination as compared with resection of primary colorectal cancer by detecting CTCs in blood and bone marrow samples[67]. One possible reason is that extensive manipulation of the liver and liver metastases was usually performed before venous drainage ligation[67]. Koch *et al*[69] demonstrated the prognostic value of CTCs in pre-, intra-, and postoperative blood and bone marrow samples of patients who underwent curative resection of liver metastasis of colorectal cancer. Multivariate analysis demonstrated that tumor cell detection in intraoperative blood and in bone marrow samples were significant prognostic factors of tumor relapse[69]. Jiao *et al*[77] determined the CTC level before and immediately after open surgery, laparoscopic resection, open/percutaneous radiofrequency ablation (RFA), in 29 patients with liver metastasis of colorectal cancer. Open liver resection was performed in 11 patients, laparoscopic liver resection in 4, open RFA in 5, and percutaneous RFA in 9. CTCs were localized to the hepatic portosystemic macrocirculation with significantly greater numbers than in the systemic circulation. Surgical procedures led to a statistically significant fall in CTCs at multiple sites measured. Conversely, RFA, either open or percutaneous, was associated with a significant increase in CTCs. Only 4 patients underwent laparoscopic resection in their study. Therefore, the difference between open and laparoscopic surgery was not conclusive. Several other reports also demonstrated that open surgery was superior to RFA for patients of liver metastasis of colorectal cancer[78,79]. Whether CTC was enhanced during laparoscopic surgical procedure for liver metastasis of colorectal cancer and lead to tumor growth and tumor cell dissemination needs further investigation.

CONCLUSION

The level of CTCs in the peripheral blood of patients with colorectal cancer is significantly associated with disease stage, poor prognosis, response to therapy, and drug resistance. It can be used as both prognostic and predictive factors. We have shown that laparoscopic surgery had no significantly deleterious effect on CTCs in colorectal cancer patients. Due to the limited references in the literature, the impact of laparoscopic procedure for colorectal cancer in CTC level and tumor spreading needs further investigation.

REFERENCES

1 **Tomita H**, Marcello PW, Milsom JW. Laparoscopic surgery of the colon and rectum. *World J Surg* 1999; **23**: 397-405 [PMID: 10030864 DOI: 10.1007/PL00012315]

2 **Liberman MA**, Phillips EH, Carroll BJ, Fallas M, Rosenthal R. Laparoscopic colectomy vs traditional colectomy for diverticulitis.

Outcome and costs. *Surg Endosc* 1996; **10**: 15-18 [PMID: 8711597 DOI: 10.1007/s004649910002]
3 **Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy Study Group**. A comparison of laparoscopically assisted and open colectomy for colon cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 2050-2059 [PMID: 15141043 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa032651]
4 **Jacobs M**, Verdeja JC, Goldstein HS. Minimally invasive colon resection (laparoscopic colectomy). *Surg Laparosc Endosc* 1991; **1**: 144-150 [PMID: 1688289]
5 **Wexner SD**, Latulippe J. Laparoscopic colorectal surgery and cancer. *Dig Surg* 1998; **15**: 117-123 [PMID: 9845573 DOI: 10.1159/000018604]
6 **Tseng LN**, Berends FJ, Wittich P, Bouvy ND, Marquet RL, Kazemier G, Bonjer HJ. Port-site metastases. Impact of local tissue trauma and gas leakage. *Surg Endosc* 1998; **12**: 1377-1380 [PMID: 9822460 DOI: 10.1007/s004649900862]
7 **Lacy AM**, Delgado S, García-Valdecasas JC, Castells A, Piqué JM, Grande L, Fuster J, Targarona EM, Pera M, Visa J. Port site metastases and recurrence after laparoscopic colectomy. A randomized trial. *Surg Endosc* 1998; **12**: 1039-1042 [PMID: 9685538 DOI: 10.1007/s004649900776]
8 **Stocchi L**, Nelson H. Wound recurrences following laparoscopic-assisted colectomy for cancer. *Arch Surg* 2000; **135**: 948-958 [PMID: 10922258 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.135.8.948]
9 **Ashworth TR**. A case of cancer in which cells similar to those in the tumours were seen in the blood after death. *Aust Med J* 1869; **14**: 146-149
10 **Hiraiwa K**, Takeuchi H, Hasegawa H, Saikawa Y, Suda K, Ando T, Kumagai K, Irino T, Yoshikawa T, Matsuda S, Kitajima M, Kitagawa Y. Clinical significance of circulating tumor cells in blood from patients with gastrointestinal cancers. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 3092-3100 [PMID: 18766405 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0122-9]
11 **Cohen SJ**, Alpaugh RK, Gross S, O'Hara SM, Smirnov DA, Terstappen LW, Allard WJ, Bilbee M, Cheng JD, Hoffman JP, Lewis NL, Pellegrino A, Rogatko A, Sigurdson E, Wang H, Watson JC, Weiner LM, Meropol NJ. Isolation and characterization of circulating tumor cells in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2006; **6**: 125-132 [PMID: 16945168 DOI: 10.3816/CCC.2006.n.029]
12 **Rahbari NN**, Aigner M, Thorlund K, Mollberg N, Motschall E, Jensen K, Diener MK, Büchler MW, Koch M, Weitz J. Meta-analysis shows that detection of circulating tumor cells indicates poor prognosis in patients with colorectal cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 1714-1726 [PMID: 20100481 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.01.008]
13 **Bruch HP**, Esnaashari H, Schwandner O. Current status of laparoscopic therapy of colorectal cancer. *Dig Dis* 2005; **23**: 127-134 [PMID: 16352892 DOI: 10.1159/000088594]
14 **Leung KL**, Yiu RY, Lai PB, Lee JF, Thung KH, Lau WY. Laparoscopic-assisted resection of colorectal carcinoma: five-year audit. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 327-332; discussion 332-333 [PMID: 10223751 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236347]
15 **Lujan HJ**, Plasencia G, Jacobs M, Viamonte M, Hartmann RF. Long-term survival after laparoscopic colon resection for cancer: complete five-year follow-up. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 491-501 [PMID: 12006931]
16 **Lumley J**, Stitz R, Stevenson A, Fielding G, Luck A. Laparoscopic colorectal surgery for cancer: intermediate to long-term outcomes. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 867-872; discussion 872-875 [PMID: 12130871 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6318-6]
17 **Guillou PJ**, Quirke P, Thorpe H, Walker J, Jayne DG, Smith AM, Heath RM, Brown JM. Short-term endpoints of conventional versus laparoscopic-assisted surgery in patients with colorectal cancer (MRC CLASICC trial): multicentre, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1718-1726 [PMID: 15894098 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)66545-2]
18 **Lacy AM**, García-Valdecasas JC, Delgado S, Castells A, Taurá P, Piqué JM, Visa J. Laparoscopy-assisted colectomy versus open colectomy for treatment of non-metastatic colon cancer: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 2224-2229 [PMID: 12103285 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)09290-5]
19 **Leung KL**, Kwok SP, Lam SC, Lee JF, Yiu RY, Ng SS, Lai PB, Lau WY. Laparoscopic resection of rectosigmoid carcinoma: prospective randomised trial. *Lancet* 2004; **363**: 1187-1192 [PMID: 15081650 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)15947-3]
20 **Fleshman J**, Sargent DJ, Green E, Anvari M, Stryker SJ, Beart RW, Hellinger M, Flanagan R, Peters W, Nelson H. Laparoscopic colectomy for cancer is not inferior to open surgery based on 5-year data from the COST Study Group trial. *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 655-662; discussion 662-664 [PMID: 17893502 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318155a762]
21 **Jayne DG**, Guillou PJ, Thorpe H, Quirke P, Copeland J, Smith AM, Heath RM, Brown JM. Randomized trial of laparoscopic-assisted resection of colorectal carcinoma: 3-year results of the UK MRC CLASICC Trial Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 3061-3068 [PMID: 17634484 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.09.7758]
22 **Reza MM**, Blasco JA, Andradas E, Cantero R, Mayol J. Systematic review of laparoscopic versus open surgery for colorectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2006; **93**: 921-928 [PMID: 16845692 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5430]
23 **Bonjer HJ**, Hop WC, Nelson H, Sargent DJ, Lacy AM, Castells A, Guillou PJ, Thorpe H, Brown J, Delgado S, Kuhrij E, Haglind E, Påhlman L. Laparoscopically assisted vs open colectomy for colon cancer: a meta-analysis. *Arch Surg* 2007; **142**: 298-303 [PMID: 17372057 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.142.3.298]
24 **Laurent C**, Leblanc F, Wütrich P, Scheffler M, Rullier E. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer: long-term oncologic results. *Ann Surg* 2009; **250**: 54-61 [PMID: 19561481 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181ad6511]
25 **Jayne DG**, Thorpe HC, Copeland J, Quirke P, Brown JM, Guillou PJ. Five-year follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of laparoscopically assisted versus open surgery for colorectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2010; **97**: 1638-1645 [PMID: 20629110 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.7160]
26 **Inomata M**, Yasuda K, Shiraishi N, Kitano S. Clinical evidences of laparoscopic versus open surgery for colorectal cancer. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2009; **39**: 471-477 [PMID: 19556338 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyp063]
27 **Paterlini-Brechot P**, Benali NL. Circulating tumor cells (CTC) detection: clinical impact and future directions. *Cancer Lett* 2007; **253**: 180-204 [PMID: 17314005 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2006.12.014]
28 **Tibbe AG**, Miller MC, Terstappen LW. Statistical considerations for enumeration of circulating tumor cells. *Cytometry A* 2007; **71**: 154-162 [PMID: 17200956 DOI: 10.1002/cyto.a.20369]
29 **Torino F**, Bonmassar E, Bonmassar L, De Vecchis L, Barnabei A, Zuppi C, Capoluongo E, Aquino A. Circulating tumor cells in colorectal cancer patients. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2013; **39**: 759-772 [PMID: 23375250 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2012.12.007]
30 **Lim SH**, Becker TM, Chua W, Caixeiro NJ, Ng WL, Kienzle N, Tognela A, Lumba S, Rasko JE, de Souza P, Spring KJ. Circulating tumour cells and circulating free nucleic acid as prognostic and predictive biomarkers in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Lett* 2014; **346**: 24-33 [PMID: 24368189 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2013.12.019]
31 **Pantel K**, Brakenhoff RH. Dissecting the metastatic cascade. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2004; **4**: 448-456 [PMID: 15170447 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1370]
32 **Dotan E**, Cohen SJ, Alpaugh KR, Meropol NJ. Circulating tumor cells: evolving evidence and future challenges. *Oncologist* 2009; **14**: 1070-1082 [PMID: 19897536 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2009-0094]
33 **Alunni-Fabbroni M**, Sandri MT. Circulating tumour cells in clinical practice: Methods of detection and possible characterization. *Methods* 2010; **50**: 289-297 [PMID: 20116432 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymeth.2010.01.027]
34 **Bednarz-Knoll N**, Alix-Panabières C, Pantel K. Clinical relevance and biology of circulating tumor cells. *Breast Cancer Res* 2011; **13**: 228 [PMID: 22114869 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2940]
35 **Allen JE**, El-Deiry WS. Circulating Tumor Cells and Colorectal Cancer. *Curr Colorectal Cancer Rep* 2010; **6**: 212-220 [PMID: 20890370 DOI: 10.1007/s11888-010-0069-7]
36 **Balic M**, Lin H, Williams A, Datar RH, Cote RJ. Progress in

circulating tumor cell capture and analysis: implications for cancer management. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2012; **12**: 303-312 [PMID: 22468820 DOI: 10.1586/erm.12.12]

37 **Pantel K**, Brakenhoff RH, Brandt B. Detection, clinical relevance and specific biological properties of disseminating tumour cells. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2008; **8**: 329-340 [PMID: 18404148 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2375]

38 **Miller S**, Steele S. Novel molecular screening approaches in colorectal cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2012; **105**: 459-467 [PMID: 22441897 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21704]

39 **Hayes DF**, Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Miller MC, Matera J, Allard WJ, Doyle GV, Terstappen LW. Circulating tumor cells at each follow-up time point during therapy of metastatic breast cancer patients predict progression-free and overall survival. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 4218-4224 [PMID: 16857794 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-2821]

40 **Cristofanilli M**, Hayes DF, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Reuben JM, Doyle GV, Matera J, Allard WJ, Miller MC, Fritsche HA, Hortobagyi GN, Terstappen LW. Circulating tumor cells: a novel prognostic factor for newly diagnosed metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 1420-1430 [PMID: 15735118 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.08.140]

41 **de Bono JS**, Scher HI, Montgomery RB, Parker C, Miller MC, Tissing H, Doyle GV, Terstappen LW, Pienta KJ, Raghavan D. Circulating tumor cells predict survival benefit from treatment in metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 6302-6309 [PMID: 18829513 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-0872]

42 **Hou JM**, Greystoke A, Lancashire L, Cummings J, Ward T, Board R, Amir E, Hughes S, Krebs M, Hughes A, Ranson M, Lorigan P, Dive C, Blackhall FH. Evaluation of circulating tumor cells and serological cell death biomarkers in small cell lung cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy. *Am J Pathol* 2009; **175**: 808-816 [PMID: 19628770 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2009.090078]

43 **Cohen SJ**, Punt CJ, Iannotti N, Saidman BH, Sabbath KD, Gabrail NY, Picus J, Morse M, Mitchell E, Miller MC, Doyle GV, Tissing H, Terstappen LW, Meropol NJ. Relationship of circulating tumor cells to tumor response, progression-free survival, and overall survival in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 3213-3221 [PMID: 18591556 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.15.8923]

44 **Cohen SJ**, Punt CJ, Iannotti N, Saidman BH, Sabbath KD, Gabrail NY, Picus J, Morse MA, Mitchell E, Miller MC, Doyle GV, Tissing H, Terstappen LW, Meropol NJ. Prognostic significance of circulating tumor cells in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2009; **20**: 1223-1229 [PMID: 19282466 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdn786]

45 **Budd GT**, Cristofanilli M, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Borden E, Miller MC, Matera J, Repollet M, Doyle GV, Terstappen LW, Hayes DF. Circulating tumor cells versus imaging--predicting overall survival in metastatic breast cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 6403-6409 [PMID: 17085652 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-1769]

46 **Tol J**, Koopman M, Miller MC, Tibbe A, Cats A, Creemers GJ, Vos AH, Nagtegaal ID, Terstappen LW, Punt CJ. Circulating tumour cells early predict progression-free and overall survival in advanced colorectal cancer patients treated with chemotherapy and targeted agents. *Ann Oncol* 2010; **21**: 1006-1012 [PMID: 19861577 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdp463]

47 **Meng S**, Tripathy D, Shete S, Ashfaq R, Haley B, Perkins S, Beitsch P, Khan A, Euhus D, Osborne C, Frenkel E, Hoover S, Leitch M, Clifford E, Vitetta E, Morrison L, Herlyn D, Terstappen LW, Fleming T, Fehm T, Tucker T, Lane N, Wang J, Uhr J. HER-2 gene amplification can be acquired as breast cancer progresses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 9393-9398 [PMID: 15194824 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0402993101]

48 **Sequist LV**, Nagrath S, Toner M, Haber DA, Lynch TJ. The CTC-chip: an exciting new tool to detect circulating tumor cells in lung cancer patients. *J Thorac Oncol* 2009; **4**: 281-283 [PMID: 19247082 DOI: 10.1097/JTO.0b013e3181989565]

49 **Maheswaran S**, Sequist LV, Nagrath S, Ulkus L, Brannigan B, Collura CV, Inserra E, Diederichs S, Iafrate AJ, Bell DW, Digumarthy S, Muzikansky A, Irimia D, Settleman J, Tompkins RG, Lynch TJ, Toner M, Haber DA. Detection of mutations in EGFR in circulating lung-cancer cells. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 366-377 [PMID: 18596266 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0800668]

50 **Nagrath S**, Sequist LV, Maheswaran S, Bell DW, Irimia D, Ulkus L, Smith MR, Kwak EL, Digumarthy S, Muzikansky A, Ryan P, Balis UJ, Tompkins RG, Haber DA, Toner M. Isolation of rare circulating tumour cells in cancer patients by microchip technology. *Nature* 2007; **450**: 1235-1239 [PMID: 18097410 DOI: 10.1038/nature06385]

51 **Cristofanilli M**, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Matera J, Miller MC, Reuben JM, Doyle GV, Allard WJ, Terstappen LW, Hayes DF. Circulating tumor cells, disease progression, and survival in metastatic breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 781-791 [PMID: 15317891 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa040766]

52 **Sastre J**, Maestro ML, Puente J, Veganzones S, Alfonso R, Rafael S, García-Saenz JA, Vidaurreta M, Martín M, Arroyo M, Sanz-Casla MT, Díaz-Rubio E. Circulating tumor cells in colorectal cancer: correlation with clinical and pathological variables. *Ann Oncol* 2008; **19**: 935-938 [PMID: 18212090 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdm583]

53 **Uen YH**, Lu CY, Tsai HL, Yu FJ, Huang MY, Cheng TL, Lin SR, Wang JY. Persistent presence of postoperative circulating tumor cells is a poor prognostic factor for patients with stage I-III colorectal cancer after curative resection. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 2120-2128 [PMID: 18481151 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-9961-7]

54 **Garrigós N**, Gallego J, Guillén-Ponce C, Guaraz P, García-Bautista M, Castillejo A, Gómez-Martínez A, Carrato A, Rodríguez-Lescure A, Soto JL. Circulating tumour cell analysis as an early marker for relapse in stage II and III colorectal cancer patients: a pilot study. *Clin Transl Oncol* 2010; **12**: 142-147 [PMID: 20156783 DOI: 10.1007/S12094-010-0479-7]

55 **Koyanagi K**, Bilchik AJ, Saha S, Turner RR, Wiese D, McCarter M, Shen P, Deacon L, Elashoff D, Hoon DS. Prognostic relevance of occult nodal micrometastases and circulating tumor cells in colorectal cancer in a prospective multicenter trial. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 7391-7396 [PMID: 19010855 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-0290]

56 **Allen-Mersh TG**, McCullough TK, Patel H, Wharton RQ, Glover C, Jonas SK. Role of circulating tumour cells in predicting recurrence after excision of primary colorectal carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2007; **94**: 96-105 [PMID: 17058316 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5526]

57 **Koch M**, Kienle P, Kastrati D, Antolovic D, Schmidt J, Herfarth C, von Knebel Doeberitz M, Weitz J. Prognostic impact of hematogenous tumor cell dissemination in patients with stage II colorectal cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2006; **118**: 3072-3077 [PMID: 16425256 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.21784]

58 **Peach G**, Kim C, Zacharakis E, Purkayastha S, Ziprin P. Prognostic significance of circulating tumour cells following surgical resection of colorectal cancers: a systematic review. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **102**: 1327-1334 [PMID: 20389297 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605651]

59 **Lloyd JM**, McIver CM, Stephenson SA, Hewett PJ, Rieger N, Hardingham JE. Identification of early-stage colorectal cancer patients at risk of relapse post-resection by immunobead reverse transcription-PCR analysis of peritoneal lavage fluid for malignant cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 417-423 [PMID: 16428481 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-1473]

60 **Steinert R**, Hantschick M, Vieth M, Gastinger I, Kühnel F, Lippert H, Reymond MA. Influence of subclinical tumor spreading on survival after curative surgery for colorectal cancer. *Arch Surg* 2008; **143**: 122-128 [PMID: 18283136 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2007.49]

61 **Groot Koerkamp B**, Rahbari NN, Büchler MW, Koch M, Weitz J. Circulating tumor cells and prognosis of patients with resectable colorectal liver metastases or widespread metastatic colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 2156-2165 [PMID: 23456317 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-2907-8]

62 **Aggarwal C**, Meropol NJ, Punt CJ, Iannotti N, Saidman BH, Sabbath KD, Gabrail NY, Picus J, Morse MA, Mitchell E, Miller

MC, Cohen SJ. Relationship among circulating tumor cells, CEA and overall survival in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2013; **24**: 420-428 [PMID: 23028040 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds336]

63 **Sastre J**, Maestro ML, Gómez-España A, Rivera F, Valladares M, Massuti B, Benavides M, Gallén M, Marcuello E, Abad A, Arrivi A, Fernández-Martos C, González E, Tabernero JM, Vidaurreta M, Aranda E, Díaz-Rubio E. Circulating tumor cell count is a prognostic factor in metastatic colorectal cancer patients receiving first-line chemotherapy plus bevacizumab: a Spanish Cooperative Group for the Treatment of Digestive Tumors study. *Oncologist* 2012; **17**: 947-955 [PMID: 22643538 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2012-0048]

64 **Matsusaka S**, Suenaga M, Mishima Y, Kuniyoshi R, Takagi K, Terui Y, Mizunuma N, Hatake K. Circulating tumor cells as a surrogate marker for determining response to chemotherapy in Japanese patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *Cancer Sci* 2011; **102**: 1188-1192 [PMID: 21401804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2011.01926.x]

65 **Nishizaki T**, Matsumata T, Kanematsu T, Yasunaga C, Sugimachi K. Surgical manipulation of VX2 carcinoma in the rabbit liver evokes enhancement of metastasis. *J Surg Res* 1990; **49**: 92-97 [PMID: 2359299 DOI: 10.1016/0022-4804(90)90116-J]

66 **Ito S**, Nakanishi H, Hirai T, Kato T, Kodera Y, Feng Z, Kasai Y, Ito K, Akiyama S, Nakao A, Tatematsu M. Quantitative detection of CEA expressing free tumor cells in the peripheral blood of colorectal cancer patients during surgery with real-time RT-PCR on a LightCycler. *Cancer Lett* 2002; **183**: 195-203 [PMID: 12065095 DOI: 10.1016/S0304-3835(02)00157-X]

67 **Weitz J**, Koch M, Kienle P, Schrödel A, Willeke F, Benner A, Lehnert T, Herfarth C, von Knebel Doeberitz M. Detection of hematogenic tumor cell dissemination in patients undergoing resection of liver metastases of colorectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2000; **232**: 66-72 [PMID: 10862197 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200007000-00010]

68 **Patel H**, Le Marer N, Wharton RQ, Khan ZA, Araia R, Glover C, Henry MM, Allen-Mersh TG. Clearance of circulating tumor cells after excision of primary colorectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2002; **235**: 226-231 [PMID: 11807362 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200202000-00010]

69 **Koch M**, Kienle P, Hinz U, Antolovic D, Schmidt J, Herfarth C, von Knebel Doeberitz M, Weitz J. Detection of hematogenous tumor cell dissemination predicts tumor relapse in patients undergoing surgical resection of colorectal liver metastases. *Ann Surg* 2005; **241**: 199-205 [PMID: 15650626 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000151795.15068.27]

70 **Chen WS**, Lin W, Kou YR, Kuo HS, Hsu H, Yang WK. Possible effect of pneumoperitoneum on the spreading of colon cancer tumor cells. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 791-797 [PMID: 9221854 DOI: 10.1007/BF02055434]

71 **Tomita H**, Marcello PW, Milsom JW, Gramlich TL, Fazio VW. CO2 pneumoperitoneum does not enhance tumor growth and metastasis: study of a rat cecal wall inoculation model. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 1297-1301 [PMID: 11584203 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234787]

72 **Ishida H**, Hashimoto D, Nakada H, Takeuchi I, Hoshino T, Murata N, Idezuki Y, Hosono M. Increased insufflation pressure enhances the development of liver metastasis in a mouse laparoscopy model: possible mechanisms. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 331-335 [PMID: 11967691 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-001-8318-0]

73 **Lécuru FR**, Agostini AF, Coulet FP, Robin FP, Aggerbeck MS, Jaïs JP, Guilbaud NR, Laurent-Puig PF, Blanc B. Effect of pneumoperitoneum on circulating tumor DNA. *Anticancer Res* 2001; **21**: 2029-2032 [PMID: 11497293]

74 **Wind J**, Tuynman JB, Tibbe AG, Swennenhuis JF, Richel DJ, van Berge Henegouwen MI, Bemelman WA. Circulating tumour cells during laparoscopic and open surgery for primary colonic cancer in portal and peripheral blood. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 942-950 [PMID: 19153024 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2008.12.003]

75 **Chen WS**, Chung MY, Liu JH, Liu JM, Lin JK. Impact of circulating free tumor cells in the peripheral blood of colorectal cancer patients during laparoscopic surgery. *World J Surg* 2004; **28**: 552-557 [PMID: 15366744 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-004-7276-9]

76 **Fidler IJ**. Metastasis: guantitative analysis of distribution and fate of tumor embolilabeled with 125 I-5-iodo-2'-deoxyuridine. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1970; **45**: 773-782 [PMID: 5513503]

77 **Jiao LR**, Apostolopoulos C, Jacob J, Szydlo R, Johnson N, Tsim N, Habib NA, Coombes RC, Stebbing J. Unique localization of circulating tumor cells in patients with hepatic metastases. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 6160-6165 [PMID: 19884529 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.24.5837]

78 **Gleisner AL**, Choti MA, Assumpcao L, Nathan H, Schulick RD, Pawlik TM. Colorectal liver metastases: recurrence and survival following hepatic resection, radiofrequency ablation, and combined resection-radiofrequency ablation. *Arch Surg* 2008; **143**: 1204-1212 [PMID: 19075173 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.143.12.1204]

79 **Eisele RM**, Neumann U, Neuhaus P, Schumacher G. Open surgical is superior to percutaneous access for radiofrequency ablation of hepatic metastases. *World J Surg* 2009; **33**: 804-811 [PMID: 19184639 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-008-9905-1]

P- Reviewer: Yoshida N **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.82

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 82-98
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Prevention and management of fractured instruments in endodontic treatment

Wei-Rong Tang, Roger J Smales, Hui-Feng Chen, Xiao-Yu Guo, Hai-Yan Si, Li-Ming Gao, Wen-Biao Zhou, You-Nong Wu

Wei-Rong Tang, Li-Ming Gao, Wen-Biao Zhou, Department of Stomatology, Yancheng Hospital of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Yancheng 224001, Jiangsu Province, China
Roger J Smales, Hui-Feng Chen, Xiao-Yu Guo, Hai-Yan Si, You-Nong Wu, Jiangsu Key Laboratory of Oral Diseases, Department of Endodontics, Affiliated Hospital of Stomatology, Nanjing Medical University, Nanjing 210029, Jiangsu Province, China
Roger J Smales, School of Dentistry, Faculty of Health Sciences, The University of Adelaide, Adelaide 5005, Australia
Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this publication.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: You-Nong Wu, DDS, MSc, PhD, Professor, Jiangsu Key Laboratory of Oral Diseases, Department of Endodontics, Affiliated Hospital of Stomatology, Nanjing Medical University, 140 Han Zhong Road, Nanjing 210029, Jiangsu Province, China. sdbywynb@163.com
Telephone: +86-25-85031861
Fax: +86-25-85031861
Received: September 26, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: November 27, 2014
Revised: December 25, 2014
Accepted: January 9, 2015
Article in press: January 12, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Intracanal instrument fracture is an unpredictable and problematic occurrence that can prevent adequate cleaning and shaping procedures and influence the prognosis of endodontic treatment. The prevalence of instrument fracture is reported to range between 0.28% and 16.2%. This article presents an overview of the prevention and management of instruments fractured during endodontic therapy on the basis of literature retrieved from PubMed and selected journal searches. Instrument fracture occurs because of reduced metal fatigue and/or torsional resistance. The reasons include canal morphology and curvature, manufacturing processes and instrument design, instrument use times and technique, rotational speeds and operator experience. With the development of various equipment and techniques, most of the retained instrument separations can be removed safely. However, in canals without associated periapical disease not every fractured separation should be removed from difficult locations because of the increased risk for root perforation and fracture. In difficult cases, either retain or bypass the fragment in the root canal and ensure regular follow-up reviews. Fractured instruments retained in the presence of periapical disease reduce significantly the prognosis of endodontically treated teeth, indicating a greater need to attempt the removal or bypass of the file separations. Apical surgery might be required in some instances, emphasizing the importance of preventing instrument fracture.

Key words: Endodontics; Instrument fracture; Root canal preparation; Prevention; Management

Core tip: It is important to prevent the potential adverse consequences that may follow the fracture of endodontic instruments during root canal preparation. Nickel-titanium engine-driven rotary instruments are more prone to fracture than stainless steel hand

instruments, but the risks may be reduced by avoiding multiple use of instruments, by careful operative techniques, in particular with small-sized instruments used in sharply curved root canals, by employing reciprocating hand-pieces and by selecting instruments having high torsional and fatigue resistance.

Tang WR, Smales RJ, Chen HF, Guo XY, Si HY, Gao LM, Zhou WB, Wu YN. Prevention and management of fractured instruments in endodontic treatment. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 82-98 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/82.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.82

INTRODUCTION

Intracanal instrument fracture with separation is often an unpredictable and problematic occurrence that can prevent adequate root canal cleaning and shaping and adversely affect the prognosis of endodontic treatment. The prevalence and incidence of such fractures vary widely among different studies, and fracture not uncommon in the mesiobuccal root canals of molar teeth. Decisions to remove or bypass fractured instrument separations from root canals should be weighed against the necessity to do so, the time involved and the possible adverse iatrogenic complications that might occur. Care taken in the prevention of instrument fracture is preferable to managing the consequences of fracture.

Publications in PubMed were initially searched for by using the key words "instrument separation", "instrument broken", "removal" and "prevention". Further articles were obtained from references listed in the publications and related articles and from hand searching selected journals.

PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE OF INSTRUMENT FRACTURE

The occurrence of intracanal instrument fracture is reported to range widely between 0.28% and 16.20%[1-8]. In a 5-year retrospective study involving postgraduate students the overall prevalence of instrument fracture among 1367 patients (2180 endodontic cases, 4897 root canals) during root canal preparation was found to be 1.83% (40/2180 cases)[1]. Among 1682 instruments collected over 16 mo, the prevalence of fracture was 5% with the lowest fracture rate being 3% for K3 (SybronEndo, Orange, CA, United States) stainless steel (SS) hand instruments[2]. In a student clinic, during a 10-year period (1997-2006) the overall incidence of instrument fracture in 3854 root-filled teeth was 1.0% at the tooth level[3]. Over 1 year, among 1235 patients (1403 teeth, 3181 canals) from a clinical practice, the incidence of fracture for ProFile (Dentsply-Maillefer, Ballaigues, Switzerland), ProTaper (Dentsply Maillefer), GTRotary (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities, Tulsa, OK, United States) and K3Endo (SybronEndo) nickel-titanium (NiTi) rotary files was 0.28%, 0.41%, 0.39% and 0.52%, respectively[4]. A 4-year retrospective study of 3706 ProFile instruments reported a fracture rate of 0.3%[5]. In a large retrospective study, the incidence of Mtwo (VDW GmbH, Munich, Germany) NiTi rotary instrument separation was 2.2% according to the number of teeth (11306), and 1.0% according to the number of root canals (24108)[6]. In another 1-year study, the fracture incidence was 16.02% among 593 discarded Mtwo instruments after clinical use[7]. Over a 2-year period, 3543 canals were treated during which 46 LightSpeed (LightSpeed Technology, Inc., San Antonio, TX, United States) NiTi rotary instruments separated and were found to be non-retrievable, resulting in a separation rate of 1.30%[8]. A survey from Tehran reported that the most prevalent NiTi instrument failure fault was "intra-canal file fracture" (88.5%) among all procedural faults[9].

The prevalence and incidence of intracanal instrument fractures is difficult to determine, being reported variously (Table 1) at the tooth and/or canal level in disparate studies having very different designs and populations. The determination is compounded by such factors as differences in tooth location and operative difficulties and experience of the operators. Hence, the very wide range reported in literature for the occurrence of intracanal instrument fracture.

PREVENTION OF INSTRUMENT FRACTURE

The endodontic management of intracanal instrument fracture is often difficult and risky, and not all canals and teeth can be managed successfully. Hence, prevention of such fractures is important, requiring an understanding of factors contributing to instrument fracture to reduce the likelihood of file separation within the root canal. Iatrogenic mishaps have been associated with factors such as canal curvature and patency, instrument design and manufacturing process, instrument use times and metal alloy fatigue, hand-piece torque and rotational speed, and operator technique and experience[21]. Prevention of instrument fracture will be investigated as follows.

Canal morphology

It is important to assess the many variations in root and root-canal morphology before initiating any endodontic treatment[22]. Plotino *et al*[23] stated that the shape of an artificial root canal influenced the trajectory of the intracanal instrument. Differences in shape were reflected by the number of cycles to failure (NCF) measured for the same instrument in different artificial root canals, and by the impact of the type of

Table 1 The prevalence and incidence of files separation at different studies

Year	Ref.	Instrument	*n*	Level	Location	Separation
1997	Ramirez-Salomon *et al*[10]	LightSpeed	162	Canals	Molars	3.7%
			52	Teeth	Molars	11.5%
2000	Sattapan *et al*[11]	Quantec Series 2000	378	Files	Tooth	21%
2003	Al-Fouzan *et al*[12]	Profile	1457	Canals	Molars	1.4%
			419	Teeth	Molars	5%
2003	Hülsmann *et al*[13]	Quantec Sc	50	Canals	Molars	6%
			25	Teeth	Molars	12%
		LightSpeed	50	Canals	Molars	10%
			25	Teeth	Molars	20%
2004	Ankrum *et al*[14]	Profile	59	Files	Molars	1.7%
		Protaper	84	Files	Molars	6.0%
		K3 Endo	48	Files	Molars	2.1%
2006	Troian *et al*[15]	RaCe	50	Canals	Artificial	12%
		K3	50	Canals	Artificial	0%
2006	Iqbal *et al*[16]	Hand and rotary instrument	10237	Canals	Tooth	0.09%
			4116	Teeth	Tooth	0.22%
		Hand only	1801	Canals	Tooth	0.17%
			749	Teeth	Tooth	0.40%
		Rotary instrument	10237	Canals	Tooth	0.67%
			4116	Teeth	Tooth	1.68%
2006	Di Fiore *et al*[4]	Profile	2476	Files	Tooth	0.28%
		Protaper	1689	Files	Tooth	0.41%
		GTRotary	771	Files	Tooth	0.39%
		K3Endo	1725	Files	Tooth	0.52%
2006	Knowles *et al*[8]	LightSpeed	3543	Canals	Tooth	1.30%
2009	Inan *et al*[7]	Mtwo	593	Files	Tooth	16.2%
2009	Shen *et al*[2,5]	Profile	3706	Files	Tooth	0.3%
		Protaper	1895	Files	Tooth	0.26%
		Protaper for hand use	280	Files	Tooth	2.9%
		K3	294	Files	Tooth	3%
2011	Wu *et al*[17]	Protaper	6154	Canals	Tooth	1.1%
			2654	Teeth	Tooth	2.6%
2013	Gu *et al*[18]	Protaper	2061	Files	Tooth	28.2%
2014	Plotino *et al*[19]	Reciproc	3780	Canals	Tooth	0.21%
			1696	Files	Tooth	0.47%
2014	Labaf *et al*[20]	Hero642	233	Canals	Simulated	4.75%
		FlexMaster	92	Canals	Simulated	3.92%
		Mtwo	152	Canals	Simulated	6.33%
2014	Wang *et al*[6]	Mtwo	24108	Canals	Tooth	1.0%
			11036	Teeth	Tooth	2.2%
2014	Ungerechts *et al*[3]	Hand instruments	3854	Teeth	Tooth	1.0%

canal on both the NCF and fragment length. Lopes *et al*[24] indicated that significantly lower NCF values were observed for instruments tested in canals with the smallest root curvature radius, the longest arc and the arc located in the middle portion of the canal. Tzanetakis *et al*[1] reported that the prevalence of instruments fractured in the apical third (52.5%) was significantly higher when compared with the middle (27.5%) and coronal (12.5%) thirds of the canals. Instrument fracture occurred significantly more often in molars and in teeth rated as difficult preoperatively[3,25]. Di Fiore *et al*[4] found that instruments fractured in anterior teeth was 0.28%, in premolars 1.56% and in molars 2.74%, which appeared to be related to the increasingly complexity of canal morphology. Some 39.5% of fractured instruments were located in the mesiobuccal canals of molars and 76.5% of the fragments were located apically, while a significantly high percentage of instruments of small apical diameters (sizes 006-015) fractured in relatively straight root canals[3].

In conclusion, premolar and molar teeth, and the apical third of small-diameter and curved canals in particular are prone to cause instrument fracture separation.

Root canal curvature angle: The *in vitro* time to failure significantly decreased and the cyclic fatigue life increased as the angles of root canal curvature increased[26,27]. The abruptness of root canal curvature negatively influenced the failure rate of ProFile rotary instruments[28]. Rotary FlexMaster instruments, with a cross-section similar to a triangle with convex sides, are suitable for preparing curved root canals with the balanced-force technique[29]. These instruments provided results similar to LightSpeed rotary instruments, featured a noncutting pilot tip, a small cutting head and a smooth non-tapering shaft with a minimal risk

of instrument fracture, but an increased risk of root-canal transportation[29,30]. Kim *et al*[31] found that the "minimally invasive instrumentation" design of the Self-Adjusting File (ReDent-Nova, Ra'anana, Israel) may produce minimal stress concentrations in the apical root dentin during shaping of the curved canal. The calculated stress values from the ProTaper Universal F1 (Dentsply-Maillefer) and ProFile size 20/0.06 files were approximately 8 to 10 times larger than that of the Self-Adjusting File. Kitchens *et al*[32] reported that increasing the angle (25°, 28° and 33.5°) at which the ProFile instrument was rotated, decreased the number of rotations to fracture for the 0.04- and 0.06-tapers. The 0.04-taper ProFile was more affected by an increase in the angle than the 0.06-taper. Kramkowski *et al*[30] compared the torsional stress and cyclic fatigue characteristics of ProFile GT (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities) and ProFile GT Series X (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities) for root canals of 45° and 60° degree curvatures. For the 60° canal curvatures, ProFile GT was found to be significantly more resistant to cyclic fatigue fracture than ProFile GT Series X for file sizes 30/0.06, 20/0.06 and 30/0.04 ($P \leqslant 0.005$).

The greater the degree of root canal curvature, then the easier the instrument will fracture. Apart from possible root canal transportation, Rotary FlexMaster, LightSpeed and Self-Adjusting File instruments are suitable to prepare curved root canals. However, the risk of any instrument fracturing increases with the severity of canal curvature.

Root canal curvature radius: Haïkel *et al*[33] tested three engine-driven NiTi rotary instruments, using ProFile, Hero (Micro-Mega, Besancon, France) and Quantec (McSpadden, NT Co., Inc., Chattanooga, TN), in root canals with 5- and 10-mm radii of curvature. Radius of canal curvature was considered as the most significant factor in determining the fatigue resistance of the files. As the radius decreased, then the time to fracture also decreased. One other study compared the cyclic fatigue resistance of each size (S1, S2, F1, F2 and F3) of ProTaper NiTi rotary files in artificial canals also with 5- and 10-mm radii of curvature. The 5-mm radius group had significantly fewer cycles to fracture than the 10-mm radius group for all file sizes[34]. Azimi *et al*[35] investigated the fatigue and fracture modes of RaCe (FKG Dentaire, La-Chaux de Fonds, Switzerland) rotary instruments, which are designed to constantly switch the helix angles of the blades as they rotate inside root canals, and ProTaper instruments used by rotating the files 30° or 60°. Again, both file types exhibited significantly less resistance to fracture when the radius of canal curvature was reduced from 5 mm to 2 mm.

These *in vitro* studies all demonstrated that the risk of instrument fracture increases as the radius of canal curvature decreases.

Preparation instruments

The prevalence of SS hand and NiTi rotary instrument fractures by postgraduate students was reported as 0.55% and 1.33%, respectively[1]. SS instruments usually deform before they fracture, unlike NiTi instruments that do not show visual signs of deformation before fracture[36]. It was observed that SS files had a significantly greater occurrence of failure in clockwise rotation, whereas NiTi files had a significantly greater occurrence of failure in counterclockwise rotation[37]. Many studies have suggested that fatigue fracture and torsional fracture are two major reasons for instrument separation. Plotino *et al*[38] attributed the fracture of NiTi rotary instruments to cyclic flexural fatigue or torsional failure, or a combination.

Fatigue fracture: Instrument fractures often result from their cyclic fatigue. Plotino *et al*[39] evaluated the cyclic fatigue resistance of five NiTi rotary systems in an apical abrupt curvature using SS artificial canals with a 2-mm radius of curvature and a 90° angle of curvature. Ten each of FlexMaster, Mtwo, ProFile (Dentsply -Maillefer) and ProFile (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities), all with tip size 25, taper 0.06, and 10 ProTaper Universal F2 (Dentsply-Maillefer) instruments were rotated passively at 300 rpm until fracture occurred. The survival times for the instruments tested in an apical abrupt curvature were Mtwo > ProFile (from Maillefer) > ProFile (from Tulsa) > FlexMaster > ProTaper. Bahia *et al*[40] found that the mechanical behavior of the NiTi wires was modified slightly by cyclic tensile loading in the superelastic plateau. Because the changes tended towards stabilization, the clinical use of ProFile rotary instruments did not compromise their superelastic properties until they fractured by fatigue or torsional overload, or were otherwise discarded. Lee *et al*[41] studied the cyclic fatigue resistance of various NiTi rotary files, using three root canal curvatures (25°, 35° and 45°), by correlating cyclic fatigue fracture test results with finite-element analysis. The NiTi rotary files investigated were ProTaper, ProFile (Dentsply-Maillefer), HeroShaper (Micro-Mega) and Mtwo. ProTaper showed the least cyclic fatigue resistance and the highest stress concentration for all tested curvatures, whereas Mtwo showed the most cyclic fatigue resistance. When the stresses increased, the number of instrument rotations to fracture decreased. Shen *et al*[42] found that most of the NiTi rotary instruments (78% of K3 and 66% of ProTaper) among 79 fractured instruments failed because of fatigue fracture, whereas 91% of NiTi hand instruments failed from shear fracture. In another (clinical) study, Shen *et al*[5] reported that 10 of 12 ProFile instruments failed because of shear stress, whereas only two failed because of fatigue fracture.

From these studies, most of the NiTi rotary instruments failed *in vitro* from fatigue fracture, but with different rates for different brands. However, the main

reason for NiTi hand instrument failures *in vitro* was from shear fracture.

Torsional fracture: Haïkel *et al*[43] assessed the torsional moment (torque at failure) of four brands of NiTi endodontic files: Brasseler (triangular cross-section; Cms-dental, Paris, France), JS Dental (triangular cross-section; JS Dental, Inc., Ridgefield, CT, United States), McSpadden (H-file types 0.8 to 20, Unifile or S-file cross-section sizes 25 to 40), and Maillefer (concave triangular cross-section). The results suggested that JS Dental and McSpadden NiTi files were the most resistant to torsional fracture, but all NiTi files were inferior when compared with SS files from a previous study. A relationship was proposed between fatigue fracture and torsional fracture[44]. When the torsional resistance of ProFile 25/0.06 and ProTaper F1 were investigated, it was found that approximately 75% cyclic fatigue reduced the torsional resistance of the NiTi rotary instruments significantly. A repeated clinical "locking effect" was considered in a study that evaluated the torsional resistance of five brands of NiTi rotary instruments: Twisted File (TF; SybronEndo), RaCe systems, ProTaper, Helix (DiaDent, Chongju, South Korea) and FlexMaster[45]. TF had the lowest and FlexMaster the highest torsional resistance among the five brands. Braga *et al*[46] also found that TF had similar (TF 25/0.08 taper and RaCe 25/0.06 taper) or significantly higher (TF 25/0.06 taper and RaCe 25/0.04 taper) torsional resistance. Setzer *et al*[47] tested three rotary NiTi systems at 30° curvature under cyclic fatigue only or in combination with torsional stress (with an added 1-Ncm torsional load): Revo-S (Micro-Mega), ProFile Vortex (Dentsply, York, PA, United States) and ProFile with tip sizes 25 and 35. Regardless of fatigue alone or in combination with torsional stress, all fractures occurred within the area of the file curvature. But, with the addition of a torsional load the location of the fracture moved in the direction of the additionally applied torsional stress. One other study found that torsional resistance and angular deflection of instruments were reduced following clinical use when compared with new instruments[48]. Stock NiTi instruments had a torsional fracture resistance up to 10.3%, 8.0% and 7.4% lower for the Small, Primary and Large files, respectively than did M-Wire (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities) instruments, when using finite element analysis simulations based on micro-computed tomography scans at 10 μm resolution[49]. Shen *et al*[50] suggested that the torque at fracture values of K3 and K3XF (SybronEndo) instruments increased significantly with increased diameter.

The torsional resistance of SS files was certified many years ago to be higher than NiTi instruments. The higher the torsional resistance is, the less an instrument is prone to fracture, but clinical use reduces such resistance. There is a relationship between torsional and fatigue resistance, which are two significant factors associated with file separation. Any instrument may fracture in root canals if the curvatures are severe, regardless of how much torsional or fatigue resistance it has.

Manufacturing methods: Intracanal instruments produced by twisting had significantly lower Vickers microhardness values, but presented greater resistance to cyclic fatigue and were more flexible than instruments produced by a grinding process[46,51]. Larsen *et al*[52] reported that the twisted TF was significantly more resistant to cyclic fatigue than traditionally ground EndoSequence (Brasseler, Savannah, GA, United States) instruments, but not significantly different from ProFile. Recently, thermal treatments of NiTi alloys, *e.g.,* Controlled Memory Wire (CM Wire; DS Dental, Johnson City, TN, United States), M-Wire, and R-phase wire (SybronEndo) have been used to modify their mechanical properties[53]. M-Wire has been thermomechanically processed to have greater flexibility at body temperature. The GT Series X (Dentsply Tulsa Dental Specialities) instruments made from M-Wire are more flexible and capable of stress relief than ProFile GT at the most critical curved canal sections[54]. M-Wire is nearly 400% more resistant to cyclic fatigue than stock ProFile 25/0.04 taper instruments[55]. Thermal treatment improved the resistance of NiTi rotary instruments against fatigue fracture. Treatment resulted in significant changes in the instrument bulk with the appearance of an R-phase and an improved fatigue resistance. Indeed, after treatment at 500 ℃, the number of revolutions to failure increased up to 829 and 474 for electropolished and non-electropolished instruments, respectively[56]. The shape-memory CM-wire manufacturing process produced NiTi rotary instruments more flexible and more resistant to cyclic fatigue than instruments produced by a traditional manufacturing process or by a thermally treated NiTi alloy (M-wire)[57]. CM Wire files also showed a high angle of rotation before fracture, but the results were not significantly different from some other files[58]. CM Wire files may have a combined advantage of greater torsional strength and high deformation before fracture[59]. In various environments, the CM Wire instruments yielded an improvement of more than 4 to 9 times for the number of revolutions before fracture than conventional NiTi files with the same design[60]. Electropolished instruments performed significantly better than non-electropolished instruments in cyclic fatigue testing. The benefits of electropolishing were possibly from a reduction in surface irregularities that served as points for stress concentration and crack initiation[61]. Although surface smoothness was enhanced by electropolishing, this did not protect the instruments from low-cycle fatigue failure. No electropolished instrument showed more than one crack origin, significantly fewer than for the non-electropolished instruments[62]. Gutmann *et*

al[63] have reviewed the inherent metallic and surface properties of NiTi root canal instruments.

Many manufacturers have sought ways to enhance the performance, durability and safety of the many root canal instrument designs presently available, such as by modification of the alloy surface or the alloy microstructure with post-machining or post-twisting heat treatment.

Cross-section design: The resistance of NiTi rotary instruments to cyclic failure increased significantly with decreasing cross-sectional area[64]. The bending fatigue behavior was affected by the properties of the material and the cross-sectional configuration of the instrument. NiTi and triangular geometry profiles were associated with better fatigue resistance than SS and square cross-sections[65]. Yum *et al*[66] compared torsional strength, distortion angle and toughness of various NiTi rotary files with different cross-sectional geometries - TF and RaCe, ProTaper, ProFile, Mtwo (equilateral triangle, convex triangle, U-shape, and S-shape). TF and RaCe had significantly lowest yield strengths. TF had a significantly lowest ultimate strength, whereas Mtwo showed the highest. ProFile showed the highest distortion angle at break, followed by TF. ProFile also showed the highest toughness value, whereas TF and RaCe both showed a lowest toughness value[66]. Baek *et al*[67] also evaluated the effect of cross-sectional geometry on the torsional stiffness of NiTi instruments. Triangle, slender rectangle, rectangle and square were tested. The models with the rectangular cross section had higher torsional stiffness than models with the triangular cross section.

A larger cross-sectional area, a rectangular geometry and the S-shape of Mtwo instruments favored a higher fracture resistance.

Retreatment instruments: Inan *et al*[68] compared the cyclic fatigue resistance of three different rotary NiTi instruments designed for endodontic retreatments. The results showed that the R-Endo R3 (Micro-Mega) instruments were more resistant to fatigue failure than the ProTaper D3 and Mtwo R 25/0.05[68]. Hand and rotary instruments were compared for removing gutta-percha from previously treated curved root canals, where the NITi rotary FlexMaster, ProTaper Universal and D-RaCe (FKG Dentaire) retreatment files were associated with a higher risk of instrument fracture. No fractures occurred with the Hedström (Dentsply Maillefer) SS hand files[69,70].

Endodontic retreatments with NiTi rotary instruments resulted in a higher occurrence of instrument fracture than when using SS hand instruments.

Operator

In a 5-year retrospective study, the prevalence of fractured instruments was 7.41% for 2180 endodontic cases treated by postgraduate students[1]. A recent British survey showed that the main reasons for not adopting NiTi use included cost, a lack of training and the perceived risk of instrument fracture[71]. In another study, 88.8% of the respondents had experienced fractured endodontic instruments, with a significantly higher proportion of endodontists (94.8%) compared with general dental practitioners (85.1%)[72]. For ProTaper instruments used at two different clinics, defect rates (fracture and distortion combined) were observed of 7% (Clinic A) *vs* 13% (Clinic B) for shaping files, and 4% *vs* 10% for finishing files[2].

Dentists require more training and more comprehensive education regarding different endodontic instruments and techniques.

Use times: The main operator factors associated with the instrument fracture are "over-use" and "excessive pressure". Factors related to clinician experience, technique and competence have been shown to influence use times. In one study, 54.3% of the respondents re-used NiTi files more than 10 times[73]. The majority of defects (34/48) occurred in small (size 20) instruments, which should be considered as single-use, disposable instruments because of the higher possibility of torsional deformation[5]. The fracture rate of a single ProTaper rotary instrument was significantly increased after the number of prepared root canals exceeded 20 times[74]. Single-use of endodontic NiTi instruments has been recommended to reduce instrument fatigue and the possibility of cross-contamination[19]. The risk of NiTi rotary instrument fracture in the canal was low when a new instrument is used by experienced endodontists. A total of 1071 ProFile 0.04, 432 ProFile Series 29.04, and 1895 ProTaper files were discarded after single use. No fractures occurred in the ProFile, there were no fractures or deformations in the ProFile Series 29, and instrument separation was 0.26% in the ProTaper instruments[75]. Shen *et al*[53] reported that the risk of ProFile Vortex fracture is very low when the files were used once only by undergraduate students. Although multiple clinical use caused significant changes in the microstructural properties of HyFlex CM (Coltène Whaledent, Cuyahoga Falls, OH, United States) instruments, the risk of fracture in the root canal was very low when the instruments were discarded after three cases of clinical use[76]. ProTaper Universal rotary instruments used by an experienced endodontist allowed the cleaning and shaping of the root canal systems of five molar teeth without fracture[48]. The size of the rotary file, among other factors, will determine how many times a particular file should be used[77]. Root canal instrumentation following the manufacturer's instructions was performed with Reciproc (VDW GmbH) with a very low occurrence of instrument fracture and deformation[19].

The recommended use times for different files and for differently experienced operators, varied widely (Table 2). In narrow and/or sharply curved root canals

Table 2 The recommended use times of different studies

Year	Ref.	Instruments (rotary)	*n*	Used times	Operator	Deformation (files)	Separation (files)
2006	Wolcott *et al*[77]	ProTaper	4652 canals	1 tooth	Experienced		20
				2 teeth	Experienced		12
				3 teeth	Experienced		23
				4 teeth	Experienced		19
				5 teeth	Experienced		39
2009	Shen *et al*[75]	ProFile 0.04,	1071 files	1 visit	Experienced	8 (0.75%)	0
		ProFile Series 29 0.04	432 files	1 visit	Experienced	0	0
		ProTaper	1895 files	1 visit	Experienced	55 (2.9%)	5 (0.26%)
2009	Inan *et al*[7]	Mtwo	593 files	4 molar teeth or 2 molar teeth with curved canals	10 trained	58 (9.78%) (unwinding and curve/bend)	95 (16.02%)
2009	Vieira *et al*[48]	ProTaper Universal	10 sets files	5 molar teeth	Experienced	0	0
2010	Ma *et al*[74]	ProTaper	432 case	20 canals			27
2012	Shen *et al*[53]	ProFile Vortex	2023 files	1 visit	Undergraduate students	0	1 (0.04)
2013	Shen *et al*[76]	HyFlex CM	468 files	3 teeth	9 residents	16 (3.4%)	0
2015	Plotino *et al*[19]	Reciproc	1696 files	1 tooth		6 (0.35%)	8 (0.47%)

the number of times that an instrument is used should be as few as possible.

Rotational movements: Different rotational movements of endodontic instruments resulted in different cyclic fatigue survivals, and reciprocating movements were shown to increase the cyclic fatigue resistance of NiTi instruments[78]. When using the reciprocating Reciproc R25 (VDW GmbH) system, only 8 of 1580 instruments fractured during treatment, which represented 0.47% of the total number of instruments used and 0.21% of the root canals treated[19]. Compared with continuous rotation, the probability of a longer instrument survival was greater when using reciprocating motion for all file types tested (100% for K3, 87% for K3XF and 99% for Twisted File)[79]. Fatigue life was shown to increase with decreasing reciprocating amplitude in stationary reciprocation[80], and reciprocating movements resulted in a significantly longer cyclic fatigue life when compared with continuous rotation[81]. Kim *et al*[82] tested the cyclic fatigue of Reciproc and WaveOne (Dentsply-Maillefer) instruments using a simultaneous pecking motion performed with the instruments operating in the recommended reciprocation motion until fracture. Reciproc showed higher cycles to fracture and WaveOne higher torsional resistance. These two reciprocating files demonstrated significantly higher cyclic fatigue and torsional resistances than ProTaper. To simulate clinical conditions, Kiefner *et al*[78] employed a continuous up-and-down pecking motion along the vertical axes of Reciproc (R25 and R40) and Mtwo (M25 and M40) instruments when comparing reciprocating and continuous rotary motions. Reciproc files in reciprocating motion had a significantly higher number of cycles to fracture than Mtwo files used in continuous rotation[78]. Reciproc R25 instruments were associated with a significant increase in mean time to fracture when compared with primary (tip size 25 with a taper of 0.08) WaveOne instruments[83]. WaveOne Large (tip size 40 with a taper of 0.08) instruments presented significantly higher bending resistance than the Reciproc instruments, but Reciproc R40 resisted dynamic and static cyclic fatigue significantly better than WaveOne Large instruments[84]. [WaveOne NiTi files are available in three sizes: small (tip size 21 with a taper of 0.06), primary (tip size 25 with a taper of 0.08) and large (tip size 40 with a taper of 0.08)].

The likelihood of NiTi instrument fracture in root canals appeared to be reduced when using reciprocating rather than rotational motion with engine-driven instruments.

Rotational speeds: The time-to-failure for NiTi instruments decreased significantly as rotational speeds increased (200, 300 and 400 rpm), but the time-to-failure increased with increased pecking distances[26]. Pérez-Higueras *et al*[79] found that TF instruments were more resistant to cyclic fatigue when rotated at 300 rpm instead of 500 rpm. This result was supported by another study where ProTaper F2 instruments failed more rapidly at a rotational speed of 400 rpm (approximately 95 s) than those used at 250 rpm (approximately 25 s)[81]. Also, approximately a 30% reduction in the observed number of cycles to fracture occurred as rotational speeds were increased from 300 to 600 rmp[85]. By contrast, one study reported that the number of rotations to fracture was not related to the speed (350 or 600 rmp) at which the NiTi files were operated[32].

Appropriate rotational speeds and continuous pecking motions within the root canals are recommended. The rotational speed employed for any instrument should be considered in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, the clinical situation and the experience of the operator.

Lubricants: During root treatment, lubricants are mostly used to reduce the frictional resistance between the rotating instruments and float debris produced

after mechanical instrumentation. Boessler *et al*[86] used ProFile 30/0.06 instruments in milled artificial root canals in human dentin and gauged the effects of sodium hypochlorite (1% NaOCl) and a chelator (18% etidronic acid) on maximum torque, full torsional load, and maximum force values using a torque testing platform. They found that the aqueous lubricants significantly reduced all outcome variables compared to dry conditions ($P < 0.05$), and that an aqueous lubricant was more beneficial than a gel-type counterpart. The findings were similar to those reported by Shantiaee *et al*[87] who investigated the rates of fracture, deformity and metal slivering of ProTaper rotary instrument with three different lubricants [1% NaOCl (Gorang, Pakshoo Co.,Tehran, Iran), RC-Prep (Premier Dental Produce, Philadelphia, PA, United States) and 17% EDTA (Asia Chemi Teb Co., Tehran, Iran)] in the root canals of extracted molars. The fracture rate of instruments in the RC-Prep group was significant higher compared with the other two groups, with the lowest fracture rate in the EDTA group.

Different forms of lubricant influence the fracture rates of endodontic instruments. Aqueous lubricants are better than dry conditions, and paste-like lubricants can mix with dentin debris in the canal to create increased friction between the instrument and dentin walls.

Hypochlorite solutions: Reciprocating dynamic immersion in NaOCl solution for 1 or 5 min did not reduce significantly the cyclic fatigue resistance of NiTi files[88]. For all properties tested (torsional moment, maximum angular deflection, maximum bending moment and permanent angular deflection), NaOCI immersion had no statistically significant effect[43]. While instruments completely immersed in 5% NaOCl at 50 ℃ for 5 min had a significantly lower resistance to fracture from cyclic fatigue than instruments not immersed or only partially immersed, SEM observations revealed evident signs of corrosion of the fractured instruments[89]. Galvanic corrosion may be induced when different metals are immersed in an electrolyte, where one metal acts as the cathode and one as the anode of a galvanic couple.

The prolonged use of NaOCl as an intracanal irrigating solution might result in the corrosion and enhanced fracture of NiTi instruments.

Other factors: The use of small size SS K-files in a reciprocating manner might be a rational choice for the creation of a mechanical endodontic glide path in curved root canals[90]. The fatigue life of NiTi rotary instruments of larger size could be increased by using them with a lateral brushing or pressing movement[91]. The most frequently fractured file was 10/0.04 (30.39%) among 597 Mtwo rotary instruments[7]. Although more instruments with visible signs of plastic deformation were identified for the novice operator, the novice operator did not significantly affect the cyclic fatigue resistance when compared with the experienced operator[92]. Autoclave cycles had no significant overall effect on file performance for the tested instrument systems, including Profile Vortex made from M-Wire, Twisted File, and 10 Series files made from CM Wire[59]. Unused and sterilized used Profile GTX (Dentsply, Tulsa Dental Specialities) files lasted significantly longer than similar ProFile GT files with a probability of 75% and 65%, respectively; while mean life was significantly longer for GT than for GTX used files with a probability of 68%. Sterilized GT files lasted longer than unused files with a probability of 66%[93].

MANAGEMENT OF INSTRUMENT FRACTURE

When a file fractures during root-canal therapy, there are several treatment options available to the clinician. The management of the problem should be based on the effect of the fractured instrument on immediate treatment outcome and its potential influence on the endodontic prognosis[94]. Before clinical decision-making on the management, some factors should be considered as follows: (1) the stage of endodontic treatment at which the instrument fractured; (2) the armamentaria available; (3) the potential complications of the treatment approach adopted; (4) the presence or absence of periapical pathosis; and (5) the location and the length of the fractured fragment in the canal[95]. It is important that the patient is informed (accompanied by appropriate record keeping) when instrument fracture occurs during treatment or if a fractured file is discovered during a routine radiographic examination[96].

With no apical disease

Retain in the canal as a metal obstruction: Endodontists and general dental practitioners both reported a conservative approach when the management of fractured instruments failed[97]. In certain clinical situations it may be better to leave the fractured file in the root canal. After 5 years, in 12 instances of irretrievable instrument separation (from 3216 endodontically treated root canals), attempts were made to contact the patients to assess healing and tooth retention. Eight contacted patients confirmed the presence of the root canal-treated tooth in question. Among 5 attending patients, 2 teeth were classified as having complete healing, 2 uncertain healing, and 1 no healing according to radiographic assessments (Figure 1)[98]. Retained, fractured endodontic instruments did not reduce the prognosis of endodontically treated teeth when apical disease was absent and any treatment was well-managed[96,99]. Leaving fractured instruments in the apical one-third of the canal also

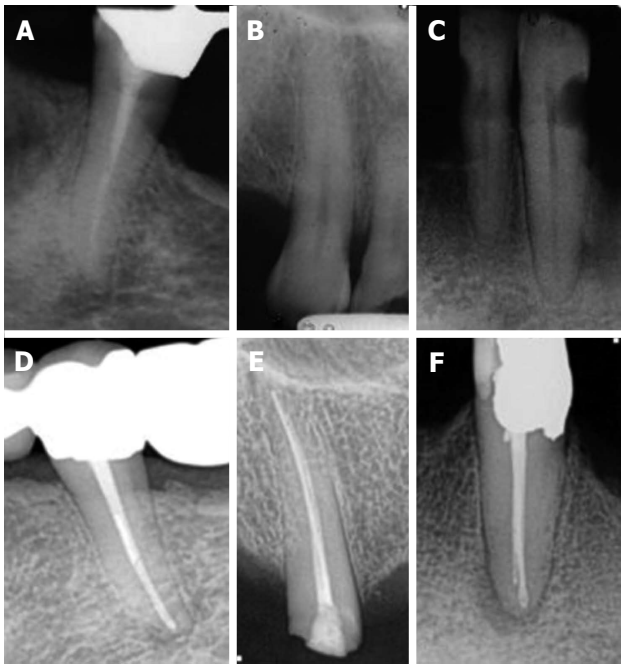


Figure 1 (A-C) preoperative and (D-E) 5-year follow-up radiographs: (D) complete healing, (E) uncertain healing, and (F) no healing.

did not appear to affect adversely the resistance of the root to vertical fracture[100].

Long-term tooth retention and functionality can occur after irretrievable instrument separation. However, clinicians are required to evaluate whether additional treatment is necessary.

Bypass: Bypassing a fractured instrument is often considered an acceptable treatment option to achieve clinical success. However, once bypassed, recent studies consider that the instrument could then be removed. Also, attempting to bypass a fractured instrument may result in perforation of the root canal wall[25].

With apical disease

If apical disease is present, healing is significantly reduced. Therefore, the treatment stage at which an instrument fractures in infected cases appears likely to be significant, as canal disinfection may be compromised[94]. At the earlier treatment stages, attempts must always be made to retrieve separated instruments and, if retrieval is not possible, a bypass should be attempted[101]. Ungerechts *et al*[3] reported that the success rate of removing fractured instruments was 72.7% for vital teeth, 58.3% for primary infected teeth and 42.9% in retreatment cases. The retrieval or bypass of fractured instruments was most successful in the coronal (100%) and middle (45.4%) thirds when compared with the apical third (37.5%) of the root canals[1]. Creating straight-line access and a ditched groove around the fractured instrument are two key steps for removal of fractured instruments. Then use ultrasonic files and/or bypass it with K-Files. Many fractured instruments can be vibrated ultrasonically and flushed out of the root canal. If not, the Tube-and-Hedström file-Method or similar techniques, such as a microdebrider, a Hedström file, a Masserann Kit trephine or with fine narrow-nosed pliers, can be used to remove the loosened instruments or bypass the instruments. When using these methods, 84 instruments (87%) were removed successfully[25]. Failure reasons might include ledge formation, excessive canal enlargement, perforation, limited visibility, dislocation, secondary fracture and incomplete removal, and apical extrusion of the fractured fragment. Several of these reasons may result in weakened root structure and predispose to vertical root fracture[99]. When used as canal filling materials, Resilon (Resilon Research, Madison, CT, United States) and mineral trioxide aggregate appeared to compensate for the root dentin loss that occurred as a result of attempts at retrieval of fractured instruments[100].

Microtube or trephine: When an attempt to bypass an instrument fragment becomes difficult, it should be retrieved by mechanical devices. A microtube or trephine creates a ditched groove around the coronal aspect of the retained instrument fragment. The Masserann Kit (Micro-Mega) is one such device, along with Gates-Glidden (Dentsply-Maillefer) drills, for the orthograde removal of intracanal fractured instruments[77,102]. The Masserann Kit is made up of hollow cutting-end trephine burs (ranging in diameter from 1.1-2.4 mm) and extractors (tubes into which a plunger can be advanced). The trephines are used to prepare a groove or trough around the coronal portion of the fragment. Then the extractor is inserted into the groove and locked the end of the fragment by the screw tightened between the plunger and the internal embossment (Figure 2)[95]. However, in the severely and moderately curved mesial root of mandibular molars, the Masserann Kit increased the risk of creating thin or perforated walls. Additionally, after 7.5 mm depth of drilling, the percentage of perforations increased[103].

Ultrasonics: The use of ultrasonic vibration is a favorite technique for the removal of fractured instruments, although it may result in some complications. The technique demonstrated a success rate of 80% in removing broken Hero 30/0.04 taper files within 70 extracted maxillary premolars[104]. Ultrasound, like above methods, creates a groove around the fractured instrument, but the used instruments are different. Diamond-coated zirconium ultrasonic tips (CPR 1-CPR 5; Obtura Spartan, Earth City, MO, United States) and titanium cutting tips (CPR 6-CPR 8; Obtura Spartan) were reported as the instruments. The former are selected according to the anatomy of the root canal to creat the groove. The later are placed in close contact with the fragment and worked in a circular counterclockwise motion to dislodge the fractured

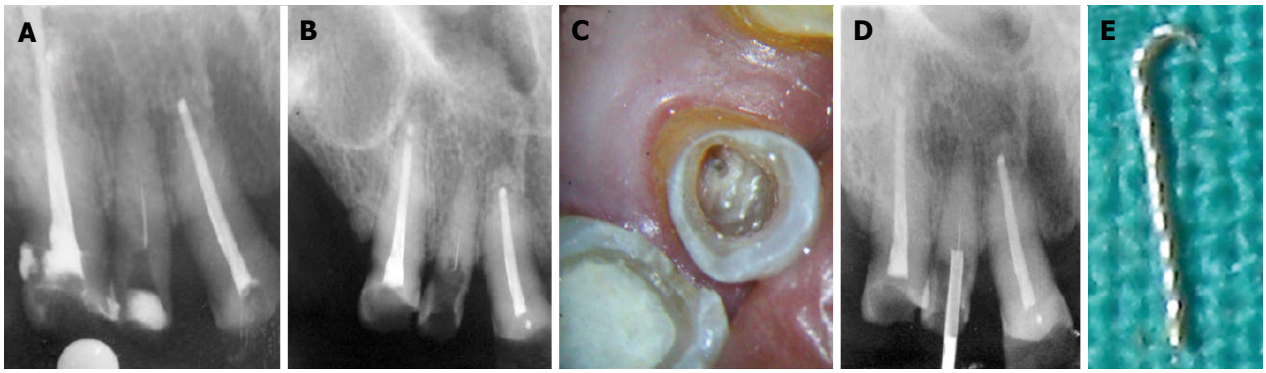


Figure 2 The extractor is inserted into the groove and locked the end of the fragment by the screw tightened between the plunger and the internal embossment. A: Periapical radiograph: Separated instrument is visible in middle 3rd of calcified root canal in maxillary right lateral incisor; B and C: Making a channel around the separated instrument to keep the broken instrument in the center of the tube of Masserann Kit; D and E: Engaging tube of Masserann Kit with the separated instrument and removal of the fragment from root canal.

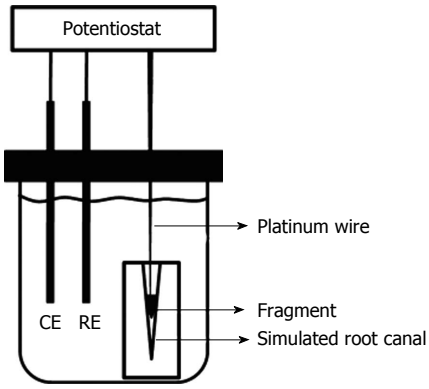


Figure 3 Schematic diagram of the intracanal fragment dissolution test. CE: Counter electrode; RE: Reference electrode.

instrument. All procedures are performed dry to ensure constant visualization, with the ultrasonic unit set at low power (20% to 30%)[96,105]. An ultrasonic technique was used to remove fractured NiTi rotary instruments from narrow, curved canals in both simulated (resin blocks) and mesiolingual canals of extracted mandibular first molars. However, when the fractured instrument segment was located entirely beyond the canal curvature, the success rate was significantly decreased and major canal wall damage often occurred[106]. Gencoglu *et al*[107] used ultrasonics with an operating microscope and reported that the success rate in removing fractured files in curved canals was 93.3%. This was significantly higher than the success rate of 66.6% when only conventional methods were used. The success rate was highest with ultrasonics (95.2%) in straight canals, followed by the conventional method (80.9%) and use of the Masserann Kit (47.6%)[107]. Visualization of fractured instruments with the aid of an operating microscope plays an important role in the success rates when removing or bypassing the fractured instruments. The success rate for the visible group was 85.3% (n = 58), and for the nonvisible group was 47.7% (n = 21)[105].

Electrochemical dissolution: Electrochemical dissolution has been proposed as a novel method to retrieve fractured instruments, especially for NiTi endodontic files. However, using NaF resulted in solutions that were cytotoxic to periodontal ligament fibroblasts, and artificial saliva may be a less toxic alternative for dissolving NiTi files[108]. A progressive consumption of K3 NiTi file tips was observed up to 30 min[109]. The anodic polarization of file fragments in simulated root canals for 60 min resulted in their partial dissolution and enabled the recovery of the original canal pathway with size 10 K-files[109]. The time taken by this procedure is clinically acceptable. K3 and ProTaper instruments had significantly greater weight loss than Mtwo instruments after 30 min of polarization in chloride- and fluoride-containing solutions, and 60 min anodic polarization of various NiTi instrument fragments in simulated root canals resulted in their partial dissolution (Figure 3) [110].

File removal system: Many different devices and techniques have been developed to retrieve fractured instruments from root canals, but iatrogenic accidents such as perforation, ledge formation, zipping, canal transportation or destruction, and fragments extruded beyond the root apex also occured during the removal procedures. The file removal process turns out to be more difficult when the fracture occurs in the apical third of the canal or in a sharply curved canal. Four separated files from the apical third of curved canals were successfully treated using the file removal system (FRS) (Figure 4)[111]. When compared with the Masserann Kit and an ultrasonic file-removal method, the FRS minimized both the root canal dentin removal and the time required to remove the fractured instruments[21].

Laser: Yu *et al*[112] found that a Nd:YAG laser successfully removed broken endodontic instruments from root canals in more than 55% of instances.

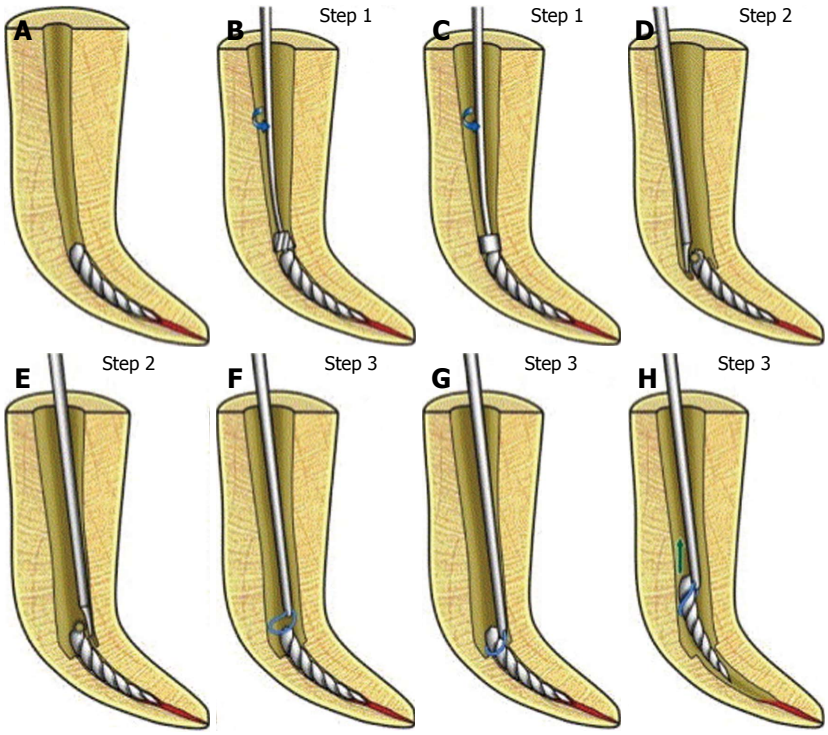


Figure 4 Procedures for removing a separated file from a root canal using the new file removal system. A: Initial canal with a separated file; B: Canal enlarged with CBA; C: Dentin removal around the separated file with CBB; D: Ultrasonic tip troughed semicircularly around the separated file to create space for the file-removal device; E: troughing semicircularly on the remaining half of the separated file for complete exposure; F: Placement of the loop over the separated file; G: Fastening the loop to grab the separated file; H: Removal of the separated file from the root canal.

However, temperature rises on root surfaces ranging from 17 ℃ to 27 ℃ might lead to periodontal tissue damage. Cvikl *et al*[113] also evaluated a Nd:YAG laser for the removal of fractured SS instruments. A narrow brass tube charged with solder was placed at the exposed coronal end of the fractured instrument and laser energy then used to melt the solder, fusing the fractured instrument to the brass tube. The laser technique requires the removal of a minimum amount of dentin, reducing the risk of root fracture.

Some other uncommon methods: Mini-forceps, broaches and cotton, and wire loops were historical methods used for the removal of instruments fractured and loosened in the more coronal portion of the root canal[114-116]. When the fractured instrument is positioned more deeply in the canal and is not visible or loose, and cannot be retrieved with other methods, then a Hedström or K-type file(s) can be inserted into the root canal where the clinician relies on tactile sense to withdraw the fractured instrument[25,116]. During the procedure, caution should be taken to avoid endodontic file separation. A modified 18-gauge needle and cyanoacrylate glue were used to retrieve a separated NiTi instrument from the mesiolingual canal of a mandibular first molar (Figure 5)[101]. As a safety feature during use, Gates-Glidden drills are designed to separate near the hub of the drill to allow for easier retrieval[117]. With the assistance of SS hand files and a chloroform-dipped gutta-percha cone, a fractured rotary NiTi instrument was successfully removed from the severely curved apical portion of the distobuccal canal of a mandibular molar[118]. However, chloroform is toxic and carcinogenic, and its extrusion through an existing root perforation resulted in subsequent necrosis in the supporting bone and periodontal tissues[119]. Chloroform used in the apical part of the root canal may also leak through the apical foramen and damage periapical tissues.

Factors influencing fractured instrument retrieval: Favorable factors for the removal of separated NiTi fragments are anterior teeth, straight root canals, localization before the canal curve, fragments longer than 5 mm, and NiTi hand K-files[116]. The success rate in roots with file fracture before the curve was 11.5 times more than that for file fracture beyond the curve[104]. Removal of a fractured instrument from the middle-third of the root canal decreased the force required to fracture the root vertically, regardless of the technique used for instrument removal[120]. There were statistically significant differences between experienced and less-experienced operators for the file-removal times and the root dentin removal rates[21].

Beyond the apical foramen

When the fractured instrument fragment is beyond the apical foramen, it is very difficult to retrieve the

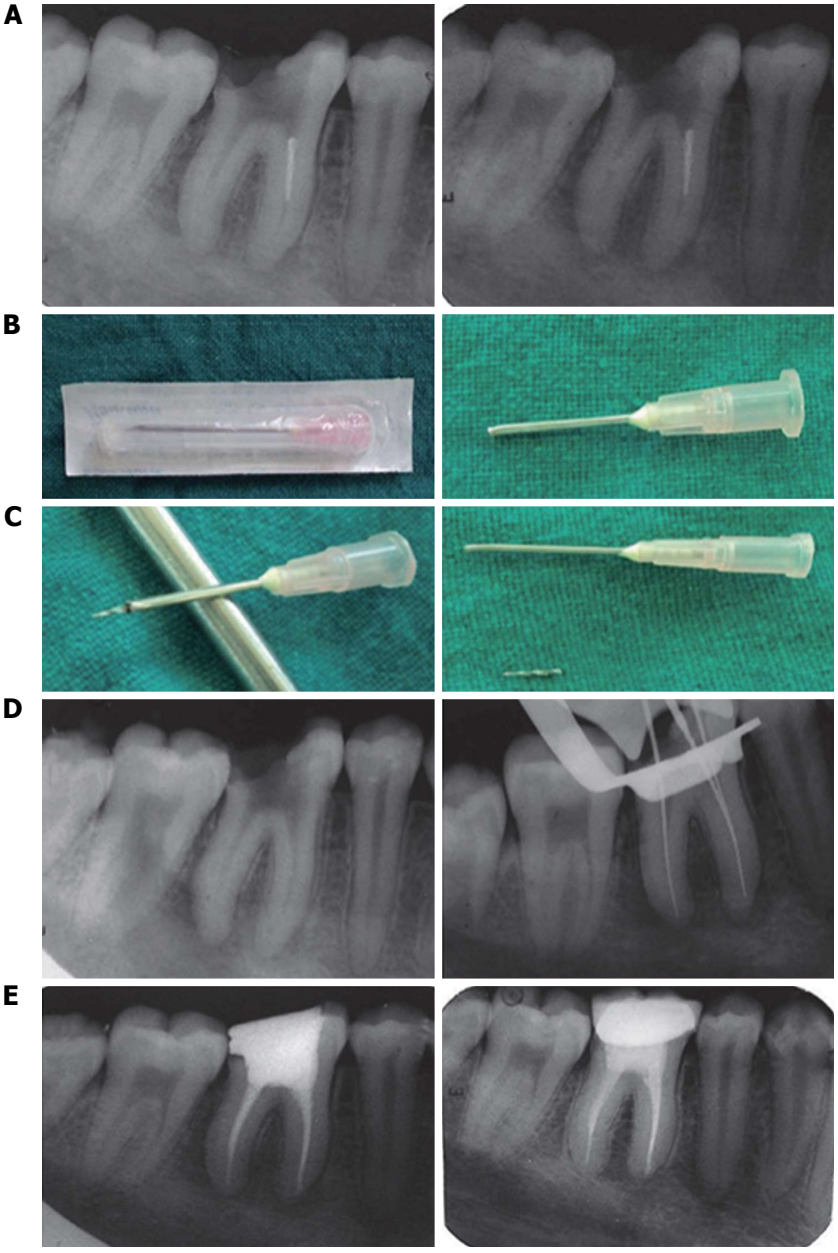


Figure 5 A modified 18-gauge needle and cyanoacrylate glue were used to retrieve a separated nickel-titanium instrument from the mesiolingual canal of a mandibular first molar. A: Radiograph showing separated instrument; Radiograph showing dentine surrounding the coronalend of the separated fragment removed with GG drill; B: An 18-guage needle, modified by cutting with a carborundum disc from the tip to transform it into a microtube; C: Separated instrument fragment removed adhered to the microtube; D: Radiograph confirming instrument removal; Working length reconfirmed; Post-obturation radiograph; E: Two-year follow up radiograph.

fragment using the previous approaches. In one report, two fragments beyond the apical foramen were removed by non-surgical approaches. A 3-mm fragment was pushed out of the root apex while the removal of a 7-mm fragment resulted in root perforation[25]. Surgical approaches may be better for these cases. However, the microsurgical procedure relies on considerable surgical skill and may reduce the crown-root ratio[96]. A separated hand instrument in a second molar was retrieved from the mesiobuccal root, which was close to the mandibular canal, using tooth replantation (Figure 6). After atraumatic tooth extraction, the separated instrument protruding 3 mm beyond the root apex was removed and the entrance to the mesiobuccal canal was cleaned, shaped and obturated. The tooth was re-implanted and orthodontic bands placed on both first and second molars. Periodic evaluations over 1 year showed progressive reductions in periapical radiolucency[121].

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are very sad to declare that Professor Roger J Smales, as the second author of this article, was

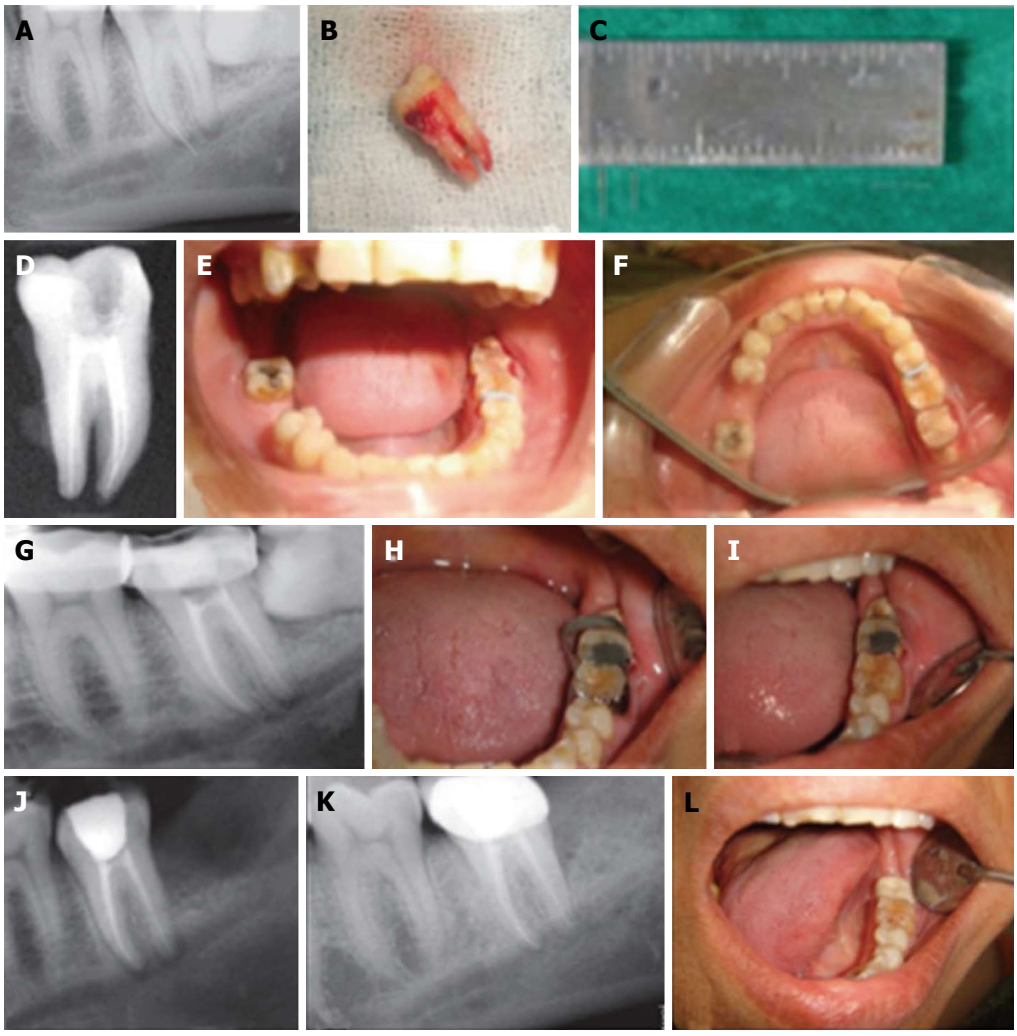


Figure 6 A separated hand instrument in a second molar was retrieved from the mesiobuccal root, which was close to the mandibular canal, using tooth replantation. A: Broken instrument near to the mandibular canal; B: After extraction; C: Measured broken instrument of 7 mm; D: After obturation; E: After separators were placed; F: Extra coronal splinting with orthodontic wires were prepared; G: Post operative Radiograph; H and I: Four weeks after Band removal; J: Three months follow-up Radiograph; K: One year follow-up radiograph; L: One year clinical radiograph.

sudden to die on Sunday November 9th. We dedicate this article to commemorate him.

REFERENCES

1 **Tzanetakis GN**, Kontakiotis EG, Maurikou DV, Marzelou MP. Prevalence and management of instrument fracture in the postgraduate endodontic program at the Dental School of Athens: a five-year retrospective clinical study. *J Endod* 2008; **34**: 675-678 [PMID: 18498887 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.02.039]

2 **Shen Y**, Haapasalo M, Cheung GS, Peng B. Defects in nickel-titanium instruments after clinical use. Part 1: Relationship between observed imperfections and factors leading to such defects in a cohort study. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 129-132 [PMID: 19084142 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.10.014]

3 **Ungerechts C**, Bårdsen A, Fristad I. Instrument fracture in root canals - where, why, when and what? A study from a student clinic. *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 183-190 [PMID: 23710943 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12131]

4 **Di Fiore PM**, Genov KA, Komaroff E, Li Y, Lin L. Nickel-titanium rotary instrument fracture: a clinical practice assessment. *Int Endod J* 2006; **39**: 700-708 [PMID: 16916359]

5 **Shen Y**, Coil JM, Haapasalo M. Defects in nickel-titanium instruments after clinical use. Part 3: a 4-year retrospective study from an undergraduate clinic. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 193-196 [PMID: 19166771 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.11.003]

6 **Wang NN**, Ge JY, Xie SJ, Chen G, Zhu M. Analysis of Mtwo rotary instrument separation during endodontic therapy: a retrospective clinical study. *Cell Biochem Biophys* 2014; **70**: 1091-1095 [PMID: 24807841]

7 **Inan U**, Gonulol N. Deformation and fracture of Mtwo rotary nickel-titanium instruments after clinical use. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 1396-1399 [PMID: 19801238 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2009.06.0]

8 **Knowles KI**, Hammond NB, Biggs SG, Ibarrola JL. Incidence of instrument separation using LightSpeed rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2006; **32**: 14-16 [PMID: 16410061]

9 **Mozayeni MA**, Golshah A, Nik Kerdar N. A Survey on NiTi Rotary Instruments Usage by Endodontists and General Dentist in Tehran. *Iran Endod J* 2011; **6**: 168-175 [PMID: 23130073]

10 **Ramirez-Salomon M**, Soler-Bientz R, de la Garza-González R, Palacios-Garza CM. Incidence of Lightspeed separation and the potential for bypassing. *J Endod* 1997; **23**: 586-587 [PMID: 9587288]

11 **Sattapan B**, Nervo GJ, Palamara JE, Messer HH. Defects in rotary nickel-titanium files after clinical use. *J Endod* 2000; **26**: 161-165 [PMID: 11199711]

12 **Al-Fouzan KS**. Incidence of rotary ProFile instrument fracture and the potential for bypassing in vivo. *Int Endod J* 2003; **36**: 864-867 [PMID: 14641426]

13 **Hülsmann M**, Herbst U, Schäfers F. Comparative study of root-canal preparation using Lightspeed and Quantec SC rotary NiTi instruments. *Int Endod J* 2003; **36**: 748-756 [PMID: 14641438]
14 **Ankrum MT**, Hartwell GR, Truitt JE. K3 Endo, ProTaper, and ProFile systems: breakage and distortion in severely curved roots of molars. *J Endod* 2004; **30**: 234-237 [PMID: 15085054]
15 **Troian CH**, Só MV, Figueiredo JA, Oliveira EP. Deformation and fracture of RaCe and K3 endodontic instruments according to the number of uses. *Int Endod J* 2006; **39**: 616-625 [PMID: 16872456]
16 **Iqbal MK**, Kohli MR, Kim JS. A retrospective clinical study of incidence of root canal instrument separation in an endodontics graduate program: a PennEndo database study. *J Endod* 2006; **32**: 1048-1052 [PMID: 17055904]
17 **Wu J**, Lei G, Yan M, Yu Y, Yu J, Zhang G. Instrument separation analysis of multi-used ProTaper Universal rotary system during root canal therapy. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 758-763 [PMID: 21787484 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.02.021]
18 **Gu YC**, Ni LX. [Defects in 2061 discarded ProTaper handfiles after clinical use]. *Shanghai Kou Qiang Yi Xue* 2013; **22**: 528-532 [PMID: 24233203]
19 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Porciani PF. Deformation and fracture incidence of Reciproc instruments: a clinical evaluation. *Int Endod J* 2015; **48**: 199-205 [PMID: 24754602 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12302]
20 **Labaf H**, Haghgoo R, Nazarimoghadam K, Mohamadibasir M. Comparing the Fracture Rate of Hero 642, FlexMaster and Mtwo in the Simulated Canals. *Iran Endod J* 2014; **9**: 113-116 [PMID: 24688579]
21 **Terauchi Y**, O'Leary L, Kikuchi I, Asanagi M, Yoshioka T, Kobayashi C, Suda H. Evaluation of the efficiency of a new file removal system in comparison with two conventional systems. *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 585-588 [PMID: 17437878]
22 **Jadhav GR**. Endodontic management of a two rooted, three canaled mandibular canine with a fractured instrument. *J Conserv Dent* 2014; **17**: 192-195 [PMID: 24778521]
23 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Cordaro M, Testarelli L, Gambarini G. Influence of the shape of artificial canals on the fatigue resistance of NiTi rotary instruments. *Int Endod J* 2010; **43**: 69-75 [PMID: 19891717]
24 **Lopes HP**, Vieira MV, Elias CN, Gonçalves LS, Siqueira JF, Moreira EJ, Vieira VT, Souza LC. Influence of the geometry of curved artificial canals on the fracture of rotary nickel-titanium instruments subjected to cyclic fatigue tests. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 704-707 [PMID: 23611396 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.12.027]
25 **Suter B**, Lussi A, Sequeira P. Probability of removing fractured instruments from root canals. *Int Endod J* 2005; **38**: 112-123 [PMID: 15667633]
26 **Li UM**, Lee BS, Shih CT, Lan WH, Lin CP. Cyclic fatigue of endodontic nickel titanium rotary instruments: static and dynamic tests. *J Endod* 2002; **28**: 448-451 [PMID: 12067126]
27 **Pirani C**, Cirulli PP, Chersoni S, Micele L, Ruggeri O, Prati C. Cyclic fatigue testing and metallographic analysis of nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1013-1016 [PMID: 21689562 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.04.009]
28 **Kosti E**, Zinelis S, Molyvdas I, Lambrianidis T. Effect of root canal curvature on the failure incidence of ProFile rotary Ni-Ti endodontic instruments. *Int Endod J* 2011; **44**: 917-925 [PMID: 21658071 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365]
29 **Weiger R**, Brückner M, ElAyouti A, Löst C. Preparation of curved root canals with rotary FlexMaster instruments compared to Lightspeed instruments and NiTi hand files. *Int Endod J* 2003; **36**: 483-490 [PMID: 12823704]
30 **Kramkowski TR**, Bahcall J. An in vitro comparison of torsional stress and cyclic fatigue resistance of ProFile GT and ProFile GT Series X rotary nickel-titanium files. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 404-407 [PMID: 19249605 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.12.003]
31 **Kim HC**, Sung SY, Ha JH, Solomonov M, Lee JM, Lee CJ, Kim BM. Stress generation during self-adjusting file movement: minimally invasive instrumentation. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 1572-1575 [PMID: 24238449 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.07.021]
32 **Kitchens GG**, Liewehr FR, Moon PC. The effect of operational speed on the fracture of nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 52-54 [PMID: 17185131]
33 **Haïkel Y**, Serfaty R, Bateman G, Senger B, Allemann C. Dynamic and cyclic fatigue of engine-driven rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments. *J Endod* 1999; **25**: 434-440 [PMID: 10530246]
34 **Inan U**, Aydin C, Tunca YM. Cyclic fatigue of ProTaper rotary nickel-titanium instruments in artificial canals with 2 different radii of curvature. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2007; **104**: 837-840 [PMID: 17904394]
35 **Azimi S**, Delvari P, Hajarian HC, Saghiri MA, Karamifar K, Lotfi M. Cyclic Fatigue Resistance and Fractographic Analysis of Race and Protaper Rotary NiTi Instruments. *Iran Endod J* 2011; **6**: 80-86 [PMID: 23130057]
36 **Matwychuk MJ**, Bowles WR, McClanahan SB, Hodges JS, Pesun IJ. Shaping abilities of two different engine-driven rotary nickel titanium systems or stainless steel balanced-force technique in mandibular molars. *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 868-871 [PMID: 17804332]
37 **Rowan MB**, Nicholls JI, Steiner J. Torsional properties of stainless steel and nickel-titanium endodontic files. *J Endod* 1996; **22**: 341-345 [PMID: 8935057]
38 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Cordaro M, Testarelli L, Gambarini G. A review of cyclic fatigue testing of nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 1469-1476 [PMID: 19840633 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2009.06.015]
39 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Melo MC, Bahia MG, Testarelli L, Gambarini G. Cyclic fatigue of NiTi rotary instruments in a simulated apical abrupt curvature. *Int Endod J* 2010; **43**: 226-230 [PMID: 20158534 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2009.01668.x]
40 **Bahia MG**, Martins RC, Gonzalez BM, Buono VT. Physical and mechanical characterization and the influence of cyclic loading on the behaviour of nickel-titanium wires employed in the manufacture of rotary endodontic instruments. *Int Endod J* 2005; **38**: 795-801 [PMID: 16218971]
41 **Lee MH**, Versluis A, Kim BM, Lee CJ, Hur B, Kim HC. Correlation between experimental cyclic fatigue resistance and numerical stress analysis for nickel-titanium rotary files. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1152-1157 [PMID: 21763912 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.03.025]
42 **Shen Y**, Cheung GS, Peng B, Haapasalo M. Defects in nickel-titanium instruments after clinical use. Part 2: Fractographic analysis of fractured surface in a cohort study. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 133-136 [PMID: 19084143]
43 **Haïkel Y**, Serfaty R, Wilson P, Speisser JM, Allemann C. Mechanical properties of nickel-titanium endodontic instruments and the effect of sodium hypochlorite treatment. *J Endod* 1998; **24**: 731-735 [PMID: 9855823]
44 **Kim JY**, Cheung GS, Park SH, Ko DC, Kim JW, Kim HC. Effect from cyclic fatigue of nickel-titanium rotary files on torsional resistance. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 527-530 [PMID: 22414843 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.12.018]
45 **Park SY**, Cheung GS, Yum J, Hur B, Park JK, Kim HC. Dynamic torsional resistance of nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2010; **36**: 1200-1204 [PMID: 20630299 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2010.02.016]
46 **Braga LC**, Magalhães RR, Nakagawa RK, Puente CG, Buono VT, Bahia MG. Physical and mechanical properties of twisted or ground nickel-titanium instruments. *Int Endod J* 2013; **46**: 458-465 [PMID: 23078183 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12011]
47 **Setzer FC**, Böhme CP. Influence of combined cyclic fatigue and torsional stress on the fracture point of nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 133-137 [PMID: 23228273 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.10.001]
48 **Vieira EP**, Nakagawa RK, Buono VT, Bahia MG. Torsional behaviour of rotary NiTi ProTaper Universal instruments after multiple clinical use. *Int Endod J* 2009; **42**: 947-953 [PMID: 19751294 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2009.01602.x]
49 **Bonessio N**, Pereira ES, Lomiento G, Arias A, Bahia MG, Buono VT, Peters OA. Validated finite element analyses of WaveOne Endodontic Instruments: a comparison between M-Wire and NiTi alloys. *Int Endod J* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24923193 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12333]

50 **Shen Y**, Zhou HM, Wang Z, Campbell L, Zheng YF, Haapasalo M. Phase transformation behavior and mechanical properties of thermomechanically treated K3XF nickel-titanium instruments. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 919-923 [PMID: 23791264 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.04.004]

51 **Rodrigues RC**, Lopes HP, Elias CN, Amaral G, Vieira VT, De Martin AS. Influence of different manufacturing methods on the cyclic fatigue of rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1553-1557 [PMID: 22000462 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.08.011]

52 **Larsen CM**, Watanabe I, Glickman GN, He J. Cyclic fatigue analysis of a new generation of nickel titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 401-403 [PMID: 19249604 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.12.010]

53 **Shen Y**, Coil JM, Zhou HM, Tam E, Zheng YF, Haapasalo M. ProFile Vortex instruments after clinical use: a metallurgical properties study. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 1613-1617 [PMID: 23146647 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.09.018]

54 **Montalvão D**, Alçada FS. Numeric comparison of the static mechanical behavior between ProFile GT and ProFile GT series X rotary nickel-titanium files. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1158-1161 [PMID: 21763913 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.05.018]

55 **Johnson E**, Lloyd A, Kuttler S, Namerow K. Comparison between a novel nickel-titanium alloy and 508 nitinol on the cyclic fatigue life of ProFile 25/.04 rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2008; **34**: 1406-1409 [PMID: 18928858 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2008.07.029]

56 **Condorelli GG**, Bonaccorso A, Smecca E, Schäfer E, Cantatore G, Tripi TR. Improvement of the fatigue resistance of NiTi endodontic files by surface and bulk modifications. *Int Endod J* 2010; **43**: 866-873 [PMID: 20618880]

57 **Pongione G**, Pompa G, Milana V, Di Carlo S, Giansiracusa A, Nicolini E, De Angelis F. Flexibility and resistance to cyclic fatigue of endodontic instruments made with different nickel-titanium alloys: a comparative test. *Ann Stomatol* (Roma) 2012; **3**: 119-122 [PMID: 23386933]

58 **Ninan E**, Berzins DW. Torsion and bending properties of shape memory and superelastic nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 101-104 [PMID: 23228266 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.08.010]

59 **Casper RB**, Roberts HW, Roberts MD, Himel VT, Bergeron BE. Comparison of autoclaving effects on torsional deformation and fracture resistance of three innovative endodontic file systems. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1572-1575 [PMID: 22000466 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.07.008]

60 **Shen Y**, Qian W, Abtin H, Gao Y, Haapasalo M. Effect of environment on fatigue failure of controlled memory wire nickel-titanium rotary instruments. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 376-380 [PMID: 22341078 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.12.002]

61 **Anderson ME**, Price JW, Parashos P. Fracture resistance of electropolished rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments. *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 1212-1216 [PMID: 17889692]

62 **Cheung GS**, Shen Y, Darvell BW. Does electropolishing improve the low-cycle fatigue behavior of a nickel-titanium rotary instrument in hypochlorite? *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 1217-1221 [PMID: 17889693]

63 **Gutmann JL**, Gao Y. Alteration in the inherent metallic and surface properties of nickel-titanium root canal instruments to enhance performance, durability and safety: a focused review. *Int Endod J* 2012; **45**: 113-128 [PMID: 21902705 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2011.01957.x]

64 **Oh SR**, Chang SW, Lee Y, Gu Y, Son WJ, Lee W, Baek SH, Bae KS, Choi GW, Lim SM, Kum KY. A comparison of nickel-titanium rotary instruments manufactured using different methods and cross-sectional areas: ability to resist cyclic fatigue. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2010; **109**: 622-628 [PMID: 20303058 DOI: 10.1016/j.tripleo.2009.12.025]

65 **Cheung GS**, Zhang EW, Zheng YF. A numerical method for predicting the bending fatigue life of NiTi and stainless steel root canal instruments. *Int Endod J* 2011; **44**: 357-361 [PMID: 21219364 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2010.01838.x]

66 **Yum J**, Cheung GS, Park JK, Hur B, Kim HC. Torsional strength and toughness of nickel-titanium rotary files. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 382-386 [PMID: 21329826 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2010.11.028]

67 **Baek SH**, Lee CJ, Versluis A, Kim BM, Lee W, Kim HC. Comparison of torsional stiffness of nickel-titanium rotary files with different geometric characteristics. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1283-1286 [PMID: 21846549 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.05.032]

68 **Inan U**, Aydin C. Comparison of cyclic fatigue resistance of three different rotary nickel-titanium instruments designed for retreatment. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 108-111 [PMID: 22152632 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.09.010]

69 **Rödig T**, Kupis J, Konietschke F, Dullin C, Drebenstedt S, Hülsmann M. Comparison of hand and rotary instrumentation for removing gutta-percha from previously treated curved root canals: a microcomputed tomography study. *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 173-182 [PMID: 23701239 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12128]

70 **Rödig T**, Hausdörfer T, Konietschke F, Dullin C, Hahn W, Hülsmann M. Efficacy of D-RaCe and ProTaper Universal Retreatment NiTi instruments and hand files in removing gutta-percha from curved root canals - a micro-computed tomography study. *Int Endod J* 2012; **45**: 580-589 [PMID: 22264204 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2012.02014.x]

71 **Kahan RS**. Summary of: a survey of adoption of endodontic nickel-titanium rotary instrumentation part 1: general dental practitioners in Wales. *Br Dent J* 2013; **214**: 114-115 [PMID: 23392029 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bdj.2013.134a]

72 **Madarati AA**, Watts DC, Qualtrough AJ. Opinions and attitudes of endodontists and general dental practitioners in the UK towards the intracanal fracture of endodontic instruments: part 1. *Int Endod J* 2008; **41**: 693-701 [PMID: 18554183 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2008.01425.x]

73 **Lee W**, Song M, Kim E, Lee H, Kim HC. A survey of experience-based preference of Nickel-Titanium rotary files and incidence of fracture among general dentists. *Restor Dent Endod* 2012; **37**: 201-206 [PMID: 23429764 DOI: 10.5395/rde.2012.37.4.201]

74 **Ma HW**, Wang Q, Wang LL. [Fracture of ProTaper rotary instrument with analysis on influential factors]. *Shanghai Kou Qiang Yi Xue* 2010; **19**: 349-353 [PMID: 20871949]

75 **Shen Y**, Coil JM, McLean AG, Hemerling DL, Haapasalo M. Defects in nickel-titanium instruments after clinical use. Part 5: single use from endodontic specialty practices. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 1363-1367 [PMID: 19801231 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2009.07.004]

76 **Shen Y**, Coil JM, Zhou H, Zheng Y, Haapasalo M. HyFlex nickel-titanium rotary instruments after clinical use: metallurgical properties. *Int Endod J* 2013; **46**: 720-729 [PMID: 23330612 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12049]

77 **Wolcott S**, Wolcott J, Ishley D, Kennedy W, Johnson S, Minnich S, Meyers J. Separation incidence of protaper rotary instruments: a large cohort clinical evaluation. *J Endod* 2006; **32**: 1139-1141 [PMID: 17174668]

78 **Kiefner P**, Ban M, De-Deus G. Is the reciprocating movement per se able to improve the cyclic fatigue resistance of instruments? *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 430-436 [PMID: 24033466 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12166]

79 **Pérez-Higueras JJ**, Arias A, de la Macorra JC. Cyclic fatigue resistance of K3, K3XF, and twisted file nickel-titanium files under continuous rotation or reciprocating motion. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 1585-1588 [PMID: 24238452 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.07.020]

80 **Shin CS**, Huang YH, Chi CW, Lin CP. Fatigue life enhancement of NiTi rotary endodontic instruments by progressive reciprocating operation. *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 882-888 [PMID: 24355085 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12233]

81 **De-Deus G**, Moreira EJ, Lopes HP, Elias CN. Extended cyclic fatigue life of F2 ProTaper instruments used in reciprocating movement. *Int Endod J* 2010; **43**: 1063-1068 [PMID: 21080616]

82 **Kim HC**, Kwak SW, Cheung GS, Ko DH, Chung SM, Lee W. Cyclic fatigue and torsional resistance of two new nickel-titanium instruments used in reciprocation motion: Reciproc versus WaveOne. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 541-544 [PMID: 22414846 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.11.014]

83 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Testarelli L, Gambarini G. Cyclic fatigue of Reciproc and WaveOne reciprocating instruments. *Int Endod J* 2012; **45**: 614-618 [PMID: 22268461 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2012.02015.x]

84 **De-Deus G**, Leal Vieira VT, Nogueira da Silva EJ, Lopes H, Elias CN, Moreira EJ. Bending resistance and dynamic and static cyclic fatigue life of Reciproc and WaveOne large instruments. *J Endod* 2014; **40**: 575-579 [PMID: 24666915 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.10.013]

85 **Lopes HP**, Ferreira AA, Elias CN, Moreira EJ, de Oliveira JC, Siqueira JF. Influence of rotational speed on the cyclic fatigue of rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments. *J Endod* 2009; **35**: 1013-1016 [PMID: 19567325 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2009.04.003]

86 **Boessler C**, Peters OA, Zehnder M. Impact of lubricant parameters on rotary instrument torque and force. *J Endod* 2007; **33**: 280-283 [PMID: 17320714]

87 **Shantiaee Y**, Dianat O, Sharifi F, Nahvi G, Kolahi Ahari G. The Impact of Three Different Canal Lubricants on Fracture, Deformity and Metal Slivering of ProTaper Rotary Instruments. *Iran Endod J* 2014; **9**: 127-130 [PMID: 24688582]

88 **Pedullà E**, Grande NM, Plotino G, Palermo F, Gambarini G, Rapisarda E. Cyclic fatigue resistance of two reciprocating nickel-titanium instruments after immersion in sodium hypochlorite. *Int Endod J* 2013; **46**: 155-159 [PMID: 22831397 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2012.02100.x]

89 **Berutti E**, Angelini E, Rigolone M, Migliaretti G, Pasqualini D. Influence of sodium hypochlorite on fracture properties and corrosion of ProTaper Rotary instruments. *Int Endod J* 2006; **39**: 693-699 [PMID: 16916358]

90 **Gambarini G**, Plotino G, Sannino G, Grande NM, Giansiracusa A, Piasecki L, da Silva Neto UX, Al-Sudani D, Testarelli L. Cyclic fatigue of instruments for endodontic glide path. *Odontology* 2015; **103**: 56-60 [PMID: 24197177]

91 **Plotino G**, Grande NM, Sorci E, Malagnino VA, Somma F. Influence of a brushing working motion on the fatigue life of NiTi rotary instruments. *Int Endod J* 2007; **40**: 45-51 [PMID: 17209832]

92 **Plotino G**, Al-Sudani D, Pulino S, Grande NM, Marcoli PA, Pizzi S, Testarelli L, Gambarini G. Cyclic fatigue resistance of Mtwo NiTi rotary instruments used by experienced and novice operators--an in vivo and in vitro study. *Med Sci Monit* 2012; **18**: MT41-MT45 [PMID: 22648260]

93 **Arias A**, Perez-Higueras JJ, de la Macorra JC. Influence of clinical usage of GT and GTX files on cyclic fatigue resistance. *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 257-263 [PMID: 23808563 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12141]

94 **McGuigan MB**, Louca C, Duncan HF. The impact of fractured endodontic instruments on treatment outcome. *Br Dent J* 2013; **214**: 285-289 [PMID: 23518972 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bdj.2013.271]

95 **Madarati AA**, Hunter MJ, Dummer PM. Management of intracanal separated instruments. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 569-581 [PMID: 23611371 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.12.033]

96 **McGuigan MB**, Louca C, Duncan HF. Clinical decision-making after endodontic instrument fracture. *Br Dent J* 2013; **214**: 395-400 [PMID: 23619858 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bdj.2013.379]

97 **Madarati AA**, Watts DC, Qualtrough AJ. Opinions and attitudes of endodontists and general dental practitioners in the UK towards the intra-canal fracture of endodontic instruments. Part 2. *Int Endod J* 2008; **41**: 1079-1087 [PMID: 19133097 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2008.01473.x]

98 **Hansen JR**, Beeson TJ, Ibarrola JL. Case series: tooth retention 5 years after irretrievable separation of LightSpeedLSX instruments. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 1467-1470 [PMID: 24139276 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.06.031]

99 **Kim HC**, Lee MH, Yum J, Versluis A, Lee CJ, Kim BM. Potential relationship between design of nickel-titanium rotary instruments and vertical root fracture. *J Endod* 2010; **36**: 1195-1199 [PMID: 20630298 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2010.02.010]

100 **Madarati AA**, Qualtrough AJ, Watts DC. Effect of retained fractured instruments on tooth resistance to vertical fracture with or without attempt at removal. *Int Endod J* 2010; **43**: 1047-1053 [PMID: 20726909 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2010.01783.x]

101 **Andrabi SM**, Kumar A, Iftekhar H, Alam S. Retrieval of a separated nickel-titanium instrument using a modified 18-guage needle and cyanoacrylate glue: a case report. *Restor Dent Endod* 2013; **38**: 93-97 [PMID: 23741713 DOI: 10.5395/rde.2013.38.2.93]

102 **Choksi D**, Idnani B, Kalaria D, Patel RN. Management of an intracanal separated instrument: a case report. *Iran Endod J* 2013; **8**: 205-207 [PMID: 24171030]

103 **Yoldas O**, Oztunc H, Tinaz C, Alparslan N. Perforation risks associated with the use of Masserann endodontic kit drills in mandibular molars. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2004; **97**: 513-517 [PMID: 15088037]

104 **Shahabinejad H**, Ghassemi A, Pishbin L, Shahravan A. Success of ultrasonic technique in removing fractured rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments from root canals and its effect on the required force for root fracture. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 824-828 [PMID: 23683286 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2013.02.008]

105 **Nevares G**, Cunha RS, Zuolo ML, Bueno CE. Success rates for removing or bypassing fractured instruments: a prospective clinical study. *J Endod* 2012; **38**: 442-444 [PMID: 22414826 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.12.009]

106 **Ward JR**, Parashos P, Messer HH. Evaluation of an ultrasonic technique to remove fractured rotary nickel-titanium endodontic instruments from root canals: an experimental study. *J Endod* 2003; **29**: 756-763 [PMID: 14651285]

107 **Gencoglu N**, Helvacioglu D. Comparison of the different techniques to remove fractured endodontic instruments from root canal systems. *Eur J Dent* 2009; **3**: 90-95 [PMID: 19421387]

108 **Mitchell Q**, Jeansonne BG, Stoute D, Lallier TE. Electrochemical dissolution of nickel-titanium endodontic files induces periodontal ligament cell death. *J Endod* 2013; **39**: 679-684 [PMID: 23611390 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2012.12.013]

109 **Aboud LR**, Ormiga F, Gomes JA. Electrochemical induced dissolution of fragments of nickel-titanium endodontic files and their removal from simulated root canals. *Int Endod J* 2014; **47**: 155-162 [PMID: 23659794 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12126]

110 **Ormiga F**, Aboud LR, Gomes JA. Electrochemical-induced dissolution of nickel-titanium endodontic instruments with different designs. *Int Endod J* 2015; **48**: 342-350 [PMID: 24871818 DOI: 10.1111/iej.12320]

111 **Terauchi Y**, O'Leary L, Suda H. Removal of separated files from root canals with a new file-removal system: Case reports. *J Endod* 2006; **32**: 789-797 [PMID: 16861084]

112 **Yu DG**, Kimura Y, Tomita Y, Nakamura Y, Watanabe H, Matsumoto K. Study on removal effects of filling materials and broken files from root canals using pulsed Nd: YAG laser. *J Clin Laser Med Surg* 2000; **18**: 23-28 [PMID: 11189108]

113 **Cvikl B**, Klimscha J, Holly M, Zeitlinger M, Gruber R, Moritz A. Removal of fractured endodontic instruments using an Nd: YAG laser. *Quintessence Int* 2014; **45**: 569-575 [PMID: 24847495 DOI: 10.3290/j.qi.a31961]

114 **Feldman G**, Solomon C, Notaro P, Moskowitz E. Retrieving broken endodontic instruments. *J Am Dent Assoc* 1974; **88**: 588-591 [PMID: 4521266]

115 **Roig-Greene JL**. The retrieval of foreign objects from root canals: a simple aid. *J Endod* 1983; **9**: 394-397 [PMID: 6579199]

116 **Shen Y**, Peng B, Cheung GS. Factors associated with the removal of fractured NiTi instruments from root canal systems. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2004; **98**: 605-610 [PMID: 15529134]

117 **Lee RS**, Alapati S, Johnson BR. Separation anxiety: Gates-Glidden drills can be hazardous to your health. *J Endod* 2011; **37**: 1470-1472 [PMID: 21924205 DOI: 10.1016/j.joen.2011.05.027]

118 **Rahimi M**, Parashos P. A novel technique for the removal of fractured instruments in the apical third of curved root canals. *Int Endod J* 2009; **42**: 264-270 [PMID: 19228217 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2008.01464.x]

119 **Mohammadzadeh Akhlaghi N**, Baradaran Mohajeri L, Fazlyab M. Tissue Necrosis due to Chloroform: A Case Report. *Iran Endod J* 2013; **8**: 208-209 [PMID: 24790633]

120 **Gerek M**, Başer ED, Kayahan MB, Sunay H, Kaptan RF, Bayırlı

G. Comparison of the force required to fracture roots vertically after ultrasonic and Masserann removal of broken instruments. *Int Endod J* 2012; **45**: 429-434 [PMID: 22188327 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2011.01993.x]

121 **Shenoy A**, Mandava P, Bolla N, Vemuri S. A novel technique for removal of broken instrument from root canal in mandibular second molar. *Indian J Dent Res* 2014; **25**: 107-110 [PMID: 24748311 DOI: 10.4103/0970-9290.131157]

P- Reviewer: El-Askary FS, Wukich DK **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.99

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 99-105
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Surgical management of rectal prolapse: The role of robotic surgery

Zhobin Moghadamyeghaneh, Mark H Hanna, Grace Hwang, Joseph C Carmichael, Steven D Mills, Alessio Pigazzi, Michael J Stamos

Zhobin Moghadamyeghaneh, Mark H Hanna, Grace Hwang, Joseph C Carmichael, Steven D Mills, Alessio Pigazzi, Michael J Stamos, Department of Surgery, University of California, Irvine, School of Medicine, Orange, CA 92868, United States

Author contributions: Moghadamyeghaneh Z, Hanna MH, Hwang G, Carmichael JC, Mills SD, Pigazzi A and Stamos MJ contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest: We wish to confirm that there are no known conflicts of interest associated with this publication and there has been no significant financial support for this work that could have influenced its outcome.

Correspondence to: Michael J Stamos, MD, Professor and John E Connolly Chair in Surgery, Department of Surgery, University of California, Irvine, School of Medicine, 333 City Blvd. West Suite 1600, Orange, CA 92868, United States. mstamos@uci.edu
Telephone: +1-714-4566262
Fax: +1-714-4566377

Received: September 28, 2014
Peer-review started: September 29, 2014
First decision: November 19, 2014
Revised: November 25, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

The robotic technique as a safe approach in treatment of rectal prolapse has been widely reported during the last decade. Although there is limited clinical data regarding the benefits of robotic surgery, the safety of robotic surgery in rectal prolapse treatment has been cited by several authors. Also, the robotic approach helps overcome some of the laparoscopic approach challenges with purported advantages including improved visualization, more precise dissection, easier suturing, accurate identification of anatomic structures and fewer conversions to open surgery which can facilitate the conduct of technically challenging cases. These advantages can make robotic surgery ideally suited for minimally invasive ventral rectopexy. Currently, with greater surgeon experience in robotic surgery, the length of the procedure and the recurrence rate with the robotic approach are decreasing and short term outcomes for robotic rectal prolapse seem on par with laparoscopic and open techniques in recent studies. However, the high cost of robotic procedures is still an important issue. The benefits of a robotic approach must be weighed against the higher cost. More research is needed to better understand if the increased cost is justified by an improvement in outcomes. Also, published articles comparing long term outcomes of the robotic approach with other approaches are very limited at this time and further clinical trials are indicated to affirm the role of robotic surgery in the treatment of rectal prolapse.

Key words: Rectal prolapse; Robotic surgery

Core tip: Robotic rectopexy is a safe and feasible technique for the treatment of rectal prolapse with improved visualization and ease of suturing. The robotic approach can provide functional results and short term outcomes similar to laparoscopic surgery. However, increased operative time and higher cost are challenges. Further prospective clinical trials assessing the role of robotic surgery in the treatment of rectal

prolapse are needed.

Moghadamyeghaneh Z, Hanna MH, Hwang G, Carmichael JC, Mills SD, Pigazzi A, Stamos MJ. Surgical management of rectal prolapse: The role of robotic surgery. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 99-105 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/99.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.99

INTRODUCTION

Rectal prolapse was first described in the Ebers Papyrus around 1500 BC. In 1899, Edmond Delorme reported the first successful surgical treatment of rectal prolapse[1,2]. Since 1899, more than 100 procedures have been described for the treatment of rectal prolapse[3]. However, there has been ongoing controversy regarding the ideal procedure for the treatment of prolapse with the lowest rates of recurrence, complications, and mortality.

Practically speaking, the numerous rectal prolapse procedures are categorized into trans-abdominal and perineal approaches. Trans-abdominal operations can be performed with open, laparoscopic, and robotic techniques. The perineal and abdominal approaches each have their own advantages and disadvantages. While the trans-abdominal approaches are reported to have longer operative times, higher costs, and lower recurrence rates, perineal approaches tends to be safer but with a greater recurrence rate[4]. The trans-abdominal approach is more commonly performed, and is a popular choice for patients without significant comorbidities[5] fit for a major abdominal operation. Also, trans-abdominal approaches can be combined with other abdominal/pelvic procedures such as uteropexy, colpopexy, or sigmoidectomy[6,7], whereas, the perineal approach can be done under regional anesthesia and is often favored for elderly and/or high-risk patients[2,5]. Treatment should be individualized for each patient with the aim of achieving the better outcome[2].

MINIMALLY INVASIVE APPROACHES IN TRANS-ABDOMINAL RECTAL PROLAPSE REPAIR

Trans-abdominal operations can be performed with open, laparoscopic, and robotic techniques. Since the introduction of minimally invasive techniques for rectal prolapse in 1993[7], the use of laparoscopy in the treatment of rectal prolapse has expanded. Lower morbidity, faster recovery time, shorter hospital stay, and less blood loss have been reported as the advantages of laparoscopic surgery over the open approach[8-10]. The laparoscopic approach as the preferred approach in the treatment of rectal prolapse has been recommended by several studies[8,9,11].

Since the introduction of robotic surgery in 1998, it has been widely applied in a variety of procedures across many surgical specialties[12]. The aims of robotic surgery are to facilitate minimally invasive surgery and overcome some of the challenges of laparoscopic surgery[13]. Features such as high-quality, three-dimensional vision, restoration of the eye-hand-target axis, better depth perception, tremor elimination, more precise dissection, and a better definition of tissue planes lead to precise dissection, especially in the pelvis[13]. Published articles have reported advantages of robotic surgery (*e.g.*, faster recovery time, and less postoperative pain compared to open surgery) including less blood loss and a lower conversion rate (compared to laparoscopic surgery)[13-15]. However, the high cost and prolonged operative time of robotic procedures are disadvantages of this approach[16]. As surgeons become more experienced in robotic techniques, the length of the procedure decreases significantly; however, the higher cost of robotic procedures is still an important issue[17]. More research is needed to better understand if the increased cost is justified by an improvement in outcomes.

OPERATIVE INDICATIONS AND PATIENT SELECTION

The first step in choosing the appropriate approach to treat rectal prolapse is to evaluate the patient's operative and anesthesia risk as well as their baseline bowel function and continence. It is commonly accepted that patients with low operative and anesthesia risk should be offered an abdominal approach. A robotic approach also has the additional advantage of allowing easier technical access to other pelvic pathologies including enterocele, rectocele and vaginal vault prolapse, should they exist. In patients who have failed a prior repair and have a recurrence of their rectal prolapse a laparoscopic or robotic-assisted abdominal repair is a good choice[18].

Contraindications to a laparoscopic or robotic approach are similar and can be subdivided into physiologic contraindications and anatomic/technical contraindications. Physiologic contraindications precluding laparoscopic/robotic surgery include: pregnancy, coagulopathy, increased intracranial pressure, low cardiac output, severe pulmonary disease and chronic liver disease. The above mentioned conditions are not an absolute contraindication for surgery and the risk of a laparoscopic/robotic surgery should be assessed for each case separately. Anatomic contraindications to robotic surgery are rare but mostly pertain to patients with an extensive prior history of abdominal operations with a hostile abdomen and thick adhesions which preclude good visualization and safe dissection with the surgical robot. These patients rarely suffer from rectal prolapse, but when they do, they are usually best served with an open surgical approach.

PREOPERATIVE WORKUP

Evaluation of patients always starts with a thorough and complete history and physical examination. The most common presentation of rectal prolapse is that of a large prolapsing rectal mass and patients usually provide a history of a mass protruding from the anus on defecation or with walking. However it is also not uncommon for patients to present with chief complaints of fecal incontinence or hemorrhoids as opposed to a large prolapsing rectal mass. Other less common presenting symptoms of rectal prolapse include: soiling of the undergarments, mucus discharge, feeling of incomplete evacuation, constipation, fecal urgency, change in bowel habits, and poor anal control. This constellation of symptoms underscores why a comprehensive history of anal function and bowel habits should be recorded as a baseline reference for future evaluations.

Physical examination of rectal prolapse requires a specific approach. In the lateral or prone position, it is sometimes very hard for patients to reproduce rectal prolapse. Frequently, the only abnormality identified in these positions is a patulous anus. To reproduce the prolapse in the office, it is sometimes required that the patient sits on a toilet and perform a Valsalva maneuver. If the examiner is unable to replicate the prolapse on examination then a defecography may be helpful. Defecography may also be helpful in patients suspected of internal prolapse or intussusception as a cause of obstructive defecation syndrome.

Once the diagnosis of rectal prolapse is established, the examiner is required to differentiate between mucosal prolapse and full-thickness rectal prolapse. This usually can be achieved during gross evaluation and digital rectal examination. Furthermore the patient's anal sphincter function and integrity may be evaluated subjectively with digital exam, or objectively with anorectal manometry. Patients with a concurrent history of constipation may also require a motility (Sitzmarks®) study to evaluate their symptoms. Finally, there exists a slightly increased risk for cancer in patients with rectal prolapse and thus all patients with prolapse should undergo colorectal cancer screening *via* a recent colonoscopy, barium enema, or alternative.

In terms of preoperative preparation, patients are commonly instructed to adhere to a clear liquid diet on the day prior to their surgery. Moreover, some surgeons advocate a limited bowel preparation and evacuation of the rectum with an enema before surgery. Single dose broad spectrum antibiotic should be administrated within an hour before the incision. Thrombosis prophylaxis should start prior to the operation and should be continued during hospitalization.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Patients ideally are treated in a clinical pathway (such as an enhanced recovery after surgery pathway) to expedite and optimize their recovery. These usually include prompt mobilization of the patient the day of or the first day after operation. The patient's diet should be advanced as tolerated and their urinary catheter removed as soon as the patient is adequately mobile. Patient's length of stay after laparoscopic/robotic rectal rectopexy repair is usually short, with most patients being discharged on the second or third post-operative day. In the first 6 wk of recovery, patients are reminded to abstain from any heavy lifting greater than 15lbs that might strain their fresh repair. Patients are also prescribed stool softeners liberally to try and limit any postoperative constipation or straining.

OPERATIVE DETAILS

Place the patient in modified lithotomy position with Allen stirrups. Soft foam or egg crates should be fixed to the surgical table and placed directly under the patient to prevent slipping during the steep Trendelenberg positioning required for the safe conduct of the operation. The arms are tucked at the sides with adequate padding to minimize injuries along pressure points. Place a padded strap across the patient's chest to prevent lateral movement. Intraoperative hypothermia can be minimized with Bair Hugger® blanket. The abdomen and perineum are prepped and draped in the usual sterile fashion.

Port placement and robotic docking

The robotic camera should be placed first, as placement of all other ports depends on the location of this particular port. A Veress needle is placed at Palmer's point and the abdomen is insufflated. The 12 mm camera port is placed about 15 cm cephalad to the pubis. Placing this port too far superiorly will result in difficulty in reaching the deep pelvis during the procedure. A line is drawn from the camera port to the anterior superior iliac spine on each side. Two additional robotic ports are placed about 8-10 cm from the camera port along this line. A third robotic port is placed 6 cm lateral to the left lower quadrant port (designated robotic arm number 3). Assistant ports consist of a 12 mm port in the right upper quadrant and 5 mm port in the epigastric area. The patient is then placed in steep Trendelenberg position. The small bowel is swept superiorly out of the pelvis.

Next, the robot is docked, with the robot cart positioned along the patient's left side. Arm 1 is placed in the right lower quadrant, Arm 2 in the left quadrant, and Arm 3 in left lateral abdomen. Instrument placement is as follows: Arm 1 with monopolar scissors, Arm 2 with fenestrated bipolar grasper, Arm 3 with atraumatic graspers. The beginning of the case proceeds with use of the 0-degree robotic camera.

Rectal mobilization

Inspect the abdomen and pelvis for any abnormalities.

Consideration may be given to lysis of adhesions if involved organs have adhesions. For female patients with an intact uterus, a 0-Prolene suture is inserted into the abdominal cavity on a straight Keith needle, passed once through the uterus and back through the abdominal wall to elevate the uterus during the surgery and provide gentle traction. The rectosigmoid is grasped and elevated anteriorly by the assistant using the epigastric port. Sharp dissection is used to open the peritoneum along the base of the rectosigmoid mesentery. Dissection along the sacral promontory is developed along the avascular areolar plane. While dissecting along the sacral promontory, care should be taken to identify and preserve the hypogastric nerve plexus and ureters. The peritoneum along the right side of the rectum is opened up to the rectovaginal septum, in females. A vaginal manipulator can be used to elevate the posterior vagina and aid dissection along the anterior rectum. While the vagina is elevated, the assistant uses an atraumatic grasper to lift the rectum up and out of the pelvis. Electrocautery is used to incise the peritoneum to enter the rectovaginal plane at this level. The dissection along this plane may be difficult in patients with chronic rectal prolapse as this layer may be especially thinned out. Dissection is carried along the right side of the sacral promontory towards the left lower rectum. Next, separate the rectum and vagina in females, and prostate in males, all the way down almost to the perineal body. Continue the dissection down laterally until the pelvic floor is visualized. Fully mobilize the rectum anteriorly and posteriorly, while leaving the lateral stalks intact. Perform a digital rectal exam during the dissection.

Mesh placement

Guidelines on appropriate choice of mesh are limited in the literature. In our practice, we routinely use lightweight, macroporous polypropylene mesh. Biologic mesh may also be considered in cases of gross fecal contamination or if the surgeon has high concern for infection. For the purposes of this review, we will discuss use of synthetic mesh. A slightly tapered mesh is used. The mesh is trimmed to 18 cm long, 3 cm wide along the portion that will be fixed to the anterior rectum, and tapered to 2 cm on the side that will attach to the sacral promontory. The mesh can be rolled up and introduced into the abdominal cavity through the 12 mm assistant port. Using a 2-0 Ethibond suture, about 6 sutures are used to fix the mesh along the anterior extraperitoneal surface of the rectum. The mesh is positioned along the right side of the rectum and brought to the sacral promontory. Care must be taken to ensure that both the rectal and vaginal walls are spared. The overlying presacral fascia is opened to expose the bare periosteum of the sacral promontory. Two 0-Ethibond sutures are placed in a mattress fashion to anchor the mesh to the sacral promontory. Before suture placement, care should be taken to avoid presacral veins, the right ureter, and iliac vessels. The peritoneum is then closed over the mesh with 3-0 absorbable sutures and Lapra-Ty suture clips. Check for hemostasis.

POSSIBLE COMPLICATIONS

Recurrent prolapse

Long term recurrence of rectal prolapse after robotic surgery is about 11%-13%[19,20] and is similar to recurrence rates after laparoscopic surgery[10,21]. Recurrent rectal prolapse after standard perineal surgery is reported around 25%[22]. Should the patient develop recurrent prolapse after robotic surgery, the surgeon may again consider reattempting robotic rectopexy. Intraoperatively, the surgeon can assess why the prolapse recurred (detachment of mesh from the sacrum or rectum) and take a tailored approach in correcting it.

Mesh complications

Use of mesh rectopexy has been shown to decrease recurrence of rectal prolapse[23]. However, as with use of any foreign body, use of mesh is not completely without consequence. The literature reports an increase in mesh-related complications when synthetic mesh is used in the presence of a rectal anastomosis[24,25]. Rates of pelvic sepsis have been reported in 2%-16% cases, however these rates were observed with use of polyvinyl alcohol sponge - a type of mesh that is no longer used[26,27]. Other mesh-associated complications include mesh erosion observed in 0%-1%[27-31], fistulas, and dyspareunia[32,33].

Management of mesh complications can be difficult. Mesh erosion involving the vagina or rectum have been successfully treated with simple transvaginal or transanal excision[28,29]. Other case reports also describe laparoscopic excision and primary repair for mesh erosion involving the rectum, vagina and bladder.

Several studies have analyzed the used of biologic mesh for pelvic organ prolapse. However, there is no strong evidence favoring the use of biologic mesh *vs* synthetic mesh. Indeed, some limited reports describe higher rates of recurrence with biologic mesh[34]. When comparing synthetic *vs* biologic mesh, mesh-related complications are similar. The use of mesh rectopexy in the absence of colon resection is associated with an acceptable rate of morbidity and mortality.

Constipation

Constipation is a very common pre-existing condition among patients with rectal prolapse[35]. Constipation after rectopexy surgery can be due to kinking of the redundant rectosigmoid in patients with suture rectopexy[36] or denervation of the rectum if the lateral stalks are divided[37]. Several studies have shown decreased rates of postoperative constipation with limited rectal dissection and preservation of the lateral

rectal ligaments[28,38]. Other studies have reported decreased rates of constipation with limited posterior rectal mobilization[39]. These maneuvers may be considered for patients with a history of constipation.

Fecal incontinence

Fecal incontinence is extremely common in patients with rectal prolapse[26,40]. This may be due to sphincter injury, pudendal neuropathy, or impaired rectal adaptation to distention in patients with chronic rectal prolapse[26,41]. In patients with fecal incontinence, the abdominal approach has been shown to be more effective than the perineal approach, and has been reported to improve incontinence in more than 62% of patients in short-term follow up[42,43].

OUTCOMES OF ROBOTIC SURGERY FOR RECTAL PROLAPSE

There are limited published articles regarding robotic rectal prolapse surgery. However, in this section the available literature is reviewed.

Although published studies are consistently small, available published case-series, case-control studies, and a recently published clinical trial study reveal that robotic-assisted rectal prolapse surgery has equivalent safety compared to laparoscopic surgery[12,13,44].

The safety of the robotic approach in the treatment of rectal prolapse has been cited numerous times in the literature, even in elderly patients. Munz *et al*[15] in 2002 reported treatment of six rectal prolapse patients with robotic assisted suture rectopexy. The study reported mean procedure time of 127 min with no major complications and without any recurrence in six months[15]. In 2007, a larger case control study with 14 consecutive patients who underwent robotic treatment of pelvic organ prolapse was published[17]. The authors noted that postoperative complication rates were similar in the robotic and laparoscopic groups. However, they reported longer operative time and greater hospitalization cost for the robotic group[17]. Both studies reported robotic surgery as a feasible, safe and effective technique in the treatment of rectal prolapse[15,17]. Later Germain *et al*[19], in a study of 77 rectal prolapse patients, reported robotic-assisted rectopexy as a safe approach in patients aged over 75 years with similar results in younger patients. The authors reported a morbidity rate of 1.7% for patients older than 75 years of age[19]. A published systematic review by Rondelli and a recently published clinical trial by Mehmood *et al*[44] confirmed safety of the robotic approach in treatment of rectal prolapse[44,45].

Short term outcomes for robotic rectal prolapse seem on par with the laparoscopic and open technique. Ayav *et al*[13], with one year follow up of eighteen female patients operated on by the robotic assisted technique, reported they all remained free of rectal prolapse. Zero short term recurrence rate was also reported by Munz *et al*[15] and Germain *et al*[19]. In a recently published systematic review of 340 patients in six observed studies by Rondelli a meta-analysis showed that the robotic approach does not influence the recurrence rate of rectal prolapse[45]. However, the only available clinical trial with 12 mo follow-up reported a better functional outcome and quality of life in patients undergoing robotic surgery compared to laparoscopic surgery[44].

Although published studies are low volume studies, some major postoperative complications have been reported. Overall, a 10.4% morbidity rate has been reported for rectal prolapse patients undergoing robotic surgery[20]. Heemskerk, with a case control study, reported similar rates of postoperative constipation and incontinence in robotic and laparoscopic techniques[17]. However, the complications of urinary tract infections, pre-sacral fluid collections, rectal injuries, and post-operative hemorrhage have been reported for robotic surgery[19,20,46]. Rondelli, in a systematic review, reported a decrease in intra-operative blood loss and post-operative complications in patients who underwent robotic surgery compared to laparoscopic surgery[45]. However, Mehmood *et al*[44], in a recent clinical trial did not find any significant difference in blood loss between robotic and laparoscopic approaches[44]. Further randomized clinical trials are needed to evaluate if the robotic approach will decrease complications compared to the laparoscopic approach.

Functional outcomes for robotic rectal prolapse seem on par with laparoscopic and open techniques. de Hoog *et al*[21], with a case control study comparing the functional results among three patient groups of robotic, laparoscopic, and open approaches, found no differences in either Wexner incontinence score or IDL score (impact on daily life-score as judged by patients) between the three operation types. Similar results were reported previously by Ayav *et al*[13], Munz *et al*[15], and Heemskerk *et al*[17]. However, a recent clinical trial by Mehmood *et al*[44] reported that postoperative Wexner fecal incontinence severity index scoring were significantly lower in the robotic approach compared to the laparoscopic approach[44]. Also, they reported the SF-36 questionnaires regarding physical and emotional component had better scoring with the robotic approach compared to the laparoscopic approach[44]. Considering the limited number of published studies regarding functional outcomes, further studies should be planned to evaluate functional outcomes of patients undergoing robotic treatment of rectal prolapse.

The long-term outcomes of robotic rectal prolapse repair remain relatively unknown and there is limited published data on this topic. The only published clinical trial did not find any relapse in 12 mo follow-up of patients[44]. Other case-control and case series studies reported equal long-term rate of recurrence of rectal prolapse in robotic technique compared to laparoscopic surgery[21,47]. de Hoog *et al*[21] with a study on long-term outcomes of 20 patients who underwent robotic

and laparoscopic rectal prolapse procedures reported respectively 20% and 27% recurrence rates for robotic and laparoscopic approaches, which were significantly higher than open abdominal procedure recurrence rate in his study (2%)[21]. However, in more recent studies relapse rates of 12.8% and 11% have been reported for robotic approach[20,47]. Further studies are indicated to discover long term outcomes of robotic approach rectal prolapse surgery compared to laparoscopic and open approaches.

Robotic surgery is associated with higher hospital costs compared to laparoscopic and open techniques. Higher cost of robotic rectal prolapse surgery has been reported by multiple studies[17,20]. However, a recent study shows that after adjusting the cost with hospitalization length, the cost of robotic technique is lower than laparoscopic or open surgeries in general surgery procedures except for cholecystectomy and esophagogastric procedures[48]. Further studies comparing robotic and laparoscopic approaches regarding cost-effectiveness in rectal prolapse surgery are needed.

The length of the robotic rectopexy procedure decreases with increased experience of surgeons. Increased operative time for robot rectopexy has been reported multiple times[15,17,21,44]. A portion of this increase in time is caused by robotic instruments set-up[15]. de Hoog *et al*[21] reported the mean operation time of 157 min for robotic rectopexy, which was more than two times longer than open rectopexy. However, in a more recent study, a significant decrease in operative time with improving experience of surgeons was reported[19].

CONCLUSION

Robotic surgery is a safe, effective, and feasible approach for the treatment of rectal prolapse that does not result in any difference in recurrence and function compared to laparoscopic rectopexy. However, the benefits of a robotic approach must be weighed against its higher cost and longer operative time. Further randomized clinical trials are needed to report functional outcomes and long term outcomes of robotic surgical treatment of rectal prolapse.

REFERENCES

1 Classic articles in colonic and rectal surgery. Edmond Delorme 1847-1929. On the treatment of total prolapse of the rectum by excision of the rectal mucous membranes or recto-colic. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1985; **28**: 544-553 [PMID: 3893950]

2 **Makineni H**, Thejeswi P, Rai BK. Evaluation of Clinical Outcomes after Abdominal Rectopexy and Delorme's Procedure for Rectal Prolapse: A Prospective Study. *J Clin Diagn Res* 2014; **8**: NC04-NC07 [PMID: 24995208]

3 **Uhlig BE**, Sullivan ES. The modified Delorme operation: its place in surgical treatment for massive rectal prolapse. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1979; **22**: 513-521 [PMID: 527442 DOI: 10.1007/BF02586995]

4 **Kuijpers HC**. Treatment of complete rectal prolapse: to narrow, to wrap, to suspend, to fix, to encircle, to plicate or to resect? *World J Surg* 1992; **16**: 826-830 [PMID: 1462615 DOI: 10.1007/BF02066977]

5 **Tsunoda A**, Yasuda N, Yokoyama N, Kamiyama G, Kusano M. Delorme's procedure for rectal prolapse: clinical and physiological analysis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 1260-1265 [PMID: 12972972 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6724-9]

6 **Jacobs LK**, Lin YJ, Orkin BA. The best operation for rectal prolapse. *Surg Clin North Am* 1997; **77**: 49-70 [PMID: 9092117 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6109(05)70532-6]

7 **Kim DS**, Tsang CB, Wong WD, Lowry AC, Goldberg SM, Madoff RD. Complete rectal prolapse: evolution of management and results. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 460-466; discussion 466-469 [PMID: 10215045 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234167]

8 **Kairaluoma MV**, Viljakka MT, Kellokumpu IH. Open vs. laparoscopic surgery for rectal prolapse: a case-controlled study assessing short-term outcome. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 353-360 [PMID: 12626911 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6555-8]

9 **Kariv Y**, Delaney CP, Casillas S, Hammel J, Nocero J, Bast J, Brady K, Fazio VW, Senagore AJ. Long-term outcome after laparoscopic and open surgery for rectal prolapse: a case-control study. *Surg Endosc* 2006; **20**: 35-42 [PMID: 16374674 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-005-3012-2]

10 **Purkayastha S**, Tekkis P, Athanasiou T, Aziz O, Paraskevas P, Ziprin P, Darzi A. A comparison of open vs. laparoscopic abdominal rectopexy for full-thickness rectal prolapse: a meta-analysis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1930-1940 [PMID: 15981060 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0077-x]

11 **Kessler H**, Hohenberger W. Laparoscopic resection rectopexy for rectal prolapse. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1800-1801 [PMID: 15986262 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0157-y]

12 **Ruurda JP**, Visser PL, Broeders IA. Analysis of procedure time in robot-assisted surgery: comparative study in laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Comput Aided Surg* 2003; **8**: 24-29 [PMID: 14708755 DOI: 10.3109/10929080309146099]

13 **Ayav A**, Bresler L, Hubert J, Brunaud L, Boissel P. Robotic-assisted pelvic organ prolapse surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2005; **19**: 1200-1203 [PMID: 15942809 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-004-2257-5]

14 **Heemskerk J**, Zandbergen R, Maessen JG, Greve JW, Bouvy ND. Advantages of advanced laparoscopic systems. *Surg Endosc* 2006; **20**: 730-733 [PMID: 16528462 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-005-0456-3]

15 **Munz Y**, Moorthy K, Kudchadkar R, Hernandez JD, Martin S, Darzi A, Rockall T. Robotic assisted rectopexy. *Am J Surg* 2004; **187**: 88-92 [PMID: 14706593 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2002.11.001]

16 **Breitenstein S**, Nocito A, Puhan M, Held U, Weber M, Clavien PA. Robotic-assisted versus laparoscopic cholecystectomy: outcome and cost analyses of a case-matched control study. *Ann Surg* 2008; **247**: 987-993 [PMID: 18520226 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318172501f]

17 **Heemskerk J**, de Hoog DE, van Gemert WG, Baeten CG, Greve JW, Bouvy ND. Robot-assisted vs. conventional laparoscopic rectopexy for rectal prolapse: a comparative study on costs and time. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2007; **50**: 1825-1830 [PMID: 17690936 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-007-9017-2]

18 **Tsugawa K**, Sue K, Koyanagi N, Hashizume M, Wada H, Tomikawa M, Sugimachi K. Laparoscopic rectopexy for recurrent rectal prolapse: a safe and simple procedure without a mesh prosthesis. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49**: 1549-1551 [PMID: 12397732]

19 **Germain A**, Perrenot C, Scherrer ML, Ayav C, Brunaud L, Ayav A, Bresler L. Long-term outcome of robotic-assisted laparoscopic rectopexy for full-thickness rectal prolapse in elderly patients. *Colorectal Dis* 2014; **16**: 198-202 [PMID: 24308488 DOI: 10.1111/codi.12513]

20 **Perrenot C**, Germain A, Scherrer ML, Ayav A, Brunaud L, Bresler L. Long-term outcomes of robot-assisted laparoscopic rectopexy for rectal prolapse. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 909-914 [PMID: 23739199 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e318289366e]

21 **de Hoog DE**, Heemskerk J, Nieman FH, van Gemert WG, Baeten CG, Bouvy ND. Recurrence and functional results after open versus conventional laparoscopic versus robot-assisted laparoscopic rectopexy for rectal prolapse: a case-control study. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2009; **24**: 1201-1206 [PMID: 19588158 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-

009-0766-3]
22 **Lieberth M**, Kondylis LA, Reilly JC, Kondylis PD. The Delorme repair for full-thickness rectal prolapse: a retrospective review. *Am J Surg* 2009; **197**: 418-423 [PMID: 19245926 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2008.11.012]
23 **Mathew MJ**, Parmar AK, Reddy PK. Mesh erosion after laparoscopic posterior rectopexy: A rare complication. *J Minim Access Surg* 2014; **10**: 40-41 [PMID: 24501509 DOI: 10.4103/0972-9941.124473]
24 **Novell JR**, Osborne MJ, Winslet MC, Lewis AA. Prospective randomized trial of Ivalon sponge versus sutured rectopexy for full-thickness rectal prolapse. *Br J Surg* 1994; **81**: 904-906 [PMID: 8044618 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800810638]
25 **Athanasiadis S**, Weyand G, Heiligers J, Heumuller L, Barthelmes L. The risk of infection of three synthetic materials used in rectopexy with or without colonic resection for rectal prolapse. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1996; **11**: 42-44 [PMID: 8919341 DOI: 10.1007/BF00418855]
26 **Madiba TE**, Baig MK, Wexner SD. Surgical management of rectal prolapse. *Arch Surg* 2005; **140**: 63-73 [PMID: 15655208 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.140.1.63]
27 **D'Hoore A**, Penninckx F. Laparoscopic ventral recto(colpo)pexy for rectal prolapse: surgical technique and outcome for 109 patients. *Surg Endosc* 2006; **20**: 1919-1923 [PMID: 17031741 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-005-0485-y]
28 **Portier G**, Iovino F, Lazorthes F. Surgery for rectal prolapse: Orr-Loygue ventral rectopexy with limited dissection prevents postoperative-induced constipation without increasing recurrence. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2006; **49**: 1136-1140 [PMID: 16830210 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-006-0616-0]
29 **Faucheron JL**, Voirin D, Riboud R, Waroquet PA, Noel J. Laparoscopic anterior rectopexy to the promontory for full-thickness rectal prolapse in 175 consecutive patients: short- and long-term follow-up. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 660-665 [PMID: 22595845 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e318251612e]
30 **Boons P**, Collinson R, Cunningham C, Lindsey I. Laparoscopic ventral rectopexy for external rectal prolapse improves constipation and avoids de novo constipation. *Colorectal Dis* 2010; **12**: 526-532 [PMID: 19486104 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.01859.x]
31 **Collinson R**, Wijffels N, Cunningham C, Lindsey I. Laparoscopic ventral rectopexy for internal rectal prolapse: short-term functional results. *Colorectal Dis* 2010; **12**: 97-104 [PMID: 19788493 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.02049.x]
32 **Smart NJ**, Pathak S, Boorman P, Daniels IR. Synthetic or biological mesh use in laparoscopic ventral mesh rectopexy--a systematic review. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; **15**: 650-654 [PMID: 23517144 DOI: 10.1111/codi.12219]
33 **Hernández P**, Targarona EM, Balagué C, Martínez C, Pallares JL, Garriga J, Trias M. [Laparoscopic treatment of rectal prolapse]. *Cir Esp* 2008; **84**: 318-322 [PMID: 19087777 DOI: 10.1016/S0009-739X(08)75042-5]
34 **Badrek-Al Amoudi AH**, Greenslade GL, Dixon AR. How to deal with complications after laparoscopic ventral mesh rectopexy: lessons learnt from a tertiary referral centre. *Colorectal Dis* 2013; **15**: 707-712 [PMID: 23384148 DOI: 10.1111/codi.12164]
35 **Tjandra JJ**, Fazio VW, Church JM, Milsom JW, Oakley JR, Lavery IC. Ripstein procedure is an effective treatment for rectal prolapse without constipation. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1993; **36**: 501-507 [PMID: 8482171 DOI: 10.1007/BF02050018]
36 **McKee RF**, Lauder JC, Poon FW, Aitchison MA, Finlay IG. A prospective randomized study of abdominal rectopexy with and without sigmoidectomy in rectal prolapse. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1992; **174**: 145-148 [PMID: 1734574]
37 **Mollen RM**, Kuijpers JH, van Hoek F. Effects of rectal mobilization and lateral ligaments division on colonic and anorectal function. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1283-1287 [PMID: 11005498 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237437]
38 **D'Hoore A**, Cadoni R, Penninckx F. Long-term outcome of laparoscopic ventral rectopexy for total rectal prolapse. *Br J Surg* 2004; **91**: 1500-1505 [PMID: 15499644 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4779]
39 **Samaranayake CB**, Luo C, Plank AW, Merrie AE, Plank LD, Bissett IP. Systematic review on ventral rectopexy for rectal prolapse and intussusception. *Colorectal Dis* 2010; **12**: 504-512 [PMID: 19438880 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.01934.x]
40 **Brown SR**, Hartley JE, Hill J, Scott N, Williams JG. Contemporary coloproctology. Springer London, 2012: 347 [DOI: 10.1007/978-0-85729-889-8]
41 **Snooks SJ**, Henry MM, Swash M. Anorectal incontinence and rectal prolapse: differential assessment of the innervation to puborectalis and external anal sphincter muscles. *Gut* 1985; **26**: 470-476 [PMID: 3996937 DOI: 10.1136/gut.26.5.470]
42 **Ashari LH**, Lumley JW, Stevenson AR, Stitz RW. Laparoscopically-assisted resection rectopexy for rectal prolapse: ten years' experience. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 982-987 [PMID: 15785889 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0886-3]
43 **Ripstein CB**. Treatment of massive rectal prolapse. *Am J Surg* 1952; **83**: 68-71 [PMID: 14903331 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(52)90161-X]
44 **Mehmood RK**, Parker J, Bhuvimanian L, Qasem E, Mohammed AA, Zeeshan M, Grugel K, Carter P, Ahmed S. Short-term outcome of laparoscopic versus robotic ventral mesh rectopexy for full-thickness rectal prolapse. Is robotic superior? *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2014; **29**: 1113-1118 [PMID: 24965859 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-014-1937-4]
45 **Rondelli F**, Bugiantella W, Villa F, Sanguinetti A, Boni M, Mariani E, Avenia N. Robot-assisted or conventional laparoscoic rectopexy for rectal prolapse? Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Surg* 2014; **12** Suppl 2: S153-S159 [PMID: 25157988 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijsu.2014.08.359]
46 **Buchs NC**, Pugin F, Ris F, Volonte F, Morel P, Roche B. Early experience with robotic rectopexy. *Int J Med Robot* 2013; **9**: e61-e65 [PMID: 23776088 DOI: 10.1002/rcs.1498]
47 **Haahr C**, Jakobsen HL, Gögenur I. Robot-assisted rectopexy is a safe and feasible option for treatment of rectal prolapse. *Dan Med J* 2014; **61**: A4842 [PMID: 24814744]
48 **Salman M**, Bell T, Martin J, Bhuva K, Grim R, Ahuja V. Use, cost, complications, and mortality of robotic versus nonrobotic general surgery procedures based on a nationwide database. *Am Surg* 2013; **79**: 553-560 [PMID: 23711262]

P- Reviewer: Smart NJ **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.106

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 106-110
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Role of ablation in the treatment of breast cancer: A review

Susan K Boolbol, Sarah P Cate

Susan K Boolbol, Sarah P Cate, Mount Sinai Beth Israel, New York, NY 10011, United States
Author contributions: Boolbol SK designed research; Cate SP performed research; Boolbol SK and Cate SP wrote the paper.
Conflict-of-interest: None.

Correspondence to: Sarah P Cate, MD, Mount Sinai Beth Israel, 325 West 15th Street, New York, NY 10011, United States. scate@chpnet.org
Telephone: +1-212-3670133
Fax: +1-212-3671718
Received: October 6, 2014
Peer-review started: October 6, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: December 2, 2014
Accepted: January 18, 2015
Article in press: January 20, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Breast cancer surgical treatment has evolved from the days of the radical mastectomy to breast conservation surgery. In recent years, there has been much interest in percutaneous treatment modalities for breast cancer, instead of surgery. There are several different methods of percutaneous treatment of breast cancer. These include cryoablation, radiofrequency ablation, microwave ablation, laser ablation, and ultrasound ablation. The advantages of these techniques include an outpatient or office procedure, with local anaesthesia; minimal scarring, which is only from introducing the percutaneous instrument into the breast, instead of a surgical incision; and minimal recovery time, as the procedure does not involve surgery or general anaesthesia. Disadvantages relate mainly to pathologic evaluation, in that the true size of the breast cancer has to be estimated from the pre-procedure imaging, and all molecular profiling must be obtained from the biopsy specimen. In addition, long term patient satisfaction with cosmesis after adjuvant radiotherapy has not been studied. We review these percutaneous ablation modalities in this paper, as well as their individual techniques, associated advantages, and disadvantages. We also review current clinical trials, exploring these methods of breast cancer treatment.

Key words: Breast cancer; Cryoablation; Radiofrequency ablation; High frequency ultrasound ablation

Core tip: This paper seeks to provide updated literature on percutaneous ablation modalities in the treatment of breast cancer. We review the technical aspects and literature, including ongoing clinical trials for the following percutaneous treatment techniques: cryoablation, radiofrequency ablation, microwave ablation, laser ablation, and ultrasound ablation.

Boolbol SK, Cate SP. Role of ablation in the treatment of breast cancer: A review. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 106-110 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/106.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.106

INTRODUCTION

The treatment of breast cancer has evolved over time to include minimally invasive approaches. Earlier detection of breast cancer results in smaller lesions being detected, and thus have made them amenable to minimally invasive approaches. Several ablative modalities have emerged in recent years, which include cryoablation, radiofrequency ablation, microwave ablation, laser ablation, and ultrasound ablation. The purpose of this article is to review current clinical trials,

and past literature on various ablation techniques. Current reviews are not updated with recently completed or ongoing clinical trials[1,2].

CRYOABLATION

Cryoablation is a percutaneous technique in which a probe is inserted into the breast, and the tumor is treated through a freezing process. The benefits of cryoablation include the ability to perform the procedure in the office and with the use of local anesthesia, making it an attractive option for those patients with multiple co-morbidities. The probe is inserted through a small incision in the breast resulting in minimal scarring. Due to the fact that this is an ablative technique and does not involve removal of tissue, the cosmetic outcome is excellent.

Interestingly, there is also thought to be an immunological response to cryotherapy[3]. Cytokines are postulated to be released, and to modulate the immune response to the breast cancer. T cells are thought to stimulate cytotoxic lymphocytes and kill circulating metastatic cells. In a recent study presented at the 2014 American Society of Clinical Oncology Breast Cancer Symposium, 18 patients were divided into three study cohorts. One group was treated with cryotherapy, one with ipilimumab, a monoclonal antibody, and the final group with both cryotherapy and ipilimumab. T-cell tumor lymphocyte infiltrating density was assessed in each of these patients, and ranged from 2%-30%. Systemic immune response was measured by elevations in plasma interferon gamma, and a marker of CD 4 T cells. A greater than two times increased response in these two markers was considered positive. There were elevations in the group that received both the cryoablation and the ipilimumab, although two patients who received the ipilimumab alone also had elevated immune responses[4]. The author concluded that further studies with larger numbers are necessary to evaluate this finding, but it reinforces the idea that there is a clear systemic immune response to cryoablation.

Established criteria for treatment of breast cancers with ablation techniques are still evolving. A national phase Ⅱ clinical trial is still underway, evaluating cryoablation in the treatment of early stage breast cancers. Criteria for cryoablation of breast cancers include tumors less than 2 cm, unifocal cancers, and the absence of a significant intraductal component[5,6].

Initial research of cryoablation in the treatment of breast cancer involved cryoablation followed by excision of the cancer in a multi-institutional phase Ⅰ pilot study[5]. This study examined twenty-nine patients with invasive breast cancer. All the patients had tumors less than or equal to 2 cm. Twenty seven patients underwent cryoablation of their tumors, followed by surgical resection 4-6 wk later, consisting of either partial mastectomy (breast conservation) or mastectomy. The median age in this study was 52.5 years, with a range of 34-77 years old.

When the specimens were evaluated by the pathologists, 23 patients out of 27 patients had no evidence of invasive cancer. Four patients had residual DCIS surrounding the ablative zone. The study concluded that the size of the cancer was an important factor in terms of residual disease. There was no residual disease found in the eleven patients in the study who had tumors less than 1 cm. Sixteen patients had tumor less than 1 cm, and of these, 10 patients had no residual cancer. In three out of the five patients with either invasive lobular cancer or colloid cancer, there was residual invasive cancer. The size of the cancer was found to be larger on final pathologic evaluation than the original size estimated by preoperative imaging in these cases. With these findings, a phase Ⅱ study was recommended eliminating surgical excision. The criteria for inclusion were size of tumor less than or equal to 1.5 cm and those patients with less than 25% DCIS on the biopsy specimen. Additionally, the study concluded that those patients with a significant non-calcified DCIS component should be excluded from treatment with cryoablation.

Subsequently, a multicenter phase Ⅱ trial, ACOSOG Z-1072, has been completed. This study evaluated the use of cryotherapy in early stage breast cancer. Inclusion criteria included invasive breast cancers less than or equal to 2 cm. The study sought to evaluate the overall efficacy of cryoablation in invasive breast cancer, as well as to assess how well magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can identify residual cancer after ablation[7]. Patients underwent cryoablation, followed by a contrast enhanced MRI within 2 wk, followed by surgery. Radiation and appropriate adjuvant systemic therapy were given according to standard clinical practice. Eighty-seven cancers were treated in this trial. Sixty (70.9%) showed no residual cancer, while 27 (31%) had residual DCIS or early stage breast cancer. 100% of patients with tumors less than 1 cm in size treated with cryoablation had no residual invasive cancer on pathologic examination of the specimen[7]. MRI showed no enhancement in 66 breasts, (75.9%). Interestingly, there were 21 (24.1%) failures, defined as residual invasive cancer and or DCIS, with no MRI enhancement after ablation.

In a study examining the efficacy of cryoablation without excision, Littrup *et al*[8] examined 11 patients, who had previously refused surgery. The patients had stage 1 to stage 4 breast cancers, and had 22 different foci of breast cancer. Tumor size ranged from 0.5 cm to 5.8 cm. The average age was 62.5 years old. The authors did not find any local complications to the skin or chest wall. Five of the patients who were included in the study had recurrent breast cancer. At a mean follow-up time of 18 mo, there were no local recurrences. Pain after the procedure was also evaluated. The mean pain scale rating was 0.3 on a scale of 0-10 at 24 h. Successful tumor treatment was measured by 1 cm of ice beyond the tumor. This was assessed using a combination of ultrasound, computed tomography, and

MRI imaging modalities, which was observed in all of the patients.

A national multicenter, clinical trial evaluating cryoablation without subsequent excision, is beginning to enroll patients. This trial is evaluating cryoablation in luminal a breast cancers, without excision, in women 65 years old or greater. This trial is predicated on the ACOSOG Z1072 trial, with the exception that the cancers are not subsequently excised. Adjuvant treatment is at the discretion of the treating physician. Local recurrence rates and disease free survival are being evaluated, as well as quality of life. This should provide important information as to the use of cryoablation alone in the treatment of breast cancer.

In summary, the current clinical trial evaluating luminal A breast cancers treated with cryoablation only, should provide important information about recurrence rates with this modality.

RADIOFREQUENCY ABLATION

Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) is another percutaneous tumor ablation modality, which utilizes heat to produce an area of cell death[9]. Advantages of the technique are the same as the other ablation techniques, including an office based procedure. Disadvantages of the technique are the pain associated with it. In a pilot study of seventeen patients, RFA and then excision was performed on invasive breast cancers that measured less than or equal to 1.5 cm[10]. Of the fifteen patients who ultimately completed the trial, three patients had positive margins. One patient had a tumor that was completely missed by the RFA. Similarly, Fornage *et al*[11] found that out of 21 patients who underwent RFA and then surgical excision, one patient had residual tumor beyond the zone of ablation. However, this patient initially had a 4 cm lesion, and underwent neoadjuvant chemotherapy. The authors concluded that patients who received neoadjuvant chemotherapy were not eligible for RFA.

Radiofrequency ablation has also been used to create an additional area of tumor sterilization, in a phase Ⅱ clinical trial, after local excision[12]. This study sought to examine whether radiofrequency ablation could reduce the rate of re-excisions for close margins, to possibly provide adequate local control, and obviate the need for adjuvant radiotherapy. One hundred patients were included in this study, with tumor sizes ranging from Tis to T3. Seventy-eight patients had margins that were considered negative, which was defined as a margin less than 2 mm. Twenty-two patients had margins which were less than or equal to 2 mm. Twelve of these patients had close margins, and three had focally positive margins. Seven patients underwent mastectomy for positive margins, and 2 patients subsequently chose mastectomy electively after RFA. Sixty-eight percent of all patients in the study with close or positive margins did not have re-excisions. Of the 100 patients, 24 patients underwent adjuvant radiotherapy. In the subset of patients who did not receive adjuvant radiotherapy, the mean follow-up was 62 mo ± 24 mo. During this time there were 2 recurrences near the tumor bed; two recurrences in a separate location in the same breast; and three recurrences along the biopsy track. The study also examined five year disease free survival and overall survival, which were 88% and 93%, respectively. Interestingly, the disease free and overall survival with adjuvant radiotherapy was 83%. The authors concluded that this is a safe method of treatment of small breast cancers.

In a prospective study, fourteen patients with invasive ductal carcinoma were treated with RFA and sentinel node biopsy. Breast MRI was performed 1 wk prior to RFA, and then 3 wk afterwards[13]. The goal of the study was to assess for residual lesions. The tumors were surgically excised one week after RFA. Five patients had areas of enhancement on post-RFA MRI, which was irregular. In two patients, enhancement of the initial lesion was noted, which signified failure of the RFA to ablate the cancer. Seven patients had no enhancement on post-RFA MRI. Interestingly, the patients with larger tumors had complete ablation, and no residual enhancement on post-RFA MRI. The authors concluded that breast MRI is able to detect residual abnormalities after RFA.

In summary, longer follow-up of patients treated with RFA is needed to assess for recurrence rates and for the appropriate imaging modality used for follow-up, but it holds promise as a minimally invasive treatment for breast cancer, possibly obviating the need for surgery.

MICROWAVE ABLATION

Microwave ablation is an additional percutaneous modality for treatment of breast cancer. Heat is made *via* tissue water agitation, achieved by electromagnetic frequencies of 900-2450 MHz[14]. Advantages of this technique are similar to other ablation techniques and include ability to treat lesions using local anaesthesia and good cosmetic outcomes. In a pilot study of 41 patients, Zhou *et al*[14] performed microwave ablation for breast cancers less than or equal 3 cm, followed by mastectomy. Eligibility criteria for the study included a unifocal tumor, with at least one centimeter between the skin and the tumor, and the tumor and the pectoralis muscle, as well as a limited intraductal component. The mean age of the patients was 55.5 years old. All of the patients had either invasive ductal carcinoma or DCIS. The pathologic analysis showed that 37 out of 41 cases were successfully ablated, when analyzed using alpha-NADH-diaphorase staining. There were 3 injuries to the skin and pectoralis muscle secondary to heat. The authors concluded that in small, unifocal cancers, microwave ablation may be a feasible option. However, since mastectomies were performed in all of the patients, there is no data from

this study on recurrence rates. Additionally, patients in this study underwent general anesthesia, so patient tolerance of the procedure was not assessed. Further studies are needed in larger groups of patients to determine patient tolerance and recurrence rates.

LASER ABLATION

Laser ablation is an additional percutaneous technique in which light is delivered into the tissue[15]. It has been evaluated mainly in terms of patient safety in various pilot studies. In a meta-analysis, Zhao *et al*[2] found a 13%-70% complete ablation rate of breast cancer utilizing laser ablation in the literature[1]. Dowlatshahi *et al*[16] studied 54 patients with invasive breast cancer. Median age was 60 years old, with a range of 42-80. The mean tumor size was 12 mm. Fifty patients had an invasive breast cancer, and four patients had DCIS. They were all treated with laser ablation, followed by standard surgical resection, 1 to 8 wk afterwards. The study found that the complete ablation rate was 70%. The authors concluded that it was feasible and appropriate to ablate breast cancers that were mammographically detected.

An additional study of laser ablation evaluated fourteen patients who were treated with laser ablation instead of surgery[17]. Three patients had stage 4 disease, and the treatment was for palliative therapy. Local control was demonstrated in five patients, with a disease free survival of 19-60 mo, in those patients without evidence of metastatic disease. The authors concluded that laser ablation was feasible for tumors less than 2 cm, with ductal histology, without exensive intraductal components, and vascular invasion. One patient had a skin burn, and one had a localized pneumothorax. Further large scale studies are needed to evaluate the local control rates, as well as complication rates.

HIGH INTENSITY FOCUSED ULTRASOUND ABLATION

High intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) ablation differs from other ablation techniques in that it does not employ an incision in the skin or insertion of a probe into the breast for treatment. There is very limited data about the use of high frequency ultrasound ablation in breast cancer. In a phase Ⅱ randomized trial of HIFU ablation and breast cancer, 23 patients underwent HIFU ablation, with a mean tumor size of 3.1 cm[18]. All of the patients underwent HIFU ablation, followed by modified radical mastectomies. Complete ablation was demonstrated in 100% of patients. Small skin burns occurred in one patient. In a phase Ⅲ trial, 22 patients with breast cancer underwent HIFU ablation, followed by standard adjuvant therapy[18]. The study found that the recurrence free survival rate was 89%, and the five year disease free survival rate was 95%. The authors concluded that HIFU could be safe and feasible in the treatment of localized breast cancer, but that further clinical trials are needed.

In a study of 22 patients, with 23 breast cancers, 100% of post-procedural biopsies showed necrosis of the entire tumor[19]. Follow-up over 55 mo showed a 9% local recurrence rate, with one death. The five year disease free survival rate was 95%. Overall, larger numbers of patients need to be studied in order to determine the clinical use of this modality.

CONCLUSION

In summary, various modalities exist for the percutaneous treatment of breast cancer, which hold promise for the minimally invasive treatment approach for breast cancer. Larger clinical trials are needed for wide-spread applicability of these treatments to more advanced stage patients. Current clinical trials include the use of cryoablation without subsequent excision in the treatment of early stage breast cancers. Advantages of ablative techniques include percutaneous technique, minimal scarring, and an office procedure, thus avoiding taking the patient to the operating room. Disadvantages include inability to assess margin width and estimate of staging of breast cancer only by imaging. Additionally, hormone receptor status must be assessed on preoperative biopsy. Additional concerns include long term patient satisfaction with cosmesis, especially after adjuvant radiation, as percutaneous ablation modalities do not obviate the need for radiation, as well as other adjuvant treatment. As further research accumulates, ablation modalities may play a significant role in the future treatment of breast cancer.

REFERENCES

1 **Roubidoux MA**, Yang W, Stafford RJ. Image-guided ablation in breast cancer treatment. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol* 2014; **17**: 49-54 [PMID: 24636331 DOI: 10.1053/j.tvir.2013.12.008]

2 **Zhao Z**, Wu F. Minimally-invasive thermal ablation of early-stage breast cancer: a systemic review. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2010; **36**: 1149-1155 [PMID: 20889281 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2010.09.012]

3 **Johnson JP**. Immunologic aspects of cryosurgery: potential modulation of immune recognition and effector cell maturation. *Clin Dermatol* 1990; **8**: 39-47 [PMID: 2203511 DOI: 10.1016/0738-081X(90)90064-8]

4 **Page DB**. Cryoablation plus ipilimumab induced immune responses in early-stage breast cancer. Highlights from the Breast Cancer Symposium. San Francisco, CA: Francisco Marriott Marquis, 2014. Available from: URL: http: //www.healio.com/hematology-oncology/breast-cancer/news/online/{05978238-c0e8-40a1-8f54-6a4fb2355941}/cryoablation-plus-ipilimumab-induced-immune-responses-in-early-stage-breast-cancer

5 **Sabel MS**, Kaufman CS, Whitworth P, Chang H, Stocks LH, Simmons R, Schultz M. Cryoablation of early-stage breast cancer: work-in-progress report of a multi-institutional trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2004; **11**: 542-549 [PMID: 15123465 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2004.08.003]

6 **Pfleiderer SO**, Freesmeyer MG, Marx C, Kühne-Heid R, Schneider A, Kaiser WA. Cryotherapy of breast cancer under ultrasound guidance: initial results and limitations. *Eur Radiol* 2002; **12**: 3009-3014 [PMID: 12439583]

7 Proceedings of the 2014 annual meeting, April 30-May 4, 2014,

Las Vegas, NV. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21** Suppl 2: i-xiv, S214-S344 [PMID: 24682650 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3672-z]
8 **Littrup PJ**, Jallad B, Chandiwala-Mody P, D'Agostini M, Adam BA, Bouwman D. Cryotherapy for breast cancer: a feasibility study without excision. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2009; **20**: 1329-1341 [PMID: 19800542 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2009.06.029]
9 **Jeffrey SS**, Birdwell RL, Ikeda DM, Daniel BL, Nowels KW, Dirbas FM, Griffey SM. Radiofrequency ablation of breast cancer: first report of an emerging technology. *Arch Surg* 1999; **134**: 1064-1068 [PMID: 10522847 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.134.10.1064]
10 **Khatri VP**, McGahan JP, Ramsamooj R, Griffey S, Brock J, Cronan M, Wilkendorf S. A phase II trial of image-guided radiofrequency ablation of small invasive breast carcinomas: use of saline-cooled tip electrode. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2007; **14**: 1644-1652 [PMID: 17508251]
11 **Fornage BD**, Sneige N, Ross MI, Mirza AN, Kuerer HM, Edeiken BS, Ames FC, Newman LA, Babiera GV, Singletary SE. Small (< or = 2-cm) breast cancer treated with US-guided radiofrequency ablation: feasibility study. *Radiology* 2004; **231**: 215-224 [PMID: 14990810 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2311030651]
12 **Klimberg VS**, Ochoa D, Henry-Tillman R, Hardee M, Boneti C, Adkins LL, McCarthy M, Tummel E, Lee J, Malak S, Makhoul I, Korourian S. Long-term results of phase II ablation after breast lumpectomy added to extend intraoperative margins (ABLATE I) trial. *J Am Coll Surg* 2014; **218**: 741-749 [PMID: 24655863 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2013]
13 **Vilar VS**, Goldman SM, Ricci MD, Pincerato K, Oliveira H, Abud TG, Ajzen S, Baracat EC, Szejnfeld J. Analysis by MRI of residual tumor after radiofrequency ablation for early stage breast cancer. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2012; **198**: W285-W291 [PMID: 22358027 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.10.5581]
14 **Zhou W**, Zha X, Liu X, Ding Q, Chen L, Ni Y, Zhang Y, Xu Y, Chen L, Zhao Y, Wang S. US-guided percutaneous microwave coagulation of small breast cancers: a clinical study. *Radiology* 2012; **263**: 364-373 [PMID: 22438362 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.12111901]
15 **Mumtaz H**, Hall-Craggs MA, Wotherspoon A, Paley M, Buonaccorsi G, Amin Z, Wilkinson I, Kissin MW, Davidson TI, Taylor I, Bown SG. Laser therapy for breast cancer: MR imaging and histopathologic correlation. *Radiology* 1996; **200**: 651-658 [PMID: 8756910 DOI: 10.1148/radiology.200.3.8756910]
16 **Dowlatshahi K**, Francescatti DS, Bloom KJ. Laser therapy for small breast cancers. *Am J Surg* 2002; **184**: 359-363 [PMID: 12383903 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(02)00942-X]
17 **van Esser S**, Stapper G, van Diest PJ, van den Bosch MA, Klaessens JH, Mali WP, Borel Rinkes IH, van Hillegersberg R. Ultrasound-guided laser-induced thermal therapy for small palpable invasive breast carcinomas: a feasibility study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 2259-2263 [PMID: 19506958 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0544-z]
18 **Wu F**, Wang ZB, Cao YD, Chen WZ, Bai J, Zou JZ, Zhu H. A randomised clinical trial of high-intensity focused ultrasound ablation for the treatment of patients with localised breast cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **89**: 2227-2233 [PMID: 14676799 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6601411]
19 **Wu F**, Wang Z, Zhu H, Chen W, Zou J, Bai J, Li K, Jin C, Xie F, Su H. Extracorporeal high intensity focused ultrasound treatment for patients with breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2005; **92**: 51-60 [DOI: 10.1007/s10549-004-5778-7]

P- Reviewer: Hernanz F, Meshikhes AWN, M'Koma A
S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.111

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 111-118
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Cordotomy procedures for cancer pain: A discussion of surgical procedures and a review of the literature

Wendell B Lake, Peter E Konrad

Wendell B Lake, Peter E Konrad, Department of Neurosurgery, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, TN 37232, United States
Author contributions: Lake WB and Konrad PE contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: Wendell B Lake, no conflicts of interest; Peter E Konrad, honoraria from Medtronic Inc.

Correspondence to: Peter E Konrad, MD, PhD, Department of Neurosurgery, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, 1500 21st Ave South, Suite 4333, Nashville, TN 37232, United States. peter.konrad@vanderbilt.edu
Telephone: +1-615-3439822
Fax: +1-615-3436948
Received: September 28, 2014
Peer-review started: September 29, 2014
First decision: December 17, 2014
Revised: January 10, 2015
Accepted: January 30, 2015
Article in press: February 2, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Treating pain in patients with terminal cancer is challenging but essential part of their care. Most patients can be managed with pharmacological options but for some these pain control methods are inadequate. Ablative spinal procedures offer an alternative method of pain control for cancer patients with a terminal diagnosis that are failing to have their pain controlled sufficiently by other methods. This paper provides a review of ablative spinal procedures for control of cancer pain. Patient selection, surgical methods, outcomes and complications are discussed in detail for cordotomy, dorsal root entry zone (DREZ) lesioning and midline myelotomy. Cordotomy is primarily done by a percutaneous method and it is best suited for patients with unilateral somatic limb and trunk pain such as due to sarcoma. Possible complications include unilateral weakness possibly respiratory abnormalities. Approximately 90% of patients have significant immediate pain relief following percutaneous cordotomy but increasing portions of patients have pain recurrence as the follow-up period increases beyond one year. The DREZ lesion procedure is best suited to patients with plexus invasion due to malignancy and pain confined to one limb. Possible complications of DREZ procedures include hemiparesis and decreased proprioception. Midline myelotomy is best suited for bilateral abdominal, pelvic or lower extremity pain. Division of the commissure is necessary to address bilateral lower extremity pain. This procedure is relatively rare but published case series demonstrate satisfactory pain control for over half of the patients undergoing the procedure. Possible complications include bilateral lower extremity weakness and diminished proprioception below the lesion level. Unlike cordotomy and DREZ this procedure offers visceral pain control as opposed to only somatic pain control. Ablative spinal procedures offer pain control for terminal cancer patients that are not able to managed medically. This paper provides an in depth review of these procedures with the hope of improving education regarding these underutilized procedures.

Key words: Cordotomy; Cancer pain; Dorsal root entry zone; Percutaneous cordotomy; Midline myelotomy

Core tip: Pain is a significant symptom that degrades the quality of life for terminally ill cancer patients. For many terminally ill oncology patients medical management is sufficient. However, some patient's will fail medical management or have unwanted side effects from their

medical regimen. Patient's failing medical management may warrant consideration for interventional procedures such as cordotomy, dorsal root entry zone or midline myelotomy. Of these three procedures only midline myelotomy can address visceral pain, the others are best suited to somatic pain. This review discusses surgical anatomy, patient selection and surgical nuances of these techniques.

Lake WB, Konrad PE. Cordotomy procedures for cancer pain: A discussion of surgical procedures and a review of the literature. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 111-118 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/111.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.111

INTRODUCTION

Pain is a common problem for cancer patients and may significantly degrade their quality of life. Most commonly management for these patients includes medical therapies such as opiates, steroids and NSAIDs. For bony metastases radiation can alleviate pain. However, some cancer patients will have pain that fails medical management. In these patients, particularly those with progressive disease and a terminal prognosis, ablative neurosurgical procedures can be considered. The spinal cord is central to the pain pathway and ablative spinal procedures are a logical choice for cancer patients with severe pain that has failed other therapies[1].

In 1912 Spiller *et al*[2] first described cordotomy, division of the anterior spinothalmic tracts in the treatment of pain. As initially described cordotomy was an open procedure. Later advancement in fluoroscopy and electrical monitoring made percutaneous cordotomy possible[3]. At some centers cordotomy is now performed in a CT guided fashion[4].

Lesioning of the dorsal root entry zone (DREZ), is another ablative spinal procedure that can be used in cancer patients. This procedure was first described by Sindou *et al*[5] in the 1970s. Nashold *et al*[6] went on to modify the procedure and recommend its use deafferentation pain associated with brachial plexus avulsion[5,6]. Now the DREZ procedure can be employed for pain control in cancer patients with inoperable upper thoracic tumors compressing the brachial plexus, such as Pancoast tumors[7].

Several authors including Mansuy *et al*[8], Gildenberg *et al*[9] and Nauta *et al*[10] have discussed midline myelotomy with or without commissurotomy[8-10]. Mansuy *et al*[8] first noted visceral pain relief despite limited division of the anterior commissure of the spinal cord. This led to anatomical studies that demonstrated visceral pain pathways in the deep dorsal columns close to the midline. Subsequent modifications of the procedure resulted in limited myelotomy sparing the anterior commissure and interrupting ascending pathways, deep in the dorsal columns close to the midline, that conduct visceral pain information[11].

This article will review the various ablative spinal procedures for control of cancer pain. Spinal anatomy and physiology as it relates to pain will be reviewed. After this foundation, a discussion of patient and procedure selection will follow. Each ablative procedure type will be discussed along with the relevant literature. At the conclusion the reader should understand ablative spinal procedures and their role in treating cancer pain.

ANATOMY OF THE PAIN PATHWAY

Appropriate diagnosis and management of pain, as with many other neurological problems, depends upon localizing the lesion. Therefore to employ ablative spinal procedures in the management of pain a thorough understanding of the pain generation and conduction is necessary. Numerous sources are available that provide a detailed discussion of spinal cord anatomy[12,13]. The following description the focus will be on the anatomy of the pain pathway and surgically relevant surrounding structures. One method of reviewing the anatomy of the pain pathway is to proceed in an anatomic order. Beginning with the first order neuron, such as the spinal ganglion, and then progress sequentially to the terminal cortical neuron in the pathway. Bearing in mind this variability a discussion of the anatomical principals of pain transmission follows.

The pain pathway generally starts with effectors, such as bare nerve endings, Paccinian corpuscles, muscle spindles, *etc.*, communicating through various nerve fiber types as sensory information flows towards the dorsal root ganglion. First order neurons for pain perception lie in the dorsal root ganglion. For the pathway conducting pain and temperature these first order neurons synapse with second order neurons in the dorsal horn in Rexed lamina Ⅰ-Ⅴ[14]. Most of the first order nociceptive fibers from the dorsal root ganglion synapse in the lamina at the entering level however a portion of the fibers travel rostrally or caudally in Lissauer's tract. First order neurons responsible for proprioception enter the dorsal root entry zone travelling along the medial aspect of the dorsal root and travel in the posterior columns to synapse in the Nucleus Gracilis or Nucleus Cuneatus for the lower and upper extremities respectively. Figure 1 demonstrates the basic architecture of the first order neurons as they relate to the dorsal root ganglion[15,16].

Second order neurons from the Rexed lamina Ⅰ-Ⅴ project through the spinal cord carrying nociceptive information. The majority of axons project through the anterior commissure of the spinal cord to the contralateral spinothalamic tract (STT). The STT is located in the anterolateral quadrant of the spinal cord just anterior to the corticospinal tract and lateral to the diaphragmatic reticulospinal tract. The STT ascends and projections are given off, in a caudal to rostral fashion, to the: nucleus raphes magnus, gigantocellular

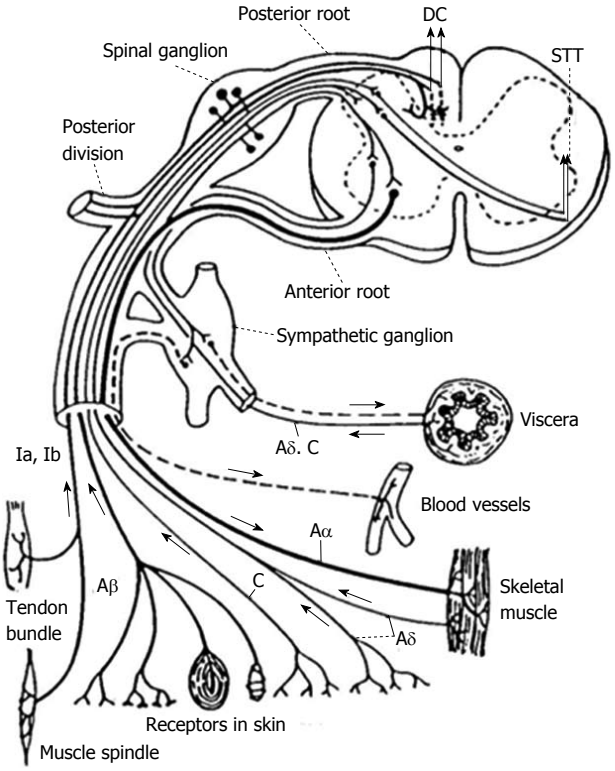
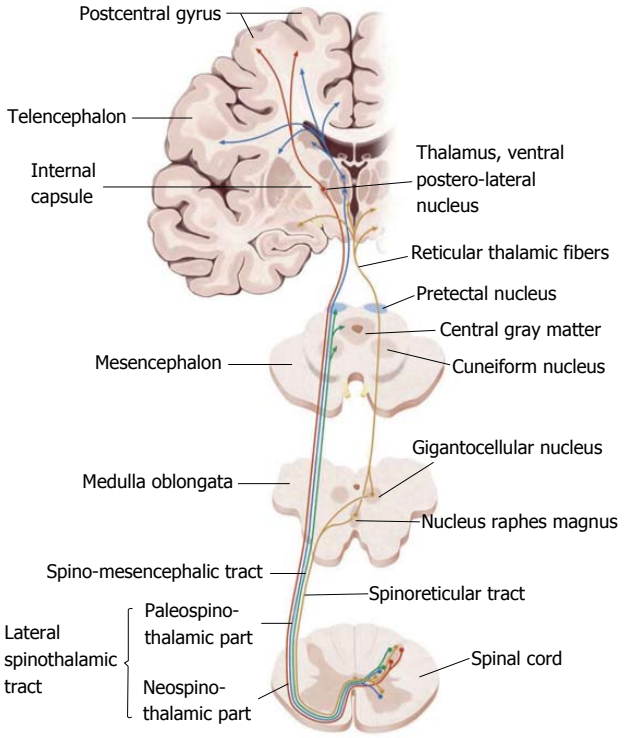


Figure 1 Peripheral and central spinal pathways. Aδ: Large myelinated afferent fiber. Type A fibers don't conduct nociception. C fibers are small unmyelinated fibers that conduct nociception. Ia and Ib fibers conduct information from muscle spindles and Golgi tendon organs, respectively. DC: Dorsal columns; STT: Spinothalamic tract.



C Ascending pain pathways from the trunk and limbs

Illustrator: Markus Voll pp. 332-333 Thieme
Schuenke *et al*. THIEME Atlas of Anatomy • Head and Neuroanatomy

Figure 2 The relationship between ascending pain afferents and their targets in the medulla, midbrain, thalamus and cortex.

magnus, cuneiform nucleus, periaqueductal gray and the pretectal nucleus. Finally the STT terminates in the ventral postero-lateral nucleus of the thalamus. From there third order neurons project to the sensory cortex where conscious pain is processed. Figure 2 summarizes the path of the second and third order neurons[17-19].

As noted in the introduction observations regarding visceral pain control following midline myelotomy with minimal commissurotomy suggested visceral pain afferent tracts in the midline at the depth of the dorsal columns. Animal studies performed by Willis demonstrated the existence of the deep dorsal column visceral pain pathways[20]. Midline myelotomy became recognized as a method for controlling intractable visceral bilateral abdominal or pelvic pain[10,11].

In addition to describing pain pathways it is useful to discuss structures with close anatomical relationship with the areas of the pain pathway. Some of the structures surrounding the pain pathways risk inadvertent injury if spinal anatomy isn't properly understood. Figure 3 demonstrates many of the important anatomical relationships of the STT in the high cervical region and the underlying somatotopy as well. Initially one should note the location of the STT in the anterolateral quadrant of the cord is just anterior to the corticospinal tract and that the STT lies anterior to the dentate ligament. Lesions deviating too posteriorly may result in hemiparesis or loss of bowel control. Lesions excessively medial can damage respiratory interneurons in the diaphragmatic reticulospinal tract leading to respiratory complications. Finally in the case of the midline myelotomy or commissurotomy it must be remembered that the anterior spinal artery, the primary blood supply for the majority of the spinal cord lies just anterior by millimeters, so care must be taken to preserve this vascular structure[3,21].

PATIENT SELECTION

With an understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the pain pathways we are now prepared to discuss patient and procedure selection. Patients selected for ablative spinal procedures must have a medically refractory malignant pain syndrome and a life expectancy of a few years or less. Additionally, the location of the malignant pain must be conduced through the pain pathway in a circuit that allows safe surgical lesioning. Malignant pain is necessitated because pain treated by ablative spinal procedures has a high rate of recurrence in patients with non-malignant pain. The pain previously treated by the lesion may recur or a new central neuropathic pain, typified by dysthesias, may result below the level of the lesion. For a satisfactory result

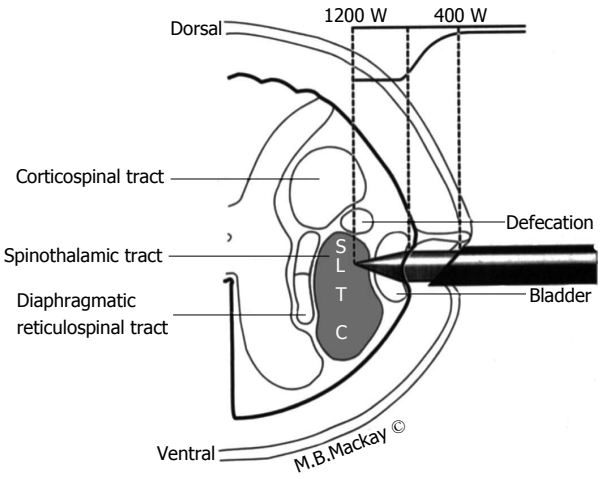


Figure 3 A schematic illustration of percutaneous cordotomy and the relative anatomical position of the spinothalamic tract and surrounding structures. S: Sacral; L: Lumbar; T: Thoracic; C: Cervical; W: Watts.

the duration of time before the pain recurrence, or the onset of neuropathic pain, must be longer than the life span of the patient. Therefore, patients with cancer and a remaining lifespan of a few years or less are best suited to ablative spinal procedures[3,22].

Appropriate patient selection also depends on pain location, namely is the pain located in a region such that the corresponding pain pathway is amenable to surgical interruption while maintaining an acceptable side effect profile. Patient and procedure selection are inextricably linked, therefore it is useful organize patient and procedure selection together.

Cordotomy

Open, or more commonly in recent years percutaneous, cordotomy is best suited for patients with malignant unilateral limb, pelvis or trunk pain. Cordotomy involves lesioning of the STT, nociception below the level of the lesion is interrupted. The side effects of this procedure include numbness and dysthesias below the level of the lesion. However, this may be an acceptable trade off in cancer patients suffering from severe medically intractable pain. Bilateral cordotomy procedures generally are not an option particularly in the high cervical region[23,24]. This is because respiratory interneurons lie just medial to the STT and if damaged bilaterally may result in respiratory depression. Unilateral limb pain due to brachial plexus avulsion is not a good option for treatment by cordotomy because patients often find the resulting dysthesias unacceptable and the pain can recur or new central neuropathic pain can occur due to the patient's lifespan. Generally satisfactory pain control begins 3 or 4 levels below the level of the cordotomy lesion due to the presence of Lissauer's tract conducting pain fibers rostrally before they cross over to join the STT[3,21].

DREZ

The dorsal root entry zone ablation alternatively known as the DREZ procedure is often considered for patients that suffer from pain due to brachial plexus avulsion. Other patients appropriate for the DREZ procedure include cancer patients suffering from medically intractable pain from tumors invading the brachial plexus, also known as Pancoast tumors, or for patients with spinal cord injury suffering from pain at the level of their injury. Unfortunately, DREZ is not generally helpful for patients with constant burning pain or limb pain associated with shoulder or pelvic pain[23,25,26].

Midline myelotomy or commisurotomy

Commissurotomy lesions the anterior commissure of the spinal cord and therefore interrupts nociceptive signals for several levels in the vicinity of the lesion. This procedure is useful in controlling malignant bilateral abdominal, pelvic or lower extremity pain. It represents a reasonable alternative to bilateral cordotomy. Generally the commissure is ablated in the conus to T10 region. Loss of proprioception can occur due to damage of the posterior columns as they are splayed apart during the course of the procedure. Care must also be taken to avoid the anterior spinal artery since it lies only millimeters away from the commissure[27].

Midline myelotomy with or without commissurotomy may also offer control of bilateral abdominal, pelvic or lower extremity pain. Lesioning of the posterior columns, particularly in the deep medial region, was noted to reduce visceral pain in addition to providing the predicted bilateral somatic pain control. These observations coupled with animal data that indicated a visceral pain pathway located deep in the posterior columns at the midline led to greater use of midline myelotomy without commissurotomy. Gildenerg and Hirshberg have even proposed limited midline myelotomy for the treatment of visceral pain[9,10].

At this point it is important to emphasize that in most cases visceral pain also travels through the sympathetic chain and through cranial nerves. This is a key concept. In general with the exception of the above mentioned midline myelotomy, ablative spinal procedures are best suited for controlling somatic cancer related pain, such as that from an extremity sarcoma, because somatic pain fibers travel exclusively through the spinal cord. Ablative spinal procedures in most cases do not effectively interrupt all pathways for visceral pain because this sensory modality is conducted through cranial nerves and the sympathetic chain in addition to the deep midline posterior column tracts. Figure 1 for an illustration of this concept[10,20,23].

SURGICAL NUANCES

Generally the patients being treated with ablative spinal cord procedures should have preoperative spinal imaging such as MRI of the spine in the area of interest or CT myelography in the area of interest. Such imaging can elucidate any relevant anatomical variations such as local metastases syringomyelia,

spinal deformity or in the case of brachial plexus avulsions, pseudomeningoceles[14]. Consultation with the patient's oncologist regarding goals of care, overall health condition and prognosis is also necessary. In the immediate preoperative and postoperative period some practitioners advocate corticosteroids, such as dexamethasone 4-6 mg every 6 h, to reduce spinal cord edema.

Open cordotomy

The patient is positioned prone. A hemi laminotomy or a full laminectomy is performed to allow access to the spinal cord contralateral to the pain symptoms at a spinal level 3-4 segments above the level of the symptoms. If possible one generally performs a laminotomy or partial laminectomy to reduce the risk of post laminectomy kyphosis. In chosing the level for the lesion it is important to note how the correspondence between spinal level and vertebral level. In the cervical cord the spinal level corresponds closely to the vertebral level. As one transitions more caudally the spinal and vertebral levels become progressively more discordant such that the sacral and coccygeal levels lie at the conus which generally terminates at L1. Once the lamina has be opened at the appropriate level the dura and arachnoid can be opened and tacked up. The dentate ligament is separated from the dura and used to rotate the spinal cord slightly to bring the anterolateral quadrant into better view. A Weck blade placed at a right angle in a Ryder needle driver is then used to divide the anterolateral quadrant of the spinal cord to a depth of 3-4 mm. An angled dissector is then swept through the same cut. The dura is closed in a water tight fashion and the fascia and skin are closed in the usual fashion[2,21,22].

In addition to the usual concerns for infection and CSF leak some complications specific to open cordotomy include: hemiparesis (usually transient occurs in 10%-30%), respiratory depression (particularly in cervical cordotomies), mirror pain (usually in thoracic cordotomies), and urinary disturbances. The complication rate for open cordotomy is on the order of 5%-10%, but for patients in debilitating medically recalcitrant pain this may be an appropriate trade off. In approximately 50% of patients undergoing this procedure the pain relief will be total and immediate. Approximately 25% will have immediate partial pain relief and the remainder will have no improvement in pain. Review of large case series indicates that some patients will have recurrence of pain if they survive to 1 year or longer[21,22,28].

Percutaneous cordotomy

With the advent of improved fluoroscopic equipment and the availability of radiofrequency ablation percutaneous cordotomy became more common than open cordotomy. Unlike open cordotomy, and the other procedures discussed here, percutaneous cordotomy can be performed without general anesthesia and this is a significant advantage in the cancer population since many of these patients have significant comorbidities. The percutaneous cordotomy also allows the practioner to perform a test lesion and this may improve the success of the procedure compared to open cordotomy[3].

The patient is placed supine in a fluoroscopy suite with the head immobilized and light sedation administered. Some local anesthetic is infiltrated to ease the orthogonal passage of the needle into the C1-2 interspace under fluoroscopic guidance (CT guidance has also been described). Injection of water-soluble, contrast such as Omnipaque, is used to verify that the needle is positioned 1-2 mm anterior to the dentate ligament. Figure 3 provides an anatomical schematic of the percutaneous cordotomy procedure. The needle is then advanced into the anterolateral quadrant of the spinal cord. At this point a change in impedence from approximately 300 Ohms to approximately 1000 Ohms will be detected and this verifies entry into the spinal parenchyma. Low frequency (approximately 3 Hz) electrical stimulation with the needle will demonstrate twitching of the ipsilateral neck if the needle position is close to the anterior rootlets. If low frequency electrical stimulation causes limb or trunk contraction this means the needle is too close to the corticospinal tract and should be repositioned. High frequency stimulation (approximately 100 Hz) should produce contralateral sensory phenomenon that corresponds to the area of desired pain control. This verifies an appropriate needle position. If the patient has ipsilateral arm or head paresthesias this means the needle is too posterior. Once appropriate needle position is determined using stimulation and patient exam it is time to create the lesion. This is done using an electrode with 2 mm of exposed tip. Heating the electrode to a temperature of 70 ℃-80 ℃ for one minute creates the lesion. The patient is examined to verify analgesia and to evaluate for reduced pinprick sensation in the area of intended pain control[3,4,23].

Respiratory depression is the most feared complication of percutaneous cordotomy but this is only a concern in bilateral procedures. The complication rate is on the order of 5% and the types of complication described are similar to those noted in open cordotomy: bladder dysfunction, temporary hemiparesis, respiratory abnormality and ataxia. Immediate pain relief following the lesion is reported to be as high as 90%. This improved success rate compared to open cordotomy may be attributable to the fact that physiological testing and patient participation is available for guidance of the lesion since the patient is awake. At 1 year only about half of the patients continue to have pain relief, once again verifying that patients must be suffering from a terminal disease to be an ideal candidate for cordotomy[3,4,23].

DREZ

The Dorsal Root Entry Zone or DREZ procedure is useful for malignant pain where the plexus is invaded by cancer

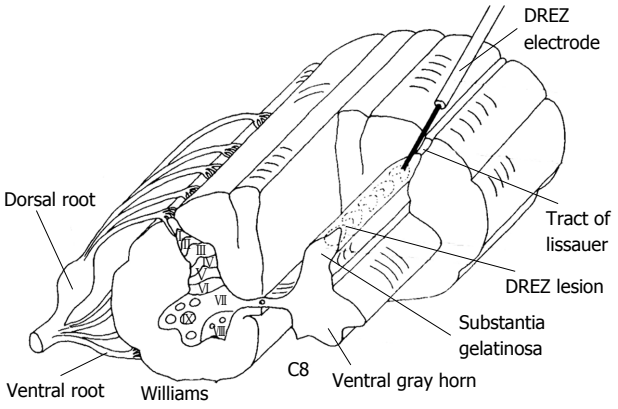


Figure 4 A schematic illustrating dorsal root entry zone lesioning at the C8 spinal level. Rexed lamina are numbered in the typical fashion Ⅰ-XIII. DREZ: Dorsal root entry zone.

and the pain is confined to a limb. This procedure is also useful for treating pain associated with brachial plexus avulsion or for segmental pain at the level of spinal cord injury. Similar to the open cordotomy discussion, the procedure begins with the patient in the prone position. Laminectomy or laminotomy is performed to expose the appropriate levels. In the case of the brachial plexus the laminectomy usually extends from C4-T1 and for conus lesioning the laminectomy is usually from T10 to L2. Some may desire to perform laminoplasty with the hope of reducing post laminectomy kyphosis and to make subsequent operative exposures easier. The dura and arachnoid are opened and tacked up. Next the dorsolateral sulcus of the spinal cord is located; this is where the dorsal roots enter. A Nashold DREZ electrode, with a 2 mm exposed tip is used to created successive lesions by heating the electrode tip to 75 ℃ for approximately 20 s. The ideal entry point of the electrode is just lateral to the point where roots enter because this also provides for lesioning of Lissauer's tract. Figure 4 provides a schematic of DREZ lesioning using a radiofrequency probe. An effort should be made to sharply puncture the pia with the electrode to prevent deformation that comes with bluntly pushing the electrode. Somatosensory evoked potential monitoring and motor evoked potential monitoring may provide warning signs if adjacent corticospinal or dorsal column tracts are being damaged. A typical DREZ lesioning case may require approximately 50 radiofrequency lesions and span approximately 4 spinal levels. Lesioning for DREZ should encompass 2 levels above the level of pain to be treated to assure that Lissauer's tract containing non-crossing ipsilateral first order fibers have been interrupted. The surgeon should also keep in mind the shifting orientation of the dorsal horn of the spinal gray matter relative to the sagittal plane. In the cervical spine the dorsal horn of gray matter is 30 degrees off sagittal while in the thoracic spine it is 20 degrees off sagittal. As an alternative to using radiofrequency lesioning for DREZ other have proposed incising the pia and using bipolar coagulation under microscope visualization[23,25,26].

Complications of DREZ include damage to the adjacent corticospinal tract leading to hemiparesis or damage to the dorsal columns causing decreased proprioception and light touch. Hemiparesis seems to be more common in patients undergoing thoracic DREZ. This is thought to be due to the narrower dorsal horn of grey matter in this region. Hemiparesis and loss of proprioception is reported in approximately 10% and 50% respectively. The best results for pain control with DREZ are reported in patients with brachial plexus avulsion pain. Relatively little data is available regarding the efficacy of DREZ procedures in patients with malignant pain due to brachial plexus or lumbar plexus invasion by cancer[23,26,29].

Midline myelotomy/commissurotomy

Commissurotomy and midline myelotomy procedures are aimed at treating patients with bilateral abdominal, pelvic or lower extremity pain. Exposure for midline myelotomy/comissurotomy is identical to that described in the open cordotomy or DREZ section. The patient is positioned prone. Midline laminectomy is preformed. The dura and arachnoid are opened and tacked up. Generally levels between T10 and L1 are targeted to provide bilateral abdominal, pelvic or lower extremity pain. The operating microscope is brought into the field after the dura is opened. Dissection is carried out between the dorsal columns in the posterior median sulcas. When the depth is reached an arachnoid knife is used along with fine micro-tipped bipolars to divide the gray matter and the anterior commissure until the pia of the anterior median sulcas is reached. Here care must be taken to avoid injury of the anterior spinal artery. Gildenberg and Hirshberg have also advocated midline myelotomy where a deep medial portion of the dorsal columns is lesioned while sparing the anterior commissure[9]. Nauta further modified this procedure to a confined transverse midline lesion. These procedures seem to serve the function of controlling bilateral visceral pain beginning 2-3 levels below the lesion level[10]. Following the myelotomy the dura and the other tissues are closed in a typical fashion. Complications of the procedure include decreased proprioception and bilateral lower extremity weakness (this occurs in approximately 25%). While the proprioceptive difficulties are well tolerated the lower extremity weakness can represent a significant morbidity. This re-enforces the concept that this procedure is best suited to patients suffering from severe, recalcitrant pelvic or abdominal pain secondary to cancer. To obtain pain relief in the bilateral lower extremities it appears to be necessary to section the commissure while for visceral pain relief midline myelotomy alone seems to be sufficient. This procedure is relatively rare and there are not extensive reports of outcomes. However, it appears that pain relief is excellent in over half of the cases in published

series[8,10,11,20,27].

CONCLUSION

Despite improved pharmacological therapies some terminal cancer patients suffer from severe recalcitrant pain that greatly degrades their quality of life in their final months. With a detailed understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the pain pathway several ablative spinal procedures have been developed that offer a much-needed option for pain relief in this terminally ill population. Cordotomy which can be performed in an open or percutaneous fashion, offers excellent pain relief for patients suffering from unilateral somatic limb or trunk pain secondary to malignancy. The side effect profile for this procedure is favorable but includes transient weakness or occasionally painful dysthesias. The DREZ procedure offers a pain relief for cancer patients suffering from unilateral limb pain, particularly that caused by brachial plexus invasion. Possible complications of DREZ include transient weakness and decreased proprioception. Midline myelotomy is the least commonly performed ablative spinal procedure for pain. This procedure may include lesioning of the deep medial dorsal columns and/or sectioning of the anterior commissure. Midline myelotomy is best suited for patients suffering from a terminal cancer producing bilateral pelvic, abdominal or lower extremity pain. Section of the anterior spinal commissure is necessary if pain control in the bilateral lower extremities is desired. This procedure differs from DREZ and cordotomy because it offers control of visceral as opposed to just somatic pain. The review presented here discusses ablative spinal procedures for cancer pain including patient selection, surgical technique, complications and outcomes. We hope that this will provide needed education on the subject of these underutilized procedures that can provide much needed pain relief to cancer patients in their final days.

REFERENCES

1 **Parkin DM**, Pisani P, Ferlay J. Estimates of the worldwide incidence of eighteen major cancers in 1985. *Int J Cancer* 1993; **54**: 594-606 [PMID: 8514451 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.2910540413]

2 **Spiller W**, Martin E. The treatment of persistent pain of organic origin in the lower part of the body by division of the anterolateral column of the spinal cord. *JAMA* 1912; **58**: 1489-1490 [DOI: 10.1001/jama.1912.04260050165001]

3 **Tasker RR**. Percutaneous cordotomy. In: Lozano AM, Gildenberg PL, Tasker RR, editors. Textbook of Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery. 2nd ed. Berlin: Springer, 2009: 2137-2148 [DOI: 10.1007/978-3-540-69960-6_126]

4 **Kanpolat Y**, Ugur HC, Ayten M, Elhan AH. Computed tomography-guided percutaneous cordotomy for intractable pain in malignancy. *Neurosurgery* 2009; **64**: ons187-ons93; discussion ons187-ons93; [PMID: 19240568 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000335645.67282.03]

5 **Sindou MP**, Blondet E, Emery E, Mertens P. Microsurgical lesioning in the dorsal root entry zone for pain due to brachial plexus avulsion: a prospective series of 55 patients. *J Neurosurg* 2005; **102**: 1018-1028 [PMID: 16028760 DOI: 10.3171/jns.2005.102.6.1018]

6 **Nashold B**, Pearlstein R. The DREZ Operation. Park Ridge, IL: The American Association of Neurological Surgeons, 1996

7 **Konrad P**, Caputi F, El-Naggar AO. Radiofrequency dorsal root entry zone lesions for Pain. In: Lozano AM, Gildenberg PL, Tasker RR, editors. Textbood of Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery. 2nd ed. Berlin: Springer, 2009: 2251-2268 [DOI: 10.1007/978-3-540-69960-6_133]

8 **Mansuy L**, Lecuire J, Acassat L. Technique de la myélotomie commissurale postérieure. *Journal de Chirurgie* 1944; **60**: 206-213

9 **Gildenberg PL**, Hirshberg RM. Limited myelotomy for the treatment of intractable cancer pain. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1984; **47**: 94-96 [PMID: 6693922 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.47.1.94]

10 **Nauta HJ**, Hewitt E, Westlund KN, Willis WD. Surgical interruption of a midline dorsal column visceral pain pathway. Case report and review of the literature. *J Neurosurg* 1997; **86**: 538-542 [PMID: 9046313 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1997.86.3.0538]

11 **Gildenberg PL**. Myelotomy through the years. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 2001; **77**: 169-171 [PMID: 12378071 DOI: 10.1159/000064615]

12 **Almeida TF**, Roizenblatt S, Tufik S. Afferent pain pathways: a neuroanatomical review. *Brain Res* 2004; **1000**: 40-56 [PMID: 15053950 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainres.2003.10.073]

13 **Romanelli P**, Esposito V. The functional anatomy of neuropathic pain. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2004; **15**: 257-268 [PMID: 15246335 DOI: 10.1016/j.nec.2004.02.010]

14 **Mertens P**, Guenot M, Hermier M, Jouvet A, Tournut P, Froment JL, Sindou M, Carret JP. Radiologic anatomy of the spinal dorsal horn at the cervical level (anatomic-MRI correlations). *Surg Radiol Anat* 2000; **22**: 81-88 [PMID: 10959672 DOI: 10.1007/s00276-000-0081-8]

15 **Willis WD**. Dorsal horn neurophysiology of pain. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1988; **531**: 76-89 [PMID: 2898230 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1988.tb31815.x]

16 **Rosenow JM**, Henderson JM. Anatomy and physiology of chronic pain. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2003; **14**: 445-462, vii [PMID: 14567145 DOI: 10.1016/S1042-3680(03)00009-3]

17 **Xiang JP**, Liu XL, Xu YB, Wang JY, Hu J. Microsurgical anatomy of dorsal root entry zone of brachial plexus. *Microsurgery* 2008; **28**: 17-20 [PMID: 17994595]

18 **Romanelli P**, Esposito V, Adler J. Ablative procedures for chronic pain. *Neurosurg Clin N Am* 2004; **15**: 335-342 [PMID: 15246341 DOI: 10.1016/j.nec.2004.02.009]

19 **Karatas A**, Caglar S, Savas A, Elhan A, Erdogan A. Microsurgical anatomy of the dorsal cervical rootlets and dorsal root entry zones. *Acta Neurochir* (Wien) 2005; **147**: 195-199; discussion 199 [PMID: 15565478 DOI: 10.1007/s00701-004-0425-y]

20 **Willis WD**, Westlund KN. The role of the dorsal column pathway in visceral nociception. *Curr Pain Headache Rep* 2001; **5**: 20-26 [PMID: 11252134 DOI: 10.1007/s11916-001-0006-1]

21 **Jones B**, Finlay I, Ray A, Simpson B. Is there still a role for open cordotomy in cancer pain management? *J Pain Symptom Manage* 2003; **25**: 179-184 [PMID: 12590033 DOI: 10.1016/S0885-3924(02)00689-9]

22 **Tomycz L**, Forbes J, Ladner T, Kahn E, Maris A, Neimat J, Konrad P. Open thoracic cordotomy as a treatment option for severe, debilitating pain. *J Neurol Surg A Cent Eur Neurosurg* 2014; **75**: 126-132 [PMID: 23929410]

23 **Burchiel K**. Surgical Management of Pain. New York: Thieme, 2002

24 **Nannapaneni R**, Behari S, Todd NV, Mendelow AD. Retracing "Ondine's curse". *Neurosurgery* 2005; **57**: 354-363; discussion 354-363 [PMID: 16094167 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000166684.69422.49]

25 **Samii M**, Moringlane JR. Thermocoagulation of the dorsal root entry zone for the treatment of intractable pain. *Neurosurgery* 1984; **15**: 953-955 [PMID: 6514171 DOI: 10.1097/00006123-198412000-00034]

26 **Nashold BS**, Friedman A, Bullitt E. The status of dorsal root entry zone lesions in 1987. *Clin Neurosurg* 1989; **35**: 422-428 [PMID: 2912648]

27 **Viswanathan A**, Burton AW, Rekito A, McCutcheon IE. Commissural

myelotomy in the treatment of intractable visceral pain: technique and outcomes. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 2010; **88**: 374-382 [PMID: 20948242 DOI: 10.1159/000319041]

28 **Atkin N**, Jackson KA, Danks RA. Bilateral open thoracic cordotomy for refractory cancer pain: a neglected technique? *J Pain Symptom Manage* 2010; **39**: 924-929 [PMID: 20471552 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2009.09.011]

29 **Rath SA**, Seitz K, Soliman N, Kahamba JF, Antoniadis G, Richter HP. DREZ coagulations for deafferentation pain related to spinal and peripheral nerve lesions: indication and results of 79 consecutive procedures. *Stereotact Funct Neurosurg* 1997; **68**: 161-167 [PMID: 9711710 DOI: 10.1159/000099917]

P- Reviewer: Amr YM, Cheung CW **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.119

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 119-126
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Ileo-anal pouch excision: A review of indications and outcomes

Caroline Mary Byrne, Paul Stephen Rooney

Caroline Mary Byrne, Paul Stephen Rooney, Department of Surgery, Royal Liverpool and Broadgreen University Hospitals NHS Trust, L7 8XP Liverpool, United Kingdom
Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this work.
Conflict-of-interest: None.

Correspondence to: Paul Stephen Rooney, Consultant General and Colorectal Surgeon, Department of Surgery, Royal Liverpool and Broadgreen University Hospitals NHS Trust, Prescot Street, L7 8XP Liverpool,
United Kingdom. paul.rooney@rlbuht.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-151-7063426
Fax: +44-151-7063480
Received: September 28, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: November 14, 2014
Revised: January 12, 2015
Accepted: January 30, 2015
Article in press: February 2, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Restorative proctocolectomy (RP) is the surgical treatment of choice for ulcerative colitis (UC) and patients with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP). A devastating complication for both patient and surgeon is failure of the pouch that requires excision. There is currently no single paper in the literature that consolidates the indications for ileo-anal pouch excision and the subsequent outcomes following this procedure. A literature search was carried out to identify articles on RP and ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. The main search terms used were "RP"; "ileal pouch-anal anastomosis" or "ileal reservoir" or "ileal pouch"; "failure of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis" and "excision of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis". The search was completed using electronic databases MEDLINE, PubMed and EMBASE from 1975 to June 2014. Characteristics of patients with pouch failure differ between institutions. Reported overall excision rates of the pouches vary and in this review ranged from 0.93% to 12.8%. Age and lower institutional volume (less than 3.3 cases) were independent predictors of pouch failure; however surgeon case load was not. The main reasons identified for excision are sepsis (early cause), Crohn's disease and poor functional outcomes (both late causes). Pouch cancers in UC and FAP are still rare but 135 cases exist in the literature. The most common complication following excision is persistent perineal sinus. The decision to excise a pouch should not be taken lightly and an awareness of the technical pitfalls and complications that can occur should be fully appreciated.

Key words: Indications and outcomes; Ileo-anal pouch; Pouch failure; Pouch excision

Core tip: There is currently no single paper in the literature that consolidates the indications for ileo-anal pouch excision and the subsequent outcomes.Reported overall excision rates vary and in this review ranged from 0.93% to 12.8%. Age and lower institutional volume (< 3.3 cases) were independent predictors of pouch failure; however surgeon case load was not. Main reasons identified for excision are sepsis (early), Crohn's disease and poor functional outcomes (both late causes). Pouch cancers in ulcerative colitis and familial adenomatous polyposis are rare but 135 cases exist in the literature. An awareness of the technical pitfalls and complications that can occur should be fully appreciated.

Byrne CM, Rooney PS. Ileo-anal pouch excision: A review of indications and outcomes. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 119-126 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/119.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.119

INTRODUCTION

Restorative proctocolectomy (RP) is the surgical treatment of choice for ulcerative colitis (UC) and selected patients with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP). The RP procedure can significantly improve a patient's quality of life[1] but it is also associated with considerable postoperative morbidity, with up to 50% of patients reporting complications[2]. However, 30 d and 1 year mortality remain low at 0.5% and 1.5% respectively[3].

A devastating complication for both patient and surgeon is failure of the pouch that requires either excision or permanent diversion with a loop ileostomy or permanent Brooke ileostomy. Characteristics of patients with pouch failure vary between institutions. Published pouch excision (PE) rates after RP range from 2% to 22%[4].

The aim of this review was to identify the reasons for RP failure that resulted in excision and to discuss the difficulties associated with removal.

RESEARCH

A literature search was carried out to identify articles on RP and ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. The search was completed using electronic databases MEDLINE, PubMed and EMBASE from 1975 to June 2014. The main search terms used were "RP"; "ileal pouch-anal anastomosis" or "ileal reservoir" or "ileal pouch"; "failure of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis" and "excision of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis". Series included patients with UC and FAP and concentrated on RP related complications and the technical aspects of excision. Additionally, references and citations from all retrieved articles were analysed for identification of similar reports. Exclusion criteria included papers published in languages other than English. Two reviewers independently screened studies for inclusion and when duplicated or updated cohorts were identified, only the most recent study was included.

DISCUSSION

Pouch failure

Failure of RP is defined as permanent diversion or PE.

The reasons for failure and subsequent excision can be broadly categorised into the following technical or disease-related causes: (1) Sepsis (including anastomotic leak, fistula, pouch-vaginal fistula); (2) Mechanical or functional problems (stricture, outlet obstruction, incontinence); and (3) Disease-related failure [Crohn's disease (CD) being the most common[5]].

Early onset pouch failure, *i.e.*, failure within 12 mo is typically caused by surgery-associated complications such as pelvic sepsis[6], anastomotic stricture and separation[7] and pouch sinus and fistula[8]. Reasons for late onset pouch failure (after 12 mo) include CD of the pouch[7,9-11], chronic pouchitis[12], refractory cuffitis, pouch strictures, prolapsed pouch, refractory pouch-vaginal fistula and carcinoma.

Further documented risk factors are mucosectomy[13,14], anal pathology, abnormal anal manometry before surgery[7], and experience of colorectal surgeons in performing pouch surgery[7,15]. Large institutional case loads are associated with reduced reoperation and failure rates[16]. A study including 5771 patients from 154 English National Health Service Trusts also found that there were significant relationships between 365-d mortality and failure rates with case volume. Age and lower institutional volume (less than 3.3 cases annually) were independent predictors of pouch failure; however individual surgeon case load was not[3]. Divergence in failure rates that occurs between high (more than 8.4 cases annually) and low volume institutions appear to occur beyond the peri-operative period. Low volume centres operated on more patients with CD; therefore, poor preoperative histological diagnosis and case selection may contribute to the higher failure rates rather than operative technique or surgical skill and technique[3].

Reasons for PE

Sepsis: Many colorectal surgeons will routinely elect to divert an RP with a loop ileostomy given the devastating complications that can occur after one-stage RP. The omission of an ileostomy still remains controversial[17] as published clinical trials comparing RP with and without a covering ileostomy lack the statistical power to provide a definitive recommendation[18]. However, a review of 17 studies comprising 1486 patients reported that the rate of pelvic sepsis was in fact significantly lower in patients with a temporary ileostomy[19]. In this review of PEs we found that most institutions opted for proximal diversion for their primary restorative RP procedures[7,20-30].

Pelvic sepsis rates are reported to be 5% to 19% of cases[6,24,25]. A meta-analysis by de Zeeuw *et al*[31] which included 14996 patients found a pooled incidence of pelvic sepsis of 7.5% (95%CI: 6.1-9.1). Anastomotic leak occurs in 7% to 15%[32,33] and both pelvic sepsis and leaks can subsequently result in a re-operation rate of 24% to 63% in this cohort of patients[20,32-34]. The management of pelvic sepsis is multi factorial which includes clinical stability of the patient, the extent of sepsis (localised or generalised, abscess, collection, and peritonitis) and services available locally. Management can involve conservative treatment with antibiotics and radiological/trans-anal drainage depending on the position of the collection; or it can also be treated surgically with salvage operations or PE as a last resort.

The St. Mark's Hospital[4] series included 996 patients who had undergone primary RP and included a further 245 patients who were referred for salvage procedures over a period of 25 years (1977-2002). Pelvic/perineal sepsis accounted for 51% (35/68)[4,35] of PEs in their series. Ninety-seven percent of patients who had their primary RP at St. Mark's had at least one or more salvage procedures before excision occurred (median 2; range 0-11). Overall 22.4% of their pouches excised were done so within 12 mo with the remaining excised at a median of 50 mo (range, 13-230 mo)[4].

The Cleveland Clinic series (1985-2009) reported a similar outcome with sepsis/fistulae contributing to 40% of their overall PEs (110/1965 patients)[26]. The Mayo Clinic (1981-1994) had a pelvic abscess rate of 4.9% (73 patients) with 19% (14/73) of these patients subsequently undergoing PE[21]. Pelvic sepsis accounted for 45% of all pouch failures within 2 years at the Mayo Clinic but for less than 2% of all subsequent failures (over 2 years)[36]. MacRae *et al*[6] (Toronto 1981-1992) overall pouch failure rate was 10.5% (58/551); 84.5% of pouches that failed required excision. Leak from the pouch or ileo-anal anastomosis were found to be significantly associated with PE $P < 0.0001$ and $P < 0.001$ respectively, as was no proximal diversion with an ileostomy ($P < 0.01$)[6]. Identification of pouch failure following pelvic sepsis is largely dependent on the duration of follow up. A meta-analysis from the Netherlands including 43 studies reported that pooled incidence rates increased from 6.8% to 8.5% if patients were followed up for at least 5 years. There was also no major difference in failure rates secondary to sepsis between series that included 200 patients and those that included 1200 patients[24].

CD/fistula: Permanent pouch failure occurs significantly more often in patients with CD when compared to those with UC (36.8% *vs* 1.4%)[37]. Reported post-operative diagnosis of CD in the current literature ranged from 0.7% to 4%[4,6,24,29,38,39] with 43% of all PEs at the Cleveland clinic found to have a final histological diagnosis of CD[26]. A diagnosis of CD can be associated with a 4-fold increase in the likelihood of pouch failure[7] and failure rate for inadvertent RP for CD can be as high as 50%[12,27,29,39]. A pre-operative diagnosis of CD is considered a contra-indication to RP as it is believed that disease recurrence and potential for fistula is high and that ultimately PE may be necessary[40]. This is certainly reflected in the literature where it has been reported that the principal reason for pouch failure in CD patients is persistent sepsis secondary to fistulating disease. In a series published from the Lahey Clinic, 40% of their pouch failures were due to fistulating CD[38] and unsurprisingly 90.9% of patients from the Mayo Clinic with CD and whom developed complex fistulating disease (median 29 mo; range, 3-60 mo) post RP required excision[29]. The Cleveland study reflected the experience of other centres and multivariate analysis found perineal (adjusted HR = 3.198, 95%CI: 1.986-5.148, $P < 0.001$) and vaginal fistulae (adjusted HR = 7.491, 95%CI: 3.031-18.514, $P < 0.001$) to be significant predictive factors of pouch failure[7]. No single risk factor for failure on multivariate analysis was statistically associated with either the early-onset (less than 12 mo) or late onset fistula (over 12 mo), and no difference in pouch failure was found between either two groups[41].

Poor functional outcome: Symptomatic anastomotic stricture is associated with an increased likelihood of pouch failure (adjusted HR = 2.692, 95%CI: 1.824-3.971, $P < 0.001$)[7] and rates of excision due to anastomotic stricture ranged from 2.03% to 27.3%[4,6,12,38,39]. Poor function is often referred to as "outlet obstruction or incontinence." At the Cleveland Clinic 30% of pouches were excised due to stricture or poor function[7] with a similar excision rate for poor function of 35% observed at St. Mark's Hospital[4]. In the series by Prudhomme *et al*[27] 50% of pouches excised was due to poor function but typically each patient who had undergone excision had more than one complication and therefore poor function is likely multi-factorial.

Pouch ischaemia: Pouch ischaemia as a result of technical failure will usually present early and is now regarded as an avoidable complication. Körsgen *et al*[12] reported a relatively high excision rate due to ischaemia (26.1%, $n = 6/23$) however only two of these cases were due to technical problems (extensive vascular mobilisation, small bowel haematoma). They reported two late cases due to rotation injury along the long axis of the small bowel mesentery and ileoanal anastomosis[12]. Karoui *et al*[4] had an excision rate due to pouch ischaemia of 1.5% and Farouk *et al*[21] a rate of 14.3%.

Chronic pouchitis: Pouchitis is rarely seen in those patients with FAP and is more common in UC patients[42]. The incidence of pouchitis increases from 40% of patients having one episode in first 10 years to 70% within 20 years[18]. The pooled incidence of at least one episode of pouchitis was 18.8% (95%CI: 15.7-22.4) from a meta-analysis of 43 studies[24]. However, current evidence suggests that pouchitis, as a single entity, is rarely the reason for pouch failure[4,6,8,30,32,34,38,43]. Approximately 5%-10% of patients develop chronic pouchitis that requires long term therapy and a small minority will have pouchitis that is refractory to medical treatment. This is the subset of patients that should be referred to a Colorectal Surgeon for a discussion surrounding permanent diversion or excision[44]. The rates of excision of a pouch for pouchitis alone were between 7.4% and 22.9%[4,6,8,20,22,26,30,35]. However, one Canadian study reported an excision rate of 54.5%

Table 1 Other reasons for excision

Ref.	Total number of excisions	Reasons for excision (% of total excision)
Farouk *et al*[21] Mayo Clinic *n* = 1508	14	Pouch ischaemia (14.3%)
Karoui *et al*[4] Cleveland Clinic *n* = 1241	68	Pouch ischaemia (1.5%) Intra-abdominal bleeding (2.9%) Redo operation and insufficient length on mesentery (1.5%)
Körsgen *et al*[12] Birmingham *n* = 180	23	Pouch ischaemia (26.1%)
Lepistö *et al*[8] Helsinki *n* = 486	24	Adrenal insufficiency and dehydration (4.2%) Patients fear of incontinence after stomal closure (4.2%) Perianal pain (4.2%)
Wexner *et al*[30] Minneapolis *n* = 180	14	Severe post-operative haemorrhage (7.1%)

(6/11) due to intractable pouchitis in their UC cohort who had undergone excision[45]. However this was in an era where the use of long term anti-biotics and biologicals were still under evaluation.

Dysplasia/cancer

Both UC and FAP predispose to neoplasia within the pouch. It is useful to consider these diseases separately.

UC and cancer: A recent study by Wu *et al*[46] (3203 patients) reported the cumulative incidence for pouch neoplasia at 5, 10, 15, 20 and 25 years after pouch construction in UC patients were 0.9%, 1.3%, 1.9%, 4.2% and 5.1% respectively. They also concluded that those patients with a final diagnosis of pouch adenocarcinoma when compared to those with dysplasia tended to be older (P = 0.04) and had a longer duration of diagnosis of IBD or pouch construction prior to the detection of neoplasia (P = 0.007 and P = 0.0013). Eleven out of fourteen patients with adenocarcinoma had resection and PE with curative intent [abdominoperineal resection (APR) with end ileostomy n = 8, APR with Kock pouch n = 2, palliative resection with end ileostomy n = 1] and 2/12 with high grade dysplasia had excision (APR with end ileostomy n = 1 and APR with Kock reservoir n = 1). The prognosis for pouch adenocarcinoma is poor and the anal transition zone was the most common site in the Cleveland Clinic Series[46]. The occurrence of neoplasia in patients with RP is not eliminated by mucosectomy[19,47].

However it is not clear whether retaining the anal mucosa using the double stapling technique and allowing the mucosa to be sampled is superior or inferior to mucosectomy. This was reviewed by M'Koma *et al*[48] in 2011, who found 43 cases of pouch cancer related to UC. Thirty two had transition zone carcinoma, 28 of whom had had a mucosectomy. There were also 11 cancers within the body of the pouch body[48]. Patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis and inflammatory bowel disease are at an increased risk of colorectal neoplasia. Rahman *et al*[49] found a cumulative 5-year incidence of pouch neoplasia of 5.6% (95%CI: 1.8%-16.1%)[49]. However, there is still insufficient evidence to implicate primary sclerosing cholangitis as a risk factor for the development of dysplasia and carcinoma of the pouch[49].

FAP and cancer: Incidence of adenomas (within pouch) in patients with FAP varied from 6.7% to 73.9%, age of the pouch is an important risk factor: 7%-16% at 5 years, 35%-42% after 10 years and 75% after 15 years. However, only 23 cases of ileal pouch carcinoma have been recorded in the literature to date[50]. Thus data suggests that the body of the pouch needs to be reviewed after 5 years in patients with FAP. In the review by Smith *et al*[50] in 2013 there were 92 cancers in total of which 23 occurred within the body of the pouch and or in the anal canal mucosa or cuff again, suggesting lifetime surveillance for FAP pouches. In the St. Marks series two pouches were excised as a result of unrecognised cancer in the rectum at the time of original RP construction (2.9%)[4], and 6.1% of pouches at the Cleveland Clinic were excised due to neoplasia of the pouch or rectal cuff[26]. Prudhomme *et al*[27] reported PE as a result of desmoid tumours in a total of three cases[27]. Other reasons for PE are outlined in Table 1.

PE

Excision of a failing pouch sacrifices a significant length of terminal ileum and there are a small number of papers that suggested transformation of a pouch to continent ileostomy (Kock reservior) may be a suitable alternative[51,52]. This would not be the authors operation of choice. However, current indications include patients who require a panproctocolectomy but cannot have a pouch constructed, those patients with failed RP who are not candidates for redo surgery and those with a Brooke ileostomy that is adversely affecting the patients quality of life[53]. Ecker *et al*[52] successfully converted 4 ileo-anal pouches to a kock reservoir and the indication was functional disturbance that could not be corrected surgically. Hultén *et al*[51] had a series of 5 patients who had transformation of their pouch for pouch-vaginal fistula considered unsuitable for local revision, unsatisfactory function and unacceptably high defecation frequency. Performing a permanent ileostomy above a pouch left *in-situ* is another reasonable alternative when PE is not feasible or recommended particularly as this is not associated with neoplasia[54]. Once the difficult decision has been taken to excise a pouch, a comprehensive and carefully constructed management plan/surgical strategy must be implemented. The urgency with which the

operation is performed will depend on the indication for excision and the clinical stability of the patient. If time permits, the authors feel that these patients should be discussed in a multi-disciplinary environment with further discussions with the patient in an appropriate setting, ideally with their own network of support available. Patients often give weight to other values besides physical health and the disappointment after unsuccessful restoration of intestinal continuity and the prospect of excision can be devastating. Lepistö *et al*[8] reported that quality of life scores are lower in PE groups when compared to the general population and this is often due to physical impairment and social restrictions. Transparency is of paramount importance in order to meet patients' expectations and the appropriate support network should be in place before excision takes place. The network should include aspects of metabolic, nutritional and psychological support as short gut may be a problem in patients some of whom will be stoma averse.

THE OPERATION

There is a paucity of information in the literature about the operative strategies for PE but the approach taken for re-operative/salvage surgery should be adopted for excision surgery (preservation of bowel length is a principle as is nerve/ureteric preservation). An exhaustive evaluation with imaging such as computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging and endoscopy are required. When salvage surgery is undertaken at the Cleveland Clinic patients are placed in the Lloyd-Davies position and both the abdomen and perineum are prepared and draped. The abdomen is entered *via* the previous incision; the pouch mobilised to the levator ani muscles using sharp dissection and the pouch is subsequently excised. In addition, intra-operative urethral stents[55] are often necessary and would certainly be advocated by many colorectal surgeons with experience of the difficulties encountered in the re-operative pelvis. PE may be required with a temporary proximal diversion in place. This may have been for a salvage procedure or to manage sepsis, and once all sepsis has resolved (3-6 mo), further surgery can be considered[5]. Fifty-one percent of patients in the St. Mark's series had a diverting stoma for sepsis, pouchitis and poor function prior to excision[35]. PE and perineal closure can be performed using an extrasphincteric (ES), intersphincteric (IS), or sphincter preserving (SP) approach[26]. Nisar *et al*[26] from the Cleveland Clinic prefer IS dissection and reserve ES closure for cancer or extensive perineal sepsis and authors from this institution adopt this same principle. SP closure is employed when restoration of intestinal continuity may be a future option[26]. Prudhomme *et al*[27] performed 24 PEs with sphincteric dissection as follows: total sphincteric 10/24 (levator ani muscles were closed and the subcutaneous and skin layers were closed), intersphincteric 10/24, no sphincteric dissection 4/24. The St. Mark's operative strategy for PE is a combined abdominoanal approach with dissection maintained close to the pouch in order to minimise risk of damaging pelvic nerves. Dissection is commenced posteriorly after entering the presacral space behind the small bowel mesentery and continued caudally, laterally and then anteriorly to the level of the pelvic floor. The ileoanal anastomosis is disconnected and along with the anal canal is removed *via* an intersphincteric dissection. If there is evidence of pelvic sepsis the practice was to curette any granulation tissue and the perineal wound was left open in all cases. Ninety percent of these patients had a Brooke ileostomy with the remaining 10% (7/68) having a continent Kock reservoir[4]. Prudhomme *et al*[27] opted also for Brooke ileostomy in just over 90% of their patients and performed a Kock reservoir in only two patients.

There is a lack of studies that report the outcomes after excision of a pouch and this area needs more study[26]. Complications can be classified as early (within 30 d of surgery) or late. In the St. Mark's series[4] 25% of patients (n = 17) had immediate post-operative complications; one death. Seventeen patients had one or a combination of the following: sepsis (peritonitis, abdominal wound, pelvic abscess, peristomal abscess), bleeding, intestinal obstruction deep vein thrombosis. Nineteen percent overall required further surgery. Median duration of follow-up after excision was 79 (range, 3-312) mo and during this period 53.7% (95%CI: 41%-66%) were readmitted for late complications. The risk of readmission from the time of the PE was 38% (95%CI: 27%-51%) and 58% (95%CI: 45%-72%) at 1 and 5 years respectively. Perineal complications such as persistent perineal sinus (PPS) are the most common late complications. Complete healing can eventually be achieved in the majority of cases. However up to 10% of patients can still have PPS at 12 mo[27,35]. The Mayo Series had a 40% rate of PPS six months post-operatively and all of these patients required at least one further procedure with two requiring a laparotomy. Interestingly no correlation was found between indication for excision and PPS[4]. Despite an identical rate of PPS in the St. Mark's series, they stated that "PE for fistula or abscess in the pelvis or perineum was an independent predictor for PPS"[35]. The Cleveland Clinic had the largest series of PEs (110 patients, 48% CD) and had a PPS rate of 39.8% with an overall healing rate in this cohort of 80.7% with further procedures. They also found no association with PPS and closure technique or eventual healing (P = 0.37 and P = 0.94 respectively) and no significant difference in PPS was found between CD and non-CD patients. In the CD cohort where sphincter preservation was attempted four patients developed PPS. These patients achieved complete healing when sphincters were excised[26]. This outcome was also reflected in the series by Prudhomme *et al*[27] who reported that the highest rate of PPS was

in CD patients and complete healing was achieved when total sphincteric excision was subsequently performed[27]. A small but significant difference was observed in quality of life scores (SF-12 Questionnaire) for both mental (PPS 43.5 ± 10.9 *vs* No PPS 50.9 ± 9.1, $P = 0.038$) and physical (PPS 40.8 ± 10.5 *vs* No PPS 48.0 ± 8.9, $P = 0.037$) components at latest follow up when patients with PPS were compared to those without[26].

Further uncommon, late complications included small bowel obstruction, ileostomy retraction, incisonal hernia, enterocutaneous fistula from Kock reservoir and short bowel syndrome. Incidence rate of persistent impotence was 7.14% (2/28 males) which is higher than rates described following an initial RP[4].

Overview

Pouch surgery has been ongoing for over 35 years since the first RP in the 1970's[56] and the authors predict an epidemic of problematic pouches which may be attributable to the duration that pouches have remained *in situ*. Failure of an RP that then requires PE is a devastating complication and subsequent management of a failed pouch should be entirely patient focused. Pooled rate of pouch failure is 4.3% (95%CI: 3.5-6.3) and when compared to studies before the year 2000, a reduction of 2.5% is observed in the pouch failure rate ($P = 0.0038$)[31]. Reported overall excision rates of the pouches vary and in this review ranged from 0.93% to 12.8%[3,4,6-9,12,20,21,38,57]. The main reasons identified for excision are CD and poor functional outcomes (both late causes). Pouch cancers in UC and FAP are still rare but now number 135 in the literature[48,50].

The complexity of PE and the meticulous strategy and resources that are required strengthens the current discussion for centralisation of such services in order to deliver the best service possible to patients. We believe that pouch surgery should be performed by Colorectal Surgeons with a specialised interest in IBD Pouch Surgery with adequate local resources to appropriately manage and support these patients. The decision to excise a pouch should not be taken lightly and an awareness of the technical pitfalls and complications that can occur should be fully appreciated.

REFERENCES

1 **Shen B**, Yu C, Lian L, Remzi FH, Kiran RP, Fazio VW, Kattan MW. Prediction of late-onset pouch failure in patients with restorative proctocolectomy with a nomogram. *J Crohns Colitis* 2012; **6**: 198-206 [PMID: 22325174 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2011.08.006]

2 **Ahmed Ali U**, Keus F, Heikens JT, Bemelman WA, Berdah SV, Gooszen HG, van Laarhoven CJ. Open versus laparoscopic (assisted) ileo pouch anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis and familial adenomatous polyposis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; (**1**): CD006267 [PMID: 19160273 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006267]

3 **Burns EM**, Bottle A, Aylin P, Clark SK, Tekkis PP, Darzi A, Nicholls RJ, Faiz O. Volume analysis of outcome following restorative proctocolectomy. *Br J Surg* 2011; **98**: 408-417 [PMID: 21254018 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.7312]

4 **Karoui M**, Cohen R, Nicholls J. Results of surgical removal of the pouch after failed restorative proctocolectomy. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 869-875 [PMID: 15108024 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0536-9]

5 **Larson DW**. Revision IPAA: strategies for success. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 1236-1237 [PMID: 24802093 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-014-2500-x]

6 **MacRae HM**, McLeod RS, Cohen Z, O'Connor BI, Ton EN. Risk factors for pelvic pouch failure. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 257-262 [PMID: 9118737 DOI: 10.1007/BF02050412]

7 **Fazio VW**, Tekkis PP, Remzi F, Lavery IC, Manilich E, Connor J, Preen M, Delaney CP. Quantification of risk for pouch failure after ileal pouch anal anastomosis surgery. *Ann Surg* 2003; **238**: 605-614; discussion 614-617 [PMID: 14530732 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000090940.39838.6a]

8 **Lepistö A**, Luukkonen P, Järvinen HJ. Cumulative failure rate of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis and quality of life after failure. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 1289-1294 [PMID: 12394424]

9 **Peyrègne V**, Francois Y, Gilly FN, Descos JL, Flourie B, Vignal J. Outcome of ileal pouch after secondary diagnosis of Crohn's disease. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2000; **15**: 49-53 [PMID: 10766091 DOI: 10.1007/s003840050007]

10 **Yu CS**, Pemberton JH, Larson D. Ileal pouch-anal anastomosis in patients with indeterminate colitis: long-term results. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 1487-1496 [PMID: 11089581 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236726]

11 **Neilly P**, Neill ME, Hill GL. Restorative proctocolectomy with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis in 203 patients: the Auckland experience. *Aust N Z J Surg* 1999; **69**: 22-27 [PMID: 9932915 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1622.1999.01464.x]

12 **Körsgen S**, Keighley MR. Causes of failure and life expectancy of the ileoanal pouch. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1997; **12**: 4-8 [PMID: 9112142 DOI: 10.1007/s003840050069]

13 **Becker JM**, LaMorte W, St Marie G, Ferzoco S. Extent of smooth muscle resection during mucosectomy and ileal pouch-anal anastomosis affects anorectal physiology and functional outcome. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 653-660 [PMID: 9194458]

14 **Kirat HT**, Remzi FH, Kiran RP, Fazio VW. Comparison of outcomes after hand-sewn versus stapled ileal pouch-anal anastomosis in 3,109 patients. *Surgery* 2009; **146**: 723-729; discussion 729-730 [PMID: 19789032 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2009.06.041]

15 **Lian L**, Kiran RP, Remzi FH, Lavery IC, Fazio VW. Outcomes for patients developing anastomotic leak after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: does a handsewn vs. stapled anastomosis matter? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 387-393 [PMID: 19333036 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e31819ad4f2]

16 **Kennedy ED**, Rothwell DM, Cohen Z, McLeod RS. Increased experience and surgical technique lead to improved outcome after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: a population-based study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2006; **49**: 958-965 [PMID: 16703449]

17 **Williamson ME**, Lewis WG, Sagar PM, Holdsworth PJ, Johnston D. One-stage restorative proctocolectomy without temporary ileostomy for ulcerative colitis: a note of caution. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 1019-1022 [PMID: 9293928 DOI: 10.1007/BF02050922]

18 **Sagar PM**, Pemberton JH. Intraoperative, postoperative and reoperative problems with ileoanal pouches. *Br J Surg* 2012; **99**: 454-468 [PMID: 22307828 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8697]

19 **Lovegrove RE**, Constantinides VA, Heriot AG, Athanasiou T, Darzi A, Remzi FH, Nicholls RJ, Fazio VW, Tekkis PP. A comparison of hand-sewn versus stapled ileal pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA) following proctocolectomy: a meta-analysis of 4183 patients. *Ann Surg* 2006; **244**: 18-26 [PMID: 16794385 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000225031.15405.a3]

20 **Belliveau P**, Trudel J, Vasilevsky CA, Stein B, Gordon PH. Ileoanal anastomosis with reservoirs: complications and long-term results. *Can J Surg* 1999; **42**: 345-352 [PMID: 10526518]

21 **Farouk R**, Dozois RR, Pemberton JH, Larson D. Incidence

and subsequent impact of pelvic abscess after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for chronic ulcerative colitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1998; **41**: 1239-1243 [PMID: 9788386 DOI: 10.1007/BF02258220]

22 **Fleshman JW**, Cohen Z, McLeod RS, Stern H, Blair J. The ileal reservoir and ileoanal anastomosis procedure. Factors affecting technical and functional outcome. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1988; **31**: 10-16 [PMID: 3366021 DOI: 10.1007/BF02552562]

23 **Hallberg H**, Ståhlberg D, Akerlund JE. Ileal pouch-anal anastomosis (IPAA): functional outcome after postoperative pelvic sepsis. A prospective study of 100 patients. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2005; **20**: 529-533 [PMID: 15864610 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-004-0717-y]

24 **Hueting WE**, Buskens E, van der Tweel I, Gooszen HG, van Laarhoven CJ. Results and complications after ileal pouch anal anastomosis: a meta-analysis of 43 observational studies comprising 9,317 patients. *Dig Surg* 2005; **22**: 69-79 [PMID: 15838175 DOI: 10.1159/000085356]

25 **Kelly KA**. Anal sphincter-saving operations for chronic ulcerative colitis. *Am J Surg* 1992; **163**: 5-11 [PMID: 1733374 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(92)90244-L]

26 **Nisar PJ**, Turina M, Lavery IC, Kiran RP. Perineal wound healing following ileoanal pouch excision. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 200-207 [PMID: 24146336 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2340-0]

27 **Prudhomme M**, Dehni N, Dozois RR, Tiret E, Parc R. Causes and outcomes of pouch excision after restorative proctocolectomy. *Br J Surg* 2006; **93**: 82-86 [PMID: 16288450 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5147]

28 **Richard CS**, Cohen Z, Stern HS, McLeod RS. Outcome of the pelvic pouch procedure in patients with prior perianal disease. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 647-652 [PMID: 9194457 DOI: 10.1007/BF02140892]

29 **Sagar PM**, Dozois RR, Wolff BG. Long-term results of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis in patients with Crohn's disease. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 893-898 [PMID: 8756845]

30 **Wexner SD**, Wong WD, Rothenberger DA, Goldberg SM. The ileoanal reservoir. *Am J Surg* 1990; **159**: 178-183; discussion 183-185 [PMID: 2153008 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(05)80625-7]

31 **de Zeeuw S**, Ahmed Ali U, Donders RA, Hueting WE, Keus F, van Laarhoven CJ. Update of complications and functional outcome of the ileo-pouch anal anastomosis: overview of evidence and meta-analysis of 96 observational studies. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2012; **27**: 843-853 [PMID: 22228116 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1402-6]

32 **Fazio VW**, Ziv Y, Church JM, Oakley JR, Lavery IC, Milsom JW, Schroeder TK. Ileal pouch-anal anastomoses complications and function in 1005 patients. *Ann Surg* 1995; **222**: 120-127 [PMID: 7639579 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199508000-00003]

33 **Heuschen UA**, Hinz U, Allemeyer EH, Autschbach F, Stern J, Lucas M, Herfarth C, Heuschen G. Risk factors for ileoanal J pouch-related septic complications in ulcerative colitis and familial adenomatous polyposis. *Ann Surg* 2002; **235**: 207-216 [PMID: 11807360 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200202000-00008]

34 **Meagher AP**, Farouk R, Dozois RR, Kelly KA, Pemberton JH. J ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for chronic ulcerative colitis: complications and long-term outcome in 1310 patients. *Br J Surg* 1998; **85**: 800-803 [PMID: 9667712 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.1998.00689.x]

35 **Lohsiriwat V**, Clark SK. Persistent perineal sinus after ileoanal pouch excision in inflammatory bowel diseases: incidence, risk factors, and clinical course. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2008; **51**: 1795-1799 [PMID: 18626712 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-008-9417-y]

36 **Farouk R**, Pemberton JH, Wolff BG, Dozois RR, Browning S, Larson D. Functional outcomes after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for chronic ulcerative colitis. *Ann Surg* 2000; **231**: 919-926 [PMID: 10816636 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200006000-00017]

37 **Foley EF**, Schoetz DJ, Roberts PL, Marcello PW, Murray JJ, Coller JA, Veidenheimer MC. Rediversion after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. Causes of failures and predictors of subsequent pouch salvage. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1995; **38**: 793-798 [PMID: 7634973 DOI: 10.1007/BF02049833]

38 **Breen EM**, Schoetz DJ, Marcello PW, Roberts PL, Coller JA, Murray JJ, Rusin LC. Functional results after perineal complications of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1998; **41**: 691-695 [PMID: 9645736 DOI: 10.1007/BF02236254]

39 **Galandiuk S**, Scott NA, Dozois RR, Kelly KA, Ilstrup DM, Beart RW, Wolff BG, Pemberton JH, Nivatvongs S, Devine RM. Ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. Reoperation for pouch-related complications. *Ann Surg* 1990; **212**: 446-452; discussion 452-454 [PMID: 2171442 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199010000-00007]

40 **Le Q**, Melmed G, Dubinsky M, McGovern D, Vasiliauskas EA, Murrell Z, Ippoliti A, Shih D, Kaur M, Targan S, Fleshner P. Surgical outcome of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis when used intentionally for well-defined Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 30-36 [PMID: 22467562 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.22955]

41 **Nisar PJ**, Kiran RP, Shen B, Remzi FH, Fazio VW. Factors associated with ileoanal pouch failure in patients developing early or late pouch-related fistula. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2011; **54**: 446-453 [PMID: 21383565 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e318206ea42]

42 **Shen B**. Diagnosis and management of postoperative ileal pouch disorders. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg* 2010; **23**: 259-268 [PMID: 22131896 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1268252]

43 **Setti-Carraro P**, Ritchie JK, Wilkinson KH, Nicholls RJ, Hawley PR. The first 10 years' experience of restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 1070-1075 [PMID: 7926908 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.8.1070]

44 **Pardi DS**, Sandborn WJ. Systematic review: the management of pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 1087-1096 [PMID: 16611268 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02884.x]

45 **Salemans JM**, Nagengast FM, Lubbers EJ, Kuijpers JH. Postoperative and long-term results of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis and familial polyposis coli. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 1882-1889 [PMID: 1335407 DOI: 10.1007/BF01308083]

46 **Wu XR**, Remzi FH, Liu XL, Lian L, Stocchi L, Ashburn J, Shen B. Disease course and management strategy of pouch neoplasia in patients with underlying inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 2073-2082 [PMID: 25137416 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000152]

47 **Chambers WM**, McC Mortensen NJ. Should ileal pouch-anal anastomosis include mucosectomy? *Colorectal Dis* 2007; **9**: 384-392 [PMID: 17504334 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2007.01211.x]

48 **M'Koma AE**, Moses HL, Adunyah SE. Inflammatory bowel disease-associated colorectal cancer: proctocolectomy and mucosectomy do not necessarily eliminate pouch-related cancer incidences. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2011; **26**: 533-552 [PMID: 21311893 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1137-4]

49 **Rahman M**, Desmond P, Mortensen N, Chapman RW. The clinical impact of primary sclerosing cholangitis in patients with an ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2011; **26**: 553-559 [PMID: 21279368 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1140-9]

50 **Smith JC**, Schäffer MW, Ballard BR, Smoot DT, Herline AJ, Adunyah SE, M'Koma AE. Adenocarcinomas After Prophylactic Surgery For Familial Adenomatous Polyposis. *J Cancer Ther* 2013; **4**: 260-270 [PMID: 23875116 DOI: 10.4236/jct.2013.41033]

51 **Hultén L**, Fasth S, Hallgren T, Oresland T. The failing pelvic pouch conversion to continent ileostomy. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1992; **7**: 119-121 [PMID: 1402306 DOI: 10.1007/BF00360349]

52 **Ecker KW**, Haberer M, Feifel G. Conversion of the failing ileoanal pouch to reservoir-ileostomy rather than to ileostomy alone. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 977-980 [PMID: 8797644 DOI: 10.1007/BF02054684]

53 **Aytac E**, Ashburn J, Dietz DW. Is there still a role for continent ileostomy in the surgical treatment of inflammatory bowel disease? *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 2519-2525 [PMID: 25222659 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000160]

54 **Kiran RP**, Kirat HT, Rottoli M, Xhaja X, Remzi FH, Fazio VW. Permanent ostomy after ileoanal pouch failure: pouch in situ or pouch excision? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 4-9 [PMID: 22156861 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e3182312a8a]

55 **Remzi FH**, Fazio VW, Kirat HT, Wu JS, Lavery IC, Kiran RP. Repeat pouch surgery by the abdominal approach safely salvages

failed ileal pelvic pouch. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 198-204 [PMID: 19279412 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e31819ad4b6]

56 **Nicholls J**, Pescatori M, Motson RW, Pezim ME. Restorative proctocolectomy with a three-loop ileal reservoir for ulcerative colitis and familial adenomatous polyposis. Clinical results in 66 patients followed for up to 6 years. *Ann Surg* 1984; **199**: 383-388 [PMID: 6712311]

57 **Dayton MT**, Larsen KP. Outcome of pouch-related complications after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Am J Surg* 1997; **174**: 728-731; discussion 731-732 [PMID: 9409606]

P- Reviewer: Myrelid P, Sica GS **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.127

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 127-136
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Surgical treatment of retrorectal (presacral) tumors

Ahmet Deniz Uçar, Nazif Erkan, Mehmet Yıldırım

Ahmet Deniz Uçar, Nazif Erkan, Mehmet Yıldırım, Department of General Surgery, Izmir Bozyaka Educational and Research Hospital, 35320 Narlidere, Izmir, Turkey
Author contributions: Uçar AD, Erkan N and Yıldırım M contributed equally to this work, generated the figures and wrote the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: There is no conflict of interest to be stated.

Correspondence to: Ahmet Deniz Uçar, MD, Department of General Surgery, Izmir Bozyaka Educational and Research Hospital, Ilica Mah. Alkan Sk. Yurttas Apt. No:25 D:3, 35320 Narlidere, Izmir, Turkey. ahmetdenizucar@hotmail.com
Telephone: +90-232-2505050
Fax: +90-232-2503849
Received: July 19, 2014
Peer-review started: July 19, 2014
First decision: November 18, 2014
Revised: December 5, 2014
Accepted: December 18, 2014
Article in press: December 19, 2014
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Retrorectal (also known as presacral) tumor (RT) is a rare disease of retrorectal space. They can be classified as congenital, inflammatory, neurogenic, osseous, or miscellaneous. The most common presentation is an asymptomatic mass discovered on routine rectal examination, but certain nonspecific symptoms can be elicited by careful history and physical examination. The primary and only satisfactory treatment is surgery for RTs. Three approaches commonly used for resection are abdominal, transsacral, or a combined abdominosacral approach. Prognosis is directly related primary local control, which is often difficult to achieve for malignant lesions.

Key words: Retrorectal; Presacral; Tumor

Core tip: Since retrorectal tumors are rare in surgical practice an ordinary surgeon will have been faced a number not more than a fingers of one hand in his lifelong carrier. Diagnostic and surgical practice should be fulfilled by the small but well documented case series, reviews and meta-analyses based on them.

Uçar AD, Erkan N, Yıldırım M. Surgical treatment of retrorectal (presacral) tumors. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 127-136 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/127.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.127

INTRODUCTION

Retrorectal tumor (RT) is a rare disease. Average of two patients can be diagnosed annually in an urban area[1]. An ordinary surgeon will have been faced with a few cases in his lifelong carrier. Even many malignant cases can be encountered and necessitate aggressive surgical interventions, fortunately majority are benign. Since misdiagnosis or incorrect operative approach in case of RTs can cause serious complications, always keeping in mind as a differential diagnosis, thorough working knowledge of the etiology, presentation and treatment are essential. In a small number of patients with RT, Singer *et al*[2] reported that approximately 4.7 unnecessary diagnostic but unrelated interventions have done before definitive diagnosis.

The first reported case of RT in 1847 by Emmerich was an adult teratoma[3]. In 1885, a second case of RT (dermoid cyst) was reported in a young woman's autopsy[4]. Page reported the first successful excision of a RT in 1891[5]. The first case harboring malignancy

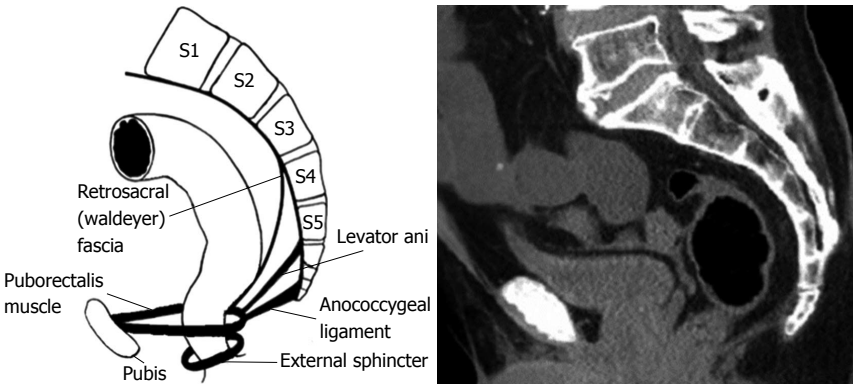


Figure 1 Schematic illustration of sacrococcyx, rectum and important ingredients of retrorectal space. (Simplified and reproduced from Nicholls *et al*[42]) and counterpart tomoscan.

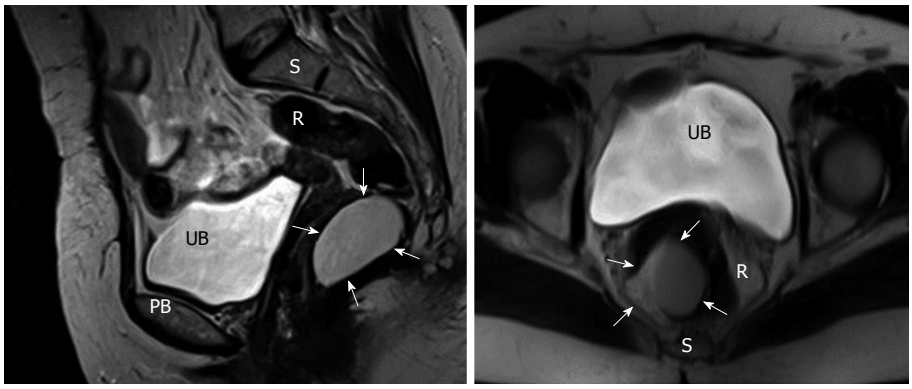


Figure 2 Coronal and axial T2A magnetic resonance imaging planes of a cystic lesion (arrows) in the retrorectal space. UB: Urinary bladder; PB: Pubic bone; R: Rectum; S: Sacrococcyx.

was a tail gut cyst described by Ballantine[6] in 1931.

The area of retrorectal space (RS) is delineated posteriorly by presacral fascia overlying the sacrum and anteriorly by fascia propria of the rectum. Lateral borders include different structures like ureters, iliac vessels and lateral borders of the rectum. It's superior and inferior ends are peritoneal layer of the rectum and Waldeyer's fascia respectively (Figures 1 and 2).

Since multiple embryologic structures rise up in RS, this area can contain variety of tumors harboring diverse histopathology. For this reason this space may be the most crowded point in which different subspecialties such as surgeons, obstetricians and gynecologists, urology, neurosurgeons, orthopedics encounter each other while managing a lesion herein.

INCIDENCE

Even though RTs are very common malignancy in the childhood, they are rare in the adults, occurring 1 of 40000 to 63000 admissions at a reference hospital admissions. Different from adults, infants frequently present with an externally visible sacrococcygeal masses showing malignant transformation in untreated cases[7]. Benign lesions in RS are more common in females whereas malignant tumors have an equivalent distribution[1]. While cystic malignancies have been described, malignancy is more common in solid lesions with a rate of 9% to 45%[8]. Estimated incidence of RT in adult population is 0.0025-0.014[9]. Retrospective series shows that 1 to 6 patients are diagnosed annually in major referral centers[1]. After 20851 proctoscopies performed in a single institute, only 3 precoccygeal cysts can be diagnosed per year[10].

The most of the knowledge accumulations are derived from individual case reports and small numbered case series. There are few cohort series with large numbers which span 12 to 35 years interval, reflecting that major referral centers will be accepted approximately 1.4 to 6.3 patients per year[1]. In fact there should be some patients who were overlooked and this may reduce the calculated incidence rate. There is only one large series of 63 patients during 30 years period from a non-referral center[1]. According to this study from an entire metropolitan area, annually diagnosed 2 patients are more representative number to make a decision of incidence in a definite area.

CLASSIFICATION

The most frequently used classification system separates RTs into five categories: congenital or developmental,

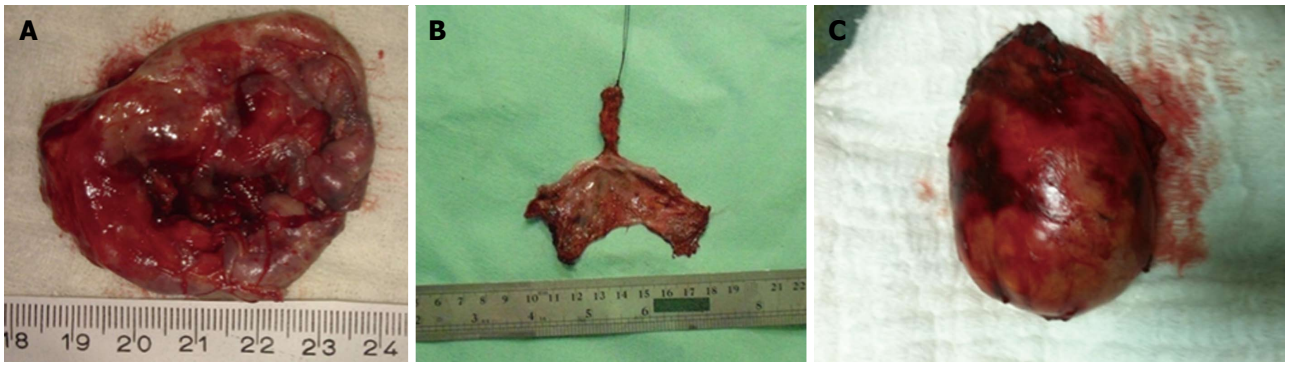


Figure 3 Macroscopic appearance of dermoid cyst (A), epithelial inclusion cyst (B) and schwannoma (C).

Table 1 Classification of retrorectal tumors

Source of origin		Histopathology
Congenital or developmental	Benign	Developmental cysts
		Dermoid cysts
		Epidermoid cysts
		Tail gut cysts
		Enteric (rectal) duplication
		Anterior sacral meningocele[1]
		Teratoma
		Adrenal rest tumors
	Malignant	Chordoma[1]
		Teratocarcinoma
Inflammatory		Granulomas (foreign body, chronic)
		Perineal/pelvirectal abscess or fistula
Neurogenic	Benign	Neurofibroma
		Neurolemmoma (schwannoma)
		Ganglioneuroma
	Malignant	Ependymoma
		Ganglioneuroblastoma
		Neurofibrosarcoma
Osseous	Benign	Osteoma Sacral bone cyst
		Osteoblastoma
		Osteogenic sarcoma
		Giant cell tumor
	Malignant	Ewing's tumor
		Chondromyxosarcoma
		Osteogenic sarcoma
		Myeloma
Miscellaneous	Benign	Lipoma
		Fibroma
		Leiomyoma
		Hemangioma
		Endothelioma
		Desmoid tumor
		Lymphangioma
		Ectopic kidney
	Malignant	Fibrosarcoma
		Liposarcoma
		Leiomyosarcoma
		Metastatic disease

[1]Sometimes classified as neurogenic in origin.

neurogenic, osseous, inflammatory, and miscellaneous[1]. This classification was further divided into benign and malignant because therapeutic approach is mainly based on the histopathology (Table 1)[11]. Other classification system divides RTs into four distinct groups; congenital *vs* acquired and benign *vs* malignant clustering in similar characteristics, diagnosis, and management[12].

Congenital or developmental

Congenital lesions are embryologic remnant which has been present from the birth. They account 55% to 75% of all presacral lesions with subgroups of developmental cysts, chordomas, anterior sacral meningoceles, rectal duplications and adrenal rest tumors[1].

Developmental cysts: About 60% of congenital RTs are developmental cysts originating from different embryologic origin. There is 1:2 female predominance[13]. This predilection may be the result of more frequent routine rectal or pelvic examination in female population than males which makes females more likely for diagnosis[14]. Depending on the origin of embryonic cell, they can be epidermoid, dermoid, tail gut cyst or teratomas. Epidermoid and dermoid cysts are derived from ectodermal tube closure defect. Dermoid cysts made up with more matured components and comprise dermal appendages like hair follicles and sweat glands whereas epidermoid cysts have squamous epithelial lying (Figure 3). Women in between 4th or 5th decades are more prone to develop dermoid and epidermoid cysts. These cysts likely contain viscid green-yellow material unless infected[15]. The next and less frequent congenital lesion sometimes referred as cystic hamartoma is tail gut cysts. Glandular, mucous producing columnar epithelium in these cysts explains it's derivation from tail gut remnants. Although cyst wall may contain scattered bundles of smooth muscle fibers, muscular and serosal coat is not present. Malignant degeneration is rare in tail gut cysts.

Teratomas: Even sacrococcyx is the most common location for teratomas in neonates, it is rare in adults. Teratomas, which have 5% to 10% malignant potential can give rise to multiple solid or cystic lesions containing various tissue types like respiratory, nervous and gastrointestinal system epithelium[16]. Nearly 30% of resected adult teratoma specimens harbor malignancy. The one tip to predict whether it is benign or malign is relation to adjacent structure. The tendency of malignant teratomas to adhere coccyx, rectum and other visceral organs is not seen in benign lesions.

Chordomas: Chordoma is the most common malignant and the most extensively studied RT. It is the second most common RT in RS occurring in three of seven patients[17]. Even one-third occurs in RS, they can be found anywhere in vertebral column[18]. Slow growing nature of chordoma postpones the diagnosis until 40 to 60 years of ages[1]. Long standing vague pain and symptoms associated with nerve compression like incontinence or impotence are frequent presentations. These frequently lobulated, gelatinous masses that attack and break down the neighboring structures need complete resection in order to prevent recurrence. The typical radiological finding for chordoma is "Fang" sign, the finding of sacral bone destruction. Recurrence rate is as high as 44% and because these recurrences are locally aggressive, patients should be warned for probable postoperative sequelae from minor urinary incontinence to paralysis[19]. Chordomas are more common in males with an expected male/female ratio of 2:1[14].

Anterior sacral meningocele: Anterior sacral meningocele is the third group of congenital RT. It is a dural hernial sac containing cerebrospinal fluid as a continuation of subdural space from a defect in the sacrum. Dural connection causes increase in cerebrospinal fluid pressure during straining or defecation. Anterior sacral meningoceles are more common in females and can present with recurrent meningitis[10].

Miscellaneous: The last category of congenital RT is adrenal rest tumors and rectal duplications. The latter can contain mucosa with crypts and villi, smooth muscle and serosa components of intestine because they are remnants of duplicated rectum. Adrenal rests tumors are very sporadic and must be managed like an ectopic pheochromocytoma.

Inflammatory

Inflammatory RTs are less common than congenital ones. They may be residues of foreign bodies of any kind. Tuberculosis, granulomatous disorders, perianal abscess, diverticulitis resulting pelvic abscess and fistulas can cause chronic inflammatory masses in the RS.

Neurogenic/osseous

Neurogenic tumors tend to be large and account 10% of RTs. This category includes neurofibromas, neurolemmomas, ependymomas, ganglioneuromas, and neurofibrosarcomas. Even benign lesions constitutes two thirds of neurogenic RTs, severe neurological sequelae can be seen if these lesions are originated from the spinal cord. Neurogenic and osseous RT can be benign or malignant. Benign ones often require complete resection but recurrence rate is high in osseous lesions.

Miscellaneous

The last but not least group of RT constitutes masses such as metastatic disease from rectum, sarcomas, malignant fibrous histiocytomas, lymphangiomas, lymphomas, fibrosarcomas, liposarcomas, hemangiomas and others that can be found anywhere else in the retroperitoneum[8]. They constitute 10% to 25% of all RTs[1].

However these classifications do not consider the location of RT in the RS which is important determinant for operative and pathologic considerations. A suggestion of a classification system based on the tumor emplacement to facilitate surgical strategy and postoperative sequelae prospection (Figure 4)[20]. According to this classification, type 1 refers to RTs without any connection to the sacrum. Type 1 RT is at the coccyx level (below S3) and separate from the bony trunk of sacrococcyx. It can easily be separated from surrounding structures and removal is not difficult[2]. Type 2 RT is also settles with the same level as type 1 but has connection with the coccyx and/or sacrum. Their surgical resection promise no neurologic deficit[12]. Type 3 RT requires a unilateral resection of the sacral nerve(s), probably resulting fecal and/or urinary incontinence because type 3 RT involves the sacrum at or above the S3 nerve root unilaterally. Type 4 RT has large communication with the sacrum at or above S3 bilaterally in which permanent sphincter deficit is almost unavoidable.

Further division of these four types is A; resection of the adjacent sacral soft tissue and bone is mandatory without adjacent organs and B; resection of organs such as rectum, bladder is obligatory.

SYMPTOMS

Asymptomatic tumor discovered on reckless pelvic or rectal screening investigation is the most common type of presentation[8]. That's why most patients don't have a positive family history despite the majority of RTs are congenital[11]. On the other hand some authors report that nearly 97% of RTS can be and are diagnosed on physical examination[21]. Every physician should put RT in differential diagnosis list on rectal or pelvic examination in order not to miss any which may be the only case of his lifelong carrier as described above.

RTs may cause mild or imprecise symptoms. Benign lesions frequently remain silent for a long period of time. Sacrococcygeal pain is the most common presenting complain in malignant or infected cases of RT[21]. Nature of pain is mostly low back or rectal pain. Presentation of pain in benign and malignant RTs is approximately 30% and 87% respectively[21]. Male gender and older age (> 60) are other predisposing factors for malignancy. Persistent pain at low back, pelvis, and buttocks which is increased by sitting is usual in chordomas.

RT can present with infection reflected as a small, dimples posterior to the anus and below the linea dentata[1]. Misdiagnosis of a retrorectal lesion as a fistula, pilonidal sinus or perianal abscess and any delay

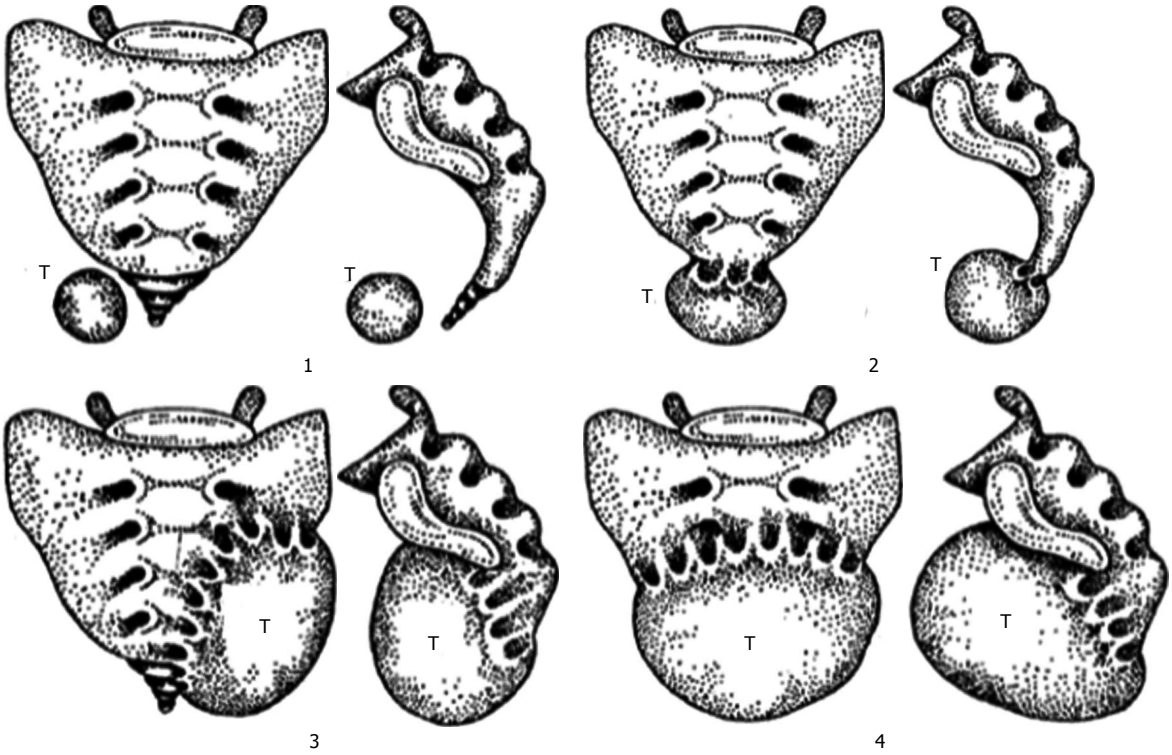


Figure 4 Classification of retrorectal space depending on its relationship with the sacrum (Losanoff *et al*[20]).

in proper management will be unavoidable if failure to understand actual pathology[1]. Incontinence of urine or stool, bowel habitus changes like constipation, sensation of inadequate emptying or tapering stools are sequelae of the change in the rectal angle at the puborectalis muscle due to mass effect. This mass effect can create vaginal canal obstruction and consequent life threatening dystocia during child birth. Anterior sacral meningocele should always be kept in mind if there is a history of headaches after straining, defecation, intercourse and existence of repeated meningitis in a case with a palpable retrorectal mass.

DIAGNOSIS

Rigorous rectal examination is crucial because the most lesions are soft, compressible, and can easily be misdiagnosed if the physician does not awake for a RT probablity[1]. By this way not only because digital rectal examination can establish the diagnosis in > 90% of the patients, but also it can help to define the proximal level of the RT, therefore the surgical approach[11,21].

Evaluation of RT begins with plain radiographs. Clinicians usually fail to value signs and symptoms of RT and consequently misdiagnoses even after extensive radiological workup. Pelvic bone demolition, proposing a malignancy or a chordoma, and numerous dense calcifications proposing a benign teratoma are helpful findings of plain radiographs. Smooth-edged, bowl-shaped border of the sacrum without clear bony demolition of the pelvis (known as "scimitar sacrum") proposes the existence of a sacral meningocele. Transrectal ultrasonography (TRUS) appears to be useful in the diagnosis of RTs. TRUS was found to have a sensitivity of 100% when combined with proctoscopy[2]. TRUS can predict rectal muscularis connection and type of operation.

Either computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) were became the standard for evaluation of RTs. Very small cystic or solid tumors, sacral contribution or attack to neighboring structures can easily be detected with CT[21]. MRI is more beneficial in outlining soft-tissue planes, assessing bony invasion and nerve involvement with its superior tissue contrast resolution to CT scan[11]. Histologic estimation of the RT may be best achieved with MRI[2].

Preoperative histologic diagnosis is mandatory when there is solid or heterogeneously cystic tumor[11]. Biopsy is indicated when the lesion seems to be unresectable and a definitive histopathology is required to guide adjuvant therapy. Purely cystic lesions rarely necessitate biopsy because they are usually benign and biopsy carries the risk of infection. Unnecessary biopsy can cause tumor seeding, infection of the previously sterile cystic lesions, fistula formation and fatal case of meningitis in patients with anterior sacral meningocele or exacerbates morbidity and mortality of subsequent operations[21].

The operation team should consider the way of biopsy since needle tract must be included within the specimen. Transperitoneal, transretroperitoneal, transvaginal, and transrectal biopsies are not recommended since biopsy tract may not be excised. Transrectal or transvaginal biopsies may also lead to infection, more complex and difficult excision, increased postoperative complications and recurrence. According

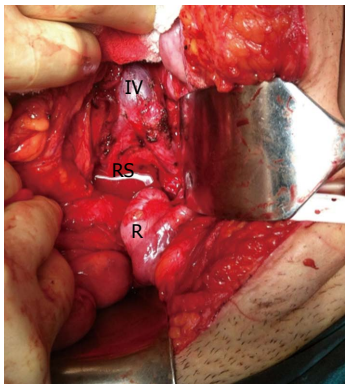


Figure 5 Laparotomy for retrorectal space. Iliac vessels and RS can easily be reached after lateralization of rectum. IV: Iliac vessels; RS: Retrorectal Space; R: Rectum.

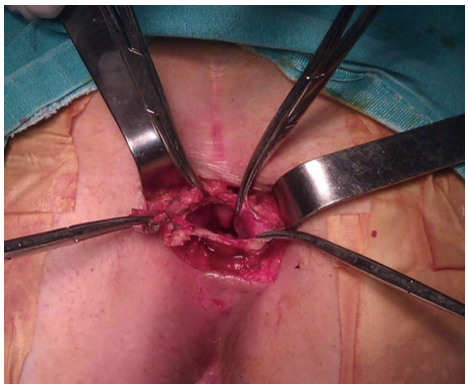


Figure 6 Excision of cystic lesion located low level in retrorectal space by using posterior approach.

to the literature, the best method is transperineal or parasacral since by this way biopsy tract can likely to be kept within the area of the upcoming surgical excision. It is logical to mark needle insertion pathway with methylene blue dye for keeping the biopsy tract within the resection specimen[22].

The consideration of the role of biopsy for the management of RT was concluded that preoperative biopsy of RT is safe and more concordant with postoperative pathology than imaging. Given the significant differences in therapeutic approach for benign *vs* malignant solid or heterogeneous solid-cystic RTs, as well as the current limitations of imaging, a percutaneous preoperative biopsy should be obtained to guide management decisions. Type of surgical resection and the role of neoadjuvant chemoradiation also necessitate actual histology. Moreover, since all malignant RTs require a wide resection including sacrectomy, preoperative tissue diagnosis is mandatory to avoid patients with benign RT from urinary and sexual dysfunction, or other unwanted outcomes[23].

TREATMENT

Surgery is a sole treatment of RTs. Probable infection and malignancy or switching into malignant cells are some convincing reasons. If currently sterile and benign looking cystic lesions once infected, they will adhere to the adjacent structures making the surgery difficult, increase the postoperative complication and recurrence rates.

Three main operative approaches for the resection of RTs are existing; anterior or abdominal, posterior or transsacral and combination of both.

Anterior or abdominal approach

Anterior approach is suitable for tumors at higher location having the lowest border above the 4th sacral bone. Absence of sacral involvement is essential for this approach. This kind of surgery has advantages of good disclosure of adjacent pelvic structures such as iliac vessels and ureters (Figure 5). Throughout the abdominal approach, rectum is first isolated and separated from resection area and after ligation of middle sacral and internal iliac vasculatures, presacral fascia is dissected. Surgeon should be in great care during tumor excision for presacral hemorrhage because the middle sacral blood vessels and the presacral venous plexus are in this region. Possible perineal necrosis can be prevented by preservation inferior gluteal artery which is terminal branch of anterior division of the internal iliac artery. The main cause of intraoperative death is hemorrhage of the presacral venous plexus. Traditional hemostasis methods may not be enough and troublesome bleedings can be overwhelmed by some challenging preventive measurements such as temporary gauze tamponade, bone wax or breast size implanter[24].

Posterior or transsacral approach

This procedure is suitable for low lying tumors which are not extending beyond 4th sacral element. Usual length of a finger can extend up to 4th sacrum. If the proximal end of the tumor is felt by digital sensation, this means that there is no extension beyond that point. The patient is positioned in a prone jack-knife position, preferably buttocks are separated apart (Figure 6). A transverse incision overlying the coccyx offers good disclosure of the retrorectal space especially in case of nerve involvement. A longitudinal incision may be used alternatively on the lower sacrum to the level of anoderm while taking care for not to cause any injury to external sphincter. After dividing the subcutaneous fat, the levator muscles and the anococcygeal ligament lying deep to the lumbosacral fascia are exposed. Transection of anococcygeal ligament allows mobilization of the coccyx. Coccyx can be transected to provide sufficient exposure for dissection, the gluteal muscle may be separated, and sacrectomy of S4-S5 can be achieved afterwards. Separation of the plane between the tumor and the mesorectum will be easy. The major disadvantages of posterior approach are injury to the lateral pelvic nerves and absence of control over pelvic

vessels. While comparing with anterior or combined procedures, probable hemorrhage can be lowered by posterior method[25]. If the lesion is benign, there should be an identifiable fat plane between the mesorectum and RT provided that there was no infection before. In case of cystic and/or small lesion, the surgeon can place the nondominant hand index finger with double-glove in the anal canal and lower rectum and then depress the tumor through the incision. Undesired injury to the rectal wall during the dissection can also be prevented with this manner. The posterior approach is embraced of different techniques such as transsphincteric, transsacral, transrectal, transanorectal, and transsacrococcygeal approaches. Every one of these techniques has its own losses and benefits and can be chosen based on the characteristics and site of the tumor and the surgeon's preferences.

Ruptured transrectal cysts and solid but well delineated lesions extending rectal muscular layer with suitable level should be subjected to this kind of surgical approach. A modification of this approach is intersphincteric resection of RT which starts with retrorectal space access *via* intersphincteric plane or a transvaginal incision, when the tumor is low enough and not in the midline, lying between vaginal wall and rectal muscularis layer. Anal sphincter damage confronts us during the above incisions but one can avoid the possibility of sacral nerve injury, postoperative urinary retention and unintentional rectal perforation with these cuttings.

Combined abdominosacral approach

This procedure is suitable for the tumor extending both vertical sides of the 4th sacral vertebra. Operation begins with the patient in modified lithotomy position and entering the retroperitoneal space through the areolar plane between the mesorectum and the presacral fascia, to gain access for dissection of the upper part of the lesion. While going down to the deep pelvis, identification of planes between the tumor and surrounding tissues will become more difficult, than patient may be repositioned in the jack-knife position for the perineal phase of the procedure. An incision is then made over the sacrum and coccyx through the anus, while being awake not to damage external sphincter. Division of anococcygeal ligament and retraction of levators can be done afterwards. The gluteus maximus muscles are then retracted away and the sacrospinous, sacrotuberous ligaments, and piriformis muscles are divided bilaterally to delineate the sciatic nerve. Any dural openings should be closed to prevent cerebrospinal fluid leakage or infection. One S3 nerve should be preserved to maintain proper fecal and urinary function. Colostomy should be matured if unilateral preservation of the S3 is not possible. In case of benign or have a low relapse probability, colonic continuation can be achieved with anastomosis but diverting ileostomy should be considered.

Major advantages of this approach appear when infection or inflammation cause disappearance of the dissection planes or exposure of the neighboring structures like rectum, ureters, iliac vessels as well as nerve roots are obligatory. This is a case in chordoma in which partial sacral excision extending above S-3 is necessary. Complete and one piece tumor excision with a hemisacrectomy can be accomplished after exposure of the sacrum through the posterior approach. Bone allograft, iliosacral screws, and Galveston type fixation are necessary for lumbopelvic stabilization as bony reconstruction after the end of tumor resection[26]. Transpelvic vertical rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap reduces wound complications[27]. In case of anterior sacral meningocele, reverse abdominoperineal approach is the operation of choice because the communications can easily be recognized by posterior approach, and then conveniently sutured at the anterior phase.

Nearby location of the RT to the rectum and the anal canal necessitate good bowel preparation before surgery. Ureteral catheter should be placed to feel and protect the ureters if indicated. Successful resection for highly vascular lesions or for reduction of blood loss during surgery can be facilitated with transcatheter arterial embolization of tumors. Beside of decreased blood loss and more clear surgical vision, possible elimination for the need of anterior approach, and R_0 resection of the sacral chordoma will be pleasing[28].

While planning the surgery, coccyx resection consideration is important. Routine resection of the coccyx this is mandatory if the coccyx is free of malignancy the histopathology is not clear. Local recurrence rate rise up to 25% to 56% if RT resection is not achieved with coccyx resection by transsacral approach[29].

Radical surgeries such as total sacrectomy in case of first sacral bone involvement has been tried out but structural and neurologic sequels are very high[20]. Postoperative neurogenic bladder rate up to 15% and fecal incontinence at a rate of 7% cause severe social life problems[21]. Immolation of sacral nerves bilaterally creates this problem in almost always every cases but unilateral sacrification can give a chance to preserve these functions well[30]. Normal continence and defecation can be protected not only with conservation of S-1 and S-2 bilaterally but also at least one S-3 nerve root is required to protect normal bowel and anorectal function[8]. Urinary and fecal incontinence and impotence in males are almost inevitable after sacrification of S2-S4 nerve roots at both side. Bilateral S2 root preservation leads to mild and reversible bladder sphincter dysfunction which responds to rehabilitative treatment in certain extend.

Laparoscopic approach is reported to be feasible and safe. Surgical trauma reduction, better visualization of the deep structures in the presacral space and less vascular and neurological injuries are benefits of laparoscopy[31]. There is a case of RT operated with the help of robotic device. Beside of the known benefits of

laparoscopy, such as pain, scar, hospital stay reduction, the greatest advantage of a robotic approach to the PS is improving surgical technique to allow retraction and handiness provided by the instruments in this confined area. Longer operative time and high cost are two potential disadvantages of the robotic technology expected to be overcome[32].

Demonstration of the efficacy of adjuvant treatment in rare and heterogeneous disease of RTs is difficult. Even though it has a minimal role in management of RTs, adjuvant chemoradiotherapies have been tried in some surgically unresectable lesions. Chordomas are the most aggressive and radiation resistant tumor at this location but high dose radiation therapy has been tried[33]. Radiation of the affected area with neutrons by high linear energy transfer therapy or charged particle carbon ion radiotherapy (CIRT) in inoperable and recurrent chordomas was able to show 54% local control rate[34]. After 3 years follow up, conventional radiotherapy and CIRT demonstrated 35% and 73% control rates respectively. Big radiosensitive tumors can be decreased in size and this can help to preserve vital elements of the pelvic region. Direct radiation to smaller field also decreases the patient morbidity[35]. However long-term response to this therapy is doubtful.

Inhibitor of epidermal growth factor receptor's tyrosine kinase domain, such as Imatinib, Cetuximab, gefitinib has been shown to be effective in the management of recurrent and metastatic chordoma[36,37]. Proceedings with Imatinib chemotherapy have helped to increase progression-free survival in advanced chordomas cases[22]. Some RTs such as Ewing sarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma, neurofibrosarcomas, and desmoid tumors necessitate neoadjuvant therapy.

PROGNOSIS

Patients with malignant RT have significantly worse perioperative and long-term complications when compared with the benign counterparts. Even the type of operation has no impact on the long-term complications, long term survival can be reduced 70% with proper oncologic resections[38]. Local recurrence rate increases from 28% to 64% if the tumor was violated during the surgery which brings to mind a well-known "no touch" subject in colorectal cancer surgery[39].

Overall survival for benign RTs was reported to be nearly 100% in most studies[8]. The recurrence rate was reported to be 0%-11.1% for benign and 47.6%-75% for malignant RTs[12,21]. In case series, the local recurrence rate was reported to be 6.7% to 11.11% for presacral lesions, 15% for developmental presacral cysts, 47.6% for malignant RTs, and 75% for chordoma[11,12].

One study demonstrating 15% recurrence rate for developmental cysts but it was soon understood that most of these relapses happened in patients with teratomas, than the frequency reduced once en bloc removal of the coccyx which frequently harbors neoplastic cells[21]. Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center demonstrated difficult local control with 48% local recurrence and 17% overall survival rates for malignant lesions[40]. More than 20% ten-year survival and 96% recurrence rates were talked about chordomas in early studies but outcomes have improved with improvements in surgical procedures and management strategies[41]. As reported more recently, 84% ten year survival rate with 44% recurrence rate were achieved[19]. A study including 400 cases of chordomas within the National Cancer Institute's Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Result program demonstrated that five and ten year survival rate for sacral chordomas were 74% and 32% respectively[18]. The most important point in determination of prognosis of chordoma is negative surgical margin. Unfortunately some authors have concluded that total excision of chordoma is nearly impossible and recurrence is inevitable[41].

It should be stressed once more that R_0 excision at the first operation is crucial because reexcision of recurrent RT is much more complicated and hopeless[11].

CONCLUSION

RTs can be classified as congenital, inflammatory, neurogenic, osseous, or miscellaneous and each of the above categories is subdivided as benign and malignant lesions. Common or nonspecific perianal, perineal or abdominal symptoms should be elicited with careful history. The most common presentation is an asymptomatic mass discovered on routine rectal examination. High index of suspicion in any patient coming with a posterior mass on digital rectal examination, or a post anal dimple, particularly in association with a fistula refractory to multiple operative interventions is essential. Tumors in this area can present diagnostic and therapeutic difficulty because RTs are located in surgically difficult anatomic location with different tissue types and etiologies. When tumor seeding, fecal fistula, meningitis, and abscess formation are brought to mind, biopsy of these lesions should be avoided to as much as possible. After appropriate diagnostic interventions, complete surgical resection remains the primary and only satisfactory treatment. There are three approaches commonly used for resection; abdominal, transsacral, or a combined abdominosacral approach. Coccyx should be excised en bloc only when involved with tumor or existence of doubtful malignant potential. R_0 resection at the first surgical intervention is the most important determinant of prognosis but it may be difficult to achieve for malignant and recurrent lesions.

REFERENCES

1 **Uhlig BE**, Johnson RL. Presacral tumors and cysts in adults. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1975; **18**: 581-589 [PMID: 1181162 DOI: 10.1007/

BF02587141]
2 **Singer MA**, Cintron JR, Martz JE, Schoetz DJ, Abcarian H. Retrorectal cyst: a rare tumor frequently misdiagnosed. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **196**: 880-886 [PMID: 12788424 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(03)00133-9]
3 **Kiderlen F**. Teratoid tumors of the sacral region from a clinical standpoint with presentation of pertinent cases. *Deutsch Z Chir* 1899; **52**: 87 [DOI: 10.1007/BF02794876]
4 **Barnes F**. Pelvic tumor obstructing labor. *Br Med J* 1885; **1**: 420-422
5 **Page F**. Large extraperitoneal dermoid cyst successfully removed through an incision across the perineum, midway between the anus and the coccyx. *Br Med J* 1891; **1**: 406-409
6 **Ballantine EN**. Sacrococcygeal tumours. Adenocarcinoma of a cystic congenital embryonal remnant. *Arch Pathol* 1931; **14**: 1-9
7 **Altman RP**, Randolph JG, Lilly JR. Sacrococcygeal teratoma: American Academy of Pediatrics Surgical Section Survey-1973. *J Pediatr Surg* 1974; **9**: 389-398 [PMID: 4843993 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3468(74)80297-6]
8 **Hobson KG**, Ghaemmaghami V, Roe JP, Goodnight JE, Khatri VP. Tumors of the retrorectal space. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1964-1974 [PMID: 15981068 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0122-9]
9 **Wolpert A**, Beer-Gabel M, Lifschitz O, Zbar AP. The management of presacral masses in the adult. *Tech Coloproctol* 2002; **6**: 43-49 [PMID: 12077641 DOI: 10.1007/s101510200008]
10 **Jao SW**, Beart RW, Spencer RJ, Reiman HM, Ilstrup DM. Retrorectal tumors. Mayo Clinic experience, 1960-1979. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1985; **28**: 644-652 [PMID: 2996861 DOI: 10.1007/BF02553440]
11 **Dozois EJ**, Jacofsky DJ, Dozois RR. Presacral tumors. In: Wolff BG, Fleshman JW, Beck DE, editors. The ASCRS Textbook of Colon and Rectal Surgery. New York: Springer, 2007: 501-514 [DOI: 10.1007/978-0-387-36374-5_36]
12 **Lev-Chelouche D**, Gutman M, Goldman G, Even-Sapir E, Meller I, Issakov J, Klausner JM, Rabau M. Presacral tumors: a practical classification and treatment of a unique and heterogeneous group of diseases. *Surgery* 2003; **133**: 473-478 [PMID: 12773974 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2003.118]
13 **Stewart RJ**, Humphreys WG, Parks TG. The presentation and management of presacral tumours. *Br J Surg* 1986; **73**: 153-155 [PMID: 3947908 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800730227]
14 **Cheng EY**, Ozerdemoglu RA, Transfeldt EE, Thompson RC. Lumbosacral chordoma. Prognostic factors and treatment. *Spine* (Phila Pa 1976) 1999; **24**: 1639-1645 [PMID: 10472097 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-199908150-00004]
15 **Ludwig KA**, Reynolds HL. Retrorectal tumors. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg* 2002; **15**: 285-293 [DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-36511]
16 **Killen DA**, Jackson LM. Sacrococcygeal teratoma in the adult. *Arch Surg* 1964; **88**: 425-433 [PMID: 14088272 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1964.01310210099017]
17 **Gordon PH**. Retrorectal tumors. In: Gordon PH, Nivatvongs S, editors. Principles and Practice of Surgery for the Colon, Rectum and Anus. St. Louis, MO: Quality Medical Publishing, 1999: 427-445
18 **McMaster ML**, Goldstein AM, Bromley CM, Ishibe N, Parry DM. Chordoma: incidence and survival patterns in the United States, 1973-1995. *Cancer Causes Control* 2001; **12**: 1-11 [PMID: 11227920 DOI: 10.1023/A:1008947301735]
19 **Bergh P**, Kindblom LG, Gunterberg B, Remotti F, Ryd W, Meis-Kindblom JM. Prognostic factors in chordoma of the sacrum and mobile spine: a study of 39 patients. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 2122-2134 [PMID: 10813725 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(20000501)88:9<2122::AID-CNCR19>3.0.CO;2-1]
20 **Losanoff JE**, Sauter ER. Retrorectal cysts. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **197**: 879-880 [PMID: 14585432 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(03)00753-1]
21 **Böhm B**, Milsom JW, Fazio VW, Lavery IC, Church JM, Oakley JR. Our approach to the management of congenital presacral tumors in adults. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1993; **8**: 134-138 [PMID: 8245668 DOI: 10.1007/BF00341185]
22 **Neale JA**. Retrorectal tumors. *Clin Colon Rectal Surg* 2011; **24**: 149-160 [PMID: 22942797 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1285999]
23 **Merchea A**, Larson DW, Hubner M, Wenger DE, Rose PS, Dozois EJ. The value of preoperative biopsy in the management of solid presacral tumors. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 756-760 [PMID: 23652750 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e3182788c77]
24 **Braley SC**, Schneider PD, Bold RJ, Goodnight JE, Khatri VP. Controlled tamponade of severe presacral venous hemorrhage: use of a breast implant sizer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 140-142 [PMID: 11786781 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6130-3]
25 **Buchs N**, Taylor S, Roche B. The posterior approach for low retrorectal tumors in adults. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2007; **22**: 381-385 [PMID: 16909248 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-006-0183-9]
26 **Althausen PL**, Schneider PD, Bold RJ, Gupta MC, Goodnight JE, Khatri VP. Multimodality management of a giant cell tumor arising in the proximal sacrum: case report. *Spine* (Phila Pa 1976) 2002; **27**: E361-E365 [PMID: 12163737 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-200208010-00020]
27 **Miles WK**, Chang DW, Kroll SS, Miller MJ, Langstein HN, Reece GP, Evans GR, Robb GL. Reconstruction of large sacral defects following total sacrectomy. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2000; **105**: 2387-2394 [PMID: 10845291 DOI: 10.1097/00006534-200006000-00012]
28 **Dozois EJ**, Malireddy KK, Bower TC, Stanson AW, Sim FH. Management of a retrorectal lipomatous hemangiopericytoma by preoperative vascular embolization and a multidisciplinary surgical team: report of a case. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 1017-1020 [PMID: 19502873 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e318199dc31]
29 **Koh CC**, Wang NL. An unusual neurogenic cystic tumor. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2002; **18**: 743-745 [PMID: 12598980]
30 **Gunterberg B**. Effects of major resection of the sacrum. *Acta Orthop Scand* 1976; **162**: 9-38
31 **Nedelcu M**, Andreica A, Skalli M, Pirlet I, Guillon F, Nocca D, Fabre JM. Laparoscopic approach for retrorectal tumors. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 4177-4183 [PMID: 23728916 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3017-1]
32 **Agorastos S**, Alex A, Feldman J, Kuncewitch M, Deutsch G, Siskind E, Nicastro J, Coppa GF, Conte C, Beg M, Kadison A, Ricci J, Wang JHY, Zaidi R, O'Connor L, Nimaroff M, Molmenti EP, Sullivan JD. Robotic resection of retrorectal tumor: an alternative to the Kraske procedure. *Journal of Solid Tumors* 2013; **3**: 13-16 [DOI: 10.5430/jst.v3n4p13]
33 **Amendola BE**, Amendola MA, Oliver E, McClatchey KD. Chordoma: role of radiation therapy. *Radiology* 1986; **158**: 839-843 [PMID: 3945761 DOI: 10.1148/radiology.158.3.3945761]
34 **Breteau N**, Demasure M, Favre A, Leloup R, Lescrainier J, Sabattier R. Fast neutron therapy for inoperable or recurrent sacrococcygeal chordomas. *Bull Cancer Radiother* 1996; **83** Suppl: 142s-145s [PMID: 8949767 DOI: 10.1016/0924-4212(96)84900-0]
35 **Zhang H**, Yoshikawa K, Tamura K, Sagou K, Tian M, Suhara T, Kandatsu S, Suzuki K, Tanada S, Tsujii H. Carbon-11-methionine positron emission tomography imaging of chordoma. *Skeletal Radiol* 2004; **33**: 524-530 [PMID: 15483754 DOI: 10.1007/s00256-004-0815-5]
36 **Casali PG**, Messina A, Stacchiotti S, Tamborini E, Crippa F, Gronchi A, Orlandi R, Ripamonti C, Spreafico C, Bertieri R, Bertulli R, Colecchia M, Fumagalli E, Greco A, Grosso F, Olmi P, Pierotti MA, Pilotti S. Imatinib mesylate in chordoma. *Cancer* 2004; **101**: 2086-2097 [PMID: 15372471 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.20618]
37 **Hof H**, Welzel T, Debus J. Effectiveness of cetuximab/gefitinib in the therapy of a sacral chordoma. *Onkologie* 2006; **29**: 572-574 [PMID: 17202828 DOI: 10.1159/000096283]
38 **Casali PG**, Stacchiotti S, Sangalli C, Olmi P, Gronchi A. Chordoma. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2007; **19**: 367-370 [PMID: 17545801 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e3281214448]
39 **Kaiser TE**, Pritchard DJ, Unni KK. Clinicopathologic study of sacrococcygeal chordoma. *Cancer* 1984; **53**: 2574-2578 [PMID: 6713355 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19840601)53:11<2574:AID-CNCR2820531136>3.0.CO;2-5]
40 **Cody HS**, Marcove RC, Quan SH. Malignant retrorectal tumors: 28 years' experience at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1981; **24**: 501-506 [PMID: 7297357 DOI:

10.1007/BF02604308]
41 **Gray SW**, Singhabhandhu B, Smith RA, Skandalakis JE. Sacrococcygeal chordoma: Report of a case and review of the literature. *Surgery* 1975; **78**: 573-582 [PMID: 1188599]
42 **Nicholls J**, Dozios RR. Surgery of the colon and rectum. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1997

P- Reviewer: Baba H, Morioka D, Parsak C
S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.137

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 137-141
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Laparoscopic liver resection for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma

Norihiko Kawabe, Zenichi Morise, Hirokazu Tomishige, Hidetoshi Nagata, Jin Kawase, Satoshi Arakawa, Masashi Isetani

Norihiko Kawabe, Zenichi Morise, Hirokazu Tomishige, Hidetoshi Nagata, Jin Kawase, Satoshi Arakawa, Masashi Isetani, Department of Surgery, Fujita Health University School of Medicine, Banbuntane Houtokukai Hospital, Aichi, Nagoya 454-8509, Japan

Author contributions: Kawabe N and Morise Z wrote the manuscript; Tomishige H, Nagata H, Kawase J, Arakawa S and Isetani M collected the data and assisted in writing the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest: There is no conflict of interest that is related to this work.

Correspondence to: Zenichi Morise, MD, PhD, FACS, Department of Surgery, Fujita Health University School of Medicine, Banbuntane Houtokukai Hospital, 3-6-10 Otobashi Nakagawa-ku, Aichi, Nagoya 454-8509, Japan. zmorise@fujita-hu.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-52-3235680
Fax: +81-52-3234502

Received: September 27, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: December 17, 2014
Revised: December 29, 2014
Accepted: January 15, 2015
Article in press: January 19, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Accumulation of experiences and technological advances after the first report of laparoscopic liver resection (LLR) are now revealing the characteristics and specific advantages of this approach, especially for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients with chronic liver diseases (CLD). In laparoscopic approach, there are minimum needs for: (1) laparotomy and dissection of the attachments and adhesion which may cause destructions in the collateral blood and lymphatic flows; and (2) compression of the liver which may cause parenchymal damage for the liver resection (LR). These are especially beneficial for the patients with CLD. LLR results in minimal postoperative ascites and the other complications, which could potentially lead to lowering the risk of fatal liver failure. These characteristics of LLR facilitate surgical treatment application to the patients of HCC with background CLD. Laparoscopic approach also results in improved vision and manipulation in a small operative field under several conditions, including the cases where it is necessary to perform repeat LR between adhesions. These characteristics make LLR safer and more accessible to the repeat treatment, such as multicentric and metachronous lesions in the cirrhotic liver. These advantages of LLR indicate it is a superior method than open LR under certain conditions in patients of HCC with background CLD.

Key words: Laparoscopic hepatectomy; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Liver cirrhosis; Chronic liver disease; Liver tumor; Liver resection; Repeat hepatectomy; Bridging therapy to transplantation; Ascites; Postoperative liver failure

Core tip: In laparoscopic approach, there are minimum needs for: (1) laparotomy and dissection of the attachments/adhesion which may cause destructions in the collateral blood/lymphatic flows; and (2) compression of the liver which may cause parenchymal damage for liver resection (LR). Therefore, laparoscopic LR (LLR) results in minimal postoperative ascites and following fatal complications in the patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic liver disease. Laparoscopic

approach also results in improved vision and manipulation in a small operative field in the case of repeat LR between adhesions. These characteristics make LLR safer and more accessible to the repeat treatment, such as multicentric/metachronous lesions in cirrhotic liver.

Kawabe N, Morise Z, Tomishige H, Nagata H, Kawase J, Arakawa S, Isetani M. Laparoscopic liver resection for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 137-141 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/137.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.137

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the fifth most common cancer and the third most common cause of cancer-related deaths[1,2]. Treatment options for HCC include liver resection (LR)[3], liver transplantation[4], transarterial chemoembolization (TACE), and local ablation therapy[5]. Most experts think LR and liver transplantation are the best hopes for cure. However, patients with HCC usually have underlying chronic liver disease (CLD), and hence are at high risk of developing significant postoperative complications and also multicentric/metachronous lesions. Although liver transplantation should be considered in patients with deteriorating liver function according to the Milan criteria[6], LR should be considered as a primary therapy in patients with well-preserved liver function[7,8]. When considering the treatment of HCC in patients with CLD, the degree of invasive surgical stress[9], especially to the background liver, should be considered in addition to the oncological effects. Patients with CLD have high rates of morbidity and mortality at surgery[10], which increase according to Child-Pugh class of the patients[11]. Even limited open LR often develops refractory ascites, which leads to fatal liver failure in severe CLD patients[12,13].

In Japan, criteria is based on three parameters for selecting patient eligibility for LR: (1) the presence or absence of ascites; (2) total serum bilirubin level; and (3) indocyanine green retention rate at 15 min (ICG R15)[14]. Although there are other treatment options for HCC, local ablation therapy and TACE, depending on the tumor condition and the liver function, a large number of patients with severe CLD are still not able to undergo those treatment modalities. This is especially true in the condition of patients that need repeat treatments for multicentric metachronous lesions occurring in chronic impaired liver. For those patients, "less invasive" laparoscopic LR (LLR) may provide a good option.

Since the first successful report of laparoscopic liver wedge resection in 1992[15], LLR is thought to be a "less invasive" procedure than open LR (OLR)[16]. In a comprehensive meta-analysis study, LLR was compared to OLR in 1678 patients across 26 studies. While it is associated with longer operating times and no differences in oncological outcomes, it is advantageous in several aspects, such as reduced amount of bleeding, decreased time of application of Pringle's maneuver, decreases in morbidity rate, and shorter hospital stay[17]. Recent technological development of devices and accumulation of experiences have facilitated the expansion of LLR indication[18,19]. In addition to common advantages of laparoscopic surgery[20], accumulation of experiences is now revealing specific advantages of LLR, especially for HCC and CLD patients.

The characteristics and advantages of LLR for HCC patients are discussed in this review.

LLR FOR HCC PATIENTS: AN OVERVIEW

LLR may be particularly advantageous for cirrhotic patients, given the potential for lower levels of parietal and hepatic injury, which leads to the preservation of venous/lymphatic collateral circulation. Several studies have shown the safety and feasibility and its short-term benefits of LLR for HCC patients[21-28]. To date, several studies[29-33], in which the groups of laparoscopic and open LR in comparison had comparable background liver condition, have investigated the major differences between the groups (Table 1)[29,34-41]. Favorable short-term results, including fewer incidences of ascites and liver failure, and shorter hospital stays, correlate with the laparoscopic procedure without the compromise of overall survival (Table 1). In addition to usual advantages of laparoscopic surgery, LLR has the advantage of minimal ascites, due to lower damage on venous/lymphatic collateral circulation, which leads to lower risk of fatal liver failure. This feature of LLR could be one of the most remarkable specific advantage.

When patients undergo LR, they are exposed three types of stresses: (1) general, whole-body surgical stress; (2) reduced liver function due to resected liver volume; and (3) surgery-induced injury to the environment around the liver caused by laparotomy and mobilization of the liver and to the liver parenchyma caused by compression of the liver. Reduction of the third injury with LLR lowers the risk of fatal complications for patients with severe CLD.

We also experienced that HCC patients with severe CLD (Child-Pugh class B/C and ICG R15 of $\geqslant$ 40%) who underwent LLR had favorable and comparable perioperative outcomes to patients with mild/moderate CLD[42]. As of June 2014, 53 patients with HCC and CLD underwent LLR in our hospital. Nine out of 53 patients had severe CLD (Child-Pugh class B/C and ICG R15 of $\geqslant$ 40%). These nine and 41 patients (Child-Pugh class A and ICG R15 of 10.1%-27.4%; three patients were excluded from analysis because of concomitant combined surgery) were compared in short-tem outcomes. The results, such as operative bleeding, day of oral intake restored, postoperative drain discharge, morbidity and mortality, were comparable in the groups. Among these nine patients, one underwent living-related liver transplantation 20 mo after hepatectomy.

This extensive review of the literature in combination

Table 1 Recent reports of laparoscopic and open liver resction comparative studies for hepatocellular carcinoma

Ref.	% of LC patients		Ascites		Liver failure		Hospital stay (d, mean ± SD)		Mortality		Overall survival (5-yr, %)	
	LLR	OLR	LLR	OLR	LLR	OLR	LLR	OLR	LLR	OLR	LLR	OLR
Lai *et al*[34]	92	93.94	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	0/25	1/33	60 (3-yr)	NA
Aldrighetti *et al*[35]	56.25	56.25	0/16	1/6	NA	NA	6.3 ± 1.7	9 ± 3.8	0/16	0/16	(No significant difference)	
Tranchart *et al*[36]	73.81	80.95	3/42	11/42	0/36	4/53	6.7 ± 5.9	9.6 ± 3.4	1/42	1/42	59.5	47.4
Kim *et al*[37]	92.31	86.21	0/26	1/29	NA	NA	11.08 ± 4.96	16.1 ± 10.7	0/26	0/29	84.6 (2-yr RFS)	82.8 (2-yr RFS)
Lee *et al*[38]	84.85	64	0/33	2/50	NA	NA	NA	NA	0/33	0/50	76	76.1
Truant *et al*[39]	100	100	5/36	12/53	NA	NA	6.5 ± 2.7	9.5 ± 4.8	0/36	4/53	70	46
Ker *et al*[29]	NA	NA	2/116	26/208	NA	NA	6.2 ± 3	12.4 ± 6.8	0/116	6/208	62.2	71.8
Kanazawa *et al*[40]	100	100	3/28	18/28	0/28	0/28	10 (6-25)[1]	19 (8-49)[1]	0/28	0/28	NA	NA
Cheung *et al*[41]	87.5	71.9	0/32	1/64	NA	NA	4 (2-16)[1]	7 (4-42)[1]	2/32	12/64	76.6	57

[1]Median (range). LC: Liver cirrhosis; NA: Not available; RFS: Recurrence free survival; LLR: Laparoscopic liver resection; OLR: Open liver resection.

Table 2 Advantages and disadvantages of laparoscopic liver resection in technical aspects

Advantages
Good view and manipulation in a small operative field-minimum damages on the environment around the liver
Meticulous manipulation under magnified view
Less adhesion after surgery
Good view in the dorsal area of the liver around inferior vena cava
Dissection and handling organs/tumors using postural change and the gravity with the maintenance of similar view by the laparoscopic adjustments[43,44]
Less venous bleeding under the pneumo-peritoneal pressure
Disadvantages
Restrictions on the movements of forceps
Difficulties of handling large-sized/volume organs and tumors
These should be conquered with port arrangements and dissection and handling organs/tumors using postural change and the gravity
Lack of tactile sensation
Lack of overview of whole operative field
These easily lead to disorientation during surgery and should be conquered with preoperative (MDCT) simulation plus intraoperative US navigation

MDCT: Multidetector computed tomography; US: Ultrasonography.

with our experiences indicates that LLR is the better therapeutic option for severe CLD patients with tumors on the surface of the liver, especially after repeat treatments. LLR for severe CLD patients may also prove to be an advantageous option in bridging therapy to liver transplantation.

LLR FOR HCC PATIENTS: ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES IN TECHNICAL ASPECTS

At the introduction of LLR in 1997, we selected the patients who could undergo adequate oncological LLR for cancers. The indication of LLR had been gradually extended from liver surface partial resection to large anatomical resection (right/left hepatectomy and posterior/anterior/median sectionectomy). The inclusion criteria are now a tumor size less than 15 cm without severe adhesion, invasion to major vessels, or a need for reconstruction of vessels or biliary tract.

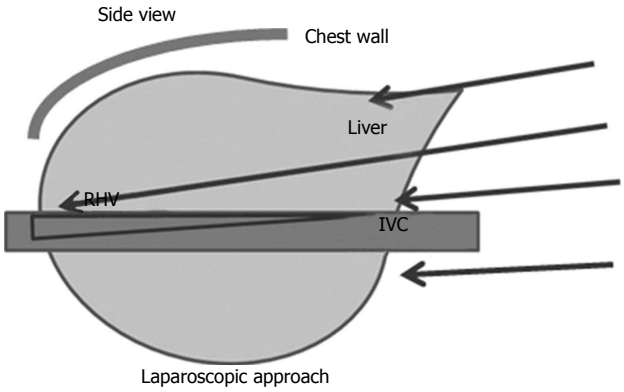


Figure 1 The subphrenic space is the cage with the liver inside. In the laparoscopic approach of hepatectomy, a laparoscope and forceps are entering into the cage directly from caudal direction and obtain a good vision and manipulation in the small operative field for resection. IVC: Peri-inferior vena cava; RHV: Right hepatic vein.

As of June 2014, we have performed 53 of LLR for HCC and CLD patients, including 17 cases of anatomical resections and 9 cases of repeat hepatectomy (including 1 patient of 4th laparoscopic hepatectomy). There was no operative-mortality and the rate of morbidity (Clavien-Dindo Grade Ⅱ or above) was 17.0%. Tumor numbers are 1-4 and sizes are 0.8-14.5 cm. The median of their operating time and blood loss was 315 min and 100 mL. From these and the other experiences, we propose advantages and disadvantages of LLR in technical aspects, listed in Table 2.

The subphrenic space is the cage with the liver inside. In the laparoscopic approach of LR, a laparoscope and forceps are entering into the cage directly from caudal direction and obtain a good vision/manipulation for resection in the small field (Figure 1). On the other hand in open approach, the cage is opened with the big subcostal incision and the liver is picked up with the dissection of retroperitoneal attachments before resection. Therefore, in the laparoscopic approach, there are minimum needs for: (1) dissection of the attachments/adhesions which may cause destructions of the collateral blood and lymphatic flows; and (2) compression of the liver which may cause parenchymal damage, in addition to the minimum abdominal wall

incision. These characteristics lead to two advantages especially beneficial for HCC patients with CLD: (1) Advantageous for repeat procedures: Repeat LLR for patients with CLD and repeat lesions was feasible and safe. The procedure resulted in less adhesion and good vision/manipulation in the small area between adhesions; and (2) Minimal invasion due to good vision and manipulation in small operative fields (a minimum need for extended dissection of attachments and adhesions): With adequate port arrangement and positioning of patients[41,42], the manipulation in the small operative field is facilitated by good vision of the peri-inferior vena cava area, subphrenic space, the area next to the attachment of retro-peritoneum, and the area between the adhesions. Therefore, there is a minimum need for dissection/adhesiolysis that could cause destructions of the collateral blood and lymphatic flows.

CONCLUSION

There are minimum needs in laparoscopic approach for: (1) laparotomy and dissection of the attachments/adhesion which may cause destructions in the collateral blood/lymphatic flows; and (2) compression of the liver which may cause parenchymal damage in laparoscopic approach. These are especially beneficial for CLD patients. LLR results in minimal postoperative ascites, which could potentially lead to lower risk of fatal complications. These characteristics of LLR facilitate the surgical treatments for HCC/CLD patients.

LLR also results in improved vision and manipulation in a small operative field under several conditions, including the cases where it is necessary to perform repeat hepatectomy between adhesions, such as multicentric/metachronous lesions in the cirrhotic liver. These characteristics could make LLR a safer and more accessible approach for patients with repeat treatments.

These advantages of LLR indicate it is a superior method when compared to OLR under certain conditions in patients with HCC and CLD.

REFERENCES

1 **El-Serag HB**, Rudolph KL. Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology and molecular carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2557-2576 [PMID: 17570226 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.061]

2 **Schütte K**, Bornschein J, Malfertheiner P. Hepatocellular carcinoma--epidemiological trends and risk factors. *Dig Dis* 2009; **27**: 80-92 [PMID: 19546545 DOI: 10.1159/000218339]

3 **Capussotti L**, Ferrero A, Viganò L, Polastri R, Tabone M. Liver resection for HCC with cirrhosis: surgical perspectives out of EASL/AASLD guidelines. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 11-15 [PMID: 17689043 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2007.06.005]

4 **Hwang S**, Lee SG, Belghiti J. Liver transplantation for HCC: its role: Eastern and Western perspectives. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2010; **17**: 443-448 [PMID: 19885638 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0241-0]

5 **Lau WY**, Leung TW, Yu SC, Ho SK. Percutaneous local ablative therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma: a review and look into the future. *Ann Surg* 2003; **237**: 171-179 [PMID: 12560774 DOI: 10.1097/01.SLA.0000048443.71734.BF]

6 **Mazzaferro V**, Regalia E, Doci R, Andreola S, Pulvirenti A, Bozzetti F, Montalto F, Ammatuna M, Morabito A, Gennari L. Liver transplantation for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 1996; **334**: 693-699 [PMID: 8594428]

7 **Ryder SD**. Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in adults. *Gut* 2003; **52** Suppl 3: iii1-iii8 [PMID: 12692148 DOI: 10.1136/gut.52.suppl_3.iii1]

8 **Cha CH**, Ruo L, Fong Y, Jarnagin WR, Shia J, Blumgart LH, DeMatteo RP. Resection of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients otherwise eligible for transplantation. *Ann Surg* 2003; **238**: 315-321; discussion 321-323 [PMID: 14501497]

9 **Hoeper MM**, Krowka MJ, Strassburg CP. Portopulmonary hypertension and hepatopulmonary syndrome. *Lancet* 2004; **363**: 1461-1468 [PMID: 15121411 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)16107-2]

10 **Ziser A**, Plevak DJ, Wiesner RH, Rakela J, Offord KP, Brown DL. Morbidity and mortality in cirrhotic patients undergoing anesthesia and surgery. *Anesthesiology* 1999; **90**: 42-53 [PMID: 9915311 DOI: 10.1097/00000542-199901000-00008]

11 **Mansour A**, Watson W, Shayani V, Pickleman J. Abdominal operations in patients with cirrhosis: still a major surgical challenge. *Surgery* 1997; **122**: 730-735; discussion 735-736 [PMID: 9347849 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(97)90080-5]

12 **Belghiti J**, Hiramatsu K, Benoist S, Massault P, Sauvanet A, Farges O. Seven hundred forty-seven hepatectomies in the 1990s: an update to evaluate the actual risk of liver resection. *J Am Coll Surg* 2000; **191**: 38-46 [PMID: 10898182 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(00)00261-1]

13 **Lai EC**, Fan ST, Lo CM, Chu KM, Liu CL, Wong J. Hepatic resection for hepatocellular carcinoma. An audit of 343 patients. *Ann Surg* 1995; **221**: 291-298 [PMID: 7717783 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199503000-00012]

14 **Torzilli G**, Makuuchi M, Inoue K, Takayama T, Sakamoto Y, Sugawara Y, Kubota K, Zucchi A. No-mortality liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic and noncirrhotic patients: is there a way? A prospective analysis of our approach. *Arch Surg* 1999; **134**: 984-992 [PMID: 10487594 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.134.9.984]

15 **Gagner M**, Rheault M, Dubuc J. Laparoscopic partial hepatectomy for liver tumor. *Surg Endosc* 1992; **6**: 97-98

16 **Kaneko H**, Tsuchiya M, Otsuka Y, Yajima S, Minagawa T, Watanabe M, Tamura A. Laparoscopic hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic patients. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2009; **16**: 433-438 [PMID: 19458892 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0123-5]

17 **Mirnezami R**, Mirnezami AH, Chandrakumaran K, Abu Hilal M, Pearce NW, Primrose JN, Sutcliffe RP. Short- and long-term outcomes after laparoscopic and open hepatic resection: systematic review and meta-analysis. *HPB* (Oxford) 2011; **13**: 295-308 [PMID: 21492329]

18 **Buell JF**, Cherqui D, Geller DA, O'Rourke N, Iannitti D, Dagher I, Koffron AJ, Thomas M, Gayet B, Han HS, Wakabayashi G, Belli G, Kaneko H, Ker CG, Scatton O, Laurent A, Abdalla EK, Chaudhury P, Dutson E, Gamblin C, D'Angelica M, Nagorney D, Testa G, Labow D, Manas D, Poon RT, Nelson H, Martin R, Clary B, Pinson WC, Martinie J, Vauthey JN, Goldstein R, Roayaie S, Barlet D, Espat J, Abecassis M, Rees M, Fong Y, McMasters KM, Broelsch C, Busuttil R, Belghiti J, Strasberg S, Chari RS. The international position on laparoscopic liver surgery: The Louisville Statement, 2008. *Ann Surg* 2009; **250**: 825-830 [PMID: 19916210 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181b3b2d8]

19 **Tsuchiya M**, Otsuka Y, Tamura A, Nitta H, Sasaki A, Wakabayashi G, Kaneko H. Status of endoscopic liver surgery in Japan: a questionnaire survey conducted by the Japanese Endoscopic Liver Surgery Study Group. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2009; **16**: 405-409 [PMID: 19458895 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0119-1]

20 **Viganò L**, Tayar C, Laurent A, Cherqui D. Laparoscopic liver resection: a systematic review. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2009; **16**: 410-421 [PMID: 19495556 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0120-8]

21 **Morise Z**. Pure laparoscopic hepatectomy for HCC patients. In: Lau WY. Hepatocellular Carcinoma - Clinical Research. Zagreb, Croatia: InTech, 2012: 183-196 [DOI: 10.5772/27568]

22 **Chen HY**, Juan CC, Ker CG. Laparoscopic liver surgery for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 800-806 [PMID: 18165879 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9749-1]

23 **Dagher I**, Lainas P, Carloni A, Caillard C, Champault A, Smadja C, Franco D. Laparoscopic liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 372-378 [PMID: 17704878 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-007-9487-2]

24 **Kaneko H**, Takagi S, Otsuka Y, Tsuchiya M, Tamura A, Katagiri T, Maeda T, Shiba T. Laparoscopic liver resection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Surg* 2005; **189**: 190-194 [PMID: 15720988 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2004.09.010]

25 **Cherqui D**, Laurent A, Tayar C, Chang S, Van Nhieu JT, Loriau J, Karoui M, Duvoux C, Dhumeaux D, Fagniez PL. Laparoscopic liver resection for peripheral hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic liver disease: midterm results and perspectives. *Ann Surg* 2006; **243**: 499-506 [PMID: 16552201 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000206017.29651.99]

26 **Shimada M**, Hashizume M, Maehara S, Tsujita E, Rikimaru T, Yamashita Y, Tanaka S, Adachi E, Sugimachi K. Laparoscopic hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Surg Endosc* 2001; **15**: 541-544 [PMID: 11591936 DOI: 10.1007/s004640080099]

27 **Sarpel U**, Hefti MM, Wisnievsky JP, Roayaie S, Schwartz ME, Labow DM. Outcome for patients treated with laparoscopic versus open resection of hepatocellular carcinoma: case-matched analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 1572-1577 [PMID: 19259738 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0414-8]

28 **Hu BS**, Chen K, Tan HM, Ding XM, Tan JW. Comparison of laparoscopic vs open liver lobectomy (segmentectomy) for hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 4725-4728 [PMID: 22180716 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i42.4725]

29 **Ker CG**, Chen JS, Kuo KK, Chuang SC, Wang SJ, Chang WC, Lee KT, Chen HY, Juan CC. Liver Surgery for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Laparoscopic versus Open Approach. *Int J Hepatol* 2011; **2011**: 596792 [PMID: 21994865]

30 **Endo Y**, Ohta M, Sasaki A, Kai S, Eguchi H, Iwaki K, Shibata K, Kitano S. A comparative study of the long-term outcomes after laparoscopy-assisted and open left lateral hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2009; **19**: e171-e174 [PMID: 19851245 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.0b013e3181bc4091]

31 **Nguyen KT**, Marsh JW, Tsung A, Steel JJ, Gamblin TC, Geller DA. Comparative benefits of laparoscopic vs open hepatic resection: a critical appraisal. *Arch Surg* 2011; **146**: 348-356 [PMID: 21079109 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2010.248]

32 **Laurent A**, Cherqui D, Lesurtel M, Brunetti F, Tayar C, Fagniez PL. Laparoscopic liver resection for subcapsular hepatocellular carcinoma complicating chronic liver disease. *Arch Surg* 2003; **138**: 763-769; discussion 769 [PMID: 12860758 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.138.7.763]

33 **Belli G**, Fantini C, D'Agostino A, Cioffi L, Langella S, Russolillo N, Belli A. Laparoscopic versus open liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with histologically proven cirrhosis: short- and middle-term results. *Surg Endosc* 2007; **21**: 2004-2011 [PMID: 17705086 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-007-9503-6]

34 **Lai EC**, Tang CN, Ha JP, Li MK. Laparoscopic liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma: ten-year experience in a single center. *Arch Surg* 2009; **144**: 143-147; discussion 148 [PMID: 19221325 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2008.536]

35 **Aldrighetti L**, Guzzetti E, Pulitanò C, Cipriani F, Catena M, Paganelli M, Ferla G. Case-matched analysis of totally laparoscopic versus open liver resection for HCC: short and middle term results. *J Surg Oncol* 2010; **102**: 82-86 [PMID: 20578084 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21541]

36 **Tranchart H**, Di Giuro G, Lainas P, Roudie J, Agostini H, Franco D, Dagher I. Laparoscopic resection for hepatocellular carcinoma: a matched-pair comparative study. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 1170-1176 [PMID: 19915908 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0745-3]

37 **Kim HH**, Park EK, Seoung JS, Hur YH, Koh YS, Kim JC, Cho CK, Kim HJ. Liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma: case-matched analysis of laparoscopic versus open resection. *J Korean Surg Soc* 2011; **80**: 412-419 [PMID: 22066068 DOI: 10.4174/jkss.2011.80.6.412]

38 **Lee KF**, Chong CN, Wong J, Cheung YS, Wong J, Lai P. Long-term results of laparoscopic hepatectomy versus open hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma: a case-matched analysis. *World J Surg* 2011; **35**: 2268-2274 [PMID: 21842300 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-011-1212-6]

39 **Truant S**, Bouras AF, Hebbar M, Boleslawski E, Fromont G, Dharancy S, Leteurtre E, Zerbib P, Pruvot FR. Laparoscopic resection vs open liver resection for peripheral hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic liver disease: a case-matched study. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 3668-3677 [PMID: 21688080 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1775-1]

40 **Kanazawa A**, Tsukamoto T, Shimizu S, Kodai S, Yamazoe S, Yamamoto S, Kubo S. Impact of laparoscopic liver resection for hepatocellular carcinoma with F4-liver cirrhosis. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 2592-2597 [PMID: 23392977 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-2795-9]

41 **Cheung TT**, Poon RT, Yuen WK, Chok KS, Jenkins CR, Chan SC, Fan ST, Lo CM. Long-term survival analysis of pure laparoscopic versus open hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: a single-center experience. *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 506-511 [PMID: 23299521 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31827b947a]

42 **Morise Z**, Sugioka A, Kawabe N, Umemoto S, Nagata H, Ohshima H, Kawase J, Arakawa S, Yoshida R. Pure laparoscopic hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma patients with severe liver cirrhosis. *Asian J Endosc Surg* 2011; **4**: 143-146 [PMID: 22776279 DOI: 10.1111/j.1758-5910.2011.00081.x]

43 **Tomishige H**, Morise Z, Kawabe N, Nagata H, Ohshima H, Kawase J, Arakawa S, Yoshida R, Isetani M. Caudal approach to pure laparoscopic posterior sectionectomy under the laparoscopy-specific view. *World J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **5**: 173-177 [PMID: 23977419]

44 **Ikeda T**, Yonemura Y, Ueda N, Kabashima A, Shirabe K, Taketomi A, Yoshizumi T, Uchiyama H, Harada N, Ijichi H, Kakeji Y, Morita M, Tsujitani S, Maehara Y. Pure laparoscopic right hepatectomy in the semi-prone position using the intrahepatic Glissonian approach and a modified hanging maneuver to minimize intraoperative bleeding. *Surg Today* 2011; **41**: 1592-1598 [PMID: 21969190 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-010-4479-6]

P- Reviewer: Pan Q **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.142

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 142-146
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Robotic surgery *vs* conventional laparoscopy for the treatment of rectal cancer: Review of the literature

Antonio Privitera, Amro Salem, Khalil Elgendy, Khalid Sabr

Antonio Privitera, Amro Salem, Khalil Elgendy, Khalid Sabr, Colorectal Surgery Unit, Department of Surgery, King Fahad Specialist Hospital, Al Muraikabat, Dammam 32253-3202, Saudi Arabia

Author contributions: Privitera A studied design and paper writing; Salem A contributed to data collection; Elgendy K performed the data analysis; Sabr K conducted study coordination and revision.

Conflict-of-interest: None.

Correspondence to: Dr. Antonio Privitera, Consultant Colorectal Surgeon, Colorectal Surgery Unit, Department of Surgery, King Fahad Specialist Hospital, 6830 Ammar Bin Thabit St, Al Muraikabat, Dammam 32253-3202, Saudi Arabia. privitera@hotmail.com
Telephone: +966-13-8431111
Fax: +966-13-8414809

Received: November 28, 2014
Peer-review started: November 29, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: January 23, 2015
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

Laparoscopic surgery has established itself as a safe and effective alternative to open surgery for the treatment of colorectal cancer. However, laparoscopic resection of rectal cancer, and in particular of the lower rectum, remains challenging in view of the limitations of operating in the confined pelvic space, limited movement of instruments with fixed tips, assistant-dependant two-dimensional view, easy camera fogging, and poor ergonomics. The introduction of robotic surgery and its application in particular to pelvic surgery, has potentially resolved many of these issues. To define the role of robotic surgery in total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer, a review of the current literature was performed using PubMed, Embase, Cochrane Library, and Google databases, identifying clinical trials comparing short-term outcomes of conventional laparoscopic total mesorectal excision with the robotic approach. Robotic surgery for rectal cancer is a safe alternative to conventional laparoscopy. However, randomised trials are needed to clearly establish its role.

Key words: Rectal cancer; Total mesorectal excision; Laparoscopic surgery; Robotic surgery

Core tip: Robotic surgery for rectal cancer is a promising approach since it allows a better view of the pelvic cavity and enhanced freedom of instrument movements when compared to conventional laparoscopy. This would potentially translate into a better oncological dissection, and reduced risk of injury to neurovascular structures. This review of the literature shows that no definite conclusion of the potential benefits of robotic surgery can be drawn, and that larger prospective studies with long-term follow up are needed to establish the role of the procedure.

Privitera A, Salem A, Elgendy K, Sabr K. Robotic surgery *vs* conventional laparoscopy for the treatment of rectal cancer: Review of the literature. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 142-146 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/142.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.142

INTRODUCTION

Laparoscopic colorectal surgery has been shown to be a safe and effective approach offering similar outcomes to open surgery. Advantages of laparoscopy in terms of pain reduction, lower incidence of postoperative ileus, shorter hospital stay and early return to unrestricted activities, have promoted the widespread use of this technique[1-3]. Fast track and enhanced recovery programs have greatly been facilitated by the introduction of laparoscopy that has been shown to reduce peri-operative stress response[4]. Laparoscopic surgery for colonic cancer has been well accepted and is currently widely practised, however, the application of the technique to rectal cancer, in particular of the lower rectum necessitating a total mesorectal excision (TME), has been limited[5]. In fact, laparoscopic surgery in the narrow pelvic space is challenging and requires a steep learning curve. Limitations include poor ergonomics, easy crowding and clashing of instruments, tremor, fogging of camera, assistant-dependent 2-dimensional view, and difficulty in performing high precision suturing[5-7]. The recent introduction of robotic surgery could overcome the limitations of conventional laparoscopy in technically demanding rectal procedures. In fact, it offers a 3-dimensional 10-fold magnification, articulating instruments, comfortable and ergonomic operating position, and other features including motion scaling and possibility of remote tele-surgical applications[8-10]. The similarity of robotic surgery to the open approach could significantly shorten the learning curve for minimally invasive TME, leading to a widespread use of this technique[11]. However, limiting factors of the robotic system include: lack of tactile and tensile sensation, cumbersome and time-consuming docking of the robotic cart, and possible delay to open conversion should serious intra-operative complications occur. Also, the high cost of the device and its maintenance have prevented many units to adopt the procedure[12,13].

The aim of this study was to analyse the current literature to evaluate whether robotic total mesorectal excision offers better short-term outcomes when compared with conventional laparoscopic surgery.

LITERATURE RESEARCH

An extensive search was conducted through electronic databases (PubMed, Embase, Cochrane Library, Science Direct, Google Scholar) by using the key words "rectal surgery," "rectal cancer", "laparoscopic", "robotic". The reference lists provided by the identified articles were additionally hand-searched for studies missed by the search strategy, and this method of cross-referencing was continued until no further relevant publications were identified. Only articles in the English language were selected. All studies comparing outcomes of robotic and laparoscopic resection for extra-peritoneal and intra-peritoneal rectal cancer were selected and included in the review process. One three-arm study (open, laparoscopic and robotic) was also selected, but studies including hand-assisted with no data separation from the purely laparoscopic cases were excluded. Studies on colonic cancer including recto-sigmoid and benign disease were excluded. Of similar studies pertaining to the same institution only the largest series was considered, unless a different design methodology was used.

The primary outcome measured was whether robotic rectal cancer surgery provides improved postoperative outcomes in comparison with the standard laparoscopic approach. Selected peri-operative variables included mean operating time, conversion to open procedure, complication rate, anastomotic leakage, and length of stay. Pathological variables included distal resection margin (DRM), number of lymph nodes harvested, and circumferential resection margin (CRM). Urinary dysfunction and erectile dysfunction (ED) data were also included.

RESULTS

Ten studies met predefined inclusion criteria[14-23]. These were all retrospective comparative studies including a case-control study[19]. Operative data showed conversion rate was significantly higher in the laparoscopic group (LG) than the robotic group (RG) in three of the studies. Robotic surgery had longer operative time in five studies (Table 1). There was no difference in complication rate including anastomotic leakage in the two groups. As regards length of stay, this was longer in the LG in three studies. In one study length of stay was longer in the RG (Table 2). No significant differences were noted between the RG and LG as regards distal resection margins and only one study showed a higher number of lymph nodes harvested in the RG. One study showed CRM positivity to be significantly higher in the laparoscopic group (Table 3). No significant difference in urinary dysfunction was reported. In one study erectile dysfunction in sexually active patients was significantly higher in the LG (Table 4).

DISCUSSION

Robotic TME has mainly been introduced in centers with a high volume of rectal cancer surgery and expertise in minimally invasive procedures[5]. The reports in the literature relate to small, non randomised, single centre experiences with consequent inability to draw definitive conclusions. An important feature of robotic surgery is the improved exposure and visualization of the surgical field, allowing for a precise dissection in the narrow pelvic cavity. Also, the free range of instrument movements, the aid offered by the fourth arm, may contribute to a less challenging dissection than laparoscopy with consequent reduction in intra-operative complications and conversion rate[21]. In our

Table 1 Intraoperative data

Ref.	Technique (*n*)		Conversion (%)			Operative time (min, mean)		
	RG	LG	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value
Baek *et al*[14]	41	41	7.3	22	NS	296	315	NS
Baik *et al*[15]	56	57	0	10.5	0.013	178	179	NS
Patriti *et al*[16]	29	37	0	19	< 0.05	202	208	NS
Bianchi *et al*[17]	25	25	0	4	NS	240	237	NS
Park *et al*[18]	41	82	0	0	NS	231.9	168.6	< 0.001
Kwak *et al*[19]	59	59	0	3.4	NS	270	228	< 0.0001
Baek *et al*[20]	154	150	NA	NA	NA	285.2	219.7	0.018
D'Annibale *et al*[21]	50	50	0	6	0.011	270	275	NS
Kang *et al*[22]	165	165	0.6	1.8	NS	309	277	< 0.001
Tam *et al*[23]	21	21	5	0	NS	260	240	0.04

NS: Non significant; NA: Not available; RG: Robotic group; LG: Laparoscopic group.

Table 2 Postoperative outcomes

Ref.	Complications (%)			AL (%)			LOS (d, mean)		
	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value
Baek *et al*[14]	21.9	26.8	NS	8.6	2.9	NS	6.5	6.6	NS
Baik *et al*[15]	10.7	19.3	NS	1.7	7.6	NA	5.7	7.6	0.001
Patriti *et al*[16]	30.6	18.9	NS	6.8	2.7	NS	11.9	9.6	NS
Bianchi *et al*[17]	16	24	NS	1.8	8	NS	6.5	6.4	NS
Park *et al*[18]	29.3	23.2	NS	9.7	7.3	NS	9.9	9.4	NS
Kwak *et al*[19]	321	27.1	NS	13.6	10.2	NS	NA	NA	NA
Baek *et al*[20]	32.4	27.3	NS	11	12	NS	11.1	10.8	NS
D'Annibale *et al*[21]	5	11	NS	10	14	NS	8	10	0.03
Kang *et al*[22]	20.6	27.9	NS	7.3	10.8	NS	10.8	13.5	0.003
Tam *et al*[23]	43	33	NS	0	14	NS	6	5	0.05

AL: Anastomotic leakage; LOS: Length of stay; NS: Non significant; NA: Not available; RG: Robotic group; LG: Laparoscopic group.

Table 3 Postoperative outcomes

Ref.	DRM (cm)			LN (*n*)			CRM (%)		
	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value
Baek *et al*[14]	3.6	3.8	NS	13.1	16.2	NS	2.4	4.9	NS
Baik *et al*[15]	4	3.6	NS	17.5	17	NS	4	5	NS
Patriti *et al*[16]	2.1	4.5	NS	10.3	11.2	NS	0	0	NS
Bianchi *et al*[17]	2	2	NS	18	17	NS	0	4	NS
Park *et al*[18]	2.1	2.3	NS	14.2	17.3	NS	3.9	5.6	NS
Kwak *et al*[19]	2.2	2	NS	20	21	NS	1.7	0	NS
Baek *et al*[20]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
D'Annibale *et al*[21]	3	3	NS	13.1	16.2	NS	0	12	0.011
Kang *et al*[22]	1.9	2	NS	16.5	13.8	NS	4.2	6.7	NS
Tam *et al*[23]	3.9	5.5	NS	17	15	0.03	0	5	NS

DRM: Distal resection margin; LN: Lymph nodes harvested; CRM: Circumferential resection margin; NS: Non significant; NA: Not available; RG: Robotic group; LG: Laparoscopic group.

review, conversion rates were significantly lower in the RG in 3 studies. The common reasons for conversion included pelvic wall bleeding, restricted movement in very narrow pelvic cavity, and perforation of the rectal wall[15,16,21].

Significant longer operative times in the RG were reported in 5 studies[18-20,22,23]. This was mainly attributed to the time required to set up the robotic system and need for re-docking when starting the pelvic part of the procedure. However, adoption of particular trocar positions and technique modification may reduce total operating time[21,24]. An appealing feature of robotic surgery is the relatively short learning curve. Reports have shown that only 12 robotic operations are needed to become proficient in the technique, and achieve similar outcomes to those of a laparoscopic surgeon after one hundred procedures[25]. Also, proficiency in robotic rectal cancer surgery can be achieved after 25 cases[26].

Postoperative complication rates including anastomotic leakage were not statistically significant in the two groups. In one study there were fewer serious

Table 4 Postoperative outcomes

Ref.	ED (%)			UD (%)		
	RG	LG	*P* value	RG	LG	*P* value
Baek *et al*[14]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Baik *et al*[15]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Patriti *et al*[16]	5.5	16.6	NS	3.4	2.7	NS
Bianchi *et al*[17]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Park *et al*[18]	NA	NA	NA	0	2.4	NS
Kwak *et al*[19]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Baek *et al*[20]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
D'Annibale *et al*[21]	5.5	56.5	0.045	3.5	4.2	NS
Kang *et al*[22]	NA	NA	NA	2.4	4.2	NS
Tam *et al*[23]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

ED: Erectile dysfunction; UD: Urinary dysfunction; NS: Non significant; NA: Not available; RG: Robotic group; LG: Laparoscopic group.

complications in the RG, however, the overall complication rate that included back pain and scrotal swelling, was not statistically different[15]. Another study revealed no significant differences, though the RG had numerically fewer complications[17]. As regards length of stay, this was longer in the LG in three studies[15,21,22]. The shorter hospital stay may have been the result of a lower complication rate in robotic TME and quicker time to oral diet compared to laparoscopic TME[21]. In one study the length of stay in the RG was longer. However, this was explained by the higher number of abdomino-perineal resection and procto-colectomy in the robotic group.

There are two key points in rectal surgery: oncological adequacy of the specimen and nerve-sparing technique. Total mesorectal excision was developed to allow a complete excision of the lymph node containing mesorectum, thus reducing local recurrence, improve overall survival, and providing good quality of life[27]. The quality of the specimen is considered a parameter for the evaluation of prognosis[28]. In our review, one study showed that the CRM involvement was significantly higher in the LG[21]. Another study showed no significant differences in the CRM and DRM between the RG and LG, but the rectal cancer was closer to the anal verge in the RG. This finding together with a better macroscopic grading of quality of dissection in RG group, may support the potential benefit of robotic surgery to allow for optimal oncological resection of the lower rectum[15].

Another important potential advantage of robotic surgery is the better visualisation, identification and protection of the autonomic innervation, thus minimising the risk of sexual and bladder dysfunction. The 3-dimensional image of the robotic system, the optimal counter traction of the robotic arm, and possibility of precise dissection in the virtually created wider operating space, are pivotal features of particular benefit in obese and male patients with narrow pelvis. Unfortunately, only few studies report data pertaining urinary and erectile dysfunction. In our review, there were no significant differences in urinary dysfunction in the two groups. One study showed worsening of the International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS) 1 mo after surgery in both groups, and a normalisation 1 year after surgery[21]. A recent report in the literature showed that bladder function improved significantly over the first 6 mo after laparoscopic TME and 3 mo after robotic TME, with better outcomes in the RG in the IPSS score[29].

As regards ED, only 2 studies reported comparative outcomes[16,21]. In one study erectile function was impaired in 5% of sexually active patients in the RG compared to 57% in the LG 1 year after surgery. This was mainly attributed to the easier preservation of autonomic nerves in the RG with the added advantage of better control of energy delivery and consequent avoidance of inadvertent nerve cauterization[21].

CONCLUSION

Robotic surgery for rectal cancer is a safe and effective alternative to conventional laparoscopic surgery. Potential benefits including shorter learning curve, better vision in the narrow surgical space facilitating better dissection with preservation of neuro-vascular structure, may well outweigh the high capital and running costs. However, only prospective clinical trials with larger number of patients and long-term follow-up can definitely answer the question of whether the advanced technology of the robotic system clearly offers advantages in terms of surgical and oncological outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Franks PJ**, Bosanquet N, Thorpe H, Brown JM, Copeland J, Smith AM, Quirke P, Guillou PJ; CLASICC trial participants. Short-term costs of conventional vs laparoscopic assisted surgery in patients with colorectal cancer (MRC CLASICC trial). *Br J Cancer* 2006; **95**: 6-12 [PMID: 16755298 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603203]

2 **Color II Study Group**, Buunen M, Bonjer HJ, Hop WC, Haglind E, Kurlberg G, Rosenberg J, Lacy AM, Cuesta MA, D'Hoore A, Fürst A, Lange JF, Jess P, Bulut O, Poornoroozy P, Jensen KJ, Christensen MM, Lundhus E, Ovesen H, Birch D, Iesalnieks I, Jäger C, Kreis M, van riet Y, van der Harst E, Gerhards MF, Bemelman WA, Hansson BM, Neijenhuis PA, Prins HA, Balague C, Targarona E, Luján Mompeán JA, Franco Osorio JD, Garcia Molina FJ, Skullman S, Läckberg Z, Kressner U, Matthiessen P, Kim SH, Poza AA. COLOR II. A randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open surgery for rectal cancer. *Dan Med Bull* 2009; **56**: 89-91 [PMID: 19486621]

3 **Trastulli S**, Cirocchi R, Listorti C, Cavaliere D, Avenia N, Gullà N, Giustozzi G, Sciannameo F, Noya G, Boselli C. Laparoscopic vs open resection for rectal cancer: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: e277-e296 [PMID: 22330061 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2012.02985.x]

4 **Nishiguchi K**, Okuda J, Toyoda M, Tanaka K, Tanigawa N. Comparative evaluation of surgical stress of laparoscopic and open surgeries for colorectal carcinoma. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2001; **44**: 223-230 [PMID: 11227939 DOI: 10.1007/BF02234297]

5 **Scarpinata R**, Aly EH. Does robotic rectal cancer surgery offer improved early postoperative outcomes? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 253-262 [PMID: 23303155 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e3182694595]

6 **Delaney CP**, Lynch AC, Senagore AJ, Fazio VW. Comparison of robotically performed and traditional laparoscopic colorectal surgery. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 1633-1639 [PMID: 14668588 DOI: 10.1007/BF02660768]

7 **Kuhry E**, Schwenk W, Gaupset R, Romild U, Bonjer J. Long-term outcome of laparoscopic surgery for colorectal cancer: a cochrane systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2008; **34**: 498-504 [PMID: 18468803 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2008.03.011]

8 **Ballantyne GH**, Moll F. The da Vinci telerobotic surgical system: the virtual operative field and telepresence surgery. *Surg Clin North Am* 2003; **83**: 1293-1304, vii [PMID: 14712866 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6109(03)00164-6]

9 **Lanfranco AR**, Castellanos AE, Desai JP, Meyers WC. Robotic surgery: a current perspective. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 14-21 [PMID: 14685095 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000103020.19595.7d]

10 **Baik SH**. Robotic colorectal surgery. *Yonsei Med J* 2008; **49**: 891-896 [PMID: 19108010 DOI: 10.3349/ymj.2008.49.6.891]

11 **Kim IK**, Kang J, Park YA, Kim NK, Sohn SK, Lee KY. Is prior laparoscopy experience required for adaptation to robotic rectal surgery?: Feasibility of one-step transition from open to robotic surgery. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2014; **29**: 693-699 [PMID: 24770702 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-014-1858-2]

12 **Mirnezami AH**, Mirnezami R, Venkatasubramaniam AK, Chandrakumaran K, Cecil TD, Moran BJ. Robotic colorectal surgery: hype or new hope? A systematic review of robotics in colorectal surgery. *Colorectal Dis* 2010; **12**: 1084-1093 [PMID: 19594601 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.01999.x]

13 **Wexner SD**, Bergamaschi R, Lacy A, Udo J, Brölmann H, Kennedy RH, John H. The current status of robotic pelvic surgery: results of a multinational interdisciplinary consensus conference. *Surg Endosc* 2009; **23**: 438-443 [PMID: 19037694 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-008-0202-8]

14 **Baek JH**, Pastor C, Pigazzi A. Robotic and laparoscopic total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: a case-matched study. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 521-525 [PMID: 20607559 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1204-x]

15 **Baik SH**, Kwon HY, Kim JS, Hur H, Sohn SK, Cho CH, Kim H. Robotic versus laparoscopic low anterior resection of rectal cancer: short-term outcome of a prospective comparative study. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 1480-1487 [PMID: 19290486 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0435-3]

16 **Patriti A**, Ceccarelli G, Bartoli A, Spaziani A, Biancafarina A, Casciola L. Short- and medium-term outcome of robot-assisted and traditional laparoscopic rectal resection. *JSLS* 2009; **13**: 176-183 [PMID: 19660212]

17 **Bianchi PP**, Ceriani C, Locatelli A, Spinoglio G, Zampino MG, Sonzogni A, Crosta C, Andreoni B. Robotic versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: a comparative analysis of oncological safety and short-term outcomes. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 2888-2894 [PMID: 20526623 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1134-7]

18 **Park JS**, Choi GS, Lim KH, Jang YS, Jun SH. Robotic-assisted versus laparoscopic surgery for low rectal cancer: case-matched analysis of short-term outcomes. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 3195-3202 [PMID: 20589436 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1162-5]

19 **Kwak JM**, Kim SH, Kim J, Son DN, Baek SJ, Cho JS. Robotic vs laparoscopic resection of rectal cancer: short-term outcomes of a case-control study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2011; **54**: 151-156 [PMID: 21228661 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181fec4fd]

20 **Baek SJ**, Kim SH, Cho JS, Shin JW, Kim J. Robotic versus conventional laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer: a cost analysis from a single institute in Korea. *World J Surg* 2012; **36**: 2722-2729 [PMID: 22855217 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-012-1728-4]

21 **D'Annibale A**, Pernazza G, Monsellato I, Pende V, Lucandri G, Mazzocchi P, Alfano G. Total mesorectal excision: a comparison of oncological and functional outcomes between robotic and laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 1887-1895 [PMID: 23292566 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2731-4]

22 **Kang J**, Yoon KJ, Min BS, Hur H, Baik SH, Kim NK, Lee KY. The impact of robotic surgery for mid and low rectal cancer: a case-matched analysis of a 3-arm comparison--open, laparoscopic, and robotic surgery. *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 95-101 [PMID: 23059496 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3182686bbd]

23 **Tam MS**, Abbass M, Abbas MA. Robotic-laparoscopic rectal cancer excision versus traditional laparoscopy. *JSLS* 2014; **18**: pii: e2014.00020 [PMID: 25392653 DOI: 10.4293/JSLS.2014.00020]

24 **Park YA**, Kim JM, Kim SA, Min BS, Kim NK, Sohn SK, Lee KY. Totally robotic surgery for rectal cancer: from splenic flexure to pelvic floor in one setup. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 715-720 [PMID: 19688388 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0656-3]

25 **Ahlering TE**, Skarecky D, Lee D, Clayman RV. Successful transfer of open surgical skills to a laparoscopic environment using a robotic interface: initial experience with laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. *J Urol* 2003; **170**: 1738-1741 [PMID: 14532766 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000092881.24608.5e]

26 **Akmal Y**, Baek JH, McKenzie S, Garcia-Aguilar J, Pigazzi A. Robot-assisted total mesorectal excision: is there a learning curve? *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 2471-2476 [PMID: 22437950 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2216-5]

27 **MacFarlane JK**, Ryall RD, Heald RJ. Mesorectal excision for rectal cancer. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 457-460 [PMID: 8094488 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93)90207-W]

28 **Nagtegaal ID**, van de Velde CJ, van der Worp E, Kapiteijn E, Quirke P, van Krieken JH. Macroscopic evaluation of rectal cancer resection specimen: clinical significance of the pathologist in quality control. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 1729-1734 [PMID: 11919228 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2002.07.010]

29 **Kim NK**, Aahn TW, Park JK, Lee KY, Lee WH, Sohn SK, Min JS. Assessment of sexual and voiding function after total mesorectal excision with pelvic autonomic nerve preservation in males with rectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 1178-1185 [PMID: 12352233 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-6388-5]

P- Reviewer: Agresta F, Li XL **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.147

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 147-154
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Feasibility and oncological outcomes of laparoscopic rectal resection following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy: A systematic review

Pawan Kumar Dhruva Rao, Manojkumar S Nair, Puthucode N Haray

Pawan Kumar Dhruva Rao, Manojkumar S Nair, Puthucode N Haray, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Prince Charles Hospital, Merthyr Tydfil CF47 9DT, Wales, United Kingdom
Puthucode N Haray, University of South Wales, Pontypridd CF37 1DL, Wales, United Kingdom
Author contributions: Dhruva Rao PK and Nair MS developed the protocol, conduced the literature search and systematic review as per protocol; Haray PN served as a referee and guided the project; all authors contributed to the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: All the authors are employed by the National Health Service and confirm that they have no conflicts of interest financial or otherwise to declare.
Data sharing: This is a systematic review and all data pertaining to the study have been summarized in the tables of the manuscript. No additional data are available.

Correspondence to: Pawan Kumar Dhruva Rao, MBBS, MS, MRCSEd, Specialty Trainee in Surgery, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Prince Charles Hospital, Gurnos Rd, Merthyr Tydfil CF47 9DT, Wales,
United Kingdom. pavankumar_1124@yahoo.co.in
Telephone: +44-1685-721721
Received: December 4, 2014
Peer-review started: December 4, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: December 23, 2014
Accepted: January 9, 2015
Article in press: January 12, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To study the feasibility and oncological outcomes following laparoscopic total mesorectal excision (LTME) in patients who have received Neo-adjuvant long course chemo-radiotherapy (LCRT).

METHODS: A protocol driven systematic review of published literature was undertaken to assess the feasibility and oncological outcomes following LTME in patients receiving LCRT. The feasibility was assessed using peri-operative outcomes and short term results. The oncological outcomes were assessed using local recurrence, disease free survival and overall survival.

RESULTS: Only 8 studies-1 randomized controlled trial, 4 Case Matched/Controlled Studies and 3 Case Series were identified matching the search criteria. The conversion rate was low (1.2% to 28.1%), anastomotic leak rates were similar to open total mesorectal excision (0%-4.1% *vs* 0%-8.3%). Only 3 studies reported on local recurrence rates (5.2%-7.6%) at median 34 mo follow-up. A single study described disease free survival and overall survival at 3 years as 78.8% and 92.1% respectively.

CONCLUSION: LTME following LCRT is feasible in experienced hands, with acceptable short term surgical outcomes and with the usual benefits associated with minimally invasive procedures. The long term oncological outcomes of LTME after LCRT appear to be comparable to open procedures but need further investigation.

Key words: Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision; Rectal adenocarcinoma; Feasibility; Outcomes; Neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy

Core tip: Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision (LTME) following long course chemo-radiotherapy (LCRT) is

feasible in experienced hands, with acceptable short term surgical outcomes and with the usual benefits associated with minimally invasive procedures. The long term oncological outcomes of LTME after LCRT appear to be comparable to open procedures but need further investigation.

Dhruva Rao PK, Nair MS, Haray PN. Feasibility and oncological outcomes of laparoscopic rectal resection following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy: A systematic review. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 147-154 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/147.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.147

INTRODUCTION

Total Mesorectal Excision using an open approach (OTME) is now accepted as the gold standard for treatment rectal cancer[1]. In recent years, since the medical research council United Kingdom trial, neo-adjuvant long course chemo-radiotherapy is being routinely used as a part of treatment of locally advanced mid and low rectal cancers[2]. Laparoscopic rectal resection has been shown to have superior short term outcomes compared to open resections. However, long term oncological results are still debated[3]. In addition, it is generally accepted that laparoscopic low rectal resection and Abdomino-perineal resections (APR) are technically challenging[4].

Most trials comparing laparoscopic and open resections for rectal cancer suggest that laparoscopic rectal resections are technically feasible however, short and long term outcomes in this group are difficult to determine[5,6]. Also, laparoscopic total mesorectal excision (LTME) following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy (LCRT) is oncologically and technically challenging due to tissue fibrosis and scarring[7].

This systematic review addresses the feasibility and outcome of laparoscopic rectal resection following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy. There is no level 1 evidence addressing this and to the best of our knowledge there is no structured review of the published literature on this topic.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

A systematic review of literature was performed as per the protocol described below to address the issue of feasibility of laparoscopic TME following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy. PubMed, Cochrane, Embase, OVID, and CINAHL were searched for articles published between Jan 2004 to June 2014 using the search criteria as described in Table 1.

The keywords for search were laparoscopy, minimally invasive surgery, open, rectum, cancer, abdomino-perineal resection, anterior resection, colorectal neoplasms, rectal neoplasms, rectal adenocarcinoma, rectal cancer, neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy, proctectomy, and total mesorectal excision. Search was done as free text words and in their variable combinations.

Table 1 Search strategy

Search strategy
1 Rectal adenocarcinoma - tracked to MeSH to include all subheadings and combining with OR and clicking the Explode box; limit to English language and Humans - no time limits selected
2 Surgery - tracked to MeSH to include all subheadings and combining with OR and clicking the Explode box; limit to English language and Humans - no time limits selected
3 Laparoscopy - tracked to MeSH to include all subheadings and combining with OR and clicking Explode box; limit to English language and Humans - no time limits selected
4 Minimally invasive surgery - tracked to MeSH to include all subheadings and combining with OR and clicking Explode box; limit to English language and Humans - no time limits selected
5 Anterior Resection - Keyword search only (not linked to MeSH headings)
6 Neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy
7 Proctectomy - Keyword search only (not linked to MeSH headings)
8 Total Mesorectal Excision - Keyword search only (not linked to MESH headings)
9 Combine 1 and 2 and 5 and 6 and 7 and 8
10 Combine 1 and 3 and 4 and 5 and 6 and 7 and 8

Study selection

The retrieved results were screened by two authors (Dhruva Rao PK and Nair MS) using the title and abstracts against the inclusion and exclusion criteria as described below. Any studies that did not have published abstracts were excluded. Full text articles of potentially relevant studies were obtained and assessed independently by two authors (Dhruva Rao PK and Nair MS) considering the inclusion and exclusion criteria for review. All references of all guideline articles and review articles were searched to identify any potential articles not already identified. Disagreements were resolved through discussion and by involving the third author (Haray PN).

Inclusion criteria

Randomized studies comparing open and laparoscopic rectal resection following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy for rectal adenocarcinoma; Case matched series comparing LTME with OTME following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy for rectal adenocarcinoma; Case control studies comparing LTME with OTME following neo-adjuvant chemo-radiotherapy for rectal adenocarcinoma; Case series with > 20 patients from tertiary centres; Published in English language; Feasibility studies of laparoscopic rectal resections for cancer including historical control cohorts.

Exclusion criteria

Study groups were not clearly defined; Studies in whom the "cancer" group cannot be separated; Studies comparing resections performed for benign indications only; Studies including local resections

Table 2 Overview of studies with extractable data

Ref.	Year	Country	Type of study	Total No. of patients	Patients Lap	Patients open
Kang *et al*[9]	2010	South Korea	RCT	340	170	170
Kusano *et al*[11]	2014	Japan	Case control Study	33	19	14
Hu *et al*[14]	2013	China	Case control Study	137	51	86
Seshadri *et al*[12]	2011	India	Case control Study	144	72	72
Denoya *et al*[15]	2009	United States	Case matched series	64	32	32
[1]Saklani *et al*[13]	2013	South Korea	Case series	64	64	NA
[1]Denost *et al*[10]	2011	France	Case series	292	292	NA
Motson *et al*[7]	2011	United Kingdom	Case series	26	26	NA

[1]Data pertaining to LCRT + laparoscopic resection group of the study only extracted therefore treated as case series. NA: Not applicable; LCRT: Long course chemo-radiotherapy; RCT: Randomized controlled trial.

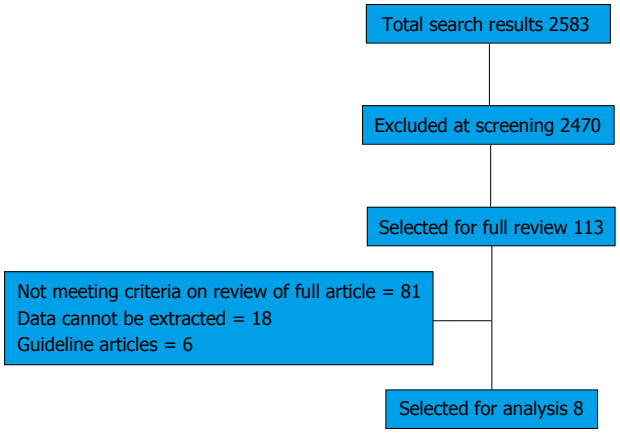


Figure 1 PRISMA flow diagram.

(trans-anal endoscopic microsurgery, trans-anal excision) but the major resection group cannot be separated; the outcomes of interest defined below were not reported or it was impossible to determine them from the published results; the surgical procedures were performed by surgical trainees or by surgeons during the learning curve for laparoscopic or conventional rectal surgery.

Data extraction

A structured proforma was used for data extraction for the patients undergoing laparoscopic resection after neo-adjuvant long course chemo-radiotherapy only. No attempt was made to contact the authors of studies if inadequate amount of information was available and such studies were excluded.

Outcome measures/end-points

We have assessed 2 sets of outcomes.

For feasibility assessment, we have considered estimated blood loss, ureteral injuries, other collateral injuries, overall peri-operative morbidity, length of hospital stay, anastomotic leakage, intra-abdominal abscess, urinary retention, postoperative ileus, 30 d mortality. We have also assessed circumferential/radial resection margin (CRM) and lymph node harvest.

For oncological outcome assessment, we have considered loco-regional recurrence, metachronous distant metastasis, disease free survival (DFS) and overall survival.

Statistical analysis

Prior to pooled analysis, the studies must pass 2 assessments of heterogeneity - qualitative and quantitative[8]. Qualitative assessment is based on 4 key concepts of study design (Patients, Interventions, Outcomes and Study Types). If studies are deemed heterogeneous on this assessment, it is inappropriate to proceed to quantitative assessment using statistical tests such as χ^2 test or Cochrane Q, *etc.*[8]. In this review the studies were deemed heterogeneous based on the above mentioned qualitative criteria and so we did not proceed to statistical analysis.

RESULTS

The initial search identified 2583 studies (Figure 1). Two thousand four hundred and seventy were excluded after initial screening of titles and abstracts. The remaining 113 studies were critically reviewed using the full article. Of these, 26 articles met the inclusion criteria and reviewed in detail. However, data relevant to this review could be extracted from only 8 studies (Table 2). Table 3 summarizes the 18 studies from which adequate extraction of appropriate data was not possible.

The selected publications included a combination of randomized controlled trial (RCT) and non RCT. Qualitative assessment of the studies revealed: (1) Type of studies identified were clearly heterogeneous (Table 2); (2) Patient selection criteria for LCRT were different in the different studies (Table 4); and (3) The LCRT regimen patients received was also different (Table 4).

Thus the studies were heterogeneous in terms of Study Design, Patient Groups and Interventions. Due to this heterogeneity, a pooled analysis or meta-analysis was considered inappropriate and hence was not carried out.

Of the 8 studies included, one was a RCT and 4 were case controlled studies or case matched series. The number of patients in the Laparoscopic group in the selected studies range from 19 to 292. The

Table 3 Studies from which data could not be extracted (sub group analysis not described/reported)

Ref.	Year	Country	Type of study	Percent having LCRT in Lap group
van der Pas *et al*[5]	2013	The Netherlands	RCT[1]	59
Lujan *et al*[6]	2009	Spain	RCT	72.3
Lujan *et al*[16]	2013	Spain	Case Control	58.1
McKay *et al*[17]	2012	Australia	Case Control	48.8
Laurent *et al*[18]	2011	France	Case Control	93.6
Patel *et al*[19]	2011	United States	Case Matched	50
Li *et al*[20]	2011	China	Case Control	34.5
Kellokumpu *et al*[21]	2011	Finland	Case Control	34
Greenblatt *et al*[22]	2011	United States	Case Control	31.6
da Luz Moreira *et al*[23]	2011	United States	Case Matched	33
Baik *et al*[24]	2010	United States	Case Matched	79.6
Westerholm *et al*[25]	2012	Canada	Case Series	7.4
Jefferies *et al*[26]	2011	United Kingdom	Case Series	43.8
Glancy *et al*[27]	2011	United Kingdom	Case Series	8
Lam *et al*[28]	2010	Belgium	Case Series	56.7
Sartori *et al*[29]	2010	Italy	Case Series	39.1
Cheung *et al*[30]	2010	Hong Kong	Case Series	21.5
Park *et al*[31]	2010	South Korea	Case Series	8.1

[1]Patients in this trial had short course radio therapy. LCRT: Long course chemo-radiotherapy; RCT: Randomized controlled trial.

Table 4 Comparison of criteria for long course chemo-radiotherapy and regimes

Ref.	Staging imaging	Criteria for LCRT	Chemo agent	Rad dose/duration
Kang *et al*[9]	CT, MRI, ERUS	cT3N0-2 M0 Mid/low rectal cancer	I/V 5FU + leucovorin or oral capecitabine	50.4 Gy over 5.5 wk (tumour boost used)
Kusano *et al*[11]	CT, MRI	T3N0-3M0[2]	Different protocols	Total dose = 45 Gy/duration not reported
Hu *et al*[14]	CT, MRI, ERUS	Stage 2/3 tumours	Capecitabine and oxaliplatin	50 Gy over 5 wk
[1]Seshadri *et al*[12]	CT	T2/T3 N+, T4 excluded	Mitomycin and 5FU	Total dose = 50 Gy/duration not reported
Denoya *et al*[15]	CT, MRI, ERUS	T3/4 or N+ disease	5FU or Xeloda	Total dose = 50.4 Gy/duration not reported
Saklani *et al*[13]	NR	T3/4 or N+ disease	5FU	Total dose = 50.4 Gy/duration not reported
Denost *et al*[10]	CT, MRI, ERUS	T3/4 = 265 (90.8%), T1/2 = 27 (9.2%)	I/V 5FU and leucovorin	45 Gy over 5 wk
Motson *et al*[7]	CT, MRI	T3/4 N+ + involved/ threatened CRM	5FU or Uftoral	45/50 Gy over 5 wk (3/4 fields)

[1]7/72 (Lap) and 6/72 (open) received only RT; cannot separate data; [2]Using TNM classification of malignant tumours 7th edition 2009. NR: Not reported; LCRT: Long course chemo-radiotherapy; CT: Computed tomography; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; CRM: Circumferential/radial resection margin; ERUS: Endoluminal rectal ultra-sound.

only RCT (COREAN trial[9]) that we have been able to identify had 170 patients in the study arm. The study with largest number of patients with LTME following LCRT is from France with 292 patients[10].

The patient characteristics of all the studies are shown in Table 5. As can be seen from the table, they were mid or low rectal tumours. The APR rates varied from 11.2% to 89%. All studies had reported the imaging modalities and selection criteria for LCRT with the type and dose of chemo and radiotherapy (Table 4). There was wide heterogeneity in the type, dose and duration of LCRT among the studies.

Table 6 reports the peri-operative course. The interval between LCRT and surgery was reported by all except by one study[11] with the median minimum and maximum intervals being 6 and 8 wk respectively. The reported conversion rates from laparoscopic to open operations ranged from 1.2% to 28.1%. In the Laparoscopic arm, three of the eight identified studies reported a median estimated blood loss of 200 mL.

While only two studies reported intra operative complications (Table 6), all studies have reported post-operative complications (Table 7). In the studies where comparative data was available, the laparoscopic group had a low anastomotic leak rate compared to the open group (0%-4% *vs* 0%-8.3% respectively). The COREAN trial reported a higher leak rate for LTME *vs* OTME (1.2% *vs* 0% respectively). However, 2 case series reported anastomotic leak rates of 12.7%[10] and 18.7%[7]. Interestingly these had higher conversion rates as well (18.8%[10] and 11.5%[7] respectively). Pelvic abscess was also less in laparoscopic group compared to the open group (0%-10.5% *vs* 0.6%-14.2%). Post-operative ileus was less in Laparoscopic group (0%-10% *vs* 1.2%-12.9%). Post-operative voiding difficulty varied from 2%-10% in laparoscopic group compared to 2.3%-7.1% in open group.

The short term outcomes are summarized in Table 8. All except 2 studies have reported post-operative length of stay with the median stay ranging between

Table 5 Patient characteristics

Ref.	Age (yr)		Laparoscopic Group		Open Group		BMI		Distance from Anal Verge (cm)		Laparoscopic Group		Open Group	
	Lap	Open	Men	Women	Men	Women	Lap	Open	Lap	Open	AR	APR	AR	APR
[1]Kang *et al*[9]	57.8 (11.1)	59.1 (9.9)	64.7%	35.3%	64.7%	35.3%	24.1 (3.2)	24.1 (3.2)	5.6 (2.3)	5.3 (2.5)	151 (88.8%)	19 (11.2%)	146 (85.9%)	24 (14.1%)
Kusano *et al*[11]	58 (32-82)	55 (39-73)	15 (78.9%)	4 (21.1%)	8 (57.1%)	6 (42.9%)	⩽ 25 = 14 (73.7%) > 25 = 5 (26.3%)	⩽ 25 = 9 (64.3%) >25 = 5 (35.7%)	2 (0-50)	3.7 (0-10)	11 (57.9%)	8 (42.1%)	4 (28.6%)	10 (71.4%)
Hu *et al*[14]	55 (35-78)	55 (29-82)	34 (66.7%)	17 (33.3%)	56 (65.1%)	30 (34.9%)	23.4 (16-31.2)	24.2 (16.3-36.2)	⩽ 5 = 33 (64.7%) > 5 = 18 (35.3%)	⩽ 5 = 54 (62.8%) > 5 = 32 (37.2%)	32 (62.7%)	18 (35.3%)	36 (41.9%)	44 (51.2%)
Seshadri *et al*[12]	48 (22-73)	48 (19-71)	47 (65%)	25 (35%)	45 (62%)	27 (38%)	21 (15-33)	22 (14-38)	3 (0-8)	3 (0-10)	8 (11%)	64 (89%)	8 (11%)	64 (89%)
[1]Denoya *et al*[15]	56.3	57.1	19 (59.4%)	13 (40.6%)	18 (56.3%)	14 (43.7%)	25	26.4	4.1	4.6	24 (75%)	8 (25%)	24 (75%)	8 (25%)
Denost *et al*[10]	65 (20-85)	NA	179 (61.3%)	113 (38.7%)	NA	NA	25 (16-39)	NA	< 5 = 175 (59.9%) > 5 = 117 (40.1%)	NA	NR	NR	NA	NA
Motson *et al*[7]	63 (39-81)	NA	21 (80.8%)	5 (19.2%)	NA	NA	NR	NA	< 5 = 11 (42.3%) > 5 = 15 (57.7%)	NA	16 (61.5%)	10 (38.5%)	NA	NA

Values reported as median (range) except [1]where it is Mean. NA: Not applicable; AR: Anterior resection; APR: Abdomino-perineal resection; BMI: Body mass index; NR: Not reported.

Table 6 Peri-operative outcomes

Ref.	Interval to surgery	Conversion	Estimated blood loss		Intra-op injury		Diversion stoma	
			Lap	Open	Lap	Open	Lap	Open
[1]Kang *et al*[9]	[2]6-8 wk	1.2%	Median - 200 mL	Median - 217.5 mL	Yes[1]	Yes[1]	91.4%	88.4%
Kusano *et al*[11]	NR	NR	< 200 mL = 47.4% > 200 = 52.6%	< 200 = 92.9% > 200 = 7.1%	NR	NR	NR	NR
Hu *et al*[14]	Mean 53 d (28-105 d)	5.9%	Mean 204.7 (80-1000 mL)	Mean 352.5 (100-1200) mL	No	Ureteric injury = 1.2%	NR	NR
Seshadri *et al*[12]	Median 8 (4-36) wk	4.1%	Median 200 (100-600) mL	Med 400 (150-1500) mL	NR	NR	NR	NR
Denoya *et al*[15]	Mean 6.5 wk	28.1%	Mean 313 ± 443	Mean 279 ± 229	NR	NR	75%	75%
Denost *et al*[10]	[2]6 wk	18.8%	NR	NA	NR	NA	81.2%	NA
Motson *et al*[7]	Median 11 wk	11.5%	NR	NA	NR	NA	75%	NA

[1]There were 3 patients in each group needing re-operation - indication for these were not described. Also, one patient in each group had a brachial plexus injury; [2]Study protocol - actual durations not mentioned. NR: Not reported; NA: Not applicable.

8-24 d for the laparoscopic group and 9-35 for the open group. Only 2 case series[7,10] reported procedure related mortality (0.3%-3.8%).

The markers of surgical quality are reported in Table 9. Only the COREAN trial[9] reported the TME quality with 72.4% of the resection as complete. One study[12] defined the CRM positivity as 2 mm while the others used the standard 1 mm measurement. The CRM positivity in the laparoscopic group was 1.3% to 2.9% and that for the open group was 3.5%-9.7%. The numbers of lymph nodes harvested did not differ between laparoscopic and open groups.

Only 3 studies reported a follow up period of 34 mo or above (Table 8). The rest had data on short term follow up with one study not reporting any follow up data. Local recurrence was reported as 5.2%-7.6% in the laparoscopic groups after 34 mo of follow up. Only one study reported comparative local recurrence between the laparoscopic and open groups (5.2% for laparoscopic *vs* 21.4% for open)[11]. Only one study[13] reported disease free survival and overall survival at 3 years (78.8% and 92.1 % respectively).

Table 7 Post-operative complications

Ref.	Anastomotic leak (%)		Pelvic abscess (%)		Post-op Ileus (%)		Acute voiding difficulty (%)		Stoma complications (%)	
	Lap	Open	Lap	Open	Lap	Open	Lap	Open	Lap	Open
Kang *et al*[9]	1.2	0	0	0.6	10	12.9	10	4.1	0.6	0
Kusano *et al*[11]	0	7.1	10.5	14.2	5.2	7.1	0	7.1	NR	NR
[2]Hu *et al*[14]	3.1	8.3	0	1.2	0	1.2	1.2	2.3	0	2
Seshadri *et al*[12]	4.1	8.3	NR	NR	NR	NR	11	7	NR	NR
Denoya *et al*[15]	NR	NR	NR	NR	5	5	NR	NR	NR	NR
Denost *et al*[10]	12.7	NA	NR	NA	NR	NA	NR	NA	NR	NA
[1]Motson *et al*[7]	18.7	NA	NR	NA	NR	NA	15.4	NA	NR	NA

[1]2 patients had adhesiolysis; [2]Other complications, Urinary fistula = 1 and Rectovaginal fistula = 1 both in open group. NR: Not reported; NA: Not applicable.

Table 8 Short term and long term outcomes

Ref.	Post-op length of stay		30 d mortality (%)	Length of follow-up	Local recurrence	
	Lap	Open			Lap	Open
Kang *et al*[9]	8 (7-12)	9 (8-12)	NR	3 mo	NA	NA
Kusano *et al*[11]	24 (14-92)	35 (14-70)	NR	Median 39 mo	1 (5.2%)	3 (21.4%)
Hu *et al*[14]	10 (6-34)	16 (6-44)	NR	Short term outcomes only	NA	NA
Seshadri *et al*[12]	12 (6-45)	15 (10-50)	None	Short term outcomes only	NA	NA
[1]Denoya *et al*[15]	6.1 ± 2.4	7.6 ± 2.3	NR	Short term outcomes only	NA	NA
Denost *et al*[10]	NR	NA	0.3	NR	NR	NA
Motson *et al*[7]	8 (5-17)	NA	3.8	Median 34 mo	2 (7.6%)	NA
Saklani *et al*[13]	NR	NA	NR	Median 36 mo	4 (6.3%)	NA

Reported as median (range) except [1]where it is mean. NR: Not reported; NA: Not applicable.

Table 9 Quality markers

Ref.	CRM positivity		Lymph node harvest[1]	
	Lap	Open	Lap	Open
Kang *et al*[9]	2.9%	4.1%	17 (12-22)	18 (13-24)
[3]Kusano *et al*[11]	NR	NR	< 12 = 73.7% > 12 = 26.3%	< 12 = 64.3% > 12 = 35.7%
Hu *et al*[14]	1.9%	3.5%	12 (2-20)	11 (1-25)
[4]Seshadri *et al*[12]	1.3%	9.7%	7 (1-24)	7 (1-25)
Denoya *et al*[15]	Yes[5]	Yes[5]	19 ± 9[2]	19 ± 9[2]
Denost *et al*[10]	NR	NA	NR	NA
[6]Motson *et al*[7]	Yes[6]	NA	5 (0-14)	NA

[1]Lymph node harvest reported as median (range) except [2]where it is mean and [3]where it is percent of patients with node count < or > 12; [4]Authors define CRM as 2 mm; [3]Authors report negative "radical" resection margins in all patients in discussion; [5]CRM reported as Lap 1.17 ± 0.7; Open 0.96 ± 0.5; [6]CRM reported as 5.5 mm (< 1-15 mm). NR: Not reported; NA: Not applicable; CRM: Circumferential resection margins.

DISCUSSION

The studies were heterogeneous. In spite of this, the reported short term outcomes for LTME were not inferior to OTME. Available data shows LTME offers the same short term advantages in outcomes like estimated blood loss, other collateral injuries, overall intra-operative morbidity, post-operative length of stay, intra-abdominal abscess and post-operative ileus even after LCRT. Short term surrogate measures of oncologic parameters are at least equal to the open procedure.

LCRT makes the normal anatomical planes within the pelvis challenging due to tissue fibrosis and scarring. The tissue planes can be more difficult to follow compared with non-irradiated cases[7].

The magnified view of operative field and the improving technology with efficient energy devices in addition to meticulous attention to haemostasis to maintain good views during LMTE are factors that help reduce the blood loss as reflected in the reported estimated blood loss of these studies. Pelvic abscess was also less in laparoscopic group compared to open. This may be due to the fact that the blood loss is less with consequent less postoperative haematoma, *etc*.

Irradiation causes fibrosis and ischaemia[10] and increases the thickness of the rectal wall making a safe rectal division by stapling devices technically more difficult[10]. It is also thought to increase the risk of anastomotic leak. However, the reported anastomotic leak rate in LTME was generally low. One study[7] reported a higher leak rate (18.7%) but this is probably due to low number of patients in this study.

The surrogate markers of oncological outcome like lymph node harvest, positivity of CRM margins with LTME were comparable and not inferior to both contemporaneous open procedures as well as historically reported data.

The only RCT identified, the COREAN trial[9], randomised 340 patients after LCRT to LTME or OTME. It observed no difference between CRM positivity, macroscopic quality of the total mesorectal excision, number of harvested lymph nodes or perioperative morbidity between the two groups[9]. The short term benefits were better in LTME. This trial demonstrated LTME after LCRT was safe in the hands of experienced

surgeons (participating surgeons had a median experience of 75 LTMEs). Although this trial was not sufficiently powered to address survival outcomes (one of the limitations of this trial), the long term outcome from COREAN trial is expected to shed more light on the oncological effectiveness of LTME in this group of rectal cancer patients.

The other end-points of this review were the local recurrence rates, and DFS. These results are based on case controlled study or data from experienced tertiary centres. The rate of local recurrence varied from 5.2% to 7.6% in the LTME group. Only one study[11] reported comparative data for OTME (21.4%). Only one study reported DFS of 78.8% in LTME after 3 years of follow up. Unfortunately this did not report on a similar figure for OTME[13].

We identified 18 other studies which had a subgroup of patients who underwent LCRT followed by laparoscopic rectal resection. However, insufficient data were included for relevant data extraction and analysis. An analysis of the raw data from these published studies may provide interim results quicker. However, such an exercise would require the co-operation of various authors from around the world to contribute their data to help create an international registry for analysis: this is unlikely to be feasible retrospectively. Hence, a prospective, multicentre randomised trial recruiting patients from appropriate centres and adequately powered to address survival outcomes is needed to answer the question of oncological effectiveness.

Although there is paucity of published data on the rates of local and distant disease recurrence (Disease Free Survival) following LTME after LCRT, available data shows LTME following LCRT is not inferior to open TME with the inherent advantages of Laparoscopic surgery.

LTME is feasible in experienced hands, with acceptable short term surgical outcomes and with the usual benefits associated with minimally invasive procedures. The long term oncological outcomes of LTME after LCRT appear to be comparable to open procedures but need further investigation probably with a well-designed adequately powered multicentre trial.

COMMENTS

Background

Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision (LTME) has been shown to be feasible with acceptable short and intermediate term results in management of rectal cancers. However, the increasing use of neo-adjuvant long course chemo-radiotherapy (LCRT), and the resultant increased fibrosis and alterations to the tissue planes has increased the challenges of the LTME. To the authors' knowledge, there is no level 1 evidence to support its use.

Research frontiers

Over the recent years, numerous publications addressing this area of rectal cancer management have been published. The authors aimed to conduct a systematic review of the published literature to inform future practice.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This systematic review has shown that LTME in patients undergoing LCRT is feasible with acceptable short and intermediate term surgical and oncological outcomes in experienced hands. It has also identified the need for a sufficiently powered RCT to address this issue. In the interim, this study which has assimilated and analysed the raw data from various publications could provide useful information on the subject.

Applications

This review lends support to the practice of LTME in experienced centres within the multimodal approach to rectal cancer. However, long term outcomes (as in all oncological treatments) need to be continuously monitored.

Terminology

Total mesorectal excision (TME): this is the gold standard surgical technique for the management of mid to low rectal cancers and involves the complete removal of the rectum and mesorectal tissue. As it is traditionally performed by an open approach, it can also be called open TME. Laparoscopic TME: Using the laparoscopic approach to perform TME. LCRT: Use of pre-operative course of radiotherapy with potentiating chemotherapy (neo-adjuvant treatment) over a few weeks, usually a 5 wk cycle. Following the chemo-radiation, surgery in the form of TME is performed after a delay of several weeks. The aim is to shrink the tumour or "sterilize" the circumferential resection margin.

Peer-review

This review addresses a very interesting and timely clinical issue.

REFERENCES

1 **Enker WE**. Total mesorectal excision--the new golden standard of surgery for rectal cancer. *Ann Med* 1997; **29**: 127-133 [PMID: 9187227 DOI: 10.3109/07853899709113698]

2 **Foster JD**, Jones EL, Falk S, Cooper EJ, Francis NK. Timing of surgery after long-course neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic review of the literature. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 921-930 [PMID: 23739201 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31828aedcb]

3 **Shussman N**, Wexner SD. Current status of laparoscopy for the treatment of rectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 15125-15134 [PMID: 25386061]

4 **Lee JK**, Delaney CP, Lipman JM. Current state of the art in laparoscopic colorectal surgery for cancer: Update on the multi-centric international trials. *Ann Surg Innov Res* 2012; **6**: 5 [PMID: 22846394]

5 **van der Pas MH**, Haglind E, Cuesta MA, Fürst A, Lacy AM, Hop WC, Bonjer HJ. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer (COLOR II): short-term outcomes of a randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 210-218 [PMID: 23395398 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70016-0]

6 **Lujan J**, Valero G, Hernandez Q, Sanchez A, Frutos MD, Parrilla P. Randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open surgery in patients with rectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2009; **96**: 982-989 [PMID: 19644973 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.6662]

7 **Motson RW**, Khan JS, Arulampalam TH, Austin RC, Lacey N, Sizer B. Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision following long course chemoradiotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 1753-1760 [PMID: 21533976 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1353-y]

8 **Hatala R**, Keitz S, Wyer P, Guyatt G. Tips for learners of evidence-based medicine: 4. Assessing heterogeneity of primary studies in systematic reviews and whether to combine their results. *CMAJ* 2005; **172**: 661-665 [PMID: 15738493 DOI: 10.1503/cmaj.1031920]

9 **Kang SB**, Park JW, Jeong SY, Nam BH, Choi HS, Kim DW, Lim SB, Lee TG, Kim DY, Kim JS, Chang HJ, Lee HS, Kim SY, Jung KH, Hong YS, Kim JH, Sohn DK, Kim DH, Oh JH. Open versus laparoscopic surgery for mid or low rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (COREAN trial): short-term outcomes of an open-label randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 637-645 [PMID: 20610322 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70131-5]

10 **Denost Q**, Laurent C, Paumet T, Quintane L, Martenot M, Rullier E. Laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer: preoperative radiochemotherapy versus surgery alone. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 1878-1883 [PMID: 22219008 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-2119-x]

11 **Kusano T**, Inomata M, Hiratsuka T, Akagi T, Ueda Y, Tojigamori M, Shiroshita H, Etoh T, Shiraishi N, Kitano S. A comparison of laparoscopic and open surgery following pre-operative chemoradiation therapy for locally advanced lower rectal cancer. *Jpn J Clin Oncol*

2014; **44**: 305-310 [PMID: 24596335]
12 **Seshadri RA**, Srinivasan A, Tapkire R, Swaminathan R. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiation: a matched case-control study of short-term outcomes. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 154-161 [PMID: 21792713]
13 **Saklani AP**, Lim DR, Hur H, Min BS, Baik SH, Lee KY, Kim NK. Robotic versus laparoscopic surgery for mid-low rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiation therapy: comparison of oncologic outcomes. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2013; **28**: 1689-1698 [PMID: 23948968 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-013-1756-z]
14 **Hu JJ**, Liang JW, Wang Z, Zhang XM, Zhou HT, Hou HR, Zhou ZX. Short-term outcomes of laparoscopically assisted surgery for rectal cancer following neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy: a single-center experience. *J Surg Res* 2014; **187**: 438-444 [PMID: 24252856 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2013.10.039]
15 **Denoya P**, Wang H, Sands D, Nogueras J, Weiss E, Wexner SD. Short-term outcomes of laparoscopic total mesorectal excision following neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 933-938 [PMID: 19851807 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0702-1]
16 **Lujan J**, Valero G, Biondo S, Espin E, Parrilla P, Ortiz H. Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer: results of a prospective multicentre analysis of 4,970 patients. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 295-302 [PMID: 22736289 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2444-8]
17 **McKay GD**, Morgan MJ, Wong SK, Gatenby AH, Fulham SB, Ahmed KW, Toh JW, Hanna M, Hitos K. Improved short-term outcomes of laparoscopic versus open resection for colon and rectal cancer in an area health service: a multicenter study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 42-50 [PMID: 22156866 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e318239341f]
18 **Laurent C**, Paumet T, Leblanc F, Denost Q, Rullier E. Intersphincteric resection for low rectal cancer: laparoscopic vs open surgery approach. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 35-41; discussion 42-43 [PMID: 21114752 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2010.02528.x]
19 **Patel CB**, Ragupathi M, Ramos-Valadez DI, Haas EM. A three-arm (laparoscopic, hand-assisted, and robotic) matched-case analysis of intraoperative and postoperative outcomes in minimally invasive colorectal surgery. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2011; **54**: 144-150 [PMID: 21228660 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181fec377]
20 **Li S**, Chi P, Lin H, Lu X, Huang Y. Long-term outcomes of laparoscopic surgery versus open resection for middle and lower rectal cancer: an NTCLES study. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 3175-3182 [PMID: 21487864 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1683-4]
21 **Kellokumpu IH**, Kairaluoma MI, Nuorva KP, Kautiainen HJ, Jantunen IT. Short- and long-term outcome following laparoscopic versus open resection for carcinoma of the rectum in the multimodal setting. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2012; **55**: 854-863 [PMID: 22810470 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e31825b9052]
22 **Greenblatt DY**, Rajamanickam V, Pugely AJ, Heise CP, Foley EF, Kennedy GD. Short-term outcomes after laparoscopic-assisted proctectomy for rectal cancer: results from the ACS NSQIP. *J Am Coll Surg* 2011; **212**: 844-854 [PMID: 21414814 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2011.01.005]
23 **da Luz Moreira A**, Mor I, Geisler DP, Remzi FH, Kiran RP. Laparoscopic resection for rectal cancer: a case-matched study. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 278-283 [PMID: 20585962 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1174-z]
24 **Baik SH**, Gincherman M, Mutch MG, Birnbaum EH, Fleshman JW. Laparoscopic vs open resection for patients with rectal cancer: comparison of perioperative outcomes and long-term survival. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2011; **54**: 6-14 [PMID: 21160307 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181fd19d0]
25 **Westerholm J**, Garcia-Osogobio S, Farrokhyar F, Cadeddu M, Anvari M. Midterm outcomes of laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer. *Surg Innov* 2012; **19**: 81-88 [PMID: 22604576 DOI: 10.1177/1553350611415868]
26 **Jefferies MT**, Evans MD, Hilton J, Chandrasekaran TV, Beynon J, Khot U. Oncological outcome after laparoscopic abdominoperineal excision of the rectum. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 967-971 [PMID: 22066511 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02882.x]
27 **Glancy DG**, Chaudhray BN, Greenslade GL, Dixon AR. Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision can be performed on a nonselective basis in patients with rectal cancer with excellent medium-term results. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 453-457 [PMID: 21689350 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02682.x]
28 **Lam HD**, Stefano M, Tran-Ba T, Tinton N, Cambier E, Navez B. Laparoscopic versus open techniques in rectal cancer surgery: a retrospective analysis of 121 sphincter-saving procedures in a single institution. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 454-462 [PMID: 20607562 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1191-y]
29 **Sartori CA**, Dal Pozzo A, Franzato B, Balduino M, Sartori A, Baiocchi GL. Laparoscopic total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: experience of a single center with a series of 174 patients. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 508-514 [PMID: 20607560 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-1202-z]
30 **Cheung HY**, Ng KH, Leung AL, Chung CC, Yau KK, Li MK. Laparoscopic sphincter-preserving total mesorectal excision: 10-year report. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13**: 627-631 [PMID: 20163425 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2010.02235.x]
31 **Park JS**, Choi GS, Lim KH, Jang YS, Jun SH. Robotic-assisted versus laparoscopic surgery for low rectal cancer: case-matched analysis of short-term outcomes. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 3195-3202 [PMID: 20589436 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1162-5]

P- Reviewer: Lorenzon L, Morino M, Wang SK **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.155

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 155-166
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Operative management of acute diverticulitis in immunosuppressed compared to immunocompetent patients: A systematic review

Ahmed Al-Khamis, Jad Abou Khalil, Nazi Torabi, Marie Demian, Abbas Kezouh, Philip H Gordon, Marylise Boutros

Ahmed Al-Khamis, Jad Abou Khalil, Marie Demian, Philip H Gordon, Marylise Boutros, Division of Colorectal Surgery, Jewish General Hospital, McGill University, Montreal, Quebec H3T 1E2, Canada
Nazi Torabi, Schulich Library of Science and Engineering, McGill University, Montreal, Quebec H3A 0C1, Canada
Abbas Kezouh, Department of Statistics and Epidemiology, Jewish General Hospital, Montreal, Quebec H3T 1E2, Canada
Author contributions: Al-Khamis A and Khalil JA made the substantial contributions to conception and design of the study, acquisition of data, and analysis and interpretation of data; drafting the article; Torabi N contributed to conception and design of the study, acquisition of data; making critical revisions related to important intellectual content of the manuscript; Demian M contributed to acquisition of data, drafting the article; Kezouh A contributed to review of the statistical methods; Gordon PH and Boutros M contributed to conception and design of the study, acquisition of data, and analysis and interpretation of data; making critical revisions related to important intellectual content of the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: We have no relevant disclosures.
Data sharing: Review protocol and dataset available from the corresponding author at mboutros@jgh.mcgill.ca. Consent was not required nor obtained but the presented data are anonymized and risk of identification is low.

Correspondence to: Marylise Boutros, MD, FRCS(C), Division of Colorectal Surgery, Jewish General Hospital, McGill University, 3755 Cote Ste Catherine G-314, Montreal, Quebec H3T 1E2, Canada. mboutros@jgh.mcgill.ca
Telephone: +1-514-3408222
Fax: +1-514-3407560
Received: October 9, 2014
Peer-review started: October 9, 2014
First decision: November 14, 2014
Revised: December 4, 2014
Accepted: February 4, 2015
Article in press: February 9, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To determine short and long-term outcomes following operative management of acute diverticulitis in immunosuppressed (IMS) compared to immunocompetent (IMC) patients.

METHODS: PRISMA guidelines were followed in conducting this systematic review. We searched PubMed (1946 to present), OVID MEDLINE(R) In-Process and Other Non-Indexed Citations, OVID MEDLINE(R) Daily and OVID MEDLINE(R) (1946 to present), EMBASE on OVID platform (1947 to present), CINAHL on EBSCO platform (1981 to present), and Cochrane Library using a systematic search strategy. There were no restrictions on publication date and language. We systematically reviewed all published cohort comparative studies, case-control studies, and randomized controlled trials that reported outcomes on operative management of acute episode of colonic diverticulitis in IMS in comparison to IMC patients.

RESULTS: Seven hundred and fifty-five thousand five hundred and eighty-three patients were included in this systematic review; of which 1478 were IMS and 754105 were IMC patients. Of the nine studies included there was one prospective cohort, seven retrospective cohorts, one retrospective case-control study, and no randomized controlled trials. With the exception of solid organ transplant patients, IMS patients appeared to be older than IMC when they presented with an acute

episode of diverticulitis. IMS patients presented with more severe acute diverticulitis and more insidious onset of symptoms than IMC patients. In the emergency setting, peritonitis was the main indication for operative intervention in both IMS and IMC patients. IMS patients were more likely to undergo Hartmann's procedure and less likely to undergo reconstructive procedures compared to IMC patients. Furthermore, IMS patients had higher morbidity and mortality rates in the emergency setting compared to IMC patients. In the elective settings, it appeared that reconstruction with primary anastomosis with or without a diverting loop stoma is the procedure of choice in the IMS patients and carried minimal morbidity and mortality equivalent to IMC patients.

CONCLUSION: Emergency operations for diverticulitis in IMS compared to IMC patients have higher morbidity and mortality, whereas, in the elective setting both groups have comparable outcomes.

Key words: Diverticular disease; Immunosuppression; Diverticulitis; Chemotherapy; Transplant; Steroids

Core tip: Immunosuppressed (IMS) patients present with more severe episodes of diverticulitis compared to immunocompetent patients and are at increased risk of an emergency operation. However, IMS patients have a vague disease presentation with insidious onset. The postoperative morbidity and mortality following emergency operations for diverticulitis is worse in the IMS patient population, whereas, in the elective setting, the morbidity and mortality is comparable to the general population.

Al-Khamis A, Abou Khalil J, Torabi N, Demian M, Kezouh A, Gordon PH, Boutros M. Operative management of acute diverticulitis in immunosuppressed compared to immunocompetent patients: A systematic review. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 155-166 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/155.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.155

INTRODUCTION

Acute diverticulitis is an increasingly common problem in Western countries and is managed non-operatively in most cases[1]. However, some cases do require operative intervention. As the indications for immunosuppressant medications continue to expand, and an increasing number of patients are immunosuppressed (IMS), the management of colonic diverticulitis in this patient population has become increasingly relevant. The appropriate time and type of management for colonic diverticulitis in the IMS remains a topic of controversy. IMS patients are thought to have a higher incidence of diverticulitis, more virulent disease, and more complicated recurrences than the immunocompetent (IMC) population. In turn, authors have suggested that IMS patients may require more aggressive operative management[2-5], including an elective sigmoid resection after a single episode of uncomplicated diverticulitis[6,7]. However, these recommendations are based on anecdotal experience or on single center retrospective studies. One qualitative systematic review[8] reported high morbidity and mortality in kidney transplant recipients and patients on chronic corticosteroid therapy with acute diverticulitis. The objective of our study was to determine the post-operative morbidity, mortality and long-term outcomes following an acute episode of colonic diverticulitis in IMS compared to IMC patients in the emergency and elective operative settings.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Inclusion criteria

Type of studies: All studies reporting on peri-operative outcomes following acute colonic diverticulitis with a comparative study design that included IMS and IMC populations were assessed for inclusion. Study designs such as randomized controlled trials, cohort comparative studies, or case control studies were included, whereas case series, case reports, and clinical guidelines were excluded (Figure 1).

Definition of acute diverticulitis

In the literature, various clinical, radiological and/or pathological findings were used to determine the diagnosis of acute diverticulitis. For this review, we relied on the individual studies' inclusion criteria to determine the diagnosis of acute diverticulitis. We included all studies that investigated colonic diverticulitis without excluding studies that had participants with ascending, transverse or descending colon diverticulitis.

Type of participants: Participants were considered IMS if one of the following conditions were met: (1) the patient was a solid organ transplant (SOT) (heart, liver, kidney, lung, and/or pancreas) recipient; (2) the patient was taking immunosuppressive medications; or (3) the patient was receiving chemotherapy for a concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm.

Type of intervention: Patients who underwent a procedure requiring general anesthesia in the operating room were considered as receiving operative intervention. All participants who were managed operatively for acute diverticulitis were considered eligible for inclusion. Studies, which did not include outcomes on operative management, were excluded.

Type of outcomes measured: In order to be included in the review, studies had to provide data on at least

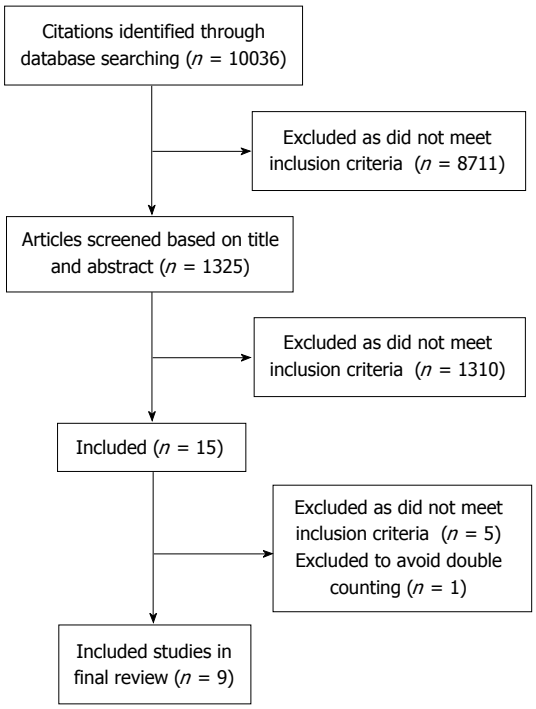


Figure 1 Flow chart.

one of the following postoperative outcomes: mortality, postoperative complications, length of hospital stay (LOS), stoma closure rate, quality of life (QoL), or cost.

Search strategy

PRISMA guidelines were followed in conducting this systematic review. We searched PubMed (1946 to present), OVID MEDLINE(R) In-Process and Other Non-Indexed Citations, OVID MEDLINE(R) Daily and OVID MEDLINE(R) (1946 to present), EMBASE on OVID platform (1947 to present), CINAHL on EBSCO platform (1981 to present), and Cochrane Library on August 12, 2013 using a systematic search strategy. The search was designed and carried out by (Torabi N), a librarian at McGill University. Individual strategies were developed for each database to accommodate for difference between subject headings and syntax among different databases. There were no restrictions on publication date and language. The final MEDLINE search strategy is provided in Table 1. In addition, we searched Clinicaltrials.gov to find possible clinical trials related to the research topic. Citation tracking (backward and forward) of selected studies using SCOPUS were conducted to locate any potentially relevant articles that had not been obtained in the original search. Abstracts were reviewed and relevant studies were identified. The identified studies were downloaded into EndNote 7.1X (Thomson Reuters, Philadelphia, PA), and duplicates were deleted. We also searched all registered clinical trials on clinicaltrials.gov and conference proceedings retrieved *via* EMBASE. We sent emails or letters to authors of abstracts published as podium presentations or posters that we deemed potential for inclusion, requesting information on unpublished data and ongoing studies. We also searched the bibliographies of all included studies and review papers to identify other potentially suitable studies.

Data collection and analysis

Selection of the studies: Two authors (Al-Khamis A/Abou Khalil J) independently examined the titles and abstracts of the articles identified in the searches as reporting potential relevant studies. From this initial assessment, we obtained full versions of all potential relevant articles. Any disagreements were resolved by a third author (Boutros M).

Data extraction and management: Data were extracted into data extraction forms by two authors (Al-Khamis A and Abou Khalil J). Any disagreements were resolved by a third author (Boutros M). For publications reporting data in more than one paper, both papers were obtained for full review, however data was extracted only from the most complete publication.

RESULTS

Characteristics of included studies

Using the search strategy specified in Table 1, 10036 citations were identified. The citations were reviewed by two reviewers (Al-Khamis A and Abou Khalil J), and 8711 citations were excluded because they did not include patients with acute colonic diverticulitis or did not include IMS patients. One thousand three hundred and twenty-five titles and abstracts were reviewed by the two reviewers, and 1310 were excluded because they were case reports, case series, review articles, clinical guidelines, or because the studies reported on medical management of acute diverticulitis or did not include peri-operative outcomes following operative management of acute diverticulitis. Fifteen full papers were reviewed by both reviewers, and 6 papers were excluded because of data duplication (1 paper) or non-comparative methodology. Thus, nine articles met inclusion criteria and were included in this review (Figure 1). Of the nine included studies, one study had a prospective cohort comparative design, seven studies used a retrospective comparative cohort design, and one study was a retrospective case-control study (Table 2). There were no randomized controlled trials.

The included studies were published between 1970 and 2014. Five studies were from centers in the United States[1,9-12], two from Spain[13,14], one from Germany[15], and one from Australia[16]. All studies were published in English except Hesterberg *et al*[15], which was published in German.

The total number of patients who were managed operatively in the included studies was 755583 patients, of those, 1478 were IMS and 754105 were IMC (Table 2). The follow-up period was not reported in

Table 1 MEDLINE-OVID search strategy

1 Colonic diverticulitis.mp. or diverticulitis, colonic/
2 Colonic diverticulosis.mp. or diverticulosis, colonic/
3 Colonic diverticulum.mp. or diverticulum, colon/
4 Colonic diverticula.mp.
5 (Colon diverticulosis or colon diverticulitis or colon diverticula or colon diverticulum).mp.
6 Diverticulitis/su [Surgery]
7 (Diverticulosis or diverticulitis).mp.
8 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or 7
9 HIV infections/or acquired immunodeficiency syndrome/or sexually transmitted diseases, viral/
10 Immunologic deficiency syndromes/
11 HIV infections.ab,ti.
12 "HIV/aids".ab,ti.
13 Aids positive.ab,ti.
14 HIV positive.ab,ti.
15 Chemoprevention/or chemoradiotherapy/or chemotherapy, adjuvant/
16 Chemotherapy.mp.
17 Neutropenia/or Neutropenia.mp. or febrile neutropenia/or chemotherapy-induced febrile neutropenia/
18 Corticosteroid.ab,ti.
19 Steroid.ab,ti.
20 Radiation oncology/mt (methods)
21 Radiation/ae, th (Adverse Effects, Therapy)
22 Exp organ transplantation
23 Organ transplant[a].ab,ti.
24 [(Heart or Kidney or Liver or Pancreas or Lung) adj transplant[a]].ab,ti.
25 Immunodeficient[a].ab,ti.
26 (Solid adj3 transplant).ab,ti.
27 Lymphocyte depletion.mp. or lymphocyte depletion/
28 Graft enhancement, immunologic/
29 Graft enhancement.mp.
30. Desensitization, immunologic/
31 Hyposensitization therapy.mp.
32 (Anti-Rejection Therap[a] or Antirejection Therap[a]).mp.
33 Immunosuppress[a].mp. or immunosuppressive agents/
34 Immunocompromised host.mp. or immunocompromised host
35 Immunocompromised.mp.
36 Exp immune tolerance/
37 Immunosuppression.mp. or Immunosuppression/
38 6-mercaptopurine.mp. or 6-Mercaptopurine/
39 Methotrexate.mp. or methotrexate
40 Methylprednisolone/or methyl-prednisolone.mp./
41 Basiliximab.mp.
42 Mycophenolate.mp.
43 Mycophenolic acid.mp. or mycophenolic acid
44 Copaxone.mp.
45 Exp prednisolone/
46 Cyclophosphamide/or ifosfamide/
47 Cyclophosphamide.mp.
48 Prednisone.mp. or prednisone/
49 Cyclosporine.mp. or cyclosporine/
50 Remicade.mp.
51 Daclizumab.mp.
52 Sirolimus.mp. or Sirolimus/
53 Dexamethasone.mp. or exp Dexamethasone/
54 Tacrolimus.mp. or tacrolimus/
55 Interferons.ab,ti.
56 humira.mp.
57 Imuran.mp. or azathioprine/
58 CellCept.mp.
59 Infliximab.mp.
60. Etanercept.mp.
61 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 or 18 or 19 or 20 or 21 or 22 or 23 or 24 or 25 or 26 or 27 or 28 or 29 or 30 or 31 or 32 or 33 or 34 or 35 or 36 or 37 or 38 or 39 or 40 or 41 or 42 or 43 or 44 or 45 or 46 or 47 or 48 or 49 or 50 or 51 or 52 or 53 or 54 or 55 or 56 or 57 or 58 or 59 or 60
62 Postoperative complications/or surgical wound dehiscence/or surgical wound infection/
63 Perioperativeoutcome[a].mp.
64 Prognosis[a]/or treatment outcome/or treatment failure/
65 Peri-operative outcomes.mp.
66 Perioperative period.mp. or exp perioperative period/
67 Postoperative outcomes.mp.
68 Sepsis.mp. or exp sepsis/
69 Septicemia[a].mp.
70 Pyemia[a].mp.
71 Exp patient acuity/
72 Failure to rescue.mp.
73 (Surgical adj2 infection[a]).mp.
74 (Surgery adj5 infection[a]).mp.
75 Anastomosis, surgical/or anastomosis leak.mp
76 Length of stay.mp. or "length of stay"/
77 Mortality/or "cause of death"/or survival rate/
78 (Mortality or surgery).ab,ti.
79 Colectomy.mp. or colectomy/
80 (Hartmann's or Hartmanns or Hartmann).ab,ti.
81 Laparotomy.mp. or laparotomy/
82 Bowel resection.mp.
83 Colostomy.mp. or colostomy/
84 Ileostomy.mp. or ileostomy/
85 Anterior resection.mp.
86 Colon resection.mp.
87 Recurrence[a]/
88 Recurrence.ab,ti.
89 Acute kidney injury.mp. or acute kidney injury/
90 Acute renal failure.mp.
91 Complications.ab,ti.
92 Implications.ab,ti.
93 62 or 63 or 64 or 65 or 66 or 67 or 68 or 69 or 70 or 71 or 72 or 73 or 74 or 75 or 76 or 77 or 78 or 79 or 80 or 81 or 82 or 83 or 84 or 85 or 86 or 87 or 88 or 89 or 90 or 91 or 92
94 Immunocompetent.mp.
95 Immunocompetence.mp. or immunocompetence/
96 (Immune adj competenc[a]).mp.
97 (Immuno adj competenc[a]).mp.
98 Immunocompetency.ab,ti.
99 (Nonimmunocompromised or nonimmunocompromized).ab,ti.
100 (Non adj immunocompromi?ed).ab,ti.
101 (Immunologic[a] adj Competence).ab,ti.
102 (Immune adj system).ab,ti.
103 (Control or comparison or compare or groups or normal or different or difference).ab,ti.
104 Comparative studies.ab,pt,ti.
105 94 or 95 or 96 or 97 or 98 or 99 or 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104
106 8 and 61 and 93 and 105
107 (Case Reports or Practice Guideline or Guideline or case study).pt.
108 Case series.ab,ti.
109 Case report.ab,ti.
110 107 or 108 or 109
111 106 not 110

[a]Organ transplant in the search strategy refers to solid organ transplantation which include; the pancreas, lung, heart, liver and kidney; pt: Publication type; ab: Abstract; ti: Title.

most studies; however in the two studies reporting the length of follow-up, the mean was 81[13] and 57[16] mo.

Three studies limited the IMS group to SOT patients[1,12,17], while four other studies[10,13-15] included SOT among other causes of immunosuppression in the IMS group. Canter *et al*[9] only included patients on long-term steroids in their IMS group (Table 3). Definition of immunosuppressants listed in each article is included in Table 3.

Demographic data

The age range of patients who presented with acute

Table 2 Characteristics of the included studies

Ref.	Year	Country	Study design	No. of patients[1]		Total *n*	Follow-up period (mo)
				IMS	IMC		
Canter *et al*[9]	1970	United States	Retrospective	11	38	49	NR
Perkins *et al*[10]	1984	United States	Retrospective	10	31	41	NR
Tyau *et al*[11]	1991	United States	Retrospective	23	55	78	NR
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	1994	Germany	Retrospective	12	80	92	NR
Qasabian *et al*[16]	2004	Australia	Retrospective	8	16	24	Mean 57 (SD NR)
Reshef *et al*[1]	2012	United States	Case control	51	51	102	NR
Biondo *et al*[13]	2012	Spain	Prospective	61	254	315	Mean 81.62 ± 67.62 SD
Halabi *et al*[12]	2013	United States	Retrospective	1249	753517	754766	NR
Golda *et al*[14]	2014	Spain	Retrospective	53	63	116	NR
Total				1478	754105	755583	

[1]Number of patients managed operatively. NR: Not reported; SD: Standard deviation; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent.

Table 3 Definition of immunosuppression

Ref.	Definition
Canter *et al*[9]	Long-term steroid use
Perkins *et al*[10]	Renal transplant
	Glomerulonephritis on steroids
	Lymphoma
	Long-term steroid use
Tyau *et al*[11]	Long-term steroid use
	Concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm/ chemotherapy
	Malnutrition
	Uremia
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	Long-term steroid use
	Concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm/ chemotherapy
	Azathioprine
	Iatrogenic leucopenia
Qasabian *et al*[16]	Heart and lung transplant
Biondo *et al*[13]	Concurrent history of immunosuppressant
	Solid organ transplant
	Concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm
	Emphysema
	Concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm/ chemotherapy
	Collagen vascular disease, arthritis
	Chronic pulmonary fibrosis
	Congenital or acquired immunodeficiency syndromes
	End stage renal failure (hemodialysis)
Reshef *et al*[1]	Liver transplant
	Heart transplant
	Lung transplant
	Renal transplant
Halabi *et al*[12]	Renal transplant
Golda *et al*[14]	Concurrent history of immunosuppressant
	Long-term steroid use
	Concurrent extracolonic malignant neoplasm
	End stage renal failure (hemodialysis, peridialysis)

Table 4 Age at episode of acute diverticulitis

Ref.	IMS (yr)	IMC (yr)
Canter *et al*[9]	60	58
Perkins *et al*[10]	NR (37-83)	64 (37-93)
Tyau *et al*[11]	64 ± 12.9 SD	59.1 ± 14.7
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	63 (38-90)	NR
Qasabian *et al*[16]	54 (41-69)	66 (45-91)
Reshef *et al*[1]	55.9 ± 9.3 SD	62.3 ± 11.3 SD
Biondo *et al*[13]	68.4 ± 11.7 SD	61 ± 15.1 SD
Halabi *et al*[12]	59 (51-67)	65 (55-77)
Golda *et al*[14]	68.5 ± 10.6 SD	59.7 ± 16.4 SD

NR: Not reported; SD: Standard deviation; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent.

diverticulitis was between 37 to 80 years old in the IMS and between 37 to 77 years old in the IMC groups (Table 4). Biondo *et al*[13] compared IMS to IMC at presentation and reported that the IMS group had significantly worse American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) scores and were significantly older (mean age of 68.4 *vs* 61 years in IMC patients, $P < 0.00$). Golda *et al*[14] also reported their IMS to be older and have worse ASA scores. Qasabian *et al*[16] also observed that the IMS population was significantly older than their IMC group. On the other hand, in the studies including mainly SOT patients in the IMS group[1,12,15], IMS patients were younger than the IMC patients.

Reshef *et al*[1] matched cases to controls with regard to timing of operation, ASA status, gender, cardiac and pulmonary comorbidities, diabetes status, and type of operative procedure, so these preoperative comorbidities could not be assessed. As with the other publications on SOT patients, the IMS group in this case matched study was significantly younger.

Halabi *et al*[12] reported IMS patients were more anemic, more likely to have chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, chronic liver disease, peripheral vascular disease, congestive heart failure, and hypertension, more likely to be smokers, diabetic, obese, and female, and had worse comorbidity scores.

Overall, in the included studies, it appears that IMS patients tend to be older than the general population when they present with an episode of acute diverticulitis, except in the SOT population, who are younger than the general population at the time of presentation. Previous studies have reported SOT patients to be relatively young compared to general population when they present with acute diverticulitis[18,19].

Clinical presentation

Clinical presentation at the time of presentation with an acute episode of diverticulitis was only described

in 4 of the 9 included studies[9,10,13,14]. Biondo *et al*[13] found that IMS patients had significantly more severe acute first (*de novo*) episodes of diverticulitis (defined as diverticulitis with abscess or perforation and/or high Hinchey peritonitis grade) compared to IMC patients. They attributed a significantly higher emergency operation rate in the IMS group compared to the IMC group (31.3% *vs* 21%, $P = 0.004$) to this significant difference in clinical presentation.

Golda *et al*[14] also reported a more severe disease presentation in the IMS compare to the IMC group, though it was not clear if IMS had previous episodes of diverticulitis. They also reported no difference in Hinchey peritonitis grade between the two groups. However, they found that the mean peritonitis severity score, a scoring system that allows stratification of patients according to mortality risk, was significantly higher in the IMS compared to the IMC group; 11.1 ± 1.3 SD *vs* 8.1 ± 1.7 SD, ($P < 0.001$) respectively.

Perkins *et al*[10] described a difference in clinical presentation between the IMS and IMC patients. IMS patients were less likely to present with abdominal pain and tenderness on clinical examination, while they were more likely to present with fever and hypotension compared to IMC patients. Canter *et al*[9] were the only study to look at the relationship between location of the perforation and immune status, and found no significant difference.

Overall, two studies found that in the emergency setting, IMS patients presented with more severe episodes of acute diverticulitis. Furthermore, one study highlighted that the insidious presentation with atypical symptoms and signs in IMS patients along with a more severe disease makes the IMS population much more challenging than IMC patients[10]. Thus, when IMS patients present with vague abdominal symptoms, fever or hypotension, the evaluating surgeon should have high level of suspicion for an acute abdominal process such as diverticulitis.

Indication for operative management

The indication for operative management in patients with complications of diverticulitis was specified in six studies[1,9-11,14,15], while the indications for operative management in the remainder of patients was not clearly specified in any study.

The most frequently reported indication for operative approach in the emergency setting in the IMS group was peritonitis and it was reported in 5 studies[1,9-11,15]. The other frequently reported indication for operative approach was abscess and it was reported in four studies[9-11,15]. Further indications for operative intervention included fistula[10,11] and bowel obstruction[1,10].

Three studies[9-11] reported the indication for operative management in the IMC patients. The most common reported indications for operative management in this group were peritonitis and fistula formation, both reported by three studies[9-11]. Other indications for operative management in the IMC patients included abscess[10,11] and recurrence[10].

Summing all included studies, it appears that peritonitis and perforation followed by intra-abdominal abscess are the main indications for operative management in both IMS and IMC patients. Tyau *et al*[11] specifically examined the difference in diverticular perforation rate as the indication for surgery in IMS and IMC patients, and found that IMS patients have a significantly higher rate of diverticular perforations requiring surgery (42.5% *vs* 14.2%, $P < 0.05$). In addition, we observed that fistula formation was reported more frequently as an indication for operative management in the IMC compared to the IMS group. This late complication of diverticulitis, which was more frequently reported in IMC patients, may be attributed to the ability of IMC patients to have more walled off and localized perforation rather than a free perforation.

Choice of operative management

Four studies included data on the operative approach[1,9,10,13]. Three studies[9,10,13] only included laparotomies, while Reshef *et al*[1] reported that 10% of operations were performed laparoscopically.

The choice of operative procedure in the emergency setting was reported in eight studies (Table 5). In each of these studies, the choice of operative intervention was based on the surgeon's preference and experience rather than institutional protocols. The most common emergency operation performed in the IMS group was Hartmann's procedure (HP), followed by resection and primary anastomosis (RPA) with a diverting loop stoma (DLS). The most common emergency operation in the IMC patients was also HP, however HP was far less frequent in IMC compared to IMS patients. The second most common operative intervention in the IMC population was RPA with DLS, similar to IMS patients but far more frequently. We also noted that RPA without diversion was rarely performed, however it was more frequently reported in IMC patients. Biondo *et al*[13] and Golda *et al*[14] both individually reported that IMS patients underwent significantly more HP and less RPA with or without DLS than IMC patients. On the other hand, Tyau *et al*[11] and Reshef *et al*[1] found no significant difference. Overall, from the data in the included studies, we found that in the emergency settings, IMS patients are more likely to undergo HP than a reconstructive procedure.

HP has been historically and still considered to be a life-saving procedure at the time of an acute severe attack of diverticulitis. However, in the general population, this operation is notably associated with a high permanent stoma rate[20] and complication rate for reversal[20]. Given the more difficult post-operative recovery in IMS compared to IMC, the observed high morbidity rate following emergency surgery in this review is expected.

Table 5 Choice of operations

Ref.		Emergency									Elective			
	Immune status (IMS/IMC)	Total *n*	Stoma and drainage	HP	RPA	RPA with DLS	Subtotal colectomy with anastomosis	Subtotal colectomy with ileostomy	Drainage only	Unknown	Total *n*	RPA	RPA with DLS	Unknown
Canter *et al*[9]	IMS	9	8						1[2]	0	2	2		0
	IMC	22	NR						NR	22	16	NR		16
Perkins *et al*[10]	IMS	10[1]	5	3	0				1	0				
	IMC	31	11	7	12				1	0				
Tyau *et al*[11]	IMS	23	4	17	1	1			0	0				
	IMC	55	8	27	14	3			3	0				
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	IMS	8	1	5	1	1				0	4	4		0
	IMC	36	NR	NR	NR	NR				36	44	NR		44
Qasabian *et al*[16]	IMS	8	6			2				0				
	IMC	16	13			3								
Reshef *et al*[1]	IMS	37	1	28	0	8				0	14	5	9	0
	IMC	37	0	28	1	8				0	14	NR	NR	14
Biondo *et al*[13]	IMS	57		37		11	3	1		5	4			
	IMC	182[2]		56		97	5	3		21	72			
Halabi *et al*[12]	IMS													
	IMC													
Golda *et al*[14]	IMS	53		42	2	9				0				
	IMC	63		15	39	9				0				
Total *n*	IMS	205	25	132	4	32	3	1	2	5	20	11	9	0
	IMC	442	32	133	66	120	5	3	4	79	132	NR	NR	67

[1]One intra-operative death; [2]With subsequent right hemicolectomy. HP: Hartmann procedure; RPA: Resection and primary anastomosis; RPA with DLS: Resection and primary anastomosis with diverting loop stoma; NR: Not reported; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent.

Only three studies included elective operations for diverticulitis (Table 6). Resection and primary anastomosis with or without a protective ileostomy was the only procedure performed in IMS patients. Elective operative procedures were not described for any IMC patients in the included studies.

Post-operative morbidity

Overall morbidity following emergency operations for diverticulitis in the IMS patients was 65% compared to 40% in IMC patients. Individual complications following emergency operations for acute diverticulitis were reported in four studies (Table 7). The most common reported complication in the IMS patients was wound infection followed by sepsis and intra-abdominal collections. Other complications in this group included postoperative ileus and cardiopulmonary complications. Of the seven studies including SOT patients, Hesterberg *et al*[15] were the only authors that reported on graft rejection following emergency operations for diverticulitis. They reported this complication in one of the five SOT recipients included in their study. In the IMC population, wound infection was the most commonly reported complication. Other postoperative complications in the IMC group are listed in Table 7.

Perkins *et al*[10] examined the relationship between the choice of operative intervention and the occurrence of postoperative complications and identified more complications in the IMS patients compared to the IMC patients when drainage and colostomy was performed, but not when resection and colostomy was performed.

In summary, all studies reported a higher complication rate in IMS patients following operations in the emergency setting compared to IMC patients in the same setting. This increased morbidity rate is likely due to several factors. Firstly, IMS patients tend to present with more insidious disease onset that may result in significant delays in diagnosis. Secondly, this group of patients tends to have more significant comorbidities reflected by worse ASA classification. Thirdly, the IMS state itself is associated with

Table 6 Morbidity and mortality in elective setting

Ref.	Immune status (IMS/IMC)	Total *n*	Mortality *n* (%)	Morbidity *n* (%)	Anastomotic leak *n* (%)	Abdominal collection/ Abscess *n* (%)	Wound infection *n* (%)	Sepsis *n* (%)	Reoperation *n* (%)	Post op bleed *n* (%)	Post op ileus *n* (%)	Readmission *n* (%)
Canter *et al*[9]	IMS	2	0									
	IMC	16	NR									
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	IMS	4	0									
	IMC	44	0									
Qasabian *et al*[16]												
[1]Reshef *et al*[1]	IMS	14	0	4 (29)	1 (7)	0	3 (20)		1 (7)	0	1 (7)	4 (24)
	IMC	14	0	4 (29)	1 (7)	1 (7)	2 (13)		2 (14)	1 (7)	1 (7)	2 (14)
[2]Biondo *et al*[13]	IMS	4	0	4 (100)	1 (25)		1 (25)		2 (50)			
	IMC	72	0	4 (5)	0		3 (4)		1 (1)			
Halabi *et al*[12]	IMS	471	3 (0.6)									
	IMC	404623	4856 (1)									

[1]Some patients had two or more complications; [2]3 morbidities of which 5 are not reported. NR: Not reported; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent.

a significant deficiency to mount a response against infection, and an inherent detrimental effect on the ability for tissue to heal following an operation[21,22].

In addition, it appeared that potentially life-threatening complications including sepsis, intra-abdominal collections and cardiopulmonary complications were more common in IMS compared to IMC patients. We did not observe differences in the distribution of other major complications between the IMS and IMC populations. Wound infections, postoperative ileus, postoperative bleed and renal complications appeared to be comparable in both populations.

Two studies examined postoperative morbidity after elective operations in patients with previous history of acute diverticulitis (Table 6). The sample size for the IMS and IMC subgroups that underwent elective operations in both these studies was small. The rate of anastomotic leak, wound infection and reoperation were the most common reported complications and appeared equivalent in IMS and IMC patients. Other postoperative complications are listed in Table 6. Data regarding complications following elective surgery in the IMS compared to the IMC population are lacking. However, from the available literature, it does not appear that there is any significant difference in complication rate between IMS and IMC groups following elective operations for diverticulitis, as both appear low.

Post-operative mortality

Following emergency surgery for diverticulitis, the mortality rate ranged from 1% to 39% in the IMS groups and 0 to 16% in the IMC groups. The mean mortality of all included studies was 11% for IMS patients and 5% for IMC patients, respectively.

All studies, but three[10,15,16] reported significantly higher mortality in the IMS compared to IMC patients. Two studies reported zero mortality in the IMC cohorts[1,10]. The majority of studies did not report the cause of mortality. Only two studies[10,11] included a description regarding the cause of death. Perkins *et al*[10] hypothesized that one case of death in an IMS patient in their study was due to a delay in diagnosis with resultant sepsis and intraoperative death. Tyau *et al*[11] reported that nearly all deaths in their study were secondary to sepsis.

Subgroup analysis of the data in Golda *et al*[14] showed significantly higher mortality associated with HP compared to reconstructive procedures. As this is a retrospective study, this finding is likely confounded by significantly worse disease in the patients who underwent HP compared to RPA.

Mortality following elective operations for diverticular disease patients was reported in five studies (Table 6). Three of the four studies reported no mortality in both IMS and IMC patients following elective resections, while one study reported no statistically significant difference in mortality between IMS and IMC patients[12] (0.6% *vs* 1% respectively, $P = 0.14$).

Data regarding mortality in IMS patients following elective operations was scarce. However, it appears that mortality in elective operations for diverticular disease in

Table 7 Morbidity and mortality in the emergency setting

Ref.	Immune status (IMS/IMC)	Total *n*	Mortality *n* (%)	Morbidity *n* (%)[2]	Anastomotic leak *n* (%)	Abdominal collection/ Abscess *n* (%)	Wound infection *n* (%)	Sepsis *n* (%)	Post-op ileus *n* (%)	Post-op bleed *n* (%)	Renal failure *n* (%)	Reoperation *n* (%)	Arrythmias/cardiac decompensation *n* (%)	Pulmonary infection/ Insufficient *n* (%)	Others *n* (%)
Canter *et al*[9]	IMS	9	3 (33)	3 (33)	3 (33)										
	IMC	22	NR	NR	0										
[1]Perkins *et al*[10]	IMS	10	1 (10)	7 (70)		3 (30)	4 (40)	5 (50)							
	IMC	31	0	NR		2 (7)	5 (16)	1 (3)							
Tyau *et al*[11]	IMS	23	9 (39)	15 (65)											
	IMC	55	1 (2)	13 (24)											
Hesterberg *et al*[15]	IMS	8	1 (13)												
	IMC	36	NR												
Qasabian *et al*[16]															
Reshef *et al*[1]	IMS	37	7 (19)	19 (51)	1 (3)	2 (5)	3 (8)		3 (8)	4 (11)			1 (3)	2 (5)	DVT; IMS, 3 IMC, 2 UTI; IMS, 2 Readmission; IMS, 5 IMC, 4
	IMC	37	0	9 (24)	1 (3)	3 (8)	5 (14)		2 (5)	1 (3)			0	2 (5)	
Biondo *et al*[13]	IMS	57	19 (33)												
	IMC	182	29 (16)												
Halabi *et al*[12]	IMS	778	57 (0.7)												
	IMC	348894	17130 (5)												
Golda *et al*[14]	IMS	53	14 (26)	42 (79)	1 (2)	11 (21)	22 (42)	13 (25)	10 (19)	0	7 (13)	16 (30)	9 (17)	11 (21)	
	IMC	63	4 (6)	40 (64)	3 (5)	4 (6)	30 (48)	7 (11)	8 (13)	1 (2)[3]	5 (8)	5 (8)	2 (3)	7 (11)	
Total	IMS	975	111/ 975 (11)	86/132 (65)	5	16	29	18	13	4	7	16	10	13	
	IMC	349320	17164/ 349320 (5)	62/155 (40)	4	9	40	8	10	2	5	5	2	9	

[1]Some patients had 2 or more complications; [2]5 studies reported overall morbidity; [3]Gastrointestinal bleed. DVT: Deep vein thrombosis; UTI: Urinary tract infection; NR: Not reported; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent.

the IMS population is comparably low to IMC patients.

Length of hospital stay

Length of hospital stay was poorly reported in the included studies (Table 8). Only two studies included LOS following operations in the emergency setting[1,14]. Golda *et al*[14] found that IMS patients had significantly longer hospital stay compared to IMC patients following emergency operations (mean days 24.8 ± 25.2 SD *vs* 15.5 ± 10.5 SD, $P = 0.002$). Reshef *et al*[1] also found similar trends though it was not statistically significant (mean 19 d IMS *vs* 13 d IMC, $P = 0.1$).

Similarly, only two studies reported LOS following elective resections for diverticulitis[1,13]. Both studies observed a trend towards longer hospital stay in the IMS compared to IMC patients.

From the limited existing data, it appears that IMS patients tend to stay longer, especially following emergency operations for diverticular disease.

Table 8 Length of hospital stay in the emergency and elective settings

Ref.	Immune Status (IMS/IMC)	LOS in ER setting (d)	LOS in elective setting (d)
Reshef *et al*[1]	IMS	19.3	9.6
	IMC	9.4	6.5
Biondo *et al*[13]	IMS	NR	19.3 ± 13.6 SD
	IMC	NR	9.4 ± 6.8 SD
Golda *et al*[14]	IMS	24.8 ± 25.2 SD	
	IMC	15.5 ± 10.5	

SD: Standard deviation; NR: Not reported; LOS: Length of hospital stay; IMS: Immunosuppressed; IMC: Immunocompetent; ER: Emergency.

Long-term outcomes

Stoma closure: Only one study compared stoma closure and complication rates in IMS and IMC patients[1]. They found that there was no significant difference in the interval between stoma creation and stoma closure in IMS and IMC patients (5.4 mo ± 2.9 SD *vs* 6.1 mo ± 3.4 SD respectively, $P = 0.23$). Furthermore, permanent stoma rates were similar between IMS and IMC patients (7 *vs* 8 patients, $P = 0.7$). Moreover, postoperative morbidity after all types of stoma closure was similar (16% IMS *vs* 17% IMC patients, $P = 1$). Another study reported that three of the 12 IMS patients eventually underwent stoma closure[15]. As this data represents a small sample size, it is difficult to draw any conclusions. Furthermore, it is known that Hartmann's reversal is associated with a far greater complication rate compared to ileostomy closure. Larger studies, which make this distinction, will shed more light on the complications following stoma closure in IMS and IMC patients, particularly following Hartmann's reversal.

QoL: No studies reported data about QoL following emergency or elective operations in the IMS compared to IMC patient populations.

Cost

Though an increasingly important outcome, cost was not a reported outcome in any of the included studies.

Non-operative management

Though the inclusion criteria for this systematic review were patients who underwent an operation for acute diverticulitis, few of the included studies also commented on non-operative management. As there is increasing interest in this treatment option, we have summarized the available literature.

Three studies reported data on some aspect of their non-operative management of acute diverticulitis in IMS patients[10,11,13]. Tyau *et al*[11] reported that they used non-operative management more frequently in IMC (67%) compared to IMS patients (42.5%). The severity of diverticulitis and the presence of complications secondary to diverticulitis were not reported for this subset of patients. In 1984, Perkins *et al*[10] reported that none of their IMS patients had successful medical therapy compared to 76% of the IMC group. Again, the severity of diverticulitis and the presence of complications secondary to diverticulitis were not reported for this subset of patients.

Biondo *et al*[13] was the first study to examine the risk of recurrence necessitating emergency operations in IMS patients following successful non-operative management of diverticulitis. After excluding patients who had an operation during or after the first episode, 107 IMS patients and 657 IMC patients were prospectively followed for recurrence. There was no significant difference in overall recurrence rate between the IMS and IMC patients (21.5% IMS *vs* 20.5%, respectively, $P = 0.82$). They also observed that a severe first episode (defined as abscess or perforation) in the IMS group was associated with a higher recurrence rate, and shorter interval to the first episode of recurrence of acute diverticulitis (median 3.3 mo in IMS *vs* 9 mo in IMC, $P = 0.01$). However, there was no significant difference in the rate of emergency operation for recurrence (only 17.4% IMS patients *vs* 15% IMC patients, $P = 0.77$). The mean follow up for IMS and IMC patients was 82 and 65 mo respectively. As in the previously mentioned studies, Biondo *et al*[13] also reported that IMC patients were more often treated with non-operative management compared to IMS patients.

Overall, it appears that IMS patients are less likely to be managed non-operatively compared to IMC patients. Though based on a small subgroup, Biondo *et al*[13] observed that IMS patients who are successfully managed non-operatively following a severe episode of diverticulitis are not at increased risk of emergency operations for future recurrences.

DISCUSSION

To date, this is the only systematic review comparing outcomes of operative management in IMS and IMC patients in both elective and emergency settings. Overall, we observed a worse disease severity for IMS compared to IMC patients with acute diverticulitis. Furthermore, IMS patients were more likely to fail non-operative management, undergo a HP, require a longer hospitalization, suffer complications or die following emergency operative management.

In this systematic review, we observed a higher morbidity and mortality rate following emergency surgery in the IMS compared to the IMC population. On the other hand, it appears that the morbidity and mortality associated with elective operations for both groups are low and comparable. This beckons the question whether IMS patients should be routinely offered an elective resection following a first episode of diverticulitis in order to avoid an emergency surgery. Interestingly, Biondo *et al*[13] report a similar rate of emergency operations for recurrence in IMS and IMC patients. Therefore, it seems that IMS patients are

not at higher risk of recurrence requiring emergency surgery, but the morbidity and mortality for recurrence managed operatively is not known and may be significantly higher than in IMC patients.

Limitations of the study

Despite a rigorous and inclusive search methodology, the collected available literature regarding diverticulitis in the IMS population mainly included retrospective studies with a small number of patients, from a single institution, and lacked any randomized controlled trials. In an attempt to reduce the risk of bias and heterogeneity, we only included comparative cohorts and case control studies and excluded all case series, case reports, and clinical guidelines. Nonetheless, the studies available for inclusion were mostly retrospective, without clearly specified a priori sample size/power calculations and had missing data. Thus, our results are fraught with the limitations of the original data, including information and recall bias. Furthermore, this systematic review is based on populations from the developed world where advanced peri-operative support is readily available; thus these results may not be generalizable to less developed hospital systems. Larger, multi-institutional prospective studies are required to address the optimal timing and indication for operative intervention following an episode of acute diverticulitis in this challenging population.

COMMENTS

Background

Acute diverticulitis is a common problem in western societies and is managed non-operatively in most cases. The appropriate type and timing of management in immunosuppressed (IMS) patients remains a topic of controversy. Some authors have suggested that IMS patients may require more aggressive operative management, including an elective colonic surgical resection after a single episode of acute diverticulitis. However, these recommendations are based on anecdotal experience or on single center retrospective studies.

Research frontiers

The current research goal is to investigate outcomes following operative management of colonic diverticulitis in IMS compared to immunocompetent (IMC) patients who present with a history of acute diverticulitis in both emergency and elective settings.

Innovations and breakthroughs

As the indications for immunosuppressant medications continue to expand, and an increasing number of patients are IMS, the appropriate type and time of management of acute diverticulitis in this patient population has become increasingly relevant. IMS patients are thought to have a higher incidence of diverticulitis, more virulent disease, and more complicated recurrences than the IMC patients. To date there is scarcity of data on the outcomes following operative management of colonic diverticulitis in IMS patients. In an attempt to produce a robust review article, the authors conducted an exhaustive systematic search of the literature and included the best available conducted comparative studies to form the basis of our findings. They observed that IMS patients who underwent a colectomy for acute diverticulitis in the emergency setting were more likely to present with severe disease, fail non-operative management, undergo salvage surgical procedures, stay longer in hospital, have more complications and to die compared to IMC patients. However, in following a colectomy for acute diverticulitis in the elective setting, the authors observed that IMS patients have less complications and a lower risk of death, that is comparable to IMC patients. This beckons the question whether IMS patients should be routinely offered an elective resection following a first episode of diverticulitis in the emergency setting in order to avoid an emergency surgery in subsequent attacks. Larger, multi-institutional prospective studies are required to address the actual incidence of recurrence in the IMS population, and optimal timing and indication for operative intervention following an episode of acute diverticulitis in this challenging population, as most current studies are limited by a retrospective design and limited sample size.

Applications

Emergency operations for diverticulitis in IMS compared to IMC patients are associated with increased morbidity and mortality, whereas; in the elective setting both groups have similar outcomes. These findings shed a light on whether elective surgical colon resection should be offered to IMS patients following successful non-operative management of an acute episode of diverticulitis. Elective resection of the diseased colon segment will spare these patients the increased risk of complications and death associated with emergency operation.

Terminology

Acute diverticulitis, refers to acute inflammation of colonic diverticulosis. Diverticulosis, which commonly occurs in the sigmoid segment of colon, is outpocketing of colonic mucosa and submucosa through weaknesses in the colon wall. IMS patients are those who have undergone a solid organ transplant such as lung/heart/liver/kidney and pancreatic transplants, or patients on immunosuppressive medications such as steroids or chemotherapy. IMC patients are patients from the general population who are not on immunosuppressive medications.

Peer-review

This manuscript seems to include the largest series on this topic. The authors reviewed several large studies and conducted a meta-analysis of the topic. They addressed several aspects, including demographic data, clinical presentation, indication and choice of operation, post-operative morbidity and mortality, length of hospital stay, long-term outcome and non-operative management. The analysis is detailed. Despite the limitations of the available literature, the results are reliable. The limitations of the study are inevitable and acceptable.

REFERENCES

1 **Reshef A**, Stocchi L, Kiran RP, Flechner S, Budev M, Quintini C, Remzi FH. Case-matched comparison of perioperative outcomes after surgical treatment of sigmoid diverticulitis in solid organ transplant recipients versus immunocompetent patients. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 1546-1552 [PMID: 22564266 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2012.03077.x]

2 **Ambrosetti P**, Robert JH, Witzig JA, Mirescu D, Mathey P, Borst F, Rohner A. Acute left colonic diverticulitis in young patients. *J Am Coll Surg* 1994; **179**: 156-160 [PMID: 8044384]

3 **Anderson DN**, Driver CP, Davidson AI, Keenan RA. Diverticular disease in patients under 50 years of age. *J R Coll Surg Edinb* 1997; **42**: 102-104 [PMID: 9114680]

4 **Pourfarziani V**, Mousavi-Nayeeni SM, Ghaheri H, Assari S, Saadat SH, Panahi F, Noorbala MH, Vasei A, Norouzi AR, Simforoosh N. The outcome of diverticulosis in kidney recipients with polycystic kidney disease. *Transplant Proc* 2007; **39**: 1054-1056 [PMID: 17524890]

5 **Mueller XM**, Tevaearai HT, Stumpe F, Hurni M, Ruchat P, Fischer AP, Seydoux C, Goy JJ, von Segesser LK. Gastrointestinal disease following heart transplantation. *World J Surg* 1999; **23**: 650-655; discussion 655-656 [PMID: 10390581 DOI: 10.1007/PL00012363]

6 **McCune TR**, Nylander WA, Van Buren DH, Richie RE, MacDonell RC, Johnson HK, Shull H, Cate CK, Helderman JH. Colonic screening prior to renal transplantation and its impact on post-transplant colonic complications. *Clin Transplant* 1992; **6**: 91-96 [PMID: 10150089]

7 **Rafferty J**, Shellito P, Hyman NH, Buie WD. Practice parameters for sigmoid diverticulitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2006; **49**: 939-944 [PMID: 16741596 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-006-0578-2]

8 **Hwang SS**, Cannom RR, Abbas MA, Etzioni D. Diverticulitis in transplant patients and patients on chronic corticosteroid therapy: a systematic review. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2010; **53**: 1699-1707 [PMID: 21178867 DOI: 10.1007/DCR.0b013e3181f5643c]

9 **Canter JW**, Shorb PE. Acute perforation of colonic diverticula associated with prolonged adrenocorticosteroid therapy. *Am J Surg* 1971; **121**: 46-51 [PMID: 5540835 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(71)90076-6]

10 **Perkins JD**, Shield CF, Chang FC, Farha GJ. Acute diverticulitis. Comparison of treatment in immunocompromised and nonimmunocompromised patients. *Am J Surg* 1984; **148**: 745-748 [PMID: 6507744 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(84)90429-X]

11 **Tyau ES**, Prystowsky JB, Joehl RJ, Nahrwold DL. Acute diverticulitis. A complicated problem in the immunocompromised patient. *Arch Surg* 1991; **126**: 855-858; discussion 858-859 [PMID: 1854245 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1991.01410310065009]

12 **Halabi WJ**, Jafari MD, Nguyen VQ, Carmichael JC, Mills S, Pigazzi A, Stamos MJ, Foster CE. Colorectal surgery in kidney transplant recipients: a decade of trends and outcomes in the United States. *Am Surg* 2013; **79**: 1026-1033 [PMID: 24160793]

13 **Biondo S**, Borao JL, Kreisler E, Golda T, Millan M, Frago R, Fraccalvieri D, Guardiola J, Jaurrieta E. Recurrence and virulence of colonic diverticulitis in immunocompromised patients. *Am J Surg* 2012; **204**: 172-179 [PMID: 22444713 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2011.09.027]

14 **Golda T**, Kreisler E, Mercader C, Frago R, Trenti L, Biondo S. Emergency surgery for perforated diverticulitis in the immunosuppressed patient. *Colorectal Dis* 2014; **16**: 723-731 [PMID: 24924699 DOI: 10.1111/codi.12685]

15 **Hesterberg R**, Müller F, Schmidt WU, Möslein G, Lammers B. [Sigmoid diverticulitis in immunosuppressive drug therapy]. *Chirurg* 1994; **65**: 873-876 [PMID: 7821047]

16 **Qasabian RA**, Meagher AP, Lee R, Dore GJ, Keogh A. Severe diverticulitis after heart, lung, and heart-lung transplantation. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2004; **23**: 845-849 [PMID: 15261179 DOI: 10.1016/j.healun.2003.07.019]

17 **Andeweg CS**, Mulder IM, Felt-Bersma RJ, Verbon A, van der Wilt GJ, van Goor H, Lange JF, Stoker J, Boermeester MA, Bleichrodt RP. Guidelines of diagnostics and treatment of acute left-sided colonic diverticulitis. *Dig Surg* 2013; **30**: 278-292 [PMID: 23969324 DOI: 10.1159/000354035]

18 **McAdams-Demarco MA**, Grams ME, Hall EC, Coresh J, Segev DL. Early hospital readmission after kidney transplantation: patient and center-level associations. *Am J Transplant* 2012; **12**: 3283-3288 [PMID: 23016838 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04285.x]

19 **Veroux M**, Grosso G, Corona D, Mistretta A, Giaquinta A, Giuffrida G, Sinagra N, Veroux P. Age is an important predictor of kidney transplantation outcome. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2012; **27**: 1663-1671 [PMID: 21926404 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfr524]

20 **Lin FL**, Boutros M, Da Silva GM, Weiss EG, Lu XR, Wexner SD. Hartmann reversal: obesity adversely impacts outcome. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2013; **56**: 83-90 [PMID: 23222284 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0b013e318270a1a3]

21 **Morris CR**, Harvey IM, Stebbings WS, Speakman CT, Kennedy HJ, Hart AR. Anti-inflammatory drugs, analgesics and the risk of perforated colonic diverticular disease. *Br J Surg* 2003; **90**: 1267-1272 [PMID: 14515298 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4221]

22 **Cryer B**. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug gastrointestinal toxicity. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 1999; **15**: 473-480 [PMID: 17023993 DOI: 10.1097/00001574-199911000-00004]

P- Reviewer: Barreto S, Chiu CC **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.167

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 167-172
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

META-ANALYSIS

Prophylactic oophorectomy during primary colorectal cancer resection: A systematic review and meta-analysis

Christopher V Thompson, David N Naumann, Michael Kelly, Sharad Karandikar, David R McArthur

Christopher V Thompson, David N Naumann, Michael Kelly, Sharad Karandikar, David R McArthur, Department of General Surgery, Heart of England NHS Foundation Trust, Birmingham B9 5SS, United Kingdom

Author contributions: Thompson CV and Naumann DN wrote manuscript, data acquisition and interpretation; Kelly M contributed to the statistical analysis; Karandikar S revised the manuscript; McArthur DR revised the manuscript and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest: None.

Correspondence to: David R McArthur, Consultant Surgeon, Department of General Surgery, Heart of England NHS Foundation Trust, Bordesley Green East, Birmingham B9 5SS, United Kingdom. david.mcarthur@heartofengland.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-121-4242435
Fax: +44-121-4242000

Received: August 5, 2014
Peer-review started: August 6, 2014
First decision: August 28, 2014
Revised: September 13, 2014
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To appraise the current evidence for prophylactic oophorectomy in patients undergoing primary curative colorectal cancer resection.

METHODS: Occult ovarian metastases may lead to increased mortality, therefore prophylactic oophorectomy may be considered for women undergoing colorectal resection. A systematic review and meta-analysis was performed for English language studies from 1994 to 2014 (PROSPERO Registry number: CRD42014009340), comparing outcomes following prophylactic oophorectomy (no known ovarian or other metastatic disease at time of surgery) *vs* no ovarian surgery, synchronous with colorectal resection for malignancy. Outcomes assessed: local recurrence, 5-year mortality, immediate post-operative morbidity and mortality, and rate of distant metastases.

RESULTS: Final analysis included 4 studies from the United States, Europe and China, which included 627 patients (210 prophylactic oophorectomy and 417 non-oophorectomy). There was one randomized controlled trials, the remainder being non-randomised cohort studies. The studies were all at high risk of bias according to the Cochrane Collaboration's assessment tool for randomised studies and the Newcastle-Ottawa Score for the cohort studies. The mean age of patients amongst the studies ranged from 56.5 to 67 years. There were no significant differences between the patients having prophylactic oophorectomy at time of primary colorectal resection compared with patients who did not with respect to local recurrence, 5-year survival and distant metastases. There was no difference in post-operative complications or immediate post-operative mortality between the groups.

CONCLUSION: Current evidence does not favour prophylactic oophorectomy for patients without known genetic predisposition. Prophylactic surgery is not associated with additional risk of post-operative complications or death.

Key words: Prophylactic surgery; Colorectal cancer; Oophorectomy

Core tip: Prophylactic oophorectomy is a potentially attractive additional procedure that can be performed

at the time of primary colorectal resection, to reduce the risk of ovarian metastasis and de novo ovarian malignancy later in a female patient's clinical course. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the available literature reveals that, though this procedure can be performed with little additional morbidity or mortality risk at the time of surgery, it confers no long term survival benefit, and carries a significant side effect profile.

Thompson CV, Naumann DN, Kelly M, Karandikar S, McArthur DR. Prophylactic oophorectomy during primary colorectal cancer resection: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 167-172 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/167.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.167

INTRODUCTION

Women who have colorectal cancer are at a higher risk of developing primary gynaecological tumours, particularly when aged less than 50[1,2], and there is a relatively high rate of ovarian metastases amongst pre-menopausal women with colorectal cancer[3,4]. Furthermore, patients who have colorectal metastases to the ovary have a poor prognosis and respond poorly to chemotherapy[5]. Although the route of spread is mostly unknown, haematogenous, lymphatic and transcoelomic routes of dissemination have all been proposed[6,7]. Prophylactic ovarian surgery has been advocated for women with hereditary syndromes such as Lynch syndrome and hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC)[8,9]. However, prophylactic surgery for women with no known genetic risk factors is more controversial[10]. Prophylactic oophorectomy in these patients would be aimed at preventing the subsequent development of primary ovarian malignancy, or improving the local recurrence rate following colorectal cancer resection by removing occult synchronous or future metachronous metastases. The authors hypothesized that prophylactic oophorectomy would result in a reduction of local recurrence rate and mortality.

Surgeons undertaking primary curative colorectal cancer have ready access to the pelvis and therefore are ideally placed to perform the relatively straightforward procedure of oophorectomy if such surgery was considered appropriate. Concurrent oophorectomy therefore has the theoretical potential to utilize the same surgical approach (laparoscopic or open), and have similar wound-associated morbidity. Justification for prophylactic oophorectomy in these circumstances must be made on the basis of evidence of safety, improved outcomes in terms of local recurrence rate and survival of patients with colorectal cancer, and patient preference. The authors aimed to examine the current peer-reviewed literature in order to determine whether evidence in the last 20 years justifies prophylactic surgery.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Data sources and search strategy

A systematic review was performed according to a pre-specified protocol registered with the International Prospective Register of Systematic Reviews (PROSPERO; registry number CRD42014009340). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, OVID SP, and PubMed versions of MEDLINE were searched for published articles comparing outcomes following prophylactic oophorectomy at the time of primary colorectal cancer resection with patients without prophylactic surgery. Only studies published after 1994 were included in order to capture a 20-year period to date of investigation. This systematic search was performed independently by two investigators. Search terms were use to search MEDLINE, including "prophylactic", "oophorectomy", "ovariectomy", and "colorectal cancer". Manual search of reference lists in relevant review articles was also undertaken in order to identify other studies of interest. Citations were collated (and all duplicates removed) by using EndNote Reference Manager (V.X4, Thomson Reuters). The final search was performed on 1st February 2014.

Inclusion and exclusion criteria

In order to be included in the meta-analysis, studies had to be (1) randomized controlled trials (RCTs), prospective or retrospective cohort studies; (2) reported data on at least one outcome following prophylactic oophorectomy *vs* no oophorectomy; (3) on the same occasion as primary curative colorectal cancer resection, with or without chemotherapy; and (4) no established diagnosis of ovarian neoplasia. Any primary cancer resection of the colon or rectum, regardless of laparoscopic or open technique was able to be included. Exclusion criteria were: histologically or radiologically established ovarian disease at time of colorectal resection, clearly visible or well established ovarian metastases at time of surgery, high clinical suspicion of ovarian metastases, known genetic diseases with higher risk of ovarian cancer such as lynch syndrome or HNPCC.

Data extraction

Two authors extracted data independently. Discrepancies in outcome extraction were resolved by discussion of the relevant data until consensus was achieved. Data extracted on study design included: randomisation technique, intervention arms, type of surgery. Details relating to the included patients were: number, age, indication for surgery, and site of cancer.

Definitions

Prophylactic oophorectomy was defined as the removal of both ovaries where otherwise no surgical indication exists, in the absence of any evidence of histological or

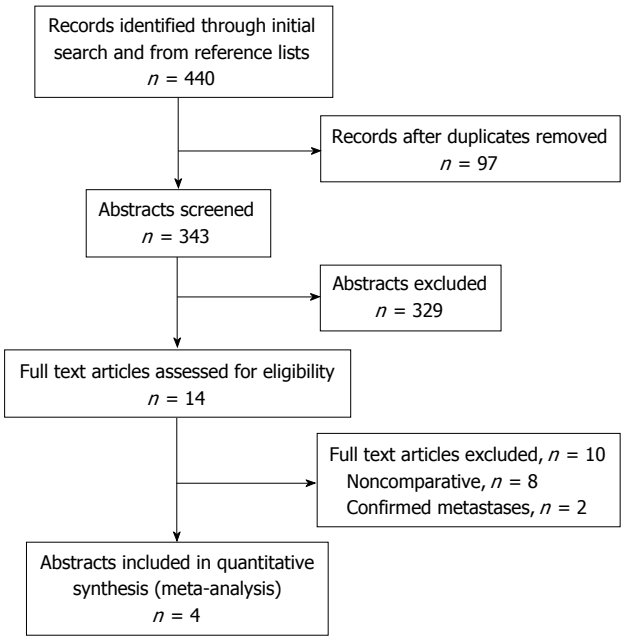


Figure 1 PRISMA diagram for study selection.

radiologically established metastases. Colorectal cancer was defined as any neoplastic process of the colon or rectum. Primary colorectal resection was defined as a curative resection (with or without adjuvant chemotherapy) of a primary colorectal cancer with no evidence of distant metastases at time of surgery.

Outcomes

The primary outcomes measured were local recurrence rate and overall 5-year survival. Secondary outcomes included immediate post-operative death, post-operative complications, and rate of distant metastases.

Assessment of bias

Assessment of bias was pre-planned, using the Cochrane Collaboration's tool for assessing risk of bias in randomised trials[11], and the Newcastle-Ottawa score[12] for non-randomised studies. Scores were determined based on randomisation, patient selection techniques, comparability of the two intervention groups and the methods of measuring end points. Studies were deemed to be at low or high risk of bias based on these scores.

Data synthesis and analysis

Meta-analysis of survival was carried out by calculation of a pooled hazard ratio (HR) from Kaplan-Meier curves using methods described by Parmar *et al*[13]. A HR of more than 1.00 represented worse survival for the experimental group (for example oophorectomy) *vs* the control group (no oophorectomy). The HR was considered significant if the 95%CI did not include 1.0 and $P < 0.05$. Data were analysed using Review Manager 5.1 (The Cochrane Collaboration, The Nordic Cochrane Centre, Copenhagen, Denmark). Due to the relatively high risk of bias from heterogeneity between studies, random effects modelling were used in order to estimate the mean of a distribution of effects of all included studies.

RESULTS

Study selection

Initial literature search yielded 440 potential studies of interest, and after duplicates were removed a total of 343 study abstracts were reviewed, of which 14 of these abstracts were of interest. The majority of studies were excluded due to their study participants having known genetic disorders such as Lynch syndrome and HNPCC. Of the 14 full texts reviewed, 2 were excluded because the oophorectomy was undertaken with known diagnosis or strong suspicion of ovarian metastases. Eight studies were excluded because they did not adequately compare the outcomes of interest between the two groups. There were 4 studies[6,14-16] that could be included in the quantitative synthesis that met all inclusion criteria and directly compared the outcomes of interest (Figure 1 for preferred reporting item for systematic reviews and meta-analyses diagram).

Study characteristics

The final analysis included four studies published between 1998 and 2004, with study periods ranging from 9 to 15 years[6,14-16]. There were a total of 627 patients, with 210 patients having undergone prophylactic oophorectomy, and 417 patients with colorectal resection only, from China, France, Greece, and the United States (summarised in Table 1). All four studies reported the mean age of the patients, and these ranged from 56.5 to 69 years.

Study quality assessment

Although it had a very low attrition bias, the overall risk assessment scoring for the RCT put it at high risk of bias, due to lack of blinding, unclear randomisation and allocation. The remaining three cohort studies were all at high risk of bias, with the main concern being that selection of surgical group depended on patient choice in two studies[14,15] and was unclear in the remaining study[16]. None of the three cohorts studies scored more than 6 stars (out of a possible 9) according to NOS scoring.

Outcomes

The primary endpoints of local recurrence and five-year survival are summarised in Table 2. There was no difference in the rate of local recurrence between patients who underwent prophylactic oophorectomy at the time of primary colorectal resection and those who did not (629 patients, four studies, OR = 1.03, 95%CI: 0.62-1.70, $P = 0.920$) (Figure 2A). Furthermore, no significant difference in five-year overall survival between these patients was found (636 patients, four

Table 1 Study characteristics

Ref.	Year	Study period	Setting	Design	Total patients	Patients oophorectomy	Patients no oophorectomy	Mean age/ yr (all)
Cai *et al*[14]	2004	1991-2000	Shanghai, China	Retrospective cohort	267	43	224	56.5
Sielezneff *et al*[15]	1997	1980-1990	Marseille, France	Prospective, non randomised	90	39	51	65
Tentes *et al*[16]	2004	1987-2002	Didimotichon Greece	Retrospective cohort	124	54	70	69
Young-Fadok *et al*[6]	1998	1986-1996	Mayo clinic, United States	RCT	146	74	72	67

RCT: Randomized controlled trial.

Table 2 Local recurrence and survival for included studies

	No. of studies	No. of patients	No. of events	Random-effects model		Heterogeneity		
				OR/HR	*P*	I^2 (%)	χ^2	*P*
Oncological outcome								
Local recurrence	4	627	105	1.04 (0.62, 1.73)	0.88	19	3.69	0.300
Five-year overall survival	4	636	-	0.97 (0.18, 5.38)	0.98	0	0.07	1.00

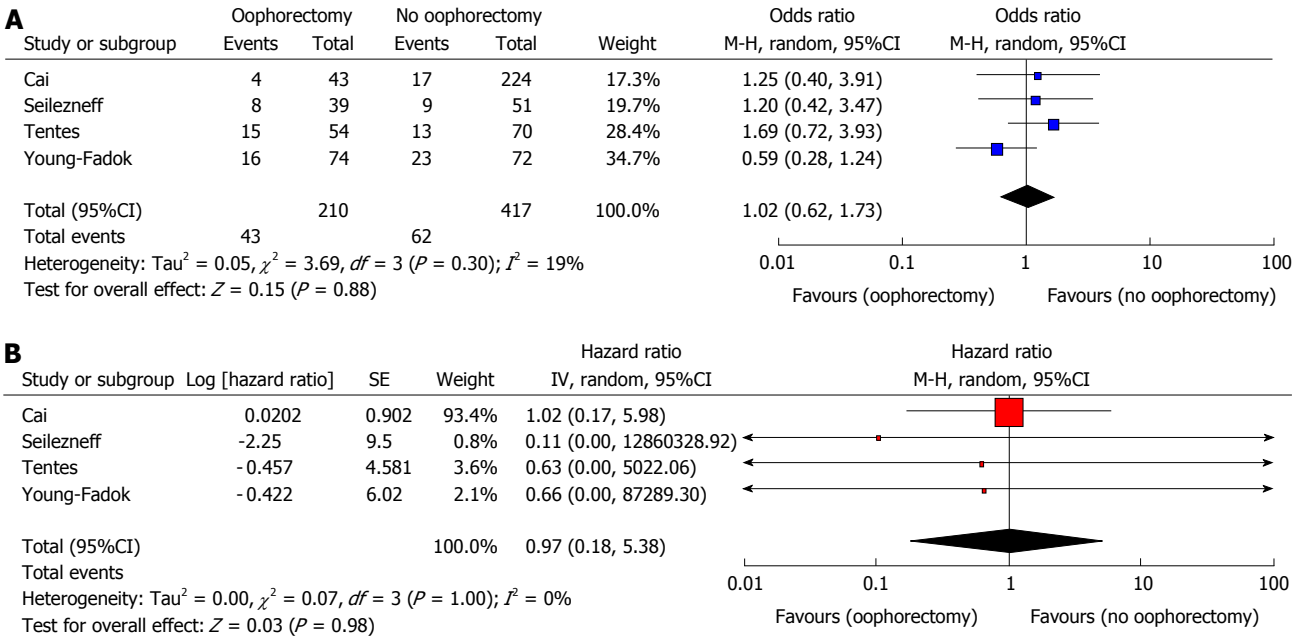


Figure 2 Meta-analysis of (A) local recurrence and (B) 5-year survival.

studies, HR = 0.97, 95%CI: 0.18-5.38, *P* = 0.980) (Figure 2B).

Only one study reported both mortality and complications in the immediate post-operative period[16]; there was no significant difference between mortality (oophorectomy group = 3/54 patients; non-oophorectomy group = 8/70 patients), or post-operative complications (oophorectomy group = 12/54 patients; non-oophorectomy group = 17/70 patients). Two studies reported distant metastases on follow up[14,15]; the first showed no significant difference between the groups (oophorectomy group = 13/43 patients; non-oophorectomy group = 16/224 patients), and similarly the second study showed no difference (oophorectomy group = 3/39 patients; non-oophorectomy group = 8/51 patients).

DISCUSSION

Main findings

The current systematic review and meta-analysis specifically analysed the differences in outcomes between patients undergoing prophylactic oophorectomy at time of curative colorectal resection and those without oophorectomy amongst women with no known established genetic predisposition to ovarian cancer. We find that published evidence on this research question in the last 20 years is sparse, and no study has been published in the peer-reviewed literature in the last 10 years regarding this question. In the 4 studies that were meta-analysed, there are no trends towards favourable outcomes amongst the prophylactic oophorectomy patients. Using the random effects models, there are

no differences in local recurrence, 5-year survival, or distant metastases between prophylactic oophorectomy and non-oophorectomy groups. However, where prophylactic surgery did take place, there were no extra risks of undertaking such surgery in terms of post-operative complications and mortality. All studies were at high risk of bias.

Comparison with other studies

Studies examining prophylactic oophorectomy for women with genetic predisposition to ovarian cancer have shown favourable outcomes[9,17]. There is some evidence that women with newly diagnosed colorectal cancer should be screened for genetic predisposition to ovarian cancer so that risk-reducing surgery might be considered[18], and that such screening may yield long-term gains in life expectancy, which outweigh the short-term detrimental effects on quality of life from testing[19]. However, opinion has been divided for decades in the surgical community regarding prophylactic oophorectomy in the absence of genetic predisposition[7]. Prophylactic oophorectomy to improve survival in women with colorectal cancer was first suggested in the 1980s by the retrospective analysis of survival in a group of 571 women in the 1970s who had undergone curative resection for colon cancer, with a suggestion that 3%-8% of women might benefit[20]. Studies published before the data collection period of the current review had recommended prophylactic oophorectomy, but these were small, retrospective reviews[21-23]. Disagreement is compounded by varying and flawed methodology in these studies; for example one earlier study demonstrated no difference in recurrence rate or survival with prophylactic oophorectomy, but patient selection was based on surgeon preference, leading to bias in stage of colorectal cancer in each arm of the study[24].

There is some evidence that prophylactic oophorectomy results in an increased rate of premature death, cardiovascular disease, dementia, osteoporosis and Parkinsonism[25]. Oophorectomy before the age of 45 has been associated with an increased risk of death in a retrospective cohort study, especially for women not receiving hormone replacement therapy[26]. Therefore oophorectomy where not otherwise indicated has its own implications separate to the colorectal cancer resection; risk of these adverse outcomes must be balanced against oncological risks. Such risk *vs* benefits analysis may however be limited by fear of physiological and psychological adverse effects, as well as gaps in knowledge regarding risk[27], and these deficiencies must be addressed if informed decisions are to be made. If prophylactic ovarian surgery is not to be undertaken, close post-operative observation as well as ovarian metastatectomy when required appears to have a survival benefit, whilst avoiding the deleterious effects of oophorectomy in those who do not require it[28].

Strengths and limitations

There is a striking paucity of data in the last 20 years regarding outcomes following prophylactic oophorectomy during resection of primary colorectal cancer, which limits this review. However such a finding is in itself important, since it implies that that there are limiting factors involved in studies which aim to test this research question. Indeed the only RCT in the last 20 years to have attempted to randomise patients was unable to accrue the anticipated number of patients after 10 years, and was forced to publish their preliminary results[6]. Although the authors of this RCT recommend further data collection, the final results have not been published, implying that the study may have been abandoned. The available evidence therefore must be based on only a handful of non-randomised cohort studies.

Conclusions and implications

Currently, the published evidence cannot make an overwhelming case for prophylactic oophorectomy or ovarian conservation at the time of colorectal resection. The 4 studies analysed all individually reported no long-term survival benefit of prophylactic oophorectomy, and meta-analysis of all data confirmed this for the whole population. In practice, young women are not routinely screened for HNPCC and other genetic risks prior to colorectal cancer resection. Although there appears to be no benefit in offering oophorectomy to women with no known genetic disorder, such an informed choice might be more practical if high-risk women were screened prior to their planned colorectal surgery.

It is likely that future RCTs may not be feasible, and therefore the current review represents the best current evidence with which to base surgical decisions on this question. This review concludes that prophylactic oophorectomy cannot be recommended based on current evidence, but if it is performed has no extra risk of post-operative morbidity or mortality. If a patient would like to opt for prophylactic oophorectomy, surgery can only be undertaken with a full, frank discussion of the risks and lack of measurable benefits, and for those at high risk, results from genetic screening.

COMMENTS

Background

The development of ovarian metastases may lead to increased death in female colorectal cancer patients, and therefore preventative oophorectomy may be considered when undergoing colorectal cancer resection. Undertaking such surgery remains controversial, and therefore robust evidence is crucial. The authors aim to appraise the current evidence for prophylactic oophorectomy in patients undergoing primary curative colorectal cancer resection.

Research frontiers

The topic of preventative surgery at the time of primary resection in of increasing importance as the cure rate for colorectal cancer improves. Cyto-reductive surgery and heated intra-peritoneal chemotherapy is being used with increasing frequency to salvage patients with recurrent or metastatic disease but carries a high morbidity and a risk of mortality. Preventative surgery may be able to avoid these risks.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The scientific literature regarding prophylactic oophorectomy at the time of primary colorectal surgery has not been reviewed since 2005 by Moran *et al*. Up to date review of evidence is required to inform colorectal surgeons about

what is known about the risks and benefits of this procedure.

Applications

This systematic review and meta-analysis is relevant to all female patients undergoing colorectal cancer. It allows patients and their doctors have an informed discussion about whether prophylactic oophorectomy is in their best interests

Terminology

Prophylactic oophorectomy-the removal of normal ovaries in an effort to prevent future disease.

Peer-review

In this study, the authors performed a systematic review and meta-analysis on the association between prophylactic oophorectomy during primary colorectal cancer resection and risk of local recurrence and overall 5-year mortality. Rationale and aim for conducting this meta-analysis on this topic are clear.

REFERENCES

1 **Lynge E**, Jensen OM, Carstensen B. Second cancer following cancer of the digestive system in Denmark, 1943-80. *Natl Cancer Inst Monogr* 1985; **68**: 277-308 [PMID: 4088303]

2 **Tanaka H**, Hiyama T, Hanai A, Fujimoto I. Second primary cancers following colon and rectal cancer in Osaka, Japan. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 1991; **82**: 1356-1365 [PMID: 1778758 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.1991.tb01806.x]

3 **Birnkrant A**, Sampson J, Sugarbaker PH. Ovarian metastasis from colorectal cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1986; **29**: 767-771 [PMID: 3533472 DOI: 10.1007/BF02555331]

4 **Perdomo JA**, Hizuta A, Iwagaki H, Takasu S, Nonaka Y, Kimura T, Takada S, Moreira LF, Tanaka N, Orita K. Ovarian metastasis in patients with colorectal carcinoma. *Acta Med Okayama* 1994; **48**: 43-46 [PMID: 8191916]

5 **Goéré D**, Daveau C, Elias D, Boige V, Tomasic G, Bonnet S, Pocard M, Dromain C, Ducreux M, Lasser P, Malka D. The differential response to chemotherapy of ovarian metastases from colorectal carcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2008; **34**: 1335-1339 [PMID: 18455357 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2008.03.010]

6 **Young-Fadok TM**, Wolff BG, Nivatvongs S, Metzger PP, Ilstrup DM. Prophylactic oophorectomy in colorectal carcinoma: preliminary results of a randomized, prospective trial. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1998; **41**: 277-283; discussion 283-285 [PMID: 9514421 DOI: 10.1007/BF02237479]

7 **Hanna NN**, Cohen AM. Ovarian neoplasms in patients with colorectal cancer: understanding the role of prophylactic oophorectomy. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2004; **3**: 215-222 [PMID: 15025793 DOI: 10.3816/CCC.2004.n.002]

8 **Celentano V**, Luglio G, Antonelli G, Tarquini R, Bucci L. Prophylactic surgery in Lynch syndrome. *Tech Coloproctol* 2011; **15**: 129-134 [PMID: 21287222 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-010-0666-0]

9 **Schmeler KM**, Lynch HT, Chen LM, Munsell MF, Soliman PT, Clark MB, Daniels MS, White KG, Boyd-Rogers SG, Conrad PG, Yang KY, Rubin MM, Sun CC, Slomovitz BM, Gershenson DM, Lu KH. Prophylactic surgery to reduce the risk of gynecologic cancers in the Lynch syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **354**: 261-269 [PMID: 16421367 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa052627]

10 **Banerjee S**, Kapur S, Moran BJ. The role of prophylactic oophorectomy in women undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer. *Colorectal Dis* 2005; **7**: 214-217 [PMID: 15859956 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2005.00770.x]

11 **Higgins JP**, Altman DG, Gøtzsche PC, Jüni P, Moher D, Oxman AD, Savovic J, Schulz KF, Weeks L, Sterne JA. The Cochrane Collaboration's tool for assessing risk of bias in randomised trials. *BMJ* 2011; **343**: d5928 [PMID: 22008217 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.d5928]

12 **Wells G**, Shea B, O'Connell D, Peterson J, Welch V, Losos M, Tugwell P. The Newcastle-Ottawa Scale (NOS) for assessing the quality of nonrandomised studies in meta-analyses. 3rd Symposium on Systematic Reviews: beyond the basics. UK: Oxford, 2000

13 **Parmar MK**, Torri V, Stewart L. Extracting summary statistics to perform meta-analyses of the published literature for survival endpoints. *Stat Med* 1998; **17**: 2815-2834 [PMID: 9921604]

14 **Cai GX**, Xu Y, Tang DF, Lian P, Peng JJ, Wang MH, Guan ZQ, Cai SJ. Interaction between synchronous bilateral prophylactic oophorectomy and adjuvant chemotherapy in female patients with locally advanced colorectal cancer. *Colorectal Dis* 2011; **13**: 414-419 [PMID: 20041916]

15 **Sielezneff I**, Salle E, Antoine K, Thirion X, Brunet C, Sastre B. Simultaneous bilateral oophorectomy does not improve prognosis of postmenopausal women undergoing colorectal resection for cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 1299-1302 [PMID: 9369103 DOI: 10.1007/BF02050813]

16 **Tentes A**, Markakidis S, Mirelis C, Leventis C, Mitrousi K, Gosev A, Kaisas C, Bouyioukas Y, Xanthoulis A, Korakianitis O. Oophorectomy during surgery for colorectal carcinoma. *Tech Coloproctol* 2004; **8** Suppl 1: s214-s216 [PMID: 15655627]

17 **Rebbeck TR**, Lynch HT, Neuhausen SL, Narod SA, Van't Veer L, Garber JE, Evans G, Isaacs C, Daly MB, Matloff E, Olopade OI, Weber BL. Prophylactic oophorectomy in carriers of BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **346**: 1616-1622 [PMID: 12023993 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa012158]

18 **Wang G**, Kuppermann M, Kim B, Phillips KA, Ladabaum U. Influence of patient preferences on the cost-effectiveness of screening for Lynch syndrome. *Am J Manag Care* 2012; **18**: e179-e185 [PMID: 22694112]

19 **Ladabaum U**, Wang G, Terdiman J, Blanco A, Kuppermann M, Boland CR, Ford J, Elkin E, Phillips KA. Strategies to identify the Lynch syndrome among patients with colorectal cancer: a cost-effectiveness analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 2011; **155**: 69-79 [PMID: 21768580 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-155-2-201107190-00002]

20 **Ballantyne GH**, Reigel MM, Wolff BG, Ilstrup DM. Oophorectomy and colon cancer. Impact on survival. *Ann Surg* 1985; **202**: 209-214 [PMID: 4015225 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-198508000-00011]

21 **Burt CV**. Prophylactic oophorectomy with resection of the large bowel for cancer. *Am J Surg* 1951; **82**: 571-577 [PMID: 14885604 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(51)90423-0]

22 **MacKeigan JM**, Ferguson JA. Prophylactic oophorectomy and colorectal cancer in premenopausal patients. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1979; **22**: 401-405 [PMID: 498897 DOI: 10.1007/BF02586909]

23 **Graffner HO**, Alm PO, Oscarson JE. Prophylactic oophorectomy in colorectal carcinoma. *Am J Surg* 1983; **146**: 233-235 [PMID: 6881447 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(83)90380-X]

24 **Cutait R**, Lesser ML, Enker WE. Prophylactic oophorectomy in surgery for large-bowel cancer. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1983; **26**: 6-11 [PMID: 6822165 DOI: 10.1007/BF02554669]

25 **Shuster LT**, Gostout BS, Grossardt BR, Rocca WA. Prophylactic oophorectomy in premenopausal women and long-term health. *Menopause Int* 2008; **14**: 111-116 [PMID: 18714076 DOI: 10.1258/mi.2008.008016]

26 **Rocca WA**, Grossardt BR, de Andrade M, Malkasian GD, Melton LJ. Survival patterns after oophorectomy in premenopausal women: a population-based cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2006; **7**: 821-828 [PMID: 17012044 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(06)70869-5]

27 **Cherry C**, Ropka M, Lyle J, Napolitano L, Daly MB. Understanding the needs of women considering risk-reducing salpingo-oophorectomy. *Cancer Nurs* 2013; **36**: E33-E38 [PMID: 22964868 DOI: 10.1097/NCC.0b013e3182642cb5]

28 **Lee SJ**, Lee J, Lim HY, Kang WK, Choi CH, Lee JW, Kim TJ, Kim BG, Bae DS, Cho YB, Kim HC, Yun SH, Lee WY, Chun HK, Park YS. Survival benefit from ovarian metastatectomy in colorectal cancer patients with ovarian metastasis: a retrospective analysis. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2010; **66**: 229-235 [PMID: 19820936]

P- Reviewer: Jiang WJ, Mashreky SR **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.173

World J Surg Proced 2015 March 28; 5(1): 173-176
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

CASE REPORT

Sentinel lymph node mapping for malignant melanoma of the external auditory canal

Joel Franco, Lauren A Hansen, Richard T Miyamoto, Mark Tann, Michael G Moore

Joel Franco, St. Louis University School of Medicine, Saint Louis, MO 63103, United States
Lauren A Hansen, Richard T Miyamoto, Michael G Moore, Department of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, Indiana University School of Medicine, Indianapolis, IN 46202, United States
Mark Tann, Indiana University School of Medicine, Department of Radiology and Imaging Services, Indianapolis, IN 46202, United States

Author contributions: Franco J and Moore MG contributed to case write-up, review of literature and manuscript revision; Moore MG also assisted with the surgical procedure and designed the technique for lymph node mapping for the patient described; Hansen LA, Miyamoto RT and Tann M assisted in manuscript revision; Miyamoto RT also helped with the otologic portion of the surgery; Tann M assisted with the administration of the radio-isotope at the time of the procedure.
Ethics approval: The study was reviewed and Institutional Review Board approval was not required.
Informed consent: The subject of the case report, SL, provided consent for the use of her protected health information.
Conflict-of-interest: Joel Franco (primary author) and Michael G Moore (corresponding author) have no financial or other conflicts of interest.

Correspondence to: Michael G Moore, MD, Department of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, Indiana University School of Medicine, 550 N. University Blvd. RM 3170, Indianapolis, IN 46202, United States. mooremg@iupui.edu
Telephone: +1-317-9447057
Fax: +1-317-2783743
Received: September 10, 2014
Peer-review started: September 10, 2014
First decision: September 28, 2014
Revised: January 15, 2015
Accepted: January 30, 2015
Article in press: February 2, 2015
Published online: March 28, 2015

Abstract

We describe a novel technique for sentinel lymph node mapping and biopsy of a primary cutaneous malignant melanoma in the medial portion of the external auditory canal. The approach is illustrated through a case report and technical description of a procedure performed under general anesthesia on a 19-year-old female patient. Due to the hidden and sensitive location of the primary tumor in the medial external auditory canal, the lymphoscintigraphy injection had to be performed by the surgeon immediately prior to the resection of her cT2aN0M0 lesion. Final pathology revealed clear margins at the primary site resection and 2 intraparotid sentinel lymph nodes with microscopic foci of metastatic malignant melanoma, which led to further surgical management. A completion left parotidectomy and neck dissection yielded no additional metastatic disease in the fifty-five nodes that were evaluated. Using this technique, sentinel lymph node mapping and biopsy accurately predicted the highest risk lymph nodes for the primary lesion of the medial portion of the external auditory canal.

Key words: Malignant melanoma; External auditory canal; Head and neck; Sentinel lymph node biopsy; Sentinel lymph node mapping

Core tip: We describe sentinel lymph node mapping and biopsy (SLNB) of a primary malignant melanoma in the external auditory canal. The usefulness of SLNB in this procedure allowed a focused surgical dissection to best assess regional lymph nodes and determine the extent of dissection needed to clear the disease. This novel technique is useful because it aids in establishing the

single most important prognostic factor of a melanoma in the external auditory canal, regional lymph node status.

Franco J, Hansen LA, Miyamoto RT, Tann M, Moore MG. Sentinel lymph node mapping for malignant melanoma of the external auditory canal. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(1): 173-176 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i1/173.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i1.173

INTRODUCTION

The incidence of malignant melanoma has surpassed that of other malignancies in recent years, at a rate of 3% per year[1]. In 2014, the American Cancer Society estimates that 76100 new cases of malignant melanoma would be diagnosed, resulting in 9710 deaths[2]. Of the malignant melanomas diagnosed, 18% are located in the head and neck and these are associated with a higher mortality rate when compared to melanomas of the trunk and extremities[1].

As treatment has evolved for melanoma, sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB) has been established as an integral aspect of both the surgical planning and treatment of this malignancy[3]. SLNB allows detection of minimal tumor burden and metastasis to the regional lymph nodes, an important prognostic factor in the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging system[4,5]. Other institutions including the National Comprehensive Cancer Network, the American Society of Clinical Oncology, and the Society of Surgical Oncology also recommend the routine use of SLNB. The status of regional lymph nodes portends the stratification of prognosis and assists with clinical trial determination and eligibility[6].

Melanoma of the external auditory canal is extremely rare, with fewer than 20 cases reported in the literature. The location of these lesions adds a level of difficulty to the standard surgical treatment, which is a wide local excision with margins of at least 1 cm[7]. In addition, technical aspects of radioisotope injection into the external auditory canal are more challenging because the ear canal skin is thin and requires additional instrumentation such as an otomicroscope for accessibility.

We present a case report of a patient with an intermediate stage (cT2aN0M0) cutaneous melanoma of the external auditory canal. As part of her management, a SLNB was performed. To our knowledge, this is the first description of this technique for a melanoma located in the bony portion of the external auditory canal.

Methods

Because this is a retrospective case report, per institutional protocol, no IRB approval was required. The patient has given consent to use her medical information for the case report. The medical records of the patient were accessed to obtain the clinical, radiographic and pathologic information.

CASE REPORT

The patient is a 19 years old, otherwise healthy female who presented with a complaint of a sore inside her left ear for approximately one year. The pigmented skin lesion was confined to the posteromedial aspect of the bony portion of the left external auditory canal. It did not involve the tympanic membrane nor did it involve the more lateral cartilaginous portion of the external auditory canal. There were no other skin lesions noted or any associated pathologically enlarged parotid or neck lymphadenopathy.

The patient was taken to the operating room where a biopsy was performed on the lesion, demonstrating a superficial malignant melanoma with a depth of invasion of 1.47 mm and no ulceration was observed. Appropriate staging revealed this to be a T2aN0M0 lesion. A combined positron emission tomography/computed tomography scan showed no evidence of regional lymphadenopathy or distant metastases; in addition, the bone underlying the lesion in the external auditory canal showed no erosion on preoperative imaging. After discussion with the patient, it was deemed appropriate for her to undergo resection of the lesion with a lateral temporal bone resection along with a SLNB. Due to the location of the lesion in the posteromedial aspect of the bony portion of the external auditory canal, it was most appropriate for the radioisotope injection to be performed using an otomicroscope under general anesthesia (we believe that an injection of local anesthetic to the ear canal skin would have distorted the lymphatic drainage of the area).

Injection and sentinel lymph node mapping technique

Using institutional protocol for handling of radioactive material, an aliquot of 1 mL of 1.5 mCi of Technetium labeled filtered sulfur colloid was obtained from the nuclear medicine department. A total of 0.15 mL was injected around the lesion (superior, inferior and lateral injections were used. No medial injection was performed due to the proximity to the tympanic membrane).

The patient was then prepped and draped in the normal sterile fashion and 30 min was allowed from the time of isotope injection to when the post-auricular incision was made to allow for diffusion through the lymphatics. Once the lateral temporal bone resection was completed, the hand held gamma probe was utilized to identify the most prominent sentinel lymph node which was located in the left parotid gland and had a 10 s count of 10381. The post-auricular incision was extended into the upper neck for access and this node

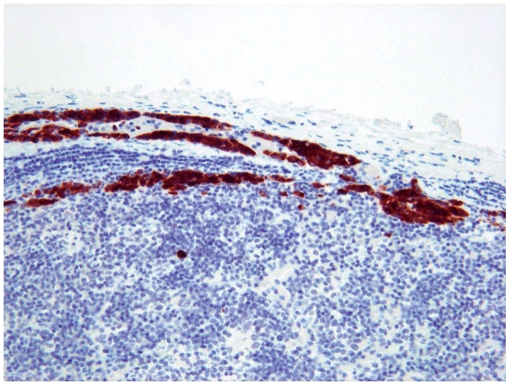


Figure 1 Lymph node stained with Melan-A demonstrating microscopic metastases of malignant melanoma.

was removed. A second lesion having a 10 s count of 4779 was also removed. The remaining parotid tail was noted to have a background higher than 10% of the original lymph node. As a result, the remaining parotid tail was removed and the associated wound background dropped to 389 on a 10 s count.

Surgical pathology of the primary lesion confirmed the 1.47 mm thick tumor and demonstrated that negative margins were obtained. Two of the seven lymph nodes removed as part of the sentinel lymph node mapping demonstrated microscopic foci of metastatic melanoma as demonstrated in Figure 1. As a result, it was recommended that the patient undergo a completion left parotidectomy and left modified radical neck dissection (MRND) with an abdominal fat graft for reconstruction. Final pathology from the completion parotidectomy and MRND showed no additional positive lymph nodes within the 55 that were removed in the completion procedure. The patient tolerated the procedure well and had no significant wound related complications or cranial nerve deficits. Due to the involvement of two intraparotid lymph nodes, the patient was referred to medical oncology. The patient subsequently underwent one year of interferon therapy and is now 20 mo post-op with no evidence of recurrent disease.

DISCUSSION

Malignant melanoma continues to claim lives and its incidence continues to increase at an alarming rate[1,2]. New techniques, such as SLNB, have developed to better serve these patients and reduce morbidity. The usefulness of SLNB in this procedure allowed a focused surgical dissection to best assess regional lymph nodes and determine the extent of dissection needed to clear the disease. This novel technique is useful because it aids in establishing the single most important prognostic factor of a melanoma in the external auditory canal, regional lymph node status[5,8-10]. Opinions on the use of SLNB for T1 lesions vary, while most authors agree on its use for T2 and T3 lesions. We demonstrate its utility in a smaller cancer located in the bony portion of the external auditory canal to accurately identify possible regional metastasis[5,6,11-13].

Studies have demonstrated that 15%-20% of patients with a primary head and neck melanoma will have lymph nodes in a regional nodal basin harboring occult metastases and that the sentinel lymph node accurately predicts the nodal basin status[14]. As such, SLNB plays an invaluable role in saving 80%-85% of patients with a primary head and neck malignant melanoma an unneeded lymph node dissection avoiding complications such as lymphedema, infection, hematoma, seroma, and nerve injury[12-15].

To date, a description of a SLNB of a malignant melanoma located in the bony portion of the external auditory canal does not exist in the literature. This paucity in literature creates uncertainty when dealing with this site-specific lesion. SLNB of the head and neck provides unique challenges related to the anatomy, technique, and interpretation of results[12]. The external auditory canal, due to its delicate and thin skin, as well as its poorly accessible location, is not easily amenable to standard sentinel lymph node mapping techniques. In our patient, the fact that both of the positive sentinel lymph nodes were the first two picked up at the time of the mapping indicates accuracy of the technique used. This is further supported by the fact that no additional positive nodes were obtained in the rest of the definitive lymphadenectomy.

We suggest that sentinel lymph node mapping for melanomas of the external auditory canal can be performed safely and successfully using our described technique.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Don-John Summerlin, DMD, MS for pathology photographs.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

The 19-year-old female presented with a sore in the left ear for one year.

Clinical diagnosis

Pigmented skin lesion viewed with otoscopy, lesion confined to the posteromedial aspect of the bony portion of the left external auditory canal.

Differential diagnosis

Malignant *vs* benign pigmented lesion.

Laboratory diagnosis

All labs reviewed and within normal limits.

Imaging diagnosis

Positron emission tomography/computed tomography demonstrated no regional lymphadenopathy, no distant metastases, and no erosion of the bone underlying the lesion in the external auditory canal.

Pathological diagnosis

Initial biopsy demonstrated a superficial malignant melanoma with a depth of invasion of 1.47 mm and no ulceration. Two of the seven lymph nodes removed as part of the sentinel lymph node mapping demonstrated microscopic foci of metastatic melanoma.

Treatment

Isotope injection with sentinel lymph node biopsy, lateral temporal bone resection, completion parotidectomy, and one year of interferon therapy.

Related reports

To the best of the author's knowledge, a description of a sentinel lymph node mapping and biopsy (SLNB) of a malignant melanoma located in the bony portion of the external auditory canal does not exist in the literature.

Term explanation

SLNB is a biopsy of the first lymph node or group of nodes draining an anatomic region. The sentinel lymph node is the first lymph node reached by metastasizing malignant cells.

Experiences and lessons

This case presented unique challenges related to the anatomy, technique, and interpretation of results. The authors suggest that sentinel lymph node mapping for melanomas of the external auditory canal can be performed safely and successfully using our described technique.

Peer-review

The manuscript describes the application of lymph node mapping and biopsy in a case of primary malignant melanoma. It is well presented and easy to read.

REFERENCES

1 **Saltman BE**, Ganly I, Patel SG, Coit DG, Brady MS, Wong RJ, Boyle JO, Singh B, Shaha AR, Shah JP, Kraus DH. Prognostic implication of sentinel lymph node biopsy in cutaneous head and neck melanoma. *Head Neck* 2010; **32**: 1686-1692 [PMID: 20848412 DOI: 10.1002/hed.21390]

2 "What are the key statistics about melanoma skin cancer?" Melanoma Skin Cancer. The American Cancer Society Inc. 2014. Available from: URL: http: //www.cancer.org/cancer/skincancer-melanoma/detailedguide/melanoma-skin-cancer-key-statistics

3 **Cappello ZJ**, Augenstein AC, Potts KL, McMasters KM, Bumpous JM. Sentinel lymph node status is the most important prognostic factor in patients with melanoma of the scalp. *Laryngoscope* 2013; **123**: 1411-1415 [PMID: 23625541 DOI: 10.1002/lary.23793]

4 **Egger ME**, Callender GG, McMasters KM, Ross MI, Martin RC, Edwards MJ, Urist MM, Noyes RD, Sussman JJ, Reintgen DS, Stromberg AJ, Scoggins CR. Diversity of stage III melanoma in the era of sentinel lymph node biopsy. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 956-963 [PMID: 23064795 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2701-z]

5 **Wong SL**, Balch CM, Hurley P, Agarwala SS, Akhurst TJ, Cochran A, Cormier JN, Gorman M, Kim TY, McMasters KM, Noyes RD, Schuchter LM, Valsecchi ME, Weaver DL, Lyman GH. Sentinel lymph node biopsy for melanoma: American Society of Clinical Oncology and Society of Surgical Oncology joint clinical practice guideline. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 3313-3324 [PMID: 22766987 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2475-3]

6 **Gershenwald JE**, Coit DG, Sondak VK, Thompson JF. The challenge of defining guidelines for sentinel lymph node biopsy in patients with thin primary cutaneous melanomas. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 3301-3303 [PMID: 22868918 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2562-5]

7 **Langman A**, Yarington T, Patterson SD. Malignant melanoma of the external auditory canal. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1996; **114**: 645-648 [PMID: 8643280 DOI: 10.1016/S0194-5998(96)70262-0]

8 **Balch CM**, Soong SJ, Gershenwald JE, Thompson JF, Reintgen DS, Cascinelli N, Urist M, McMasters KM, Ross MI, Kirkwood JM, Atkins MB, Thompson JA, Coit DG, Byrd D, Desmond R, Zhang Y, Liu PY, Lyman GH, Morabito A. Prognostic factors analysis of 17,600 melanoma patients: validation of the American Joint Committee on Cancer melanoma staging system. *J Clin Oncol* 2001; **19**: 3622-3634 [PMID: 11504744]

9 **Mohebati A**, Ganly I, Busam KJ, Coit D, Kraus DH, Shah JP, Patel SG. The role of sentinel lymph node biopsy in the management of head and neck desmoplastic melanoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 4307-4313 [PMID: 22766985 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2468-2]

10 **Morton DL**, Cochran AJ, Thompson JF, Elashoff R, Essner R, Glass EC, Mozzillo N, Nieweg OE, Roses DF, Hoekstra HJ, Karakousis CP, Reintgen DS, Coventry BJ, Wang HJ. Sentinel node biopsy for early-stage melanoma: accuracy and morbidity in MSLT-I, an international multicenter trial. *Ann Surg* 2005; **242**: 302-311; discussion 311-313 [PMID: 16135917]

11 **Jones EL**, Jones TS, Pearlman NW, Gao D, Stovall R, Gajdos C, Kounalakis N, Gonzalez R, Lewis KD, Robinson WA, McCarter MD. Long-term follow-up and survival of patients following a recurrence of melanoma after a negative sentinel lymph node biopsy result. *JAMA Surg* 2013; **148**: 456-461 [PMID: 23325294 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2013.1335]

12 **Patel SG**, Coit DG, Shaha AR, Brady MS, Boyle JO, Singh B, Shah JP, Kraus DH. Sentinel lymph node biopsy for cutaneous head and neck melanomas. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2002; **128**: 285-291 [PMID: 11886345]

13 **van der Ploeg AP**, van Akkooi AC, Verhoef C, Eggermont AM. Completion lymph node dissection after a positive sentinel node: no longer a must? *Curr Opin Oncol* 2013; **25**: 152-159 [PMID: 23328628 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e32835dafb4]

14 **Morton DL**, Cochran AJ, Thompson JF. The rationale for sentinel-node biopsy in primary melanoma. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2008; **5**: 510-511 [PMID: 18679393 DOI: 10.1038/ncponc1205]

15 **Matter M**, Lejeune FJ. The debate on sentinel node biopsy in melanoma: any clue? *Melanoma Res* 2012; **22**: 413-414 [PMID: 23111279 DOI: 10.1097/CMR.0b013e32835ae827]

P- Reviewer: Borrione P, Kimyai-Asadi A, Mazzocchi M
S- Editor: Gong XM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

World Journal of *Surgical Procedures*

World J Surg Proced 2015 July 28; 5(2): 177-216

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJSP World Journal of Surgical Procedures

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of surgical procedures

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Surgical Procedures* Editorial Board consists of 276 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgical procedures. They are from 35 countries, including Australia (10), Austria (3), Belgium (1), Brazil (4), Canada (5), China (23), Egypt (2), France (1), Germany (10), Greece (9), Hungary (1), India (6), Iran (3), Ireland (1), Israel (6), Italy (29), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (2), Nigeria (1), Norway (1), Pakistan (1), Poland (1), Romania (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (2), South Korea (7), Spain (11), Switzerland (5), Thailand (1), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (11), and United States (71).

Hungary

Péter Örs Horváth, *Pécs*

India

Nilakantan Ananthakrishnan, *Pondicherry*
Rakesh Kumar, *Haryana*
Suguna Lonchin, *Chennai*
Chinmay Kumar Panda, *Kolkata*
Muthukumaran Rangarajan, *Coimbatore*
Nihal Thomas, *Vellore*

Iran

Mehrdad Mohammadpour, *Tehran*
Seyed Reza Mousavi, *Tehran*
Mohammad Taher Rajabi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Desmond Winter, *Dublin*

Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*
Haim Gutman, *Tikva*
Yoav Mintz, *Jerusalem*
Solly Mizrahi, *Beer sheva*
Nir Wasserberg, *Petach Tiqua*
Oded Zmora, *Tel Hashomer*

Italy

Ferdinando Agresta, *Fregona*
Franco Bassetto, *Padova*
Claudio Bassi, *Verona*
Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
Francesco Boccardo, *Genoa*
Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
Fausto Catena, *Bologna*
Luigi D'Ambra, *La Spezia*
Alessandro Franchini, *Florence*
Giuseppe Galloro, *Naples*
Massimo Gerosa, *Verona*
Francesco Greco, *Brescia*
Roberto Iezzi, *Rome*
Fabrizio Luca, *Milan*
Simone Mocellin, *Padova*
Boscolo-Rizzo Paolo, *Padua*
Giacomo Pata, *Brescia*
Marcello Picchio, *Latina*
Giuseppe Piccinni, *Bari*
Marco Raffaelli, *Rome*
Matteo Ravaioli, *Bologna*
Raffaele Russo, *Naples*
Vincenzo Russo, *Naples*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Luciano Solaini, *Ravenna*
Pietro Valdastri, *Pisa*
Luca Viganò, *Torino*
Luigi Zorcolo, *Cagliari*

Japan

Hiroki Akamatsu, *Osaka*
Mitsuhiro Asakuma, *Osaka*
Hideo Baba, *Kumamoto*
Akihiro Cho, *Chiba*
Shotaro Enomoto, *Wakayama*
Satoshi Hagiwara, *Yufu*
Yoshiki Hirooka, *Nagoya City*
Motohiro Imano, *Osaka*
Yasuhiro Ito, *Kobe*
Koichi Iwatsuki, *Osaka*
Kyousuke Kamada, *Asahikawa*
Hirotoshi Kobayashi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Kume, *Gifu*
Daisuke Morioka, *Yokohama*
Toshitaka Nagao, *Tokyo*
Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
Kensaku Sanefuji, *Fukuoka*
Norio Shiraishi, *Oita*
Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
Nobumi Tagaya, *Koshigaya*
Sonshin Takao, *Kagoshima*
Hiroshi Takeyama, *Tokyo*
Koji Tanaka, *Suita*
Kuniya Tanaka, *Yokohama*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Akira Tsunoda, *Kamogawa*
Dai Uematsu, *Nagano*
Shinichi Ueno, *Kagoshima*
Toshifumi Wakai, *Niigata*
Atsushi Watanabe, *Sapporo*
Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
Yo-ichi Yamashita, *Hiroshima*
Naohisa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Seiichi Yoshida, *Niigata*

Lebanon

Bishara Atiyeh, *Beirut*

Lithuania

Aleksandras Antusevas, *Kaunas*

Mexico

José A Robles Cervantes, *Guadalajara*
Miguel F Herrera, *Mexico City*

Netherlands

Frans L Moll, *Utrecht*
Paulus Joannes van Diest, *Utrecht*

Nigeria

Christopher Olusanjo Bode, *Lagos*

Norway

Michael Brauckhoff, Bergen

Pakistan

Drshamim Muhammad Shamim, *Karachi*

Poland

Lek Nowińska Anna, *Katowice*

Romania

Mihai Ciocirlan, *Bucharest*
Adrian Iancu, *Cluj Napoca*

Saudi Arabia

Abdul-Wahed Meshikhes, *Dammam*

Singapore

Zhi-wei Huang, *Singapore*
Brian K P Goh, *Singapore*

South Korea

Sung-Hyuk Choi, *Seoul*
Young Seob Chung, *Seoul*
Dong-Ik Kim, *Seoul*
Choon Hyuck David Kwon, *Seoul*
Ho-Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
In Ja Park, *Seoul*
Sung-Soo Park, *Seoul*

Spain

Maria Angeles Aller, *Vallehermoso*
Aniceto Baltasar, *Alcoy*
Bernardo Hontanilla Calatayud, *Pamplona*
Manuel Giner, *Madrid*
Fernando Hernanz, *Cantabria*
Álvaro Larrad Jiménez, *Madrid*
David Martinez-Ramos, *Castellon*
Juan Viñas Salas, *Leida*
Eduardo M Targarona, *Barcelona*
Carmen Peralta Uroz, *Barcelona*
Jesus Vaquero, *Madrid*

Switzerland

Marco Buter, *Zürich*
Pascal Gervaz, *Geneva*
Merlin Guggenheim, *Männedorf*
Jürg Metzger, *Lucerne*
Cafarotti Stefano, *Bellinzona*

Thailand

Varut Lohsiriwat, *Bangkok*

Turkey

Ugur Boylu, *Istanbul*

WJSP

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Contents

Four-monthly Volume 5 Number 2 July 28, 2015

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Volume 5 Number 2 July 28, 2015

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Surgical Procedures

ISSN
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 29, 2011

FREQUENCY
Four-monthly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
July 28, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.177

World J Surg Proced 2015 July 28; 5(2): 177-186
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Central neck compartment dissection in papillary thyroid carcinoma: An update

César P Ramírez-Plaza

César P Ramírez-Plaza, Department of General and Digestive Surgery, Hospital Quirón Málaga, 29004 Málaga, Spain

Author contributions: Ramírez-Plaza CP solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The main and only author of this paper, César P Ramírez-Plaza, has no commercial, personal, political, intellectual or religious conflict of interest related to this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Dr. César P Ramírez-Plaza, MD, Chief of General and Digestive Surgery Department, Hospital Quirón Málaga, Avenida Imperio Argentina, 1, 29004 Málaga, Spain. cprptot@gmail.com
Telephone: +34-61-7476927
Fax: +34-95-2000968

Received: October 1, 2014
Peer-review started: October 3, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: January 26, 2015
Accepted: March 18, 2015
Article in press: March 20, 2015
Published online: July 28, 2015

Abstract

Papillary thyroid carcinoma (PTC) is the most common thyroid malignancy, accounting for approximatley 90% of thyroid malignancies in areas of the world without deficit of Iodine. It's universally accepted that total thyroidectomy is the minimal surgical treatment for patients with PTC higher than 1 cm. When a quality surgery is performed, the prognosis for PTC is excellent with 10 and 20-year overall survival rates around 90% and 85%, respectively. Lymph node metastases are very frequent in PTC, occurring in 50%-80% of PTC patients, the most of them being located in the central compartment of the neck (CCN) and with a high rate of occult or clinically undetectable disease. A lot of controversy exists regarding how to treat the central nodal compartment disease of PTC. The first problem is the lack of standardization of the terminology and concepts related to the CCN, which are clearly established and defined in this paper according to the most recent consensus documents of endocrine societies. This uniformity will provide a more consistent and clear communicaction between all the specialist involved in the treatment of PTC. CCN can be performed to treat patients with clinically detectable, radiologically suspected of intraoperative visualized nodal disease (this is defined as therapeutic) or when these findings are absent (also called prophylactic). Indicactions, advantages and disadvantages of both therapeutic and prophylactic CCN dissection are widely discussed and clear recommendations provided.

Key words: Thyroid; Cancer; Papillary; Central; Node; Compartment; Dissection; Prophylactic; Therapeutic

Core tip: When papillary thyroid cancer is discussed anywhere, there are two main matters of controversial which centralize the debates. The first one is the need of having an uniform standardization of the concepts related to the dissection of the central compartment: limits and terminology. The second point is about the concept of prophylactic dissection of the central compartment if patients with neither clinical nor radiological nodal disease related to papillary thryroid carcinoma. Both of the points are clearly defined in this paper and the readers will have clear ideas about what to when facing a papillary thyroid carcinoma.

Ramírez-Plaza CP. Central neck compartment dissection in papillary thyroid carcinoma: An update. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(2): 177-186 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i2/177.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.177

INTRODUCTION

During the period from 1973 to 2002, the incidence of thyroid cancer (TC) increased from 3.6 to 8.7 per 10^5[1]. This is almost entirely related to an increase in papillary thyroid cancer (PTC) likely influenced by detection of smaller cancers, accounting for 80% of TC and ranking as the sixth most common cancer in females[2,3]. Nowadays the most part of PTC are nonpalpable lesions incidentally diagnosed because of the proliferation and widespread of multiple different radiographic evaluations, specially neck ultrasound (US) and its increasing sensitivity in screening of small thyroid nodules. Papillary thyroid microcarcinoma, which is defined as a PTC measuring equal or less than 10 mm in diameter according to the World Health Organization classification, accounts for 38.5% of PTC in the United States, 35.7% in Shangai and 48.8% in France[4,5]. The therapeutic mainstay for PTC is resection consisting of total thyroidectomy (TT) with or without lymphadenectomy.

PTC tends to exhibit intra- and extraglandular lymphatic spread, being lymph nodes (LN) involvement and dissemination common; unlike other malignancies, and this is a very important detail, presence of LN metastases generally does not adversely influence prognosis, especially in patients under the age of 45 years. Up to 40% of patients with PTC have clinically detectable macroscopic LN metastases at initial diagnosis and up to 85% have occult or microscopic LN metastases, being clinically apparent LN more common at the extremes of age[6]. The yield of metastatic LN in every compartment of the neck is significantly related to the number of LN retrieved in the neck dissection and to the extent of pathologic examination[7,8]. At this point, it is important to know that all LN metastases are not the same in terms of their implications for locoregional recurrence and mortality, which are the main endopoints to be evaluated in the surgery of PTC. Clinical LN metastases, specially if macroscopic at the time of surgery, are associated with higher recurrence rates and poorer prognosis than are similar cases in which LN metastases are preoperatively undetectable[9-13]. In addition, an increased mortality rate has also been observed in patients with LN metastases who are 45 years or older[13,14]. By contrast, microscopic LN metastases are associated with much lower rates of recurrence and do not affect patient survival, suggesting that they remain dormant and rarely become clinically significant[15,16].

The purpose of this paper is to review and update the concepts and surgical options related to the central neck compartment (CNC) dissection in PTC, the most common well-differentiated thyroid carcinoma, according to the best evidence recently published. At this point, it is important to emphasize that no level of evidence 1 information is available in the literature with the highest reported being level 4 (http://www.cebm.net/?O=125). Papillary thyroid cancers are poorly suited for prospective studies as they tend to be clinically indolent and highly responsive to radioactive iodine (RAI) therapy, with extremely high percentage of long-term survival.

CNC: THE ANATOMICAL CONCEPT

The CNC includes LN levels Ⅵ and Ⅶ. It is bounded superiorly by the hyoid bone, laterally by the sheath of the carotid arteries, anteriorly by the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (undersurface of the sternothyroid muscles) and posteriorly by the deep layer of the deep cervical fascia (prevertebral fascia). Initially, the CNC was considered only as LN level Ⅵ and inferiorly bounded by the sternal notch. As the thyroid gland is located low in the neck, its lymphatic drainage is contiguous with the anterior superior mediastinum that can be accessed by a cervical approach. Then, LN level Ⅶ was added to the concept of CNC and its inferior border is actually defined approximately at the level of the innominate artery crossing the trachea on the right and the corresponding axial plane on the left (Figure 1). Anyway, this inferior boundary is more theoretical than practical and somehow arbitrary because the innominate arterial trunk does not exist in the left side and its relation with the sternal notch is variable with the artery rising above the notch in 25% of cadaveric dissections[17].

The CNC contains critical anatomical structures as the trachea, esophagus, parathyroid glands and recurrent laryngeal nerves (RLNs) (Figure 2). Other structures are the larynx, the hipopharynx, cervical thymus, superior laryngeal nerves and vessels (superior and inferior thyroid arteries and superior, middle and inferior thyroid veins).

LN IN CNC: SURGICAL ANATOMY AND TERMINOLOGY

The most commonly involved LN in the CNC in thyroid carcinoma are the prelaryngeal (also known as Delphian), pretracheal and both right and left paratracheal. Paratracheal LN have been also described as *"the nodes of the recurrent laryngeal nodes"* and typically start cranially at the lower margin of the cricoid cartilage and extend caudally to the level of the innominate artery crossing the trachea. The right sided paratracheal LN may be found posterior to the common carotid artery because of its more ventral and medial location compared with the left (Figure 3). LN related to superior pole PTC may sometimes be located in the paralaryngopharyngeal space along the course of the superior thyroid vasculature. Other nodal basins included in the CNC are retroesophageal, retropharyngeal and superior mediastinal

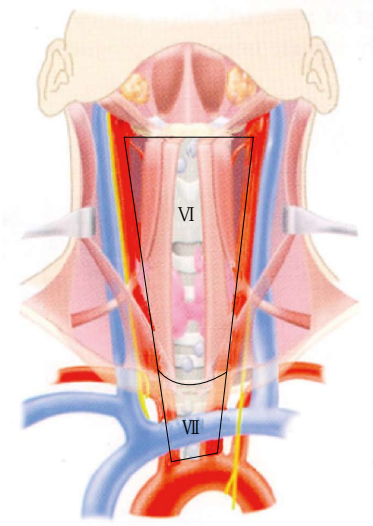


Figure 1 Lymph nodes groups of central neck compartment and their anatomic boundaries.

(inferior to the innominate artery). The mean number of LN in the paratracheal region has found to be an average of 2 to 15 in each side. Weber *et al*[18] reported a mean number of 3.9 paratracheal LN removed (range, 1 to 30) in the analysis the medical records of 645 patients who underwent total laryngectomy for squamous cell carcinoma of the larynx, hypoparynx and cervical esophagus. Pereira *et al*[19] published a mean of 8.4 ± 6.6 nodes resected in the series of 43 patients who had a TT and CNC dissection (CNCD) for PTC.

Generally, cervical LN metastases tend to spread in a stepwise fashion from the thyroid to the ipsi-lateral central LN, then to lateral compartment and/or contra-lateral central compartment. Therefore, the CNC is considered to be the first echelon of LN metastasis in PTC and its removal may theoretically alter the prognosis of this neoplasm. The surgical literature has classically lacked of standardization to define a consistent terminology relevant to the CNCD and this lacking is the main responsible of the great variability and bias in the published series. In 2009, the American Thyroid Association (ATA) published a consensus manuscript with the purpose of establishing the standard definitions to be used in future publications in order to obtain a more effective and safe CNC surgery for TC. This document was supported by the American Association of Endocrine Surgeons, American Academy of Otolaryngology - Head and Neck Surgery and the American Head and Neck Society[20]. The following definitons were suggested (and are still actually accepted) regarding a CNC.

A therapeutic CNCD (*tCNCD*) implies resection of LN metastases that are clinically apparent (cN1) in an attempt to decrease recurrence and theoretically improve survival. Clinical appearance means that there is macroscopic nodal disease grossly apparent preoperatively by physical exam (5%-10%), imaging studies (up to 30% of patients with PTC, biopsy-proven or not) or intraoperatively by visual inspection (LN larger than 1 cm and dark blue or dark appearance).

The most frequently imaging study performed is US of the neck. Preoperative US is recommended for all patients undergoing thyroidectomy for malignancy and may reduce rates of recurrent/persistent disease by allowing an adequate initial surgical treatment[21]. Some sonographic features raising suspicion for LN metastasis have been described: a diameter > 1 cm; loss of the normal fatty hilum; an irregular rounded contour with a long-access to short-access ratio < 1.5; heterogeneous echogenicity; microcalcifications; hypervascularity; and cystic changes. Anyway, US is much more sensitive for detection of metastatic LN in the lateral neck (82%-94%) than in the CNC (30%-60%)[6,22,23]. Detection of LN metastasis in the CNC using US remains difficult even in expert hands beacuse of the abnormal LN are often small in size or microscopic and frequently located deep inside the neck or just posterior to the sternum, where the overlying thyroid gland often hinders adequate visualization[21,23,24]. Kouvaraki *et al*[25] demonstrated that physical examination will miss macroscopic LN metastases in 39% of patients with PTC when a complementary neck US was performed. Although it is well accepted that intraoperative inspection underestimates the presence of pathologically detected nodal metastases, specially microscopic, a recent study documented the reliability of the surgeon to accurately determine the need for tCNCD based on a combination of preoperative US and intraoperative node inspection[26]. Neck computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging may be appropriate for the assessment of cervical nodal status in centers where experience with neck US is lacking.

A prophylactic, elective or routine CNCD (*pCNCD*) implies resection of LN that are neither apparent clinically nor by imaging methods (cN0) with the theoretical goal of removing undetected metastatic disease and then decreasing persistent local disease. The actual role of pCNCD in PTC remains a major topic of debate and will be widely discussed in this paper.

At a minimum, CNCD should include the prealryngeal, pretracheal and at least one paratracheal LN basin (usually the ipsilateral). LN "plucking" or "berry picking" implies removal only of the clinically involved LN rather than a complete nodal group within the compartment. This LN "plucking" is not recommended because violates the nodal compartment entered without adequately addressing its disease and may be associated with higher recurrence rates.

Finally, every operative record of CNCD should indicate if it has been uni- or bilateral. When bilateral, prelaryngeal, pretracheal and paratracheal right and left nodal groups are removed; for the unilateral CNCD, the difference is that only one paratracheal (right or left) nodal basin is resected.

Thymectomy (uni or bilateral) is usually performed during the CNCD to provide a good clearance of LN level Ⅶ and has been a matter of debate. Huang *et al*[27] recently published a comparative analysis of the incidence of

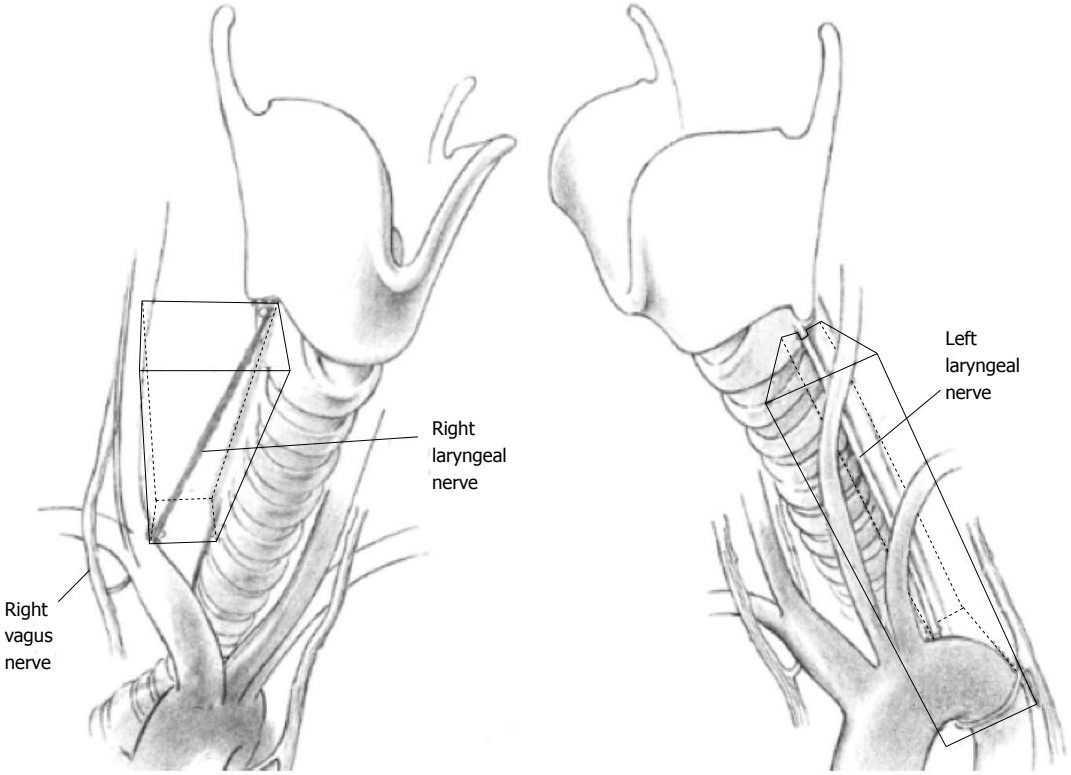


Figure 2 The way of recurrent laryngeal nerves in the central neck compartment.

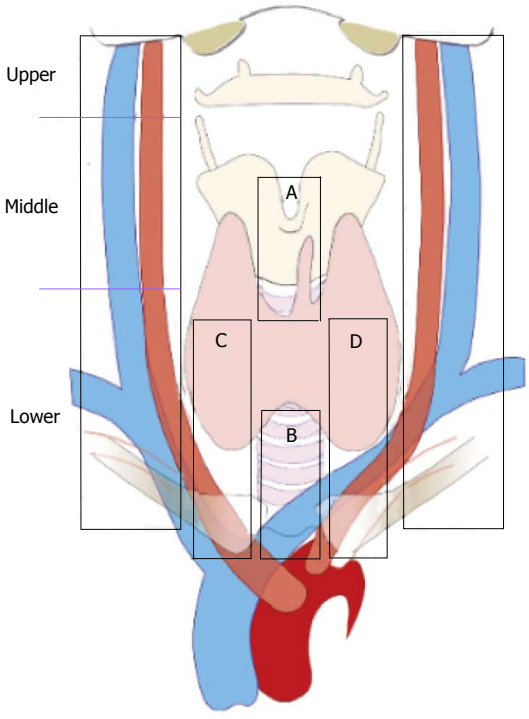


Figure 3 Boxes A, B, C and D representing lymph nodes in the central neck compartment (prelaryngeal, pretracheal and left/right paratracheal).

LN metastases in the thymus in two groups of patients undergoing CNCD with unilateral (n = 73) and bilateral (n = 82) thymectomy for PTC. A very low rate of LN micrometastasis was found in both groups (2.7% *vs* 3.6%, and always ipsilateral to the tumor) and the bilateral group presented a higher rate of transient (but not permanent) hypoparathyroidism (HP) (13.7% *vs* 52.4%). With this results, it seems clear that bilateral thymectomy during the CNCD does not provide a better carcinologic resection as no contralateral thymic metastases were found. The unilateral thymectomy with TT during the CNCD may represent an effective strategy for reducing the rate of postoperative hipocalcemia[27].

THERAPEUTIC CENTRAL NODAL COMPARTMENT DISSECTION

A general consensus exists among the different endocrine/thyroid scientific societies about TT + Therapeutic central neck compartment dissection (tCNCD) being the "gold standard" for the treatment of patients with cN1 PTC. Multiple historical and retrospective series have demonstrated that positive nodal metastases of PTC correlates with increased rates of persistent/recurrent disease and lower overall survival. Then, the rationale of removing grossly evident nodal disease along with any adjacent subclinical disease includes reducing the risk of recurrence and potentially increasing survival.

The first important reference in the medical literature defining the negative impact of age and LN involvement in local recurrence of differentiated thyroid cancer was reported in the classical paper of Harwood *et al*[9]. Globally, tumor recurrence and mortality rates were in 32%/24% and 14%/8% for LN(+) and LN(-) patients, respectively. In patients with more than 40 years old, mortality related

to the tumor was 41% and 15%, respectively, for LN(+) and LN(-) cases[9]. These results were confirmed by Tubiana *et al*[10] (*n* = 546) and Sellers *et al*[11] (*n* = 76), who published both of them series with more than 34 years of follow-up in which age older than 45-50 years old and the presence of cervical LN metastases (specially if palpable) were negative prognostic factors for poorer survival and higher locoregional recurrence[10,11]. Wada *et al*[28], in a retrospective study of 259 patients with PT microcarcinoma and routine CNCD found that recurrence was 16.7% for cN1 (*n* = 24) and only 0.43% (*n* = 235) for cN0 (this latter did not differ with a control group of non-performed CNCD, 0.65%).

Lundgren *et al*[12], in a large popullation-based control-case study, reported a 2.5-fold higher disease-related mortality in patients with differentiated thyroid cancer and LN metastases. Zaydfudim *et al*[13], in a review of the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) registry found an increased risk of death in patients with PTC aging 45 years or older and having nodal metastasis, with no difference in survival in patients younger than 45 years with or without nodal metastasis. The review of the SEER by Podnos *et al*[29] described a survival at 14 years of 82% for node-negative patients and 79% for node-positive ($P < 0.0001$) being this difference also remarkable in the group with age 45 years or younger (96% N0 *vs* 90% N1). Ito *et al*[30] reviewed retrospectively 759 patients with PTC and found a 63% of central LN metastases which independently predicted worse disease free survival.

National Cancer Comprehensive Network, version 2.2014, establishes that "clinically positive and/or biopsy-proven nodal metastases should be treated with a formal compartmental resection. In the central neck, this is achieved through a unilateral or bilateral level Ⅵ dissection"[31]. The British Thyroid Association and the Royal College of Physicians, in the third edition of their guidelines in the management of thyroid cancer (2014), recommended that "overt disease in the central compartment discovered prior to/at surgery should be treated by a therapeutic level Ⅵ/Ⅶ node dissection"[32]. The ATA, in the 2009 revised Management Guidelines for Patients with Thyroid Nodules and Differentiated Thyroid Cancer says in recommendation number 27 that "therapeutic central-compartment neck dissection for patients with clinically involved central or lateral neck LN should accompany TT to provide clearance of disease from the central neck"[33]. The Société Française d'Oto Rhino Laryngologie clearly defines the role of tCNCD, with recommendation number 7 being as follows: "when facing cN1 LN disease in the central compartment, it is recommended to avoid performing a berry picking and it is always preferred a compartment oriented central dissection when technically feasible"[34]. Finally, recommendation number 18 of the German Association of Endocrine Surgeons Guidelines is very convincing treating the role of tCNCD: "for clinically node-positive PTC, whatever the size of the thyroid primary, central compartment dissection should be combined with TT *to* diminish the risk of locoregional recurrence and improve survival"[35].

As it can be observed, there is a lot of surgical literature of low evidence level confirming the negative association between LN metastases and recurrence or survival in PTC. Nonetheless, it is also important to remark that data demonstrating improved survival and/or long-term recurrence risk among differentiated thyroid cancer patients treated with tCNCD are also lacking.

PROPHYLACTIC CENTRAL NODAL COMPARTMENT DISSECTION

Although it was longly abandoned at the end of the last century, the debate over the usefulness of prophylactic central neck compartment dissection (pCNCD) has been renewed over the past 10-15 years. During this period, the most important endocrine/thyroid medical and surgical societies have treated this topic in their published guidelines and, curiously, have been changing and swinging their recommendations about the indication of performing pCNCD in PTC. It must be considered that no level of evidence 1 information from prospective randomized trials is available in the literature and that the highest evidence reported is level 4 from retrospective studies comparing contemporaneous cohorts of patients treated with TT with or without pCNCD associated.

The main points for discussion about performing pCNCD are: rates of recurrence free survival and mortality; postoperative thyroglobulin (Tg) levels; importance of accurate staging; and, safety.

It is unknown what the natural history is in patients with PTC with microscopic LN involvement or subclinical nodal metastases (cN0). It is doubtful that they would eventually develop into clinically significant recurrences in the future as the studies of Wada *et al*[28] and Gemsenjäger *et al*[36] reported, the latter with only 17% of LN involved in pCNCD dissection and only 3.44% of nodal recurrence with no deaths related.

An example of how this issue is controversial can be appreciated in the different conclusions of recently reported meta-analysis. The good prognosis of PTC and its natural evolution has resulted in the inability of several studies to demonstrate a difference between TT+pCNCD compared with TT alone because of the short term follow-up. The one published by Lang *et al*[37] included 3331 patients and reported a 35% reduction in the risk of locoregional recurrence for patients with pCNCD (4.7% *vs* 8.6%) but it is not posible to know how much of this reduction is related to an increased rate of patients who underwent postoperative RAI-131 ablation (71.7% *vs* 53.1%). A previous meta-analysis published by Zetoune *et al*[38]. found no difference in recurrence rates favouring pCNCD, and Wang *et al*[16] also failed to evidence a significant difference between TT+pCNCD and TT, but they observed a trend toward a lower local recurrence (4.7% *vs* 7.9%). In Table 1 it can be seen that recent guidelines of the most important endocrine scientific societies about

Table 1 Recommendations of the different international endocrine and thyroid societies about prophylactic central nodal compartment dissection

Scientific Thyroid Society	Year	Recommendations about prophylactic central neck compartment dissection
European Society of Endocrine Surgeons[36]	2014	Recommended in T3 or T4 tumors; age > 45-yr or < 15-yr; male sex; bilateral or multifocal tumors; and, evidence of involved lateral LN
British Thyroid Association[32]	2014	Central compartment neck dissection is not recommended for patients without clinical or radiological evidence of lymph node involvement. May be considered for patients: PTC non-classical type; > 45-yr; multifocal tumors; > 4 cm; and extra-thyroidal extension on US, but benefit is unclear
National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN version 2.2014)[31]	2014	Consider prophylactic CNC dissection in patients with known distant metastases; bilateral nodularity; extrathyroidal extension; tumor > 4 cm; poorly differentiated histology (although the level of evidence is low, NCCN considers the intervention as appropriate)
Japanese Society of Thyroid Surgeons and Japan Association of Endocrine Surgeons[40]	2014	Previous 2010 JSTS/JAES guidelines recommended routine bilateral central node dissection in patients who underwent total thyroidectomy. At present guidelines, it is not routinely considered and the indication may depend on institutional policy and surgeons' skill levels, joining ATA phylosophy
Société Française d'Oto Rhino Laryngologie et de Chirurgie de la Face et du Cou[34]	2012	In patients cN0, the diagnostic value of surgical exploration of the CNC is weak. Two different strategies are recommended: a compartment oriented CNC or not performing any surgical tecnique. Nonetheless, in patients with T3/T4 tumors prophylactic CNC dissection is strongly recommended
European Society of Medical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines[38]	2012	The benefit of prophylactic central node dissection in the absence of evidence of nodal disease is controversial. There is no evidence that it improves recurrence or mortality rate, but it permits an accurate staging of the disease that may guide subsequent treatment and follow-up
American Thyroid Association[33]	2009	Prophylactic central-compartment neck dissection (ipsilateral or bilateral) may be performed in patients with papillary thyroid carcinoma with clinically uninvolved central neck lymph nodes, especially for advanced primary tumors (T3 or T4)
German Association of Endocrine Surgeons[35]	2013	The clinical benefit regarding locoregional recurrence and survival after prophylactic compartment dissection for clinically node-negative PTC > 10 mm is unproven although occult lymph node metastases are common in this setting. To prevent the risk of surgical complications from outweighing a conceivable oncological benefit, prophylactic lymph node dissection is not advised unless the requisite surgical expertise is available

PTC: Papillary thyroid carcinoma; CNC: Central neck compartment; NCCN: National Comprehensive Cancer Network; ATA: American Thyroid Association; JSTS: Japanese Society of Thyroid Surgeons; JAES: Japanese Association of Endocrine Surgeons; LN: Lymph nodes.

pCNCD are dim and use very vague expressions[31-35,39-41]. A global analysis of this table led us to consider pCNCD only in selected group of patients with recognized factors of higher locoregional recurrence (specially T3/T4 tumors, bilateral or multifocal tumors and age older than 45 years). Some reports agree that the mutation of BRAF V600E is associated with tumor aggressiveness, a poor prognosis, resistance to postoperative RAI therapy and the need for a more extended surgery. However, the potential role of the preoperative assessment of BRAF V600E mutation status in decisions regarding whether to perform pCNCD remains controversial. When the necessity of pCNCD in patients with PTC is preoperatively determined, we should recommend to perform pCNCD if BRAF V600E mutation and other conventional clinical risk factors are coexistent[42]. All these data suggest that the benefit provided by a pCNCD in cN0 patients may only be limited in terms of recurrence and that a prospective study with a very long follow-up, homogenous population and rigurous inclusion criteria is needeed. Nonetheless, a randomized controlled trial will hardly be performed because it has been estimated to cost $20000000 and would need 5840 patients to achieve statistical power[43].

As it would be expected, pCNCD has not shown any cancer-specific survival benefit. Costa *et al*[44], in a study on a group of 244 PTC who underwent TT+pCNCD or TT alone, did not find any difference in recurrence rates (6.3% *vs* 7.7%) or survival even when 47% of pCNCD showed LN involvement. Zuniga *et al*[45] also had a rate of 82.3% patients with LN involved after pCNCD but similar 5-year disease-free survival (88.2% *vs* 85.6%) was obtained for this cohort when compared to that having only TT. The most recent controversy has been provided by Barczyński *et al*[46], who has published the first paper in the literature showing a benefit not only for local recurrence (5.5% *vs* 12.4%) but also for specific disease survival (98% *vs* 92.5%) for patients with PTC having TT + pCNCD (n = 358) in comparison with those who had only TT (n = 282). Major bias in this study are its retrospective nature and that patients considered at risk in any group had RAI treatment.

Complete remission of PTC is defined by normal US and negative Tg levels in blood in the follow-up. Theoretically, pCNCD will result in higher rate of undetectable levels of Tg, facilitating follow-up and cancer surveillance and being a good surrogate for recurrence. Nonetheless, this difference may be overlaped by administration of postoperative RAI.

Lang *et al*[47] examined the results of surgical treatment of 185 patients PTC having TT + pCNCD (n = 82) or only TT (n = 103). The first group had lower median postoperative Tg levels (0.5 μg/L *vs* 6 μg/L) and higher rate of athyroglobulinemia (51.2% *vs* 22.3%) both of the differences with $P < 0.05$. When RAI was indicated by clinical or histological risk criteria, similar values with no significative differences were achieved six mo later. The only explanation posible is that residual microscopic disease not treated by pCNCD surgery in the TT-alone group was ablated by radioiodine administration. So *et al*[48], in a similar study comparing 113 patients having

TT alone with 119 undergoing TT+pCNCD found that the latter had significative lower levels of Tg (1.07 ng/mL *vs* 2.24 ng/mL), but this difference disappeared when low-dose RAI ablation was given and 3 years locoregional control was similar in both groups (96.5% *vs* 98.3%). Sywak *et al*[49] used Tg levels in an attempt to support pCNCD in his study of 447 PTC patients cN0 undergoing TT alone (n = 391) or TT+pCNCD (n = 56) and having RAI ablation following a similar algorithm. Mean postablation Tg levels were lower in the pCNCD (0.4 mg/L *vs* 9.3 mg/L, $P < 0.02$) and also was the rate of undetectable Tg levels (72% *vs* 43%, $P < 0.001$). However, no significant differences were found in locoregional recurrence rates (3.2% *vs* 5.6%) or cancer-specific mortality rates (0% *vs* 0%) despite a shorter median follow-up duration (25 mo *vs* 70 mo) in the pCNCD group. It can be thought that the impact of performing pCNCD to obtain an analytical control of the disease is more theoretical than really useful[49].

Performing a pCNCD provides the most real and adequate TNM staging for PTC and upstages 30%-50% of patients from cN0 to pN1. Then, patients aging 45 yr or older and having tumors staged as TNM Ⅰ (T1N0) or Ⅱ (T2N0) become TNM Ⅲ (T1 or T2 with N1a/b). The immediate consequence of stage migration is a different rate of overall cancer-specific survival (85%-90% for stage Ⅲ, 95% for stage Ⅰ). In addition, pN1 patients will be included in the ATA group of intermediate risk of recurrence and will receive RAI ablation at higher dosis, while T1 or T2 with cN0 patients are usually included in the low risk of recurrence group and receive lower dosis of RAI ablation. A recent systematic review published by Sawka *et al*[50] showed, however, that there is no benefit from RAI in reducing disease-specific mortality or recurrence in early stages (T1/T2). Bonnet *et al*[51] reviewed the records of 115 patients with PTC < 2 cm (T1) and cN0 undergoing pCNCD, considering the ATA guidelines and indicating RAI ablation for T1 PTC only if LN involvement existed. LN metastases were found in 42% and, globally, 58% of patients received RAI treatment (age < 18 years, aggressive cell types on pathology and vascular or capsular invasion were the other indications diferent than LN+ for RAI ablation). LN status modified the indication of RAI treatment in 30.5% of patients (14.65% were T1a tumors, < 1 cm, which resulted in pN0 and 15.85% were T1b tumors, between 1-2 cm, which resulted in pN1). Morbidity was limited to a 0.9% of permanent HP and the same percentage of RLN palsy. One year follow-up revealed 97.4% of patients with normal neck US and undetectable Tg levels, concluding the authors that, for T1 PTC, a pCNCD may change the need for RAI ablation without increasing the standard rate of complication or the risk of local recurrence[51].

Hughes *et al*[52] observed that patients with TT + pCNCD had higher dose of RAI than those with only TT (150 *vs* 30 mCi, P = 0.01), and Moo *et al*[53] found similar results (102.7 *vs* 66.3 mCi, P = 0.002). In both series, there was no difference in the rates of central neck recurrence or survival between both groups. Then, pCNCD allows better staging and stratification with more patients in early stage recieving higher dose of RAI ablation. Nevertheless, neither local recurrence rates nor survival are affected, some patients who will have no oncological benefit are exposed to potential side effects of RAI and, finally, health care costs are increased.

Safety can not be used nowadays to justify not performing a pCNCD in patients with PTC. CNC resection means wide dissection and sometimes gentle manipulation of the RLNs (which may result in temporary or permanent dysphonia up to 1%-3%) and clearance of all the fatty and lymphatic tissue aorund the parathyroid glands (which may be unintentionally removed o devascularised causing permanent or transient HP in, respectively, 2%-5% and 10%-50% respectively).

Lang *et al*[37] found that patients with pCNCD were 2.5 times more likely to have temporary HP than those undergoing TT alone in a systematic review reporting short-term results of patients operated for PTC. A recent meta-analysis about adverse effects of TT compared with TT + pCNCD included 1132 patients from 5 retrospective studies and found that there was one extra case of transient HP for every 8 (most exactly, 7.7) pCNCD performed. However, there was no increased risk of permanent HP and RLN injury[54]. Although some isolated series have reported higher rates of temporary RLN lesions with pCNCD (always with non-significant values of "*P*"), to date no studies have shown an increased risk of permanent RLN injury[55-57].

If pCNCD is not performed, the patient is at risk for central recurrence and may require a second operation in order to remove persistent or recurrent nodal disease. Because of the presence of fibrosis and scar tissue, re-operation may be associated with higher morbidity than pCNCD done at the first surgery. Segal *et al*[58] reviewed 503 patients retrospectively operated on for PTC, and the 48 requiring reoperation had higher complication rates of permanent RLN injury (25% *vs* 8%) and permanent HP (8.3% *vs* 5%). Simon *et al*[59] reported 77 patients undergoing a second surgery for recurrence out of a total of 252 primarily operated PTC, also being rates of permanent RLN palsy (6.8% *vs* 2.6%) and HP (3.9% *vs* 1.7%) higher for the re-operative group. On the other hand, Shen *et al*[60] found similar results in all the parameters analysed related to morbidity between first time performed pCNCD (n = 189) and re-operated patients (n = 106) with PTC (permanent HP, 0.5% *vs* 0.9%; permanent hoarseness, 2.6% *vs* 1.9%; and, transient hoarseness, 4.8% *vs* 4.7%).

As a conclusion, when an extensive review of the literature is done there seems to be no arguments favouring routine or pCNCD as an universal rule for patients with PTC. The guidelines and consensus documents of the most important medical and surgical societies are in the direction of selecting subgroups of patients with high risk of recurrence for pCNCD, specially T3 or T4 tumors, multifocal/bilateral tumors and patients with BRAF V600E mutation detected in the preoperative setting. In the rest

of PTC, which are the majority, TT must be considered an oncological proper treatment providing the best overall survival.

REFERENCES

1 **Davies L**, Welch HG. Increasing incidence of thyroid cancer in the United States, 1973-2002. *JAMA* 2006; **295**: 2164-2167 [PMID: 16684987 DOI: 10.1001/jama.295.18.2164]

2 **Siegel R**, Naishadham D, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2012; **62**: 10-29 [PMID: 22237781 DOI: 10.3322/CAAC.20138]

3 **Davies L**, Ouellette M, Hunter M, Welch HG. The increasing incidence of small thyroid cancers: where are the cases coming from? *Laryngoscope* 2010; **120**: 2446-2451 [PMID: 21108428 DOI: 10.1002/lary.21076]

4 **Sobin LH**. Histological typing of thyroid tumours. *Histopathology* 1990; **16**: 513 [PMID: 2361664 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.1990.tb01559.x]

5 **Liu Z**, Wang L, Yi P, Wang CY, Huang T. Risk factors for central lymph node metastasis of patients with papillary thyroid microcarcinoma: a meta-analysis. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2014; **7**: 932-937 [PMID: 24696711]

6 **McHenry CR**, Stulberg JJ. Prophylactic central compartment neck dissection for papillary thyroid cancer. *Surg Clin North Am* 2014; **94**: 529-540 [PMID: 24857575 DOI: 10.1016/j.suc.2014.02.003]

7 **Köhler HF**, Kowalski LP. How many nodes are needed to stage a neck? A critical appraisal. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 2010; **267**: 785-791 [PMID: 19904547 DOI: 10.1007/s00405-009-1144-z]

8 **Hartl DM**, Leboulleux S, Al Ghuzlan A, Baudin E, Chami L, Schlumberger M, Travagli JP. Optimization of staging of the neck with prophylactic central and lateral neck dissection for papillary thyroid carcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2012; **255**: 777-783 [PMID: 22418010 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31824b7b68]

9 **Harwood J**, Clark OH, Dunphy JE. Significance of lymph node metastasis in differentiated thyroid cancer. *Am J Surg* 1978; **136**: 107-112 [PMID: 567016 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(78)90209-X]

10 **Tubiana M**, Schlumberger M, Rougier P, Laplanche A, Benhamou E, Gardet P, Caillou B, Travagli JP, Parmentier C. Long-term results and prognostic factors in patients with differentiated thyroid carcinoma. *Cancer* 1985; **55**: 794-804 [PMID: 3967174 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19850215)55:4<794::AID-CNCR2820550418>3.0.CO;2-Z]

11 **Sellers M**, Beenken S, Blankenship A, Soong SJ, Turbat-Herrera E, Urist M, Maddox W. Prognostic significance of cervical lymph node metastases in differentiated thyroid cancer. *Am J Surg* 1992; **164**: 578-581 [PMID: 1463103 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(05)80710-X]

12 **Lundgren CI**, Hall P, Dickman PW, Zedenius J. Clinically significant prognostic factors for differentiated thyroid carcinoma: a population-based, nested case-control study. *Cancer* 2006; **106**: 524-531 [PMID: 16369995 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.21653]

13 **Zaydfudim V,** Feurer ID, Griffin MR, Phay JE. The impact of lymph node involvement on survival in patients with papillary and follicular thyroid carcinoma. *Surgery* 2008; **144:** 1070-1077; discussion 1070-1077; [PMID: 19041020 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2008.08.034]

14 **Sugitani I**, Kasai N, Fujimoto Y, Yanagisawa A. A novel classification system for patients with PTC: addition of the new variables of large (3 cm or greater) nodal metastases and reclassification during the follow-up period. *Surgery* 2004; **135**: 139-148 [PMID: 14739848 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(03)00384-2]

15 **Shan CX**, Zhang W, Jiang DZ, Zheng XM, Liu S, Qiu M. Routine central neck dissection in differentiated thyroid carcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Laryngoscope* 2012; **122**: 797-804 [PMID: 22294492 DOI: 10.1002/lary.22162]

16 **Wang TS**, Cheung K, Farrokhyar F, Roman SA, Sosa JA. A meta-analysis of the effect of prophylactic central compartment neck dissection on locoregional recurrence rates in patients with papillary thyroid cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 3477-3483 [PMID: 23846784 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3125-0]

17 **Martins AS**. Neck and mediastinal node dissection in pharyngolaryngoesophageal tumors. *Head Neck* 2001; **23**: 772-779 [PMID: 11505488 DOI: 10.1002/hed.1110]

18 **Weber RS**, Marvel J, Smith P, Hankins P, Wolf P, Goepfert H. Paratracheal lymph node dissection for carcinoma of the larynx, hypopharynx, and cervical esophagus. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993; **108**: 11-17 [PMID: 8437869 DOI: 10.1177/019459989310800102]

19 **Pereira JA**, Jimeno J, Miquel J, Iglesias M, Munné A, Sancho JJ, Sitges-Serra A. Nodal yield, morbidity, and recurrence after central neck dissection for papillary thyroid carcinoma. *Surgery* 2005; **138**: 1095-1100, discussion 1100-1101 [PMID: 16360396 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2005.09.013]

20 **Carty SE**, Cooper DS, Doherty GM, Duh QY, Kloos RT, Mandel SJ, Randolph GW, Stack BC, Steward DL, Terris DJ, Thompson GB, Tufano RP, Tuttle RM, Udelsman R. Consensus statement on the terminology and classification of central neck dissection for thyroid cancer. *Thyroid* 2009; **19**: 1153-1158 [PMID: 19860578 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2009.0159]

21 **Marshall CL**, Lee JE, Xing Y, Perrier ND, Edeiken BS, Evans DB, Grubbs EG. Routine pre-operative ultrasonography for papillary thyroid cancer: effects on cervical recurrence. *Surgery* 2009; **146**: 1063-1072 [PMID: 19958933 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2009.09.027]

22 **Choi JS**, Chung WY, Kwak JY, Moon HJ, Kim MJ, Kim EK. Staging of papillary thyroid carcinoma with ultrasonography: performance in a large series. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2011; **18**: 3572-3578 [PMID: 21594702 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-1783-3]

23 **Hwang HS**, Orloff LA. Efficacy of preoperative neck ultrasound in the detection of cervical lymph node metastasis from thyroid cancer. *Laryngoscope* 2011; **121**: 487-491 [PMID: 21344423 DOI: 10.1002/lary.21227]

24 **Leboulleux S,** Girard E, Rose M, Travagli JP, Sabbah N, Caillou B, Hartl DM, Lassau N, Baudin E, Schlumberger M. Ultrasound criteria of malignancy for cervical lymph nodes in patients followed up for differentiated thyroid cancer. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92:** 3590-3594 [PMID: 17609301 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2007-0444]

25 **Kouvaraki MA**, Shapiro SE, Fornage BD, Edeiken-Monro BS, Sherman SI, Vassilopoulou-Sellin R, Lee JE, Evans DB. Role of preoperative ultrasonography in the surgical management of patients with thyroid cancer. *Surgery* 2003; **134**: 946-954; discussion 954-955 [PMID: 14668727 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(03)00424-0]

26 **Shen WT**, Ogawa L, Ruan D, Suh I, Duh QY, Clark OH. Central neck lymph node dissection for papillary thyroid cancer: the reliability of surgeon judgment in predicting which patients will benefit. *Surgery* 2010; **148**: 398-403 [PMID: 20451230 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2010.03.021]

27 **Huang DP**, Ye XH, Xiang YQ, Zhang XH. Thymectomy in central lymph node dissection for papillary thyroid cancer. *Int J Clin Exp Med* 2014; **7**: 1135-1139 [PMID: 24955195]

28 **Wada N**, Duh QY, Sugino K, Iwasaki H, Kameyama K, Mimura T, Ito K, Takami H, Takanashi Y. Lymph node metastasis from 259 papillary thyroid microcarcinomas: frequency, pattern of occurrence and recurrence, and optimal strategy for neck dissection. *Ann Surg* 2003; **237**: 399-407 [PMID: 12616125 DOI: 10.1097/01.SLA.0000055273.58908.19]

29 **Podnos YD**, Smith D, Wagman LD, Ellenhorn JD. The implication of lymph node metastasis on survival in patients with well-differentiated thyroid cancer. *Am Surg* 2005; **71**: 731-734 [PMID: 16468507]

30 **Ito Y**, Jikuzono T, Higashiyama T, Asahi S, Tomoda C, Takamura Y, Miya A, Kobayashi K, Matsuzuka F, Kuma K, Miyauchi A. Clinical significance of lymph node metastasis of thyroid papillary carcinoma located in one lobe. *World J Surg* 2006; **30**: 1821-1828 [PMID: 16983469 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-006-0211-5]

31 **Thyroid carcinoma.** Version 2.2014. NCCN Guidelines: 1-120. Available from: URL: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/

physician_gls/PDF/thyroid.pdf. Accesed 22/09/2014
32 **British Thyroid Association Guidelines for the Management of Thyroid Cancer.** 3rd ed. *Clin Endocrinol* 2014; **81** Suppl 1: 1-136. Available from: URL: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/store/10.1111/cen.12515/asset/cen12515.pdf; jsessionid=039547DC4546F1BF9CB69D104901BF44.f02t03?v=1&t=i0d2w24a&s=c9b56150009b6aef12fc73147d3bc97ac5b820e6
33 **Cooper DS**, Doherty GM, Haugen BR, Kloos RT, Lee SL, Mandel SJ, Mazzaferri EL, McIver B, Pacini F, Schlumberger M, Sherman SI, Steward DL, Tuttle RM. Revised American Thyroid Association management guidelines for patients with thyroid nodules and differentiated thyroid cancer. *Thyroid* 2009; **19**: 1167-1214 [PMID: 19860577 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2009.0110]
34 Recommandation de la Société Française d'Oto Rhino Laryngologie et de Chirurgie de la Face et du Cou. Prise en charge ganglionnaire dans les cancers différenciés de souche folliculaire du corps thyroïde chez l'adulte: 1-77. Available from: URL: http://www.orlfrance.org/article.php?id=20
35 **Dralle H**, Musholt TJ, Schabram J, Steinmüller T, Frilling A, Simon D, Goretzki PE, Niederle B, Scheuba C, Clerici T, Hermann M, Kußmann J, Lorenz K, Nies C, Schabram P, Trupka A, Zielke A, Karges W, Luster M, Schmid KW, Vordermark D, Schmoll HJ, Mühlenberg R, Schober O, Rimmele H, Machens A. German Association of Endocrine Surgeons practice guideline for the surgical management of malignant thyroid tumors. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2013; **398**: 347-375 [PMID: 23456424 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-013-1057-6]
36 **Gemsenjäger E**, Perren A, Seifert B, Schüler G, Schweizer I, Heitz PU. Lymph node surgery in papillary thyroid carcinoma. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **197**: 182-190 [PMID: 12892795 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(03)00421-6]
37 **Lang BH**, Ng SH, Lau LL, Cowling BJ, Wong KP, Wan KY. A systematic review and meta-analysis of prophylactic central neck dissection on short-term locoregional recurrence in papillary thyroid carcinoma after total thyroidectomy. *Thyroid* 2013; **23**: 1087-1098 [PMID: 23402640 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2012.0608]
38 **Zetoune T**, Keutgen X, Buitrago D, Aldailami H, Shao H, Mazumdar M, Fahey TJ, Zarnegar R. Prophylactic central neck dissection and local recurrence in papillary thyroid cancer: a meta-analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 3287-3293 [PMID: 20596784 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1137-6]
39 **Sancho JJ**, Lennard TW, Paunovic I, Triponez F, Sitges-Serra A. Prophylactic central neck disection in papillary thyroid cancer: a consensus report of the European Society of Endocrine Surgeons (ESES). *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2014; **399**: 155-163 [PMID: 24352594 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-013-1152-8]
40 **Takami H**, Ito Y, Okamoto T, Onoda N, Noguchi H, Yoshida A. Revisiting the guidelines issued by the Japanese Society of Thyroid Surgeons and Japan Association of Endocrine Surgeons: a gradual move towards consensus between Japanese and western practice in the management of thyroid carcinoma. *World J Surg* 2014; **38**: 2002-2010 [PMID: 24671301 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-014-2498-y]
41 **Pacini F**, Castagna MG, Brilli L, Pentheroudakis G. Thyroid cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23** Suppl 7: vii110-vii119 [PMID: 22997443 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds230]
42 **Lee JW**, Koo BS. The prognostic implication and potential role of BRAF mutation in the decision to perform elective neck dissection for thyroid cancer. *Gland Surg* 2013; **2**: 206-211 [PMID: 25083484 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2227-684X.2013.11.02]
43 **Carling T**, Carty SE, Ciarleglio MM, Cooper DS, Doherty GM, Kim LT, Kloos RT, Mazzaferri EL, Peduzzi PN, Roman SA, Sippel RS, Sosa JA, Stack BC, Steward DL, Tufano RP, Tuttle RM, Udelsman R. American Thyroid Association design and feasibility of a prospective randomized controlled trial of prophylactic central lymph node dissection for papillary thyroid carcinoma. *Thyroid* 2012; **22**: 237-244 [PMID: 22313454 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2011.0317]
44 **Costa S**, Giugliano G, Santoro L, Ywata De Carvalho A, Massaro MA, Gibelli B, De Fiori E, Grosso E, Ansarin M, Calabrese L. Role of prophylactic central neck dissection in cN0 papillary thyroid cancer. *Acta Otorhinolaryngol Ital* 2009; **29**: 61-69 [PMID: 20111614]
45 **Zuniga S**, Sanabria A. Prophylactic central neck dissection in stage N0 papillary thyroid carcinoma. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2009; **135**: 1087-1091 [PMID: 19917919 DOI: 10.1001/archoto.2009.163]
46 **Barczyński M**, Konturek A, Stopa M, Nowak W. Prophylactic central neck dissection for papillary thyroid cancer. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 410-418 [PMID: 23188784 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8985]
47 **Lang BH**, Wong KP, Wan KY, Lo CY. Impact of routine unilateral central neck dissection on preablative and postablative stimulated thyroglobulin levels after total thyroidectomy in papillary thyroid carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 60-67 [PMID: 21681379 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-1833-x]
48 **So YK**, Seo MY, Son YI. Prophylactic central lymph node dissection for clinically node-negative papillary thyroid microcarcinoma: influence on serum thyroglobulin level, recurrence rate, and postoperative complications. *Surgery* 2012; **151**: 192-198 [PMID: 21497873 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2011.02.004]
49 **Sywak M**, Cornford L, Roach P, Stalberg P, Sidhu S, Delbridge L. Routine ipsilateral level VI lymphadenectomy reduces postoperative thyroglobulin levels in papillary thyroid cancer. *Surgery* 2006; **140**: 1000-1005; discussion 1000-1005 [PMID: 17188149 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2006.08.001]
50 **Sawka AM**, Brierley JD, Tsang RW, Thabane L, Rotstein L, Gafni A, Straus S, Goldstein DP. An updated systematic review and commentary examining the effectiveness of radioactive iodine remnant ablation in well-differentiated thyroid cancer. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 2008; **37**: 457-80, x [PMID: 18502337 DOI: 10.1016/j.ecl.2008.02.007]
51 **Bonnet S**, Hartl D, Leboulleux S, Baudin E, Lumbroso JD, Al Ghuzlan A, Chami L, Schlumberger M, Travagli JP. Prophylactic lymph node dissection for papillary thyroid cancer less than 2 cm: implications for radioiodine treatment. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **94**: 1162-1167 [PMID: 19116234 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2008-1931]
52 **Hughes DT**, White ML, Miller BS, Gauger PG, Burney RE, Doherty GM. Influence of prophylactic central lymph node dissection on postoperative thyroglobulin levels and radioiodine treatment in papillary thyroid cancer. *Surgery* 2010; **148**: 1100-1116; discussion 1100-1116; [PMID: 21134539 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2010.09.019]
53 **Moo TA**, McGill J, Allendorf J, Lee J, Fahey T, Zarnegar R. Impact of prophylactic central neck lymph node dissection on early recurrence in papillary thyroid carcinoma. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 1187-1191 [PMID: 20130868 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0418-3]
54 **Chisholm EJ**, Kulinskaya E, Tolley NS. Systematic review and meta-analysis of the adverse effects of thyroidectomy combined with central neck dissection as compared with thyroidectomy alone. *Laryngoscope* 2009; **119**: 1135-1139 [PMID: 19358241 DOI: 10.1002/lary.20236]
55 **Roh JL**, Park JY, Park CI. Total thyroidectomy plus neck dissection in differentiated papillary thyroid carcinoma patients: pattern of nodal metastasis, morbidity, recurrence, and postoperative levels of serum parathyroid hormone. *Ann Surg* 2007; **245**: 604-610 [PMID: 17414610 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000250451.59685.67]
56 **Palestini N**, Borasi A, Cestino L, Freddi M, Odasso C, Robecchi A. Is central neck dissection a safe procedure in the treatment of papillary thyroid cancer? Our experience. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2008; **393**: 693-698 [PMID: 18592264 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-008-0360-0]
57 **Sadowski BM**, Snyder SK, Lairmore TC. Routine bilateral central lymph node clearance for papillary thyroid cancer. *Surgery* 2009; **146**: 696-703; discussion 703-705 [PMID: 19789029 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2009.06.046]
58 **Segal K**, Friedental R, Lubin E, Shvero J, Sulkes J, Feinmesser R. Papillary carcinoma of the thyroid. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1995; **113**: 356-363 [PMID: 7567004 DOI: 10.1016/

S0194-5998(95)70068-4]

59 **Simon D**, Goretzki PE, Witte J, Röher HD. Incidence of regional recurrence guiding radicality in differentiated thyroid carcinoma. *World J Surg* 1996; **20**: 860-886; discussion 866 [PMID: 8678963 DOI: 10.1007/s002689900131]

60 **Shen WT**, Ogawa L, Ruan D, Suh I, Kebebew E, Duh QY, Clark OH. Central neck lymph node dissection for papillary thyroid cancer: comparison of complication and recurrence rates in 295 initial dissections and reoperations. *Arch Surg* 2010; **145**: 272-275 [PMID: 20231628 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2010.9]

P- Reviewer: Kara PO, Sadeghi R
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.187

World J Surg Proced 2015 July 28; 5(2): 187-197
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

Comprehensive treatment for the peritoneal metastasis from gastric cancer

Yutaka Yonemura, Emel Canbay, Yoshio Endou, Haruaki Ishibashi, Akiyosi Mizumoto, Yan Li, Yang Liu, Kazuyoshi Takeshita, Masumi Ichinose, Nobuyuki Takao, Takuya Saitou, Kousuke Noguchi, Masamitu Hirano, Oliver Glehen, Bjorn Brűcher, Paul H Sugarbaker

Yutaka Yonemura, Emel Canbay, Haruaki Ishibashi, Akiyosi Mizumoto, Yang Liu, Kazuyoshi Takeshita, Masumi Ichinose, Nobuyuki Takao, Takuya Saitou, Kousuke Noguchi, Masamitu Hirano, NPO to Support Peritoneal Surface Malignancy Treatment, Oosaka, Kishiwada 596-0032, Japan

Yutaka Yonemura, Emel Canbay, Haruaki Ishibashi, Akiyosi Mizumoto, Yang Liu, Kazuyoshi Takeshita, Masumi Ichinose, Nobuyuki Takao, Takuya Saitou, Kousuke Noguchi, Masamitu Hirano, Department of Regional Cancer Therapies, Peritoneal Surface Malignancy Center, Kishiwada Tokusyukai Houspital, Kusatsu General Hospital, Shiga 600-8189, Japan

Yoshio Endou, Department of Experimental Therapeutics, Cancer Research Institute, Kanazawa University, Kanazawa 926-1192, Japan

Yan Li, Yang Liu, Department of Surgery, Wuhan University, Wuhan 430000, Hubei Province, China

Oliver Glehen, Dēpartement de Chirurgie Gēnerale, Centre Hospitalier Lyon-Sud Hospices Civils de Lyon, Universitē Lyon, 69364 Lyon, France

Bjorn Brűcher, Surgical Oncology, Department of Surgery, Tűbingen Comprehensive Cancer center, University of Tűbingen, 42001-72009 Tűbingen, Germany

Paul H Sugarbaker, Center of Gastrointestinal Malignancies, Program in Peritoneal Surface Malignancies, MedStar Washington Hospital Center, Washington, DC 20010, United States

Author contributions: All the authors contribute to this paper in the design, acquisition of data, and analysis of data.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors state no conflict of interest and have received no payment in preparation of this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Yutaka Yonemura, MD, PhD, Director, NPO to Support Peritoneal Surface Malignancy Treatment, Oosaka, Kishiwada 596-0032, Japan. y.yonemura@coda.ocn.ne.jp
Telephone: +81-075-7465895
Fax: +81-075-7465895

Received: July 13, 2014
Peer-review started: July 13, 2014
First decision: September 28, 2014
Revised: February 15, 2015
Accepted: March 16, 2015
Article in press: March 18, 2015
Published online: July 28, 2015

Abstract

Recently, a novel comprehensive treatment consisting of cytoreductive surgery (CRS) and perioperative chemotherapy (POC) was developed for the treatment of peritoneal metastasis (PM) with a curative intent. In the treatment, the macroscopic disease is completely removed by the peritonectomy techniques in combination with POC. This article reviews the results of the comprehensive treatment for PM from gastric cancer, and verifies the effects of CRS and POC, including neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC) and hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (HIPEC). Completeness of cytoreduction, peritoneal carcinomatosis index (PCI) less than the threshold levels after NAC,

absence of ascites, cytologic status, pathologic response after NAC are the independent prognostic factors. Among these prognostic factors, PCI threshold level is the most valuable independent prognostic factor. After staging laparoscopy, patients with PM from gastric cancer are recommended to treat with NAC before CRS. After NAC, indication for CRS is determined by laparoscopy. The indications of the comprehensive treatment are patients with PCI less than the threshold levels, negative cytology, and responders after NAC. Patients satisfy these factors are the candidates for the CRS and HIPEC.

Key words: Gastric cancer; Hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy; Peritoneal metastasis; Peritonectomy

Core tip: This article reviews the results of the comprehensive treatment for peritoneal metastasis from gastric cancer, and verifies the effects of cytoreductive surgery and perioperative chemotherapy, including neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC), and hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (HIPEC). Multivariate analyses revealed that the completeness of cytoreduction, peritoneal cancer index less than the threshold levels after NAC, cytologic status, pathologic response after NAC are the independent prognostic factors. Patients satisfying these factors are recommended to undergo D2-gastrectomy combined with complete removal of PC and HIPEC.

Yonemura Y, Canbay E, Endou Y, Ishibashi H, Mizumoto A, Li Y, Liu Y, Takeshita K, Ichinose M, Takao N, Saitou T, Noguchi K, Hirano M, Glehen O, Brűcher B, Sugarbaker PH. Comprehensive treatment for the peritoneal metastasis from gastric cancer. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(2): 187-197 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i2/187.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.187

INTRODUCTION

Peritoneal metastasis (PM) was considered as a terminal stage with very poor prognosis. In the late 1990s, Peritoneal Surface Malignancy Oncology Group International proposed a novel comprehensive treatment consisting of cytoreductive surgery (CRS) and perioperative chemotherapy (POC). In the comprehensive treatment, the macroscopic disease is completely removed by the peritonectomy techniques in combination with POC. POC includes neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy (NIPS), bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy (BISIC), laparoscopic hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy (LHIPEC), hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (HIPEC), extensive intraoperative peritoneal lavage (EIPL), early postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy and late postoperative systemic chemotherapy[1-3].

This article reviews the rationale of the comprehensive treatment for PM from gastric cancer.

Quantitative evaluation of PM

Preoperative and intraoperative diagnosis for PM should provide reliable information about the tumor burden and distribution of PM[4,5]. At present, the peritoneal carcinomatosis index (PCI) is used worldwide[5]. The abdominal compartments were divided into 13 sectors. The tumor involvement in each compartment is macroscopically evaluated by the lesion size scores from 0 to 3. PCI described the tumor load in the abdominal cavity from 0 to 39. PCI score is considered an important prognostic indicator after CRS. Threshold levels of PCI for favorable *vs* poor prognosis were reported from several high volume centers. Glehen *et al*[6,7] reported that all patients died within 3 years after CRS when the PCI score was higher than 12. Even if complete cytoreduction appears to be possible, patients with PCI of higher than 12 should be contraindicated for the aggressive CRS[7]. Yonemura *et al*[8] reported patients with PCI of lower than 6 survived significantly better than those with PCI of higher than 7. Yang *et al*[9] proposed the best candidates for the CRS could be patients with PCI < 20. To select patients for CRS, PCI assessed by preoperative computed tomography (CT) may have an important role. However, the accuracy of CT for the preoperative evaluation of PM from gastric cancer is limited, because the size of PM from gastric cancer is usually small[10].

In the preoperative evaluation for PM, Hong *et al*[11] proposed a new classification consisting of three grades. Grade 0 was defined as PM detected during operation with no evidence of PC in the preoperative evaluation, and grade 1 was defined as PM or ascites detected by CT scan, however, no bowel involvement or need for paracentesis was recorded. Grade 2 was defined as bowel wall involvement or a large amount of ascites requiring paracentesis[11]. When the grade 0 and grade 1 were summed as low-grade and grade 2 was defined as high-grade, survival of patients with low-grade PM was significantly longer than the patients with high-grade PM. Among the patients with low-grade PC, patients who received a gastrectomy had longer survival than those who did not receive a gastrectomy[11]. This staging system is useful to determine the indication of gastrectomy or systemic chemotherapy.

In the Japanese general rules of gastric cancer treatment, status of PM is grouped into three categories: P0/Cy0, Po/Cy1, and P1[12]. P0/Cy0 status is no macroscopic PM and a negative peritoneal wash cytology. P0/Cy1 status shows no macroscopic PM but positive peritoneal wash cytology, and P1 status means the macroscopic PM with or without a positive peritoneal cytology. The survival of patients with P0/Cy1 is similar to that of patients with P1[13,14]. The proliferative activities of peritoneal free cancer cells (PFCCs) is considered

high[14]. Accordingly P0/Cy1 status is classified into stage Ⅳ disease even in patients with no macroscopic PM. Bando *et al*[13] reported that 114 (11%) of 1039 potentially curable patients showed positive cytology (P0/Cy1).

However, there is no universal consensus on the most appropriate treatment regimen for this particular group of patients. Cabalag *et al*[15] performed a meta-analysis of treatment results in patients with P0Cy1 status. The use of S1 monotherapy was associated with a significant survival benefit[16]. A recent randomized controlled trial examining EIPL with intraperitoneal chemotherapy (IPC) showed a significant improvement on overall survival (5-year overall survival, 43.8% for EIPL plus IPC group compared with 4.6% for IPC group)[17]. In addition, the role of gastrectomy remains unclear in patients with P0/Cy1[18]. Furthermore, Kang *et al*[19] reported that peritoneal washing cytology was not able to predict peritoneal recurrence or survival in gastric cancer patients[19]. These results indicate that more clinical trials should be done to define the best treatment option for patients in P0/Cy1 status.

Score of the completeness of cytoreduction

Score of the completeness of cytoreduction score (CC score) is an assessment grade after CRS[4]. The residual disease after CRS is classified into four grades of CC-0 to CC-3. CC-0 indicates a status of no macroscopic residual tumors after CRS. CC-1 means residual tumor burden of less than 2.5 mm in diameter. CC-2 shows that the total tumors between 2.5 mm and 25 mm in diameter are left. CC-3 means the residual tumor of greater than 25 mm in diameter. The CC-1, CC-2 and CC-3 are evaluated as the incomplete cytoreduction. Histological positive margin is classified CC-1[2].

The role of CRS in the comprehensive treatment

CRS or chemotherapy alone can not confer the cure for patients with PM. In contrast, CRS combined with intraperitoneal chemotherapy applications improves a long-term survival, because invisible metastasis left after CRS can be eradicated by intraperitoneal chemotherapy[3]. Accordingly, the comprehensive treatment is now justified a state-of-the-art treatment for patients with PM.

Among the treatment options using in the comprehensive treatment, the completeness of CRS is the important prognostic factor[8,20]. Survival of patients underwent incomplete cytoreduction was not improved, as compared with that of patients treated with chemotherapy alone[2]. In contrast, patients underwent complete cytoreduction survived significantly longer than those treated with incomplete cytoreduction or chemotherapy alone. PCI score correlates with the completeness of cytoreduction. CC0 was achieved in 91% of the patients when the PCI score was lower than 6, but in only 42% of the patients with a PCI $\geqslant$ 7[8]. Even in patients with complete cytoreduction, all patients with PCI higher than the threshold value died of the recurrence[7,8]. Accordingly, surgeons should decide to perform CRS for CC-0 after counting PCI score.

Peritonectomy techniques to achieve CC-0 CRS for PC from gastric cancer

The final goal of CRS is to remove all macroscopic PM, including primary tumor, the regional lymph nodes and PM, using peritonectomy technique[1,8,14]. Peritonectomy procedures include parietal and visceral peritonectomy. In parietal peritonectomy right and left subdiaphragmatic peritonectomy, pelvic peritonectomy, peritonectomy of right and left para-colic gutter and Morrison's pouch are removed. In visceral peritonectomy, multivisceral resection of small bowel, colon, rectum, spleen, gall bladder, uterus, vagina, lesser omentum, and omental bursa, are performed when they are involved. To remove primary tumor, total gastrectomy in combination with D2 lymph node dissection is usually done. Piso *et al*[21] reported that the incidences of postoperative morbidity and mortality after gastric resection and peritonectomy were acceptable even when combined with HIPEC.

For the skin incision, a generous midline skin incision starting at the xiphi-sternal junction above to symphysis pubis below is designed. If there is a scar of previous operation, it should be included in the skin incision. Ascites is then aspirated through a small window made on the peritoneum, and the ascites is studied for cytological examination. Before starting CRS, EIPL is done[17]. The peritoneal cavity is extensively shaken and washed after injection of 1 L of saline, and then the saline is completely aspirated. This procedure is repeated 10 times[17]. The rationale of EIPL is the removal of PFCCs from the peritoneal cavity by 10 times wash with 1 L of saline according to the "limiting dilution theory".

Parietal peritoneum is dissected off from the posterior sheath of rectus muscle (Figure 1). Then the dissection between diaphragm and peritoneum is done by ball-tip electrosurgery[14]. On the left upper quadrant, spleen and right subdiaphragmatic peritoneum are dissected from the anterior renal fascia, and the dissection plane reaches to the left side of celiac axis (Figures 2 and 3). Stomach is isolated from the attachment of lesser onentum to the Arantius' duct, and hepatoduodenal ligament by ligation of right gastric artery (Figure 4). On the right upper quadrant, complete stripping of the peritoneum covering subdiaphragmatic muscle, and the retroperitoneum covering on Morrison's pouch is dissected. Second portion of duodenum is identified and the anterior leaf of transverse mesocolon is removed with greater omentum (Figures 5 and 6). Then, 1st portion of the duodenum is cut at 1cm from pyloric ring. The proper hepatic artery and common hepatic artery are skeletonized by electro-surgical techniques. The left gastric artery and left coronary vein are cut at the roots. Esophagus is transected above the esophago-gastric junction, and the proximal margin of esophagus is sent to pathologic department to confirm the negative proximal surgical margin. Next, lymph nodes along splenic artery and splenic hilum are dissected and then splenic artery and

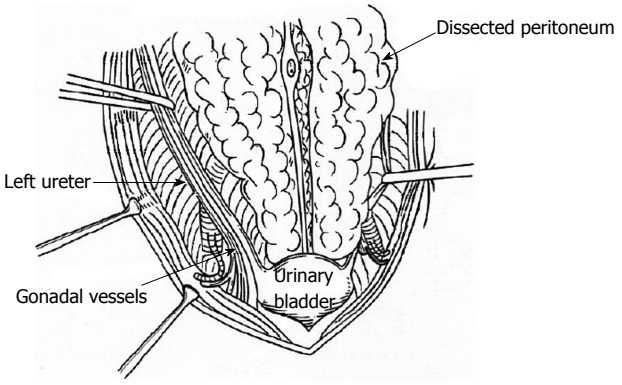


Figure 1 Dissection of the lower parietal peritoneum.

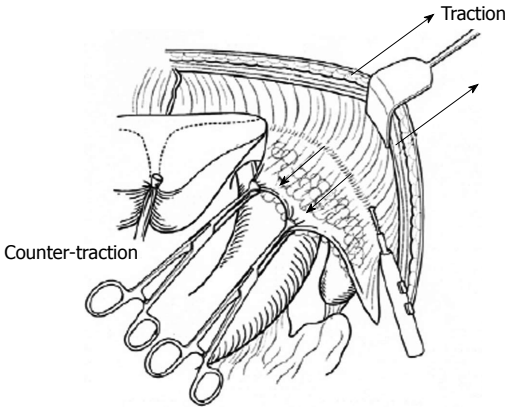


Figure 2 Dissection of the upper right parietal peritoneum.

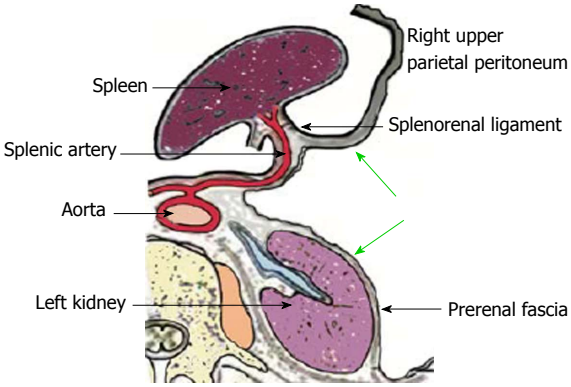


Figure 3 Mobilization of spleen and pancreas tail. The prerenal fascia is cut and the anterior surface of the left adrenal gland is visualized.

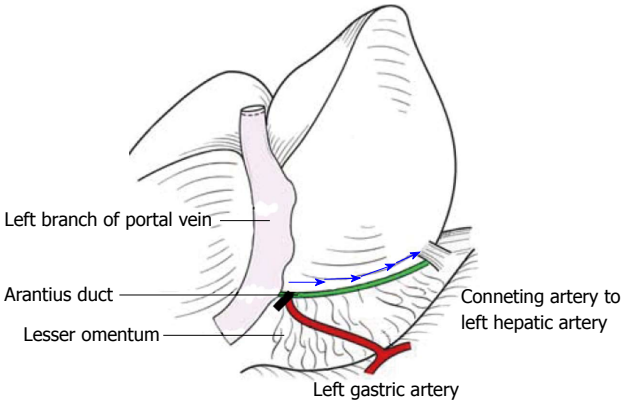


Figure 4 Detachment of lesser omentum from Arantius' duct.

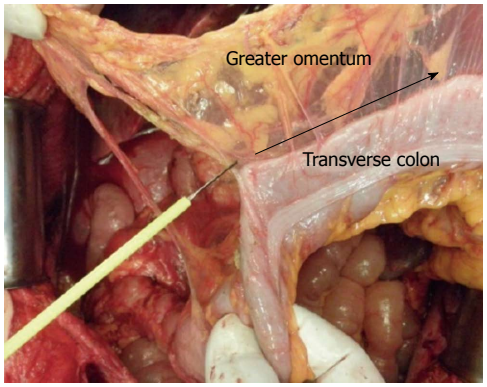


Figure 5 Detachment of greater omentum from transverse colon.

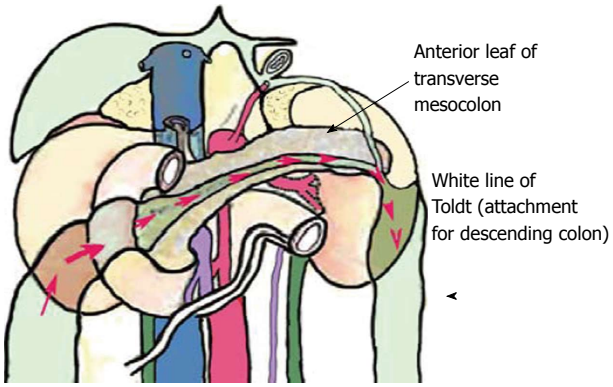


Figure 6 Dissection plane between posterior and anterior transverse mosocolon.

vein are cut at proximal part of their divergence.

Pelvic peritonectomy is started by stripping the peritoneum covering the urinary bladder. In male, anterior dissection plane reaches to the rectovesical pouch. In female, vagina is cut below the uterine cervix (Figure 7). After cutting and ligating the uterine vessels, vagina is transected with electric knife. Then, the posterior wall of vagina is dissected from the rectum. Rectum is freed from the pelvic structure. The posterior dissection reaches to the S4 presacral space by the preservation of pelvic nerve plexus and hypogastric nerve.

If the rectum is not involved, rectum-preserving pelvic peritonectomy is done (Figure 8).

When the rectum is involved, rectum is transected at 2 cm below cul-de-sac (Figure 9).

In terms of the treatment of ovarian metastasis from appendiceal mucinous neoplasm, Elias *et al*[22] proposed the preservation of ovaries in young women with appendiceal mucinous neoplasm for the childbearing, when the ovaries are macroscopically normal. Recurrence in the preserved ovary was found in 14% (3/21), and two women became pregnant after ovary-preserving peritonectomy. In patients with PM from gastric cancer,

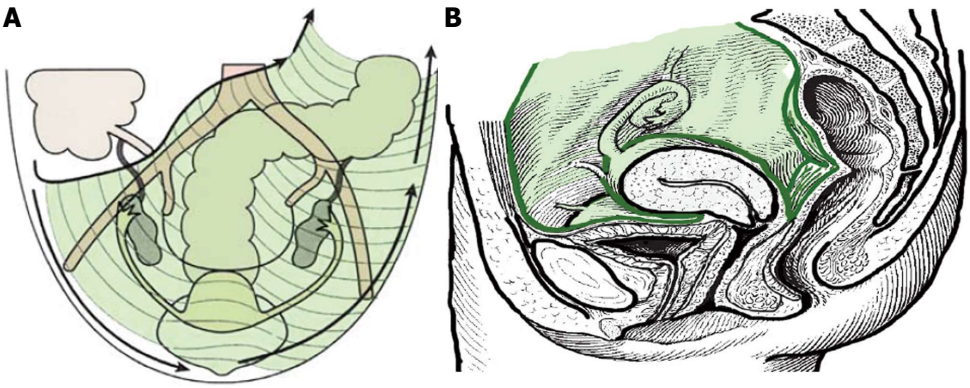


Figure 7 Stripping of the pelvic peritoneum. A: Stripping of the pelvic peritoneum from the urinary bladder and side walls of the pelvis in male; B: Stripping of the pelvic peritoneum with uterus and ovaries in female.

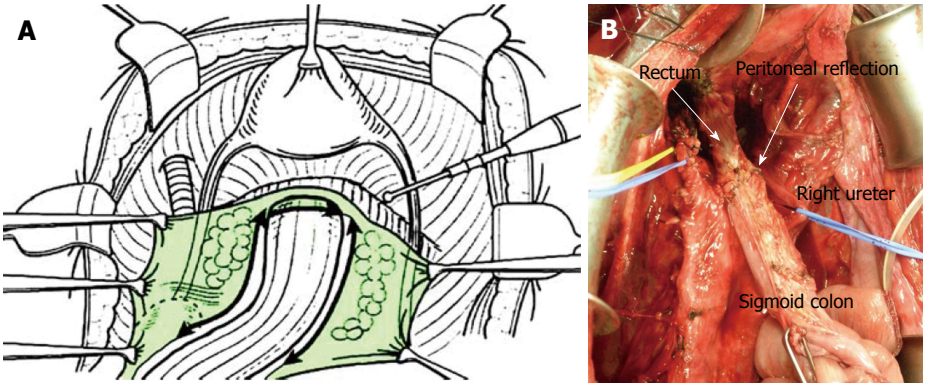


Figure 8 Rectum-preserving peritonectomy. A: The pelvic peritonectomy is started by stripping the peritoneum covering urinary bladder and recto-vesical pouch in male.and the dissection plane reaches the anterior wall of the rectum; B: Photograph after removal of pelvic peritoneum. Rectum is preserved completely.

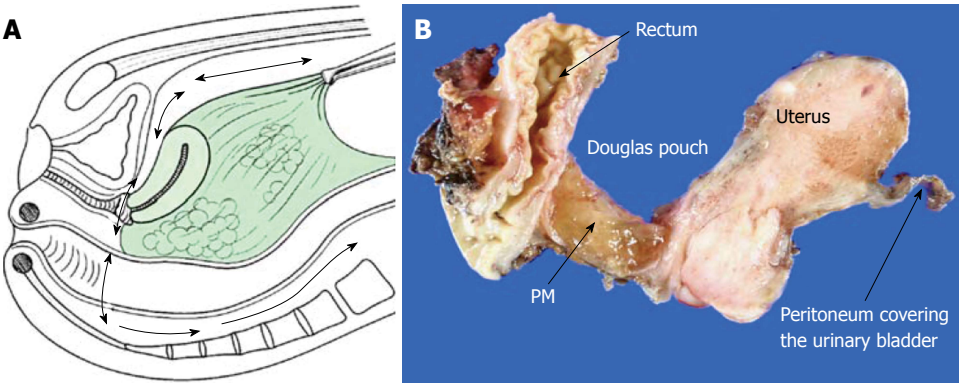


Figure 9 Pelvic peritonectomy combined with the resection of rectum, uterus and vagina (A) and cut-section in a specimen of low anterior resection of rectum/hysterectomy/bilateral salphyngo-oophorectomy shows peritoneal metastasis on Douglas pouch (B).

however, ovaries should be removed, because the incidences of ovarian and uterine involvement are higher than those from appendiceal mucinous neoplasms. In addition, the biological behavior of gastric cancer is more malignant than that of appendiceal mucinous neoplasms.

NEOADJUVANT CHEMOTHERAPY

Complete cytoreduction is the strongest independent prognosticator[2-4]. However, survival of patients with PCI higher than the threshold value is poor, even if they received complete cytoreduction.

By the preoperative laparoscopic examination, Yonemura *et al*[23] reported that 21 (60%) of 35 patients without NAC showed the PCI score higher than the threshold level. Valle also reported that CC-0 can be achieved only in fewer than 30% of the cases who had not been treated with neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC)[24]. These results indicate that the patients with PCI higher than the threshold value diagnosed by

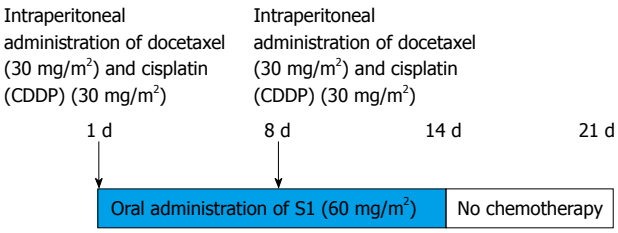


Figure 10 Neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy. Oral S-1 (Taiho Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd., Tokyo, Japan) is administered for 14 d at a dose of 60 mg/m^2, following 7 d rest. Docetaxel (30 mg/m^2) and cisplatin (CDDP) (30 mg/m^2) are administered by intraperitoneal infusion on day 1 and days 8. Therapy is repeated three times, and laparptomy is done 3 to 4 wk after the last cycle.

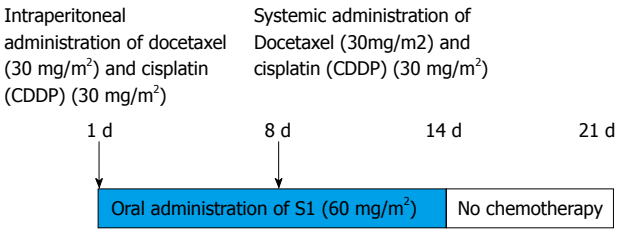


Figure 11 Bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy. Oral S-1 is administered for 14 d at a dose of 60 mg/m^2, followed 7 d rest. Docetaxel (30 mg/m^2) and cisplatin (CDDP) (30 mg/m^2) are administered by intraperitoneal infusion on day 1, and the same dose of docetaxel and CDDP are systemically administered on days 8. Therapy is repeated three times, and laparotomy is done 3 to 4 wk after the last cycle.

Table 1 Peritoneal wash cytology before and after bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy

Cytology	Cytology after BIPSC		
Before BIPSC	Negative	Positive	Total
Negative	15	0	15
Positive	26 (79%)	7	33
	41	7	48

Peritoneal wash cytology was done through a peritoneal port system after intraperitoneal administration of 500 mL of saline. BIPSC: Bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy.

Table 2 Peritoneal wash cytology before and after neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy

Cytology	Cytology after NIPS		
Before NIPS	Negative	Positive	Total
Negative	47	1	48
Positive	69 (70%)	30	99
	116	31	147

NIPS: Neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy.

preoperative laparoscopy should be treated by NAC to reduce PCI less than the threshold level for good prognosis before CRS.

The aims of NAC are to achieve stage reduction to eradicate micrometastasis and PFCCs in the peritoneal cavity, and to improve the incidence of complete cytoreductiom.

Although systemic chemotherapy is still the standard treatment option for NAC[23,25,26], the response rates for PM after systemic chemotherapy were reported to be very low[23,26]. After systemic chemotherapy, treatment failure as a result of toxicity was also reported[26-29]. The reason why systemic chemotherapy does not work on PM is considered the existence of a blood-peritoneal barrier (BPB). BPB is a barrier consisting of stromal tissue between mesothelial cells and submesothelial blood capillaries[30]. BPB hinders the penetrating of drugs from systemic circulation into the peritoneal cavity. Accordingly, significantly larger amount of the drugs administered by systemic chemotherapy moves to the vital organs other than the peritoneum, resulting in the development of adverse effects.

In contrast, intraperitoneal (IP) chemotherapy generates a higher locoregional intensity of drugs in the peritoneal cavity than systemic chemotherapy[31,32]. During IP chemotherapy, the area under the curve (AUC) ratios of IP *vs* plasma exposure (PE) become high. Significant high AUC IP/PE ratios were found after the IP administration of paclitaxel, docetaxel, gemcitabine, 5-fluorouracil and doxorubicin[32]. The intraperitoneal concentrations of these drugs maintain long time because the molecular weights of these drugs are high.

In IP chemotherapy, penetration distance varies from drug to drug and drugs with a high penetration activity into the PM nodules should be selected. In the experimental PM, cisplatin penetrate approximate 2 mm from the surface of PM[31,32].

Recently, a combination chemotherapy of IP administration of cisplatin and docetaxel in combination with the oral administration of S-1 was developed and this method is designated NIPS (Figure 10)[28]. Yonemura *et al*[33] reported that PFCCs were eradicated by NIPS in 69% of patients with positive cytology before NIPS. Histologic examination of the resected specimens of PM after NIPS showed a complete histologic response rate of 37%. In addition, down staging was experienced in 15% of patients[33], and the survival of histological responder after CRS was significantly better than that of non responders. Accordingly, NIPS improves the complete cytoreduction rates, resulting in the long term survival after NIPS plus CRS.

More recently, a new regimen consisting of alternate administration of systemic and intraperitoneal chemotherapy was proposed. This method is called BISIC. By the alternate administration of systemic and IP chemotherapy, a wider treatment area can be treated than IP administration alone. Yonemura *et al*[34] reported a new method of BISIC. Oral S-1 is administered for 14 d at a dose of 60 mg/m^2 per day, followed by 7 d rest. Docetaxel (30 mg/m^2) and cisplatin (CDDP, 30 mg/m^2) are administered by IP infusion on day 1, and the same dose of docetaxel and CDDP are administered intravenously on day 8 (Figure 11). Therapy is repeated three times, and laparotomy is done two weeks after the last administration of S-1 (Figure 10). As shown in Table 1, 79% of patients with positive cytology before BISIC

Table 3 Histoloogic effects of primary tumor and peritoneal carcinomatosis in 41 patients after bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy

	EF-0	EF-1	EF-2	EF-3	Total
Primary tumors	3 (12%)	15 (58%)	7 (27%)	1 (4%)	26 (100%)
Peritoneal metastasis	7 (17%)	18 (44%)	7 (17%)	9 (22%)	41 (100%)

EF-0: No histological change or histologic change is found in less than one-third of the tumor tissue; EF-1: Degeneration of cancer cells is detected in the tumor tissue ranging from one-third to less than two thirds; EF-2: The degeneration of cancer cells is found in more than two-thirds of the tumor tissue; EF-3: Complete disappearance of cancer cells.

Table 4 Histoloogic effects of primary tumor and peritoneal carcinomatosis in 147 patients with PC treated with neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy

	EF-0	EF-1	EF-2	EF-3	Total
Primary tumors	13 (18%)	38 (54%)	20 (28%)	0	71 (100%)
Peritoneal metastasis	59 (40%)	35 (24%)	14 (10%)	39 (25%)	147 (100%)

Table 5 Side effects during bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy

Grade 0	Grade 1-2	Grade 3	Grade 4	Grade 5	Total
44 (76%)	8 (14%)	4 (7%)	2 (3%)	0 (0%)	58

Experienced grade 3 side effects were meningitis in 1, ileus in 1 and bone marrow suppression in 2 patients. Grade 4 side effects of diarrhea and port infection were experienced in two patients.

became negative cytology after 3 cycles of BISIC (Table 1). Table 2 shows the changes of the cytologic status before and after NIPS. After NIPS, 70% of patients with positive cytology before NIPS became negative cytology. Histologic response rates in PC after BISIC and NIPS were 83% (34/41) and 60% (88/147), respectively (Tables 3 and 4). There was a statistical significance in histologic response rate between BISIC and NIPS. Complete pathologic response on primary tumor and PM were found in 4%, (1/26), and 22% (9/41) of patients treated with BISIC (Table 3).

Ishigami *et al*[35] reported a new BISIC method using systemic and IP paclitaxel (PTX) combined with S-1. The overall response rate was 56%, and one-year overall survival rate was 78%.

A systemic review and meta-analysis, IP chemotherapy combined with CRS is associated with significant improved overall survival[36].

From these results, NIPS and BISIC are effective treatments to eradicate PFCCs and to reduce PCI before CRS.

Yonemura *et al*[34] reported that the incidences of major complications (grade 3, 4, and 5) during NIPS and BISIC were 10.4% and 9.9%[35-37] (Table 5). These values are similar to the major complication rates after systemic chemotherapies[28,38], and are considered to be acceptable.

Although NIPS/BIPSC may improve the incidence of complete cytoreduction at CRS, NIPS might increase the morbidity and mortality after CRS. Yonemura *et al*[38] reported that the hospital death occurred in 3.7% of patients after NIPS plus CRS, and postoperative major complications occurred in 24.4% of patients. Reoperation was done in 7.6% (6/79) of patients. Glehen *et al*[7] reported a mortality rate of 4%, and a major complication rate of 27%. The magnitude of surgery, number of resected organs and anastomoses, and the operation time contribute to the development of complication after CRS plus HIPEC. To avoid futile CRS, the patients for the candidate of CRS should be strictly selected. For the selection of patients, preoperative PCI assessment by laparoscopy is important.

ROLES OF LAPAROSCOPY

There are limitations to estimate the precise PCI by CT, magnetic resonance imaging and positron emission tomography[10]. The sensitivity of the diagnosis for the PM smaller than 10 mm in diameter by CT is reported to be only 8%[10].

To improve the preoperative correct diagnosis of PCI and to select the patients for CRS, staging laparoscopy was introduced[39]. Laparoscopy enables to know the histological and cytological diagnosis and to evaluate the effects of NAC. In addition, LHIPEC just after the laparoscopic diagnosis of PM was developed[39]. Very high response on ascites by LHIPEC was reported[39]. Penetration distance of drugs into the PM in LHIPEC (closed HIPEC) is longer than that in open HIPEC performed under the laparotomy, because the intraperitoneal pressure in closed HIPEC is significantly higher than that in the open HIPEC[40].

So far, no evidence was reported about the direct effects on PM by HIPEC. Yonemura *et al*[23] first reported a direct effect of HIPEC on PM from gastric cancer. Two cycles of diagnostic laparoscopy and LHIPEC with an interval of one month were done for 50 gastric cancer patients with PM. Ascites completely disappeared or decreased in 64.7% (22/34) of patients and 20 patients with positive peritoneal cytology at the 1st LHIPEC became negative cytology in 14 (70%) patients at the 2nd LHIPEC. Six (12%) patients showed complete disappearance of PM and PCI was significantly reduced from 14.3 ± 10.2 at the 1st LHIPEC to 10.8 ± 10.5 at the 2nd LHIPEC ($P < 0.05$). Furthermore, total PCI scores (6.56 ± 2.92) on small bowel mesentery (BS-PCI) at 1st HIPEC were significantly decreased at 2nd LHIPEC (5.25 ± 3.78) ($P = 0.016$). LHIPEC reduces the SB-PCI before CRS, and the incidence of complete cytoreduction may improve.

Diagnostic laparoscopy is a convenient method to select patients for CRS and neoadjuvant LHIPEC is an effective therapy for the control of ascites and for the eradication of PFCCs. Furthermore, PCI levels can be reduced by LHIPEC and LHIPEC increase the number of patients who will undergo complete CRS. Accordingly,

LHIPEC is recommended to perform as a neoadjuvant induction treatment before CRS.

MECHANISMS OF HIPEC

The first report of CRS and HIPEC in a patient with PC from gastric cancer dates back to 1980s[41-43]. Since then, CRS and HIPEC have been performed to treat for this group of patients. However, there has been only one prospective randomized trial[43]. From the literatures, benefit of the HIPEC is to eradicate micrometastasis left after complete cytoreductio[35,44].

In many institutes, HIPEC is usually performed at the temperature of lower than 42 ℃ for 90 min.

Heat lower than 42 ℃ (mild hyperthermia) can not eradicate cancer cells by the thermal tolerance *via* the upregulation of heat shock protein[45]. Heat shock protein repair degenerated protein by mild hyperthermia, and cancer cells survive. Even in the mild hyperthermia, however, the fraction of hypoxic cells locate apart from vasculature are killed and thus cellular acidity increase thermal sensitivity *in vivo*. Generally, a temperature of Arrhenius "break" temperature of 43 ℃ and treatment time of at least 30 min are recommended. In United States and European institutes, mild hyperthermia of 41 ℃-42 ℃ for 60 to 90 min. is carried out[7,21,24]. In Japan, 43 ℃ to 43.5 ℃ for 30 min. is a standard thermal dose of HIPEC[8]. Thermal dose is a treatment unit provided by the temperature and exposure time during hyperthermia.

Cells are killed according to the exponential manner if the temperature is higher than 43 ℃ *in vivo*. The cytocidal effects by the 43 ℃ hyperthermia are equivalent to those by 42 ℃ hyperthermia for three- to four-fold longer treatment time than by 43 ℃ hyperthermia. Namely, to obtain the same cytocidal effect by 43 ℃ for 30 min requires 90 to 120 min by 42 ℃ hyperthermia[46].

Hyperthermia enhances the cytotoxic effects of some anti-cancer drugs. Melphalan, mitomycin C, cisplatin, docetaxel, gencitabine, and irinotecan[47-50] enhance cytotoxicity when combined with hyperthermia. In HIPEC for gastric cancer, direct cytotoxic agents like mitomycin C, cisplatin and docetaxel are used[33,41,51].

Pharmacokinetic studies revealed that approximately 70% of mitomycin C is absorbed from the perfusate after 2 h HIPEC[52]. In cisplatin, 75% is eliminated from the perfuate after 90 min HIPEC, but only 20% of the cisplatin moves to the systemic circulation[53]. Accordingly, 50% of ciplatinum is absorbed in the PM nodules and peritoneal tissue during 90 min of HIPEC.

In the case of docetaxel, 40% is adsorbed during 40 min HIPEC at 43 ℃-43.5 ℃[51].

Temperature higher than 39 ℃ increases drug penetration distance[54]. The drug penetration into the peritoneal nodules is limited, because stromal pressure in PM is higher than that in normal tissue[54]. Carboplatin and cisplatin penetrate 1-2 mm from the peritoneal surface during intraperitoneal perfusion without hyperthermia, but penetration distance increases up to 2-3 mm when hyperthermia is combined[31]. Penetration depth from the peritoneal surface depends on the treatment time. Membrane permeation index (Paap) is the penetration distance of the drugs from peritoneal surface per minute, and is calculated by the following equation; Papp (cm/h) = CLp (drug clearance from peritoneal cavity, mL/h)/peritoneal surface area (cm^2). From this equation, Papp after 40 min. HIPEC using 40 mg of docetaxel was 1.5 mm/40 min[51]. If the tumors larger than 1.5 mm in diameter are treated by HIPEC with docetaxel, treatment time should be prolonged to increase the penetration distance of drugs.

However, HIPEC increases the operation time and may cause morbidity. A meta-analysis did not show a significant difference in the mortality rates between HIPEC and control group[44]. However, a significant increase was found in the incidence of abdominal abscess and neutropenia after HIPEC.

A randomized control study for colorectal carcinomatosis revealed significant better survival of CRS plus HIPEC group than that of traditional systemic chemotherapy plus CRS group[55].

At present, combination of CRS plus HIPEC is the standard of care recommended for PM from appendiceal mucinous neoplasm and diffuse malignant peritoneal mesothelioma[56].

Before 2011, there was no randomized control study to confirm the effect of HIPEC on survival of gastric cancer patients with PM. Yang *et al*[43] first reported the efficacy of HIPEC on survival by phase Ⅲ randomized clinical trial. They reported that CRS + HIPEC with mitomycin C 30 mg and cisplatin 120 mg improved the survival with acceptable morbidity. Further phase Ⅲ trials should be done to confirm the effects of HIPEC on PM from gastric cancer.

INDICATION OF THE COMPREHENSIVE TREATMENT

A multivariate analysis using Cox proportional hazard model revealed that CC score, PCI threshold, histologic effect after NAC, cytologic status and HIPEC were independent prognostic factors (Table 6)[7,8]. Among these prognostic factors, PCI threshold level after NAC is the strongest prognostic factor. Survival of patients who received incomplete CRS after NIPS was similar to that of patients treated with NIPS alone (Figure 12). Accordingly, patients who are diagnosed as receiving incomplete CRS by laparoscopy should be excluded from the candidates for CRS.

Survival of histological responders after NAC with negative cytology and PCI ≤ 6 after complete CRS and HIPEC is shown in Figure 13. Five-year survival rate was 32.4%.

CONCLUSION

Patients with PM from gastric cancer are recommended to treat with NIPS or BISIC before CRS. Indication

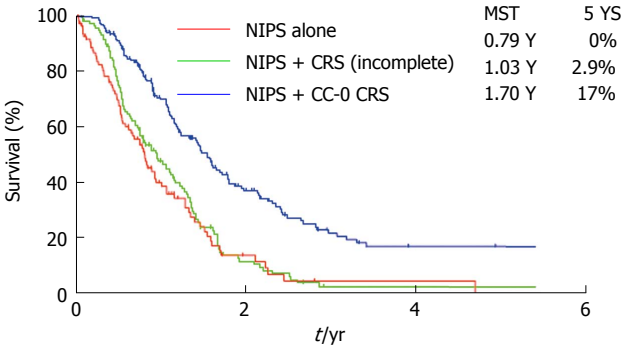


Figure 12 Survival curves of patients treated with cytoreductive surgery and neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy alone. CRS: Cytoreductive surgery; NIPS: Neoadjuvant intraperitoneal/systemic chemotherapy.

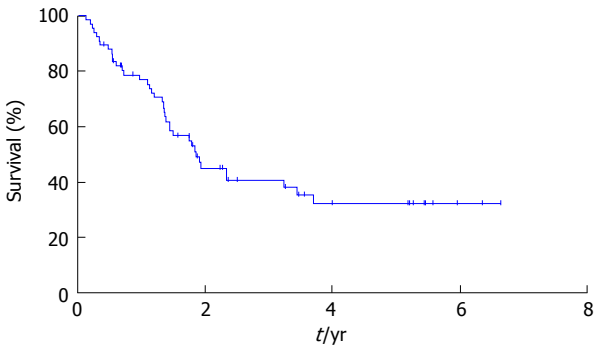


Figure 13 Survival of histological responders with negative cytology and peritoneal cancer index ⩽ 6 after complete cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

Table 6 Multivariate analysis of 304 patients with peritoneal metastasis treated with a comprehensive treatmnent

Prognostic factors	χ^2	*P* value	HR	95%CI	
Sex male *vs* female	0.263	0.60752	0.9218	0.676	1.257
CC score: complete *vs* incomplete	4.03	0.04468	1.504	1.01	2.24
Nodal involvement: N0-1 *vs* N2-3	0.445	0.50454	1.1338	0.784	1.639
Neoadjuvant chemo.: negative *vs* positive	2.517	0.11259	1.3445	0.933	1.938
PCI: ⩽ 6 *vs* ⩾ 7	8.809	0.00299	1.7863	1.218	2.621
HIPEC: Not done *vs* done	8.218	0.00414	0.6322	0.462	0.865
Histilogicl effects: EF 0-1 *vs* EF 2-3	12.305	0.00045	0.469	0.307	0.716
Cytology: Negative *vs* positive	8.2163	0.00415	1.8458	1.213	2.806

PCI: Peritoneal carcinomatosis index; HIPEC: Hyperthermic intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

of CRS should be determined by laparoscopy. The best indications of the comprehensive treatment are patients with PCI levels within threshold level, and responders after NAC. Patients who satisfy these factors should undergo gastrectomy combined with D2 lymph node dissection and complete removal of PM using peritonectomy techniques. Just after complete cytoreduction, HIPEC should be done[35].

REFERENCES

1 **Glehen O**, Yonemura Y, Sugarbaker PH. Cytoreductive surgery & periopertaive chemotherapy for peritoneal surface malignancy. Chapter 4; Prevention and treatment of peritoneal metastases from gastric cancer. Textbook and Video Atlas. Ed. Paul Sugarbaker PH, Cine-Med Publishing, Inc. USA: North Woodburry, CT, 2013: 79-89

2 **Yonemura Y**, Canbay E, Endou Y, Ishibashi H, Mizumoto A, Miura M, Li Y, Liu Y, Takeshita K, Ichinose M, Takao N, Hirano M, Sako S, Tsukiyama G. Peritoneal cancer treatment. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2014; **15**: 623-636 [PMID: 24617975 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2014.879571]

3 **Verwaal VJ**, Bruin S, Boot H, van Slooten G, van Tinteren H. 8-year follow-up of randomized trial: cytoreduction and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy versus systemic chemotherapy in patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis of colorectal cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 2426-2432 [PMID: 18521686 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0108-7]

4 **Jacquet P**, Sugarbaker PH. Clinical research methodologies in diagnosis and staging of patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis. *Cancer Treat Res* 1996; **82**: 359-374 [PMID: 8849962 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4613-1247-5_23]

5 **Esquivel J**, Sticca R, Sugarbaker P, Levine E, Yan TD, Alexander R, Baratti D, Bartlett D, Barone R, Barrios P, Bieligk S, Bretcha-Boix P, Chang CK, Chu F, Chu Q, Daniel S, de Bree E, Deraco M, Dominguez-Parra L, Elias D, Flynn R, Foster J, Garofalo A, Gilly FN, Glehen O, Gomez-Portilla A, Gonzalez-Bayon L, Gonzalez-Moreno S, Goodman M, Gushchin V, Hanna N, Hartmann J, Harrison L, Hoefer R, Kane J, Kecmanovic D, Kelley S, Kuhn J, Lamont J, Lange J, Li B, Loggie B, Mahteme H, Mann G, Martin R, Misih RA, Moran B, Morris D, Onate-Ocana L, Petrelli N, Philippe G, Pingpank J, Pitroff A, Piso P, Quinones M, Riley L, Rutstein L, Saha S, Alrawi S, Sardi A, Schneebaum S, Shen P, Shibata D, Spellman J, Stojadinovic A, Stewart J, Torres-Melero J, Tuttle T, Verwaal V, Villar J, Wilkinson N, Younan R, Zeh H, Zoetmulder F, Sebbag G. Cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy in the management of peritoneal surface malignancies of colonic origin: a consensus statement. Society of Surgical Oncology. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2007; **14**: 128-133 [PMID: 17072675]

6 **Glehen O**, Gilly FN, Arvieux C, Cotte E, Boutitie F, Mansvelt B, Bereder JM, Lorimier G, Quenet F, Elias D. Peritoneal carcinomatosis from gastric cancer: a multi-institutional study of 159 patients treated by cytoreductive surgery combined with perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 2370-2377 [PMID: 20336386]

7 **Glehen O**, Schreiber V, Cotte E, Sayag-Beaujard AC, Osinsky D, Freyer G, François Y, Vignal J, Gilly FN. Cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemohyperthermia for peritoneal carcinomatosis arising from gastric cancer. *Arch Surg* 2004; **139**: 20-26 [PMID: 14718269 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.139.1.20]

8 **Yonemura Y**, Elnemr A, Endou Y, Ishibashi H, Mizumoto A, Miura M, Li Y. Surgical results of patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis treated with cytoreductive surgery using a new technique named aqua dissection. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 521487 [PMID: 22666235 DOI: 10.1155/2012/521487]

9 **Yang XJ**, Li Y, Yonemura Y. Cytoreductive surgery plus hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy to treat gastric cancer with ascites

and/or peritoneal carcinomatosis: Results from a Chinese center. *J Surg Oncol* 2010; **101**: 457-464 [PMID: 20401915 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21519]

10 **Koh JL**, Yan TD, Glenn D, Morris DL. Evaluation of preoperative computed tomography in estimating peritoneal cancer index in colorectal peritoneal carcinomatosis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 327-333 [PMID: 19050972 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0234-2]

11 **Hong SH**, Shin YR, Roh SY, Jeon EK, Song KY, Park CH, Jeon HM, Hong YS. Treatment outcomes of systemic chemotherapy for peritoneal carcinomatosis arising from gastric cancer with no measurable disease: retrospective analysis from a single center. *Gastric Cancer* 2013; **16**: 290-300 [PMID: 22898806 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-012-0182-1]

12 **Japanese Research Society for Gastric Cancer**. The general rules for gastric cancer study. Tokyo: Kanahara Shuppan, 1995

13 **Bando E**, Yonemura Y, Takeshita Y, Taniguchi K, Yasui T, Yoshimitsu Y, Fushida S, Fujimura T, Nishimura G, Miwa K. Intraoperative lavage for cytological examination in 1,297 patients with gastric carcinoma. *Am J Surg* 1999; **178**: 256-262 [PMID: 10527450 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(99)00162-2]

14 **Yonemura Y**. Atlas and principles of peritonectomy. Oosaka: NPO to support Peritoneal Surface Maligancy Treatment, 2012: 128-131

15 **Cabalag CS**, Chan ST, Kaneko Y, Duong CP. A systematic review and meta-analysis of gastric cancer treatment in patients with positive peritoneal cytology. *Gastric Cancer* 2015; **18**: 11-22 [PMID: 24890254 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-014-0388-5]

16 **Yonemura Y**, Endou Y, Bando E, Kawamura T, Tsukiyama G, Takahashi S, Sakamoto N, Tone K, Kusafuka K, Itoh I, Kimura M, Fukushima M, Sasaki T, Boku N. The usefulness of oral TS-1 treatment for potentially curable gastric cancer patients with intraperitoneal free cancer cells. *Cancer Therapy* 2006; **4**: 135-142

17 **Kuramoto M**, Shimada S, Ikeshima S, Matsuo A, Yagi Y, Matsuda M, Yonemura Y, Baba H. Extensive intraoperative peritoneal lavage as a standard prophylactic strategy for peritoneal recurrence in patients with gastric carcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2009; **250**: 242-246 [PMID: 19638909 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181b0c80e]

18 **De Andrade JP**, Mezhir JJ. The critical role of peritoneal cytology in the staging of gastric cancer: an evidence-based review. *J Surg Oncol* 2014; **110**: 291-297 [PMID: 24850538 DOI: 10.1002/jso.23632]

19 **Kang KK**, Hur H, Byun CS, Kim YB, Han SU, Cho YK. Conventional cytology is not beneficial for predicting peritoneal recurrence after curative surgery for gastric cancer: results of a prospective clinical study. *J Gastric Cancer* 2014; **14**: 23-31 [PMID: 24765534 DOI: 10.5230/jgc.2014.14.1.23]

20 **Levine EA**, Stewart JH, Russell GB, Geisinger KR, Loggie BL, Shen P. Cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal hyperthermic chemotherapy for peritoneal surface malignancy: experience with 501 procedures. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; **204**: 943-953; discussion 953-955 [PMID: 17481516 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamollsurg.2006.12.048]

21 **Piso P**, Slowik P, Popp F, Dahlke MH, Glockzin G, Schlitt HJ. Safety of gastric resections during cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy for peritoneal carcinomatosis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 2188-2194 [PMID: 19408049 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0478-5]

22 **Elias D**, Duchalais E, Dartigues P, Duvillard P, Poirot C, Goéré D. A new policy regarding ovarian resection in young women treated for peritoneal carcinomatosis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 1837-1842 [PMID: 23370670 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-2879-8]

23 **Yonemura Y,** Canbay E, Sako S, Ishibashi H, Hirano M, Mizumoto A, Takeshita K, Noguchi, K, Takao N, Ichinose I, Liu Y, Li Y. Management of Peritoneal Metastases developed from Gastric Cancer: laparascopic hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemontherapy in neoadjuvant setting. *Integrativ Oncology* 2014; **3**: 1 [DOI: 10.4172/2339-6771.1000117]

24 **Valle M**, Federici O, Garofalo A. Patient selection for cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy, and role of laparoscopy in diagnosis, staging, and treatment. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am* 2012; **21**: 515-531 [PMID: 23021713 DOI: 10.1016/j.soc.2012.07.005]

25 **Koizumi W**, Tanabe S, Saigenji K, Ohtsu A, Boku N, Nagashima F, Shirao K, Matsumura Y, Gotoh M. Phase I/II study of S-1 combined with cisplatin in patients with advanced gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **89**: 2207-2212 [PMID: 14676796 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6601413]

26 **Yabusaki H**, Nashimoto A, Tanaka O. [Evaluation of TS-1 combined with cisplatin for neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with advanced gastric cancer]. *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2003; **30**: 1933-1940 [PMID: 14650962]

27 **Matsuzaki T**, Yashiro M, Kaizaki R, Yasuda K, Doi Y, Sawada T, Ohira M, Hirakawa K. Synergistic antiproliferative effect of mTOR inhibitors in combination with 5-fluorouracil in scirrhous gastric cancer. *Cancer Sci* 2009; **100**: 2402-2410 [PMID: 19764996 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2009.01315.x]

28 **Yonemura Y**, Bandou E, Sawa T, Yoshimitsu Y, Endou Y, Sasaki T, Sugarbaker PH. Neoadjuvant treatment of gastric cancer with peritoneal dissemination. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2006; **32**: 661-665 [PMID: 16621433 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2006.03.007]

29 **Inokuchi M**, Yamashita T, Yamada H, Kojima K, Ichikawa W, Nihei Z, Kawano T, Sugihara K. Phase I/II study of S-1 combined with irinotecan for metastatic advanced gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **94**: 1130-1135 [PMID: 16570038 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603072]

30 **Baron MA**. Structure of intestinal peritoneum in man. *Am J Anat* 1941; **69**: 439-497 [DOI: 10.1002/aja.1000690305]

31 **Los G**, Mutsaers PH, van der Vijgh WJ, Baldew GS, de Graaf PW, McVie JG. Direct diffusion of cis-diamminedichloroplatinum(II) in intraperitoneal rat tumors after intraperitoneal chemotherapy: a comparison with systemic chemotherapy. *Cancer Res* 1989; **49**: 3380-3384 [PMID: 2720692]

32 **de Bree E**, Tsiftsis DD. Experimental and pharmacokinetic studies in intraperitoneal chemotherapy: from laboratory bench to bedside. *Recent Results Cancer Res* 2007; **169**: 53-73 [PMID: 17506249]

33 **Yonemura Y**, Elnemr A, Endou Y, Hirano M, Mizumoto A, Takao N, Ichinose M, Miura M, Li Y. Multidisciplinary therapy for treatment of patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis from gastric cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2010; **2**: 85-97 [PMID: 21160926 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v2.i2.85]

34 **Yonemura Y**, Canbay E, Endou Y, Ishibashi H, Mizumoto A, Li Y, Liu Y, Takeshita K, Ichinose M, Takao N, Saitou T, Noguchi K, Hirano M, Glehen O, Brűcher B, Sugarbaker P. A new bidirectional intraperitoneal and systemic induction chemotherapy (BISIC) for the peritoneal metastasis from gastric cancer in neoadjuvant setting. *Integr Cancer Sci Therap* 2014 [DOI: 10.15761/ICST.1000106]

35 **Ishigami H**, Kitayama J, Kaisaki S, Hidemura A, Kato M, Otani K, Kamei T, Soma D, Miyato H, Yamashita H, Nagawa H. Phase II study of weekly intravenous and intraperitoneal paclitaxel combined with S-1 for advanced gastric cancer with peritoneal metastasis. *Ann Oncol* 2010; **21**: 67-70 [PMID: 19605503 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdp260]

36 **Coccolini F**, Cotte E, Glehen O, Lotti M, Poiasina E, Catena F, Yonemura Y, Ansaloni L. Intraperitoneal chemotherapy in advanced gastric cancer. Meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2014; **40**: 12-26 [PMID: 24290371]

37 **Mizumoto A**, Canbay E, Hirano M, Takao N, Matsuda T, Ichinose M, Yonemura Y. Morbidity and mortality outcomes of cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy at a single institution in Japan. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 836425 [PMID: 22778724 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-1631-5]

38 **Yonemura Y**, Endou Y, Shinbo M, Sasaki T, Hirano M, Mizumoto A, Matsuda T, Takao N, Ichinose M, Mizuno M, Miura M, Ikeda M, Ikeda S, Nakajima G, Yonemura J, Yuuba T, Masuda S, Kimura H, Matsuki N. Safety and efficacy of bidirectional chemotherapy for treatment of patients with peritoneal dissemination from gastric cancer: Selection for cytoreductive surgery. *J Surg Oncol* 2009; **100**: 311-316 [PMID: 19697437 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21324]

39 **Valle M**, Garofalo A. Laparoscopic staging of peritoneal surface malignancies. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2006; **32**: 625-627 [PMID: 16822641 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2006.03.015]

40 **Thomas F**, Ferron G, Gesson-Paute A, Hristova M, Lochon I, Chatelut E. Increased tissue diffusion of oxaliplatin during laparoscopically assisted versus open heated intraoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (HIPEC). *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 3623-3624

[PMID: 18726653 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0115-8]
41 **Koga S**, Hamazoe R, Maeta M, Shimizu N, Murakami A, Wakatsuki T. Prophylactic therapy for peritoneal recurrence of gastric cancer by continuous hyperthermic peritoneal perfusion with mitomycin C. *Cancer* 1988; **61**: 232-237 [PMID: 3121165 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19880115)61:2<232::AID-CNCR2820610205>3.0.CO;2-U]
42 **Fujimoto S**, Takahashi M, Mutou T, Kobayashi K, Toyosawa T, Isawa E, Sumida M, Ohkubo H. Improved mortality rate of gastric carcinoma patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis treated with intraperitoneal hyperthermic chemoperfusion combined with surgery. *Cancer* 1997; **79**: 884-891 [PMID: 9041149 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(19970301)79:5<884::AID-CNCR3>3.0.CO;2-C]
43 **Yang XJ**, Huang CQ, Suo T, Mei LJ, Yang GL, Cheng FL, Zhou YF, Xiong B, Yonemura Y, Li Y. Cytoreductive surgery and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy improves survival of patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis from gastric cancer: final results of a phase III randomized clinical trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2011; **18**: 1575-1581 [PMID: 21431408]
44 **Yan TD**, Black D, Sugarbaker PH, Zhu J, Yonemura Y, Petrou G, Morris DL. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the randomized controlled trials on adjuvant intraperitoneal chemotherapy for resectable gastric cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2007; **14**: 2702-2713 [PMID: 17653801 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9487-4]
45 **Lepock JR**. How do cells respond to their thermal environment? *Int J Hyperthermia* 2005; **21**: 681-687 [PMID: 16338849 DOI: 10.1080/02656730500307298]
46 **Sapareto SA**, Dewey WC. Thermal dose determination in cancer therapy. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1984; **10**: 787-800 [PMID: 6547421]
47 **Kusumoto T**, Holden SA, Ara G, Teicher BA. Hyperthermia and platinum complexes: time between treatments and synergy in vitro and in vivo. *Int J Hyperthermia* 1995; **11**: 575-586 [PMID: 7594810 DOI: 10.3109/02656739509022491]
48 **Barlogie B**, Corry PM, Drewinko B. In vitro thermochemotherapy of human colon cancer cells with cis-dichlorodiammineplatinum(II) and mitomycin C. *Cancer Res* 1980; **40**: 1165-1168 [PMID: 7188883]
49 **Mohamed F**, Marchettini P, Stuart OA, Urano M, Sugarbaker PH. Thermal enhancement of new chemotherapeutic agents at moderate hyperthermia. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 463-468 [PMID: 12734097 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.08.006]
50 **Urano M**, Ling CC. Thermal enhancement of melphalan and oxaliplatin cytotoxicity in vitro. *Int J Hyperthermia* 2002; **18**: 307-315 [PMID: 12079586 DOI: 10.1080/02656730210123534]
51 **Yonemura Y**, Canbay E, Shouzou Sako. Pharmacokinetics of docetaxel during hyperthermic Intraperitoneal chemotherapy for peritoneal metastasis. *Gan to Kagaku* 2014; **41**: 2496-2499
52 **Sayag-Beaujard AC**, Francois Y, Glehen O, Sadeghi-Looyeh B, Bienvenu J, Panteix G, Garbit F, Grandclément E, Vignal J, Gilly FN. Intraperitoneal chemo-hyperthermia with mitomycin C for gastric cancer patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis. *Anticancer Res* 1999; **19**: 1375-1382 [PMID: 10365109]
53 **Van der Speeten K**, Stuart OA, Sugarbaker PH. Using pharmacologic data to plan clinical treatments for patients with peritoneal surface malignancy. *Curr Drug Discov Technol* 2009; **6**: 72-81 [PMID: 19275544 DOI: 10.2174/157016309787581084]
54 **Markman M**. Intraperitoneal therapy in ovarian cancer utilizing agents acjieving high local but low systemic exposure. *Reg Cancer Treat* 1991; **40**: 256-260
55 **Verwaal VJ**, van Ruth S, de Bree E, van Sloothen GW, van Tinteren H, Boot H, Zoetmulder FA. Randomized trial of cytoreduction and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy versus systemic chemotherapy and palliative surgery in patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis of colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2003; **21**: 3737-3743 [PMID: 14551293 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2003.04.187]
56 **Brücher B**, Stojadinovic A, Bilchik A, Protic M, Daumer M, Nissan A, Itzhak A. Patients at risk for peritoneal surface malignancy of colorectal cancer origin: the role of second look laparotomy. *J Cancer* 2013; **4**: 262-269 [PMID: 23459716 DOI: 10.7150/jca.5831]

P- Reviewer: Coccolini F **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.198

World J Surg Proced 2015 July 28; 5(2): 198-207
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

REVIEW

In utero and *exo utero* fetal surgery on histogenesis of organs in animals

Esrat Jahan, Ashiq Mahmood Rafiq, Hiroki Otani

Esrat Jahan, Ashiq Mahmood Rafiq, Hiroki Otani, Department of Developmental Biology, Faculty of Medicine, Shimane University, Izumo-shi 693-8501, Shimane, Japan

Author contributions: Jahan E conceived, designed and drafted the paper; Rafiq AM drafted the references; Otani H ideated, guided and reviewed the paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Hiroki Otani, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Developmental Biology, Faculty of Medicine, Shimane University, 89-1 Enya-cho, Izumo-shi 693-8501, Shimane, Japan. hotani@med.shimane-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-853-202102
Fax: +81-853-202100

Received: September 27, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: December 17, 2014
Revised: February 22, 2015
Accepted: March 16, 2015
Article in press: March 18, 2015
Published online: July 28, 2015

Abstract

Until recently, fetal surgery was only used for fetuses with very poor prognosis who were likely to die without intervention. With advances in imaging, endoscopic techniques, anesthesia and novel interventions, fetal surgery is becoming a realistic option for conditions with less severe prognoses, where the aim is now to improve quality of life rather than simply allow survival. Until forty years ago, the uterus shielded the fetus from observation and therapy. Rapid changes in the diagnosis and treatment of human fetal anatomical abnormalities are due to improved fetal imaging studies, fetal sampling techniques (*e.g.*, amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling), and a better understanding of fetal pathophysiology derived from laboratory animals. Fetal therapy is the logical culmination of progress in fetal diagnosis. In other words, the fetus is now a patient. Now-a-days, *in utero* (*IU*) and *exo utero* (*EU*) surgical methods are popular for experimental analyses of the histogenesis of organ development. Using these surgical methods, developmental anomalies can be created and then repaired. By applying microinjection and/or fetal surgery with these methods, models of developmental anomalies such as neural tube defects, temporomandibular joint defects, hip joint defects, digit amputation, limb and digit development and regeneration, and tooth germ transplantation in the jaw could be created and later observed. After observing different types of anomalies, novel *IU* and *EU* surgical techniques would be the best approach for repairing or treating those anomalies or diseases. This review will focus on the rationale for the *IU* and *EU* creation of animal models of different organ defects or anomalies and their repair, based on analyses of organ histogenesis and pathologic observations. It will also focus in detail on the surgical techniques of both *IU* and *EU* methods.

Key words: Myelomeningocele; Microinjection; Rodent; Sheep; Neural tube defect; Temporomandibular joint; Fetal surgery; *In utero*; *Exo utero*

Core tip: Fetal surgery in animal models has become a promising technique for analyses of organ histogenesis

and organogenesis. Using unique *in utero* (*IU*) and *exo utero* (*EU*) methods, developmental anomalies could be created and repaired during the prenatal period. Here, we review the *IU* and *EU* surgical techniques, focusing on methods and outcomes in various experimental animals.

Jahan E, Rafiq AM, Otani H. *In utero* and *exo utero* fetal surgery on histogenesis of organs in animals. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(2): 198-207 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i2/198.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.198

INTRODUCTION

Fetal surgery has a potential role in managing structural anomalies, where antenatal intervention might theoretically result in an improved outcome for the baby. Many anomalies do not meet these criteria and are likely to remain best managed after birth.

The first attempted intrauterine surgical intervention was a transfusion for Rh incompatibility in 1961. In the 1980s, the developmental pathophysiology of potentially correctable anatomical malformations was studied in animal models. Serial observations, using advances in imaging techniques, helped elucidate the natural history of certain anomalies in human fetuses. Novel obstetric therapies, endoscopic techniques and instruments now make it possible to correct some structural anomalies *in utero (IU)*.

The fundamentals of fetal surgery[1,2] are to (1) understand the natural history of the untreated anomaly *IU*; (2) have a sound pathophysiological rationale for prenatal treatment; (3) demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the fetal procedure in an animal model; and (4) define inclusion and exclusion selection criteria for treatment.

Until recently, only fetuses with a poor prognosis and a life-threatening anomaly were considered for prenatal intervention. Advances in techniques and a better understanding of the natural history of the anomalies have allowed intervention for non-life-threatening conditions, where outcome might be substantially improved. Life-threatening defects include myelomeningocele (MMC), congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH), airway obstruction, aqueductal stenosis, twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome, cleft lip and palate, and metabolic and cellular defects. Upadhyaya reviewed how to correct these types of defects[3]. Over the past two decades, the concept of developmental origins of health and disease has gained importance in the medical sciences. Based on the results of several human and animal studies, it is hypothesized that chronic diseases, such as cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes, originate from adaptive changes in the epigenetic control of metabolism and organ histogenesis during fetal development[4-6].

The *exo utero* (*EU*) developmental system was introduced by Muneoka *et al*[7]. This experimental system allows researchers to manipulate or operate on mid-to-late-gestation live mouse or rat embryos and to keep them alive *in situ* until the analysis of their effects at a desired pre- or postnatal time point. The *EU* system enables time- and region-specific intervention into developmental phenomena, simply by allowing us to choose the desired time and region for manipulation. This system is far simpler and more time- and cost-effective for *in vivo* functional analyses than establishing genetically altered mouse and rat lines. Compared to the *IU* method, one merit of the *EU* method for embryo manipulation is its clear visualization of the fine details of embryos, making it easier to locate the organs for manipulation. In contrast, because *EU* embryos are not clearly visible before embryonic day (E) 11.5 in mice due to their thick embryonic membranes, use of the *EU* system is mainly limited to the mid-to-late gestational period[8]. However, the *EU* system is a useful method not only for analyses of the developing nervous system but also for investigations of almost all organ systems during the histogenetic period[6,8].

For many genetic disorders, early onset and irreparable tissue and organ damage necessitate innovative methods that allow therapeutic intervention early in development, if a full cure is to be realized. The studies outlined in this review focused on *IU* and *EU* surgery for intervention during organ histogenesis using a variety of animals, including large mammals such as sheep, pigs and primates, and small mammals such as mice and rats. Larger mammals, such as sheep and monkeys, carry on average one embryo per pregnancy and typically tolerate surgical manipulations well, but are more expensive and have longer gestations (145 and 160-180 d, respectively) as well as higher ethical limitations. These factors reduce the number of experiments that can be performed in a given time frame. Most small experimental animals are multiparous, allowing for experimentation on large numbers of embryos, ranging from 3 to 10 embryos per pregnancy and shorter gestational periods of 3-4 wk. Drawbacks include difficulties with the manipulation of the uterus and the subsequent survival of the embryo. To this end, we can use the *IU* and *EU* development systems to screen the functions of various proteins/cells by injecting them into embryos, or to perform fetal surgery and follow up on consequences later in life. Here, we review procedures for mammalian embryo surgery both *IU* and *EU* and highlight technical innovations that have been published using this approach.

GENERAL PREPARATION FOR *IU* AND *EU* SURGERY

Here, we describe in detail *IU* surgical procedures in rodents and briefly describe these in other animals such as sheep, pigs and primates. We will only describe the *EU* surgical procedure in rodents, as thus far no experimental works or reports have been published applying this

method in other mammals. Preparation of pregnant mice or rats and abdominal surgery for *IU* and *EU* surgery are identical, to some extent. Similar procedures in rodents are described below, and later, we separately describe the procedural differences between *IU* and *EU* surgery.

Preparation for IU and EU surgery in rodents

The two generally used approaches are *IU* or *EU* surgery. Both are demanding procedures that require some level of expertise. The post-implantation embryo is encased in its extraembryonic membranes (amnion and yolk sac) within the tubular uterus. The embryo can be accessed by injection, passing through the layers of the uterine wall (perimetrium, myometrium, and endometrium) and the extraembryonic membranes. Intrauterine embryo injections can be successfully carried out on mouse embryonic stages as early as E8[9,10]. For direct surgery on the embryo, *IU* studies require opening and closing the uterus and extraembryonic membranes. This approach is restricted to late embryonic/fetal stages (E14.5 and later) because early embryos are too fragile to survive the postsurgical forces resulting from the contracting uterus. *EU* surgery is based on the finding that embryonic development is not perturbed when the uterine tube is opened but not sutured closed[7]. The embryos remain attached to the open uterus *via* the placentae and develop suspended within the abdominal cavity of the female. When embryos are exposed in this manner, it is possible to perform various embryo surgeries at early embryonic stages. Injection experiments using *EU* surgery have been carried out on stages as early as E8.5[11], and direct surgery on the embryo can be carried out on E11.5 embryos and older[12]. While technically demanding, direct manipulation of the rodent embryo is possible and, in combination with other experimental approaches, provides another avenue for experimental studies of mammalian development.

Preparation of animals and required instruments before surgery were described in detail by Yamada *et al*[13].

Anesthesia: Several different approaches to anesthesia have been used for studies on embryonic and fetal rodents, as reviewed in Ngo-Muller and Muneoka[14]. In all cases, the anesthetic target is the pregnant female and not the embryo/fetus, although the embryo/fetus is exposed to maternal levels of the drug. Anesthesia with ketamine/xylazine (K/X) or pentobarbital induces prolonged anesthesia (30-45 min with K/X; > 45 min with pentobarbital) and is administered by intraperitoneal (*i.p.*) injection. For mice, K/X is administered at a dose of 100 mg/kg of ketamine and 10 mg/kg xylazine (80 mg/kg ketamine and 8 mg/kg xylazine for rats). Reversal of K/X anesthesia can be obtained by injecting the antagonist yohimbine (1.0 mg/kg, *s.c.*) when surgery has been completed[14]. Alternatively, the pregnant female mouse/rat is also anesthetized with sodium pentobarbital (Nembutol) (50 mg/kg body weight *i.p.*)[8,13]. Recently, a combination of anesthetics (Medetomidine/Midazolam/Butorphanol) in solution is widely used. This combination is prepared with 0.3 mg/kg of medetomidine, 4.0 mg/kg of midazolam, and 5.0 mg/kg of butorphanol (M/M/B: 0.3/4/5)[15]. The induction time of M/M/B was identical to the induction time of K/X. The emergence time of M/M/B was the similar to that of K/X. The anesthetic time of M/M/B, however, was longer than the anesthetic time of K/X[15].

Abdominal incision: A sterilized operating aluminum or stainless steel plate is used during operation. Operating field (abdominal skin) of the pregnant dam should be wiped by 70% ethanol after removal of the hair, and the mouse/rat is placed in a supine position on the operating plate. To open the abdomen, an initial large midline incision of the belly skin is made with microdissection scissors. Blunt forceps should be used to handle the skin. A second incision is made along the linea alba to open the abdomen. With the abdomen open, the uterine horns can be found in the lateral regions of the abdominal cavity and simply pulled out onto sterile damp gauze placed on the ventral surface.

IU SURGERY

Mammalian development has been best characterized using rodent (mouse, rat) models. Direct intervention of the post-implantation mouse/rat embryo *IU* represents one of several experimental methods that can be used to probe mammalian embryogenesis. Here, we will elaborately describe the surgical technique in the mouse/rat and also briefly describe it in other animal models.

Rodents

Most studies using *IU* manipulation were performed on mouse embryos, though a few studies have been applied to rat embryos[2,16-18]. *IU* surgery requires that the abdomen be opened to access the uterus. After the surgical procedure, the abdomen is closed and the animal is allowed to recover.

Microinjection

IU manipulations generally involve injections into the embryo that must pass through the uterine wall and the extraembryonic membranes (yolk sac and amnion). The injection should avoid any blood vessels. Embryo manipulation is best performed using a stereo zoom surgical microscope. Injections generally utilize glass needles made from micropipettes of varying size. The making procedure was described in detail by Yamada *et al*[13]. Injection studies include the use of markers, such as carbon particles for establishing fate maps[19] or lipophilic tracers such as DiI (CellTracker; Molecular Probes) to characterize cell migration patterns[10,20-22]. Injection of virus has been used to study cell lineage[23] and the targeted effect of a specific virus on develop-

ment[24,25]. Targeted injection of purified growth factors or signal transduction antagonists directly into the embryo has been used to study signaling during normal and abnormal development[26-28]. Electroporation has been applied to inject plasmids encoding genes for functional studies and/or marker genes for cell labeling studies[29-36], plasmids encoding short hairpin RNA for RNA interference[2,16-18,37], and dual-fluorescence reporter/sensor plasmids for single-cell detection of microRNAs[38].

Recent studies demonstrate that cell transplantation (CT) at progressively earlier embryonic stages resulted in higher levels of chimerism[39]. Clinically relevant studies include the rescue of a genetic mouse model of autosomal recessive osteopetrosis, a human disorder associated with defective osteoclasts, with allogenic fetal liver CT[40], and the rescue of a mouse model of osteogenesis imperfecta with transplantation of adult bone marrow cells[41].

Fetal surgery

Open spina bifida, or MMC, the most common type of neural tube defect (NTD), is defined as a protrusion of the spinal cord and/or meninges through a defect in the vertebral arches. Creating the ideal animal model to study the effects of intrauterine surgery requires that the mechanisms of aberrant primary neurulation, resulting in an open NTD and associated nervous system anomalies, be reproduced. To create the NTD lesion fetus and repair experiments by Heffez, two studies utilized this animal model[42,43]. In the first study[42], pregnant rats at day 18 of a 22-d gestation were anesthetized, and the surgery was performed using an operating microscope. A single horn of the bifid uterus was exteriorized through a midline abdominal incision. Only the fetus being treated was mobilized. Following the opening of the uterus and amniotic membrane, a 2- to 3-level laminectomy was done, and the dura was opened. This group of fetal rats was returned to the uterus with the lesion. In a second study, identical surgical techniques were used by the same authors to lesion fetal rats, and a second group received a repair treatment prior to return to the uterus[42,43]. The rat model utilized two strategies to repair the spinal defect at embryonic day 18[42]. The open spinal cord was either repaired immediately with a nonocclusive peritoneal cover from the mother, or was re-exposed the following day and underwent a primary skin closure. Control embryos did not recover any function and had significant degradation of the spinal cord. The embryos that were repaired by primary skin closure, even after a 24-h delay, demonstrated better outcome than the embryos with closure using peritoneum. The results of this study point to the harmful effects of amniotic fluid, due to the worse outcome after a nonocclusive barrier (peritoneum) was used instead of skin. Stiefel studied the curly tail mouse model of exposed lumbosacral spina bifida and revealed the progressive deterioration of neuroanatomic appearance and neurologic function with increasing gestational age[44]. Danzer developed a retinoic acid-induced MMC model in fetal rats, and histopathology confirmed the entire spectrum of severity observed in human MMC, as well as features of the Arnold-Chiari malformation[45,46]. While these studies support the principle of improved neurologic function with *IU* coverage of the spinal cord, a large animal model with lengthy periods of time *IU* after surgical manipulation is needed before the extrapolation of these findings to humans.

Sheep

Sheep are much easier to breed and maintain and are a well-established animal model of human fetal physiology. Sheep have a consistent gestation period of 145 d, and the development of the fetus and its immune system is very similar to that of humans. Fetal sheep have been used widely to study mammalian fetal physiology, and the results obtained with this model have been directly applicable to the understanding of human fetal growth and development[47]. The first attempt at *IU* gene therapy in the sheep[48] utilized a stem CT based method, in which peripheral blood was collected from 110-d-old fetal sheep by exchange transfusion. Once its full clinical potential has been realized, hematopoietic stem cell-based gene therapy promises to cure a wide array of both inborn and acquired diseases. Both hematopoietic cells and non-hematopoietic cells within the liver and lung are transduced following the direct injection of murine retroviral vector supernatants into the peritoneal cavity of pre-immune fetal sheep, suggesting that the developmental stage of each organ at the time of injection may determine its susceptibility to *IU* gene transfer[49]. Using pregnant sheep, David *et al*[50] have adapted ultrasound-guided injection techniques from fetal medicine practice and established new methods to deliver gene therapy to fetal sheep, including intratracheal injection to target the distal respiratory epithelium[51], intragastric injection to target the intestinal mucosa[52], and fetoscopic techniques including the placement of an intratracheal balloon at the time of vector installation to enhance pulmonary epithelial transduction[53]. The combination of ultrasound guidance and fetoscopic techniques was described in detail[1].

Sheep models have also been used to study the embryopathy and pathophysiology of neurological deterioration in NTD. For NTD treatment, spina bifida lesions were created in fetal sheep by *IU* surgery techniques (reviewed in[54]). The model that most closely simulated the human disease and most clearly demonstrated the feasibility of fetal MMC surgery was the fetal lamb model of MMC introduced by Meuli *et al*[55]. Pregnant sheep were placed under general halothane oxygen anesthesia. The fetuses were then exteriorized through an infra-umbilical midline laparotomy, followed by hysterotomy to expose the backs of the fetuses. A MMC lesion was made using low-power loupe magnification with microsurgical instruments at 75 d. The fetuses with the open spinal defect were then returned to the uterus,

and the amniotic fluid volume was restored with warm sterile saline. The sheep fetuses that underwent repair of the spina bifida defect were lesioned, and the defect was then closed using a latissimus dorsi muscle flap at 100 d of gestation[55,56]. The fetal sheep MMC model was the first large animal model to demonstrate that a spinal cord lesion could be created *IU* and covered at a later time point, with preservation of neurologic function. Unlike previous animal models, this sheep model more closely resembled that of human MMC in the duration of the exposure of the cord to the environment, clinical examination, and histology.

Pigs

IU cell transplantation (IUCT) and potential tolerization are based on the immunologic immaturity of the early developing fetus, leading to the possibility of donor or species specific tolerance to xenogeneic cells. Fisher's group established an IUCT procedure by which piglets are stably engrafted with human hepatocytes during early gestation and explored the possibility of producing a state of hyporesponsiveness in pigs to human hepatocytes by transplanting human hepatocytes into fetal pig livers[57]. Briefly, at gestational day 40, all gilts underwent general anesthesia and lower midline laparotomy. Both uterine horns were exposed. All fetuses in the right uterine horn received direct intrahepatic injection under ultrasound guidance using a 1.5 inch 25 gauge needle.

Furthermore, to determine whether cells could transfer between porcine littermates, McConico[58] performed IUCT. Briefly, at 40-43 d gestation, pregnant pigs/swine were anaesthetised with intra-muscular (*i.m.*) injections of telazol (5 mg/kg), xylazine (2 mg/kg) and glycopyrolate (0.06 mg/kg). Anaesthesia was maintained with inhaled isoflurane (3%-5%). A paramedian incision was made along the dorsolateral margin of the mammary glands, with the pig in lateral recumbency. One horn of the uterus, containing four to eight fetal swine, was then exposed. Guided by ultrasound, 50 million T cell-depleted umbilical cord blood cells were injected into the peritoneum of three to four fetal swine per litter[58].

If an intrauterine event has occurred, then intrauterine interventions, such as surgical repair, might prevent progressive neurological deterioration. Animal models of spina bifida or NTD repair *IU* have been designed by Heffez[42] and reviewed by George[54]. Surgical manipulation of pregnant Hanford mini-pig sows began with sedation *via* intramuscular administration of ketamine and acepromazine. The sows were intubated, ventilated and anesthetized with isoflurane. The fetal pigs were operated on at day 80-85 of the 114-d gestation period. Surgery was performed with an operating microscope. One horn of the uterus was exteriorized. The fetus underwent a two-level laminectomy with opening of the dura. In one group, fetal pigs received repair treatment following lesioning before being returned to the uterus. In the second group, fetal pigs were returned to the uterus with an open wound. The abdominal wall of the sow was closed in two layers[42,54].

Rhesus monkeys

Several animal models of MMC have been developed to test the hypothesis that *IU* intervention can prevent further spinal cord damage and the consequent neurological deficits. Primate (Macaca mulatta) was the first model, developed by Michejda, in which a fetal L3–L5 laminectomy was done late in gestation[59]. Surgical methodologies employed on pregnant rhesus monkeys began with induction of general halothane-oxygen anesthesia. The lumbosacral region of the fetuses was exteriorized *via* hysterotomy. A vertebral opening *via* a lumbar laminectomy in the L3-L5 region was created, and the spinal cord was exposed following the opening of the dura over the spinal cord. The exact techniques, magnification and precise instrumentation were not described in the methodology[59]. A total of 8 fetuses at gestational day 110-125 were manipulated, with full gestational term at approximately day 160-180[60]. The unrepaired embryos showed cystic MMC-like lesions at birth and had neurological deficits. A similar group of monkeys underwent immediate repair of the laminectomy *IU* using allogeneic bone paste to reconstruct the resected dorsal arches. These fetuses, repaired *IU,* were neurologically normal at birth. Unfortunately, the experiment did not include an initial procedure for creation of the defect with a period of exposure to the uterine environment prior to closure.

EU SURGERY

The rodents' *EU* development system is useful for analyzing the roles of molecules or interactions between tissues in the histogenesis of organs from mid to late gestational period. Previously published technical reviews on *EU* surgery are of value to the new investigator, and this surgical treatment has been only performed in rodents (mouse/rat)[8,13,14,61]. The general operation involves making a longitudinal incision along the entire length of the uterus, so that the embryos remain attached to the uterus but are not contained within the uterine cavity. The exposed uterus is returned into the abdominal cavity, where development continues *EU*. In the original study, embryos from E9.5 to E13.5 were found to develop normally to term[7]. In a subsequent study by Serbedzija *et al*[11], *EU* survival of embryos that received injections into the amnionic cavity as early as E8.5 was reported. Early stage embryos are surrounded by a layer of decidual tissue that obscures the visualization of the embryo. Removal of this layer compromises embryo survival. In general, our experience is that the survival rate of mothers is 100%. That of manipulated embryos increases with later stages and with less invasive manipulations, and can reach 100% in cases without invasive manipulation.

Both the *IU* and *EU* surgical procedures were

identical, up to the abdominal incision before the uterine wall was cut. Yamada *et al*[13] described in detail how to relax and cut the myometrial wall, clearly observing the targeting live embryos and how to replace the manipulated embryos into the abdomen. Here, we briefly describe the procedure about how to manipulate the live embryos.

Embryo manipulations

The embryos were enveloped by very thin and transparent amniotic membrane. The amniotic membrane must be kept wet and covered by sterile gauze soaked with sterile saline, otherwise it will become dry and lose its translucency which causes difficulties. *EU* surgery is a lengthier procedure than *IU* manipulation, and not all embryos are manipulated in a single female. In cases where embryo surgery is compromising embryo survival, removing all unoperated embryos can dramatically improve the survival of operated embryos[62]. Two different techniques have been reported for removing embryos from the uterine horn during *EU* surgery.

To increase the viability rate, we have routinely left three embryos on both side of the uterus taking special care for bleeding and adhesion as Yamada *et al*[13] described in detail. Ngo-Muller and Muneoka[14] reported that they removed all but four embryos, leaving two embryos in each horn in positions toward the ovarian end of the uterus. Embryos and placentae are removed by placing a dry cotton-tipped applicator at the placental-uterine junction and gently rolling it across the placenta. This procedure separates the placenta from the uterus and causes a small amount of bleeding from the uterus. Bleeding is controlled by applying direct pressure with the cotton-tipped applicator at the former placental attachment site.

Once embryos are removed and any bleeding is controlled, the abdominal cavity is flushed with saline to remove any tissue debris that might induce a postsurgical fibrotic response. After the abdominal cavity is flushed, it is filled with sterile saline. The embryos are maintained submerged in saline during and after the operation. For older stage embryos, it may not be necessary to keep the embryos submerged. The various types of manipulations that have been accomplished using the *EU* approach are summarized below.

Microinjection

The use of sharp-tipped micropipettes is the most critical for a successful microinjection, since tear of the fetal membrane causes leakage of amniotic fluid. Fetal deaths are often attributable to damages of the embryonic membrane or placenta. Injections generally utilize glass needles made from micropipettes of varying size. Yamada *et al*[13] described how to make glass micropipettes with a beveled point using a microforge. The micropipette is connected to an automated hydrolic (mineral oil) microinjection system (*e.g.*, UltraMicro Pump, WPI Inc.) fitted with a Hamilton-type syringe that allows precise control over injection volume. It is often useful to co-inject a vital dye (*e.g.*, 0.05% Nile blue sulfate or 1% Fast Green) to monitor the injection procedure. Targeted injection of purified growth factors or signal transduction antagonists directly into the embryo has been used to study signaling during normal and abnormal development[26-28].

Cells have been introduced into the embryo by targeted injection for use as *in vivo* reporters, or to characterize the behavior of stem cells in the embryonic and adult environment. Fibroblasts introduced into the embryonic mouse limb proliferate and differentiate in a position-dependent manner[63,64]. The injection of cells that secrete high levels of specific hormones has been used to experimentally perturb embryogenesis[65-67]. Targeted injection of genetically labeled liver stem cells into the embryonic liver results in chimeric livers that persist to adult stages and can be used for both the investigation of liver development and regeneration[62].

Embryonic surgery

In many instances, experimental design calls for direct surgery on the embryo. For early stage embryos, such studies are best performed using the *EU* approach, because it eliminates the need to incise and suture the uterus and avoids postsurgical complications arising from uterine contractions. Clean visualization is the most critical and important factor for embryo manipulation/surgery, thus *EU* is the better option compared to the *IU* surgical procedure. Mechanical strain plays an important role during tissue morphogenesis, and many developmental processes depend on external and internal mechanical forces[68]. In our laboratory, we performed fetal joint movement restriction by surgical techniques using this *EU* method and observed how developmental processes were related to prenatal mechanical forces.

Hip joint movement restriction: Congenital dislocation of the hip (CDH) is one of the most common congenital skeletal deformities. The prevalent type, which constitutes up to 98% of CDH cases, is exhibited at birth by a dysplasia of the hip consisting of a flat acetabular roof and an underdeveloped proximal end of the femur, relatively minor anomalies that predispose to dislocation[69]. In our laboratory, Hashimoto and Kihara created a CDH model[70,71] to clarify its etiology and to develop prevention and treatment therapies. For these purpose, at E16.5 the hind limb of the rat embryos' one side was sutured with 9-0 thread for ophthalmic surgery at the knee joint or more distally to the amniotic membrane, whereas the other side was left unoperated. The hind limbs were tied *in situ* and were not forced into any specific abnormal positions[70,71].

TMJ movement restriction: To observe the proper development of the mandibular condylar cartilage, articular disc and temporalis muscle as related to mec-

hanical forces, we restrained jaw movement by this *EU* surgery technique. In mouse embryos at E15.5, both the upper and lower jaws (mandible and maxilla) were sutured or fixed through the embryonic membrane with 8-0 nylon. The embryos underwent *EU* development[72-75].

Other surgical techniques: Another surgical technique is the resection of parts of the fetal organs. Naruse and Kameyama[76] combined the *EU* system with argon laser irradiation to the extra digits of genetic polydactyly mice. To explore the relationship between agenesis of the olfactory bulb and that of the corpus callosum, Naruse and Keino[77] performed fetal *EU* laser surgery to induce arhinencephaly in mice and clarified that agenesis of the olfactory bulbs induced agenesis of the corpus callosum[78]. In this *EU* system, they induced fetal tissue destruction without damage to the yolk sac membrane and amnion or leakage of amniotic and extra-embryonic fluid to yield embryos with high viability. Sequential observation of NTD by the *EU* method was successfully utilized to analyze the mechanism of generation of anencephaly[46]. In our laboratory, Matsumoto *et al*[46] created anencephaly mouse embryos. Pregnant mice were administered 1 mg/kg body weight 5-azacytidine (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, Mo.) dissolved in physiologic saline by intraperitoneal injection at E7.5. After that, they observed the sequences of exencephaly, and their subsequent morphological changes, and mechanism of transformation from exencephaly to anencephaly by the *EU* development system at different embryonic days[46]. The most invasive studies to date include amputations of the limb or digit to study regenerative responses. It is possible to transplant tissues between mouse embryos to study cell–cell interactions during development. Examples include studies of the interaction between anterior and posterior tissues during mouse limb development[12] and grafts of digits in association with amputation studies[79]. Amputation studies have also been carried out on mice with targeted mutations to identify genes that are functionally required for a regenerative response[80] and to explore the diastema region of the jaw as a permissive site for the development of a transplanted tooth germ[81]. Other surgical manipulations that have been carried out on mouse embryos using a surgical approach to experimentally induce spina bifida aperta[82].

Restraining movement, amputation, wound healing and tissue grafting surgeries cause significant trauma to the embryo and can compromise embryo survival. In our and other researchers experiences, these types of embryo surgeries can have a high level of success from E13.5 and later, whereas similar manipulations at earlier stages are more challenging yet feasible[12]. This study demonstrates how multiple targeted manipulations can be successfully combined using an *EU* approach.

For both *IU* and *EU* surgery in rodents, Yamada *et al*[13] reviewed in detail about abdominal closure, recovery and post-operative care.

CONCLUSION

Advances in fetal interventions can be predicted over the next decade, driven by novel biological and endoscopic techniques. Developmental biologists have repeatedly used animal models (*e.g.*, mammals such as rodents, sheep, pigs, and monkeys; amphibians; birds) for experimental analyses of histogenesis or organogesis, or to develop powerful tools for studying the function of specific genes during development. We have explained on the methodological procedures of the *IU* (mouse/rat, sheep, pig and monkey) and *EU* (rodents) development system. These systems are useful methods for *in vivo* functional analyses from early/late organogenetic to histogenetic phases. The number of studies using *IU* or *EU* approaches has increased over the past 30 years. Now it is clear that we can successfully probe the *IU* environment of the mammalian embryo both classically (amputation, tissue transplantation, NTD creation and repair) and genetically (electroporation, gene therapy). The *EU* technique is far simpler and more time- and cost-effective than establishing genetically modified mouse/rat lines and provides a convenient experimental design for developmental research. To explore development, especially as it pertains to human health issues, there is clearly a need to develop and expand new strategies that enhance our ability to directly access the post-implantation mammalian embryo.

REFERENCES

1 **Abi-Nader KN**, Boyd M, Flake AW, Mehta V, Peebles D, David AL. Animal models for prenatal gene therapy: the sheep model. *Methods Mol Biol* 2012; **891**: 219-248 [PMID: 22648775 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-873-3_11]

2 **Ackman JB**, Aniksztejn L, Crépel V, Becq H, Pellegrino C, Cardoso C, Ben-Ari Y, Represa A. Abnormal network activity in a targeted genetic model of human double cortex. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 313-327 [PMID: 19144832 DOI: 10.1523/jneurosci.4093-08.2009]

3 **Upadhyaya M**, Lander A. Advances in fetal surgery. *Surgery* 2013; **31**: 114–118 [DOI: 10.1016/j.mpsur.2013.01.009]

4 **Gillman MW**. Developmental origins of health and disease. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 1848-1850 [PMID: 16251542 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMe058187]

5 **McMillen IC**, Robinson JS. Developmental origins of the metabolic syndrome: prediction, plasticity, and programming. *Physiol Rev* 2005; **85**: 571-633 [PMID: 15788706 DOI: 10.1152/physrev.00053.2003]

6 **Otani H**. Development of the brain as an integral part of harmonized systemic histogenesis. *J Brain Sci* 2007; **33**: 1-6

7 **Muneoka K**, Wanek N, Bryant SV. Mouse embryos develop normally exo utero. *J Exp Zool* 1986; **239**: 289-293 [PMID: 3746236 DOI: 10.1002/jez.1402390216]

8 **Hatta T**, Matsumoto A, Otani H. Application of the mouse exo utero development system in the study of developmental biology and teratology. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2004; **44**: 2-8 [PMID: 15008894]

9 **Endo M**, Zoltick PW, Radu A, Jiang Q, Matsui C, Marinkovich PM, McGrath J, Tamai K, Uitto J, Flake AW. Early intra-amniotic gene transfer using lentiviral vector improves skin blistering phenotype in a murine model of Herlitz junctional epidermolysis bullosa. *Gene Ther* 2012; **19**: 561-569 [PMID: 21938019 DOI: 10.1038/gt.2011.135]

10 **Endo M**, Zoltick PW, Chung DC, Bennett J, Radu A, Muvarak N, Flake AW. Gene transfer to ocular stem cells by early gestational intraamniotic injection of lentiviral vector. *Mol Ther* 2007; **15**: 579-587 [PMID: 17245352 DOI: 10.1038/sj.mt.6300092]

11 **Serbedzija GN**, Bronner-Fraser M, Fraser SE. Developmental potential of trunk neural crest cells in the mouse. *Development* 1994; **120**: 1709-1718 [PMID: 7523054]

12 **Wanek N**, Muneoka K, Bryant SV. Evidence for regulation following amputation and tissue grafting in the developing mouse limb. *J Exp Zool* 1989; **249**: 55-61 [PMID: 2926362 DOI: 10.1002/jez.1402490111]

13 **Yamada M**, Hatta T, Otani H. Mouse exo utero development system: protocol and troubleshooting. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2008; **48**: 183-187 [PMID: 18983587 DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.2008.00203.x]

14 **Ngô-Muller V**, Muneoka K. In utero and exo utero surgery on rodent embryos. *Methods Enzymol* 2010; **476**: 205-226 [PMID: 20691868 DOI: 10.1016/S0076-6879(10)76012-2]

15 **Kawai S**, Takagi Y, Kaneko S, Kurosawa T. Effect of three types of mixed anesthetic agents alternate to ketamine in mice. *Exp Anim* 2011; **60**: 481-487 [PMID: 22041285 DOI: 10.1538/expanim.60.481]

16 **Bai J**, Ramos RL, Ackman JB, Thomas AM, Lee RV, LoTurco JJ. RNAi reveals doublecortin is required for radial migration in rat neocortex. *Nat Neurosci* 2003; **6**: 1277-1283 [PMID: 14625554 DOI: 10.1038/nn1153]

17 **de Nijs L**, Léon C, Nguyen L, Loturco JJ, Delgado-Escueta AV, Grisar T, Lakaye B. EFHC1 interacts with microtubules to regulate cell division and cortical development. *Nat Neurosci* 2009; **12**: 1266-1274 [PMID: 19734894 DOI: 10.1038/nn.2390]

18 **Wang Y**, Paramasivam M, Thomas A, Bai J, Kaminen-Ahola N, Kere J, Voskuil J, Rosen GD, Galaburda AM, Loturco JJ. DYX1C1 functions in neuronal migration in developing neocortex. *Neuroscience* 2006; **143**: 515-522 [PMID: 16989952 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2006.08.022]

19 **Muneoka K**, Wanek N, Bryant SV. Mammalian limb bud development: in situ fate maps of early hindlimb buds. *J Exp Zool* 1989; **249**: 50-54 [PMID: 2926361 DOI: 10.1002/jez.1402490110]

20 **Ngo-Muller V**, Muneoka K. Influence of FGF4 on digit morphogenesis during limb development in the mouse. *Dev Biol* 2000; **219**: 224-236 [PMID: 10694418 DOI: 10.1006/dbio.2000.9612]

21 **Ting MC**, Wu NL, Roybal PG, Sun J, Liu L, Yen Y, Maxson RE. EphA4 as an effector of Twist1 in the guidance of osteogenic precursor cells during calvarial bone growth and in craniosynostosis. *Development* 2009; **136**: 855-864 [PMID: 19201948 DOI: 10.1242/dev.028605]

22 **Yoshida T**, Vivatbutsiri P, Morriss-Kay G, Saga Y, Iseki S. Cell lineage in mammalian craniofacial mesenchyme. *Mech Dev* 2008; **125**: 797-808 [PMID: 18617001 DOI: 10.1016/j.mod.2008.06.007]

23 **Turner DL**, Snyder EY, Cepko CL. Lineage-independent determination of cell type in the embryonic mouse retina. *Neuron* 1990; **4**: 833-845 [PMID: 2163263 DOI: 10.1016/0896-6273(90)90136-4]

24 **Naruse I**, Tsutsui Y. Brain abnormalities induced by murine cytomegalovirus injected into the cerebral ventricles of mouse embryos exo utero. *Teratology* 1989; **40**: 181-189 [PMID: 2549652]

25 **Ogawara M**, Takahashi M, Shimizu T, Nakajima M, Setoguchi Y, Shirasawa T. Adenoviral expression of protein-L-isoaspartyl methyltransferase (PIMT) partially attenuates the biochemical changes in PIMT-deficient mice. *J Neurosci Res* 2002; **69**: 353-361 [PMID: 12125076 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.10302]

26 **Hatta T**, Moriyama K, Nakashima K, Taga T, Otani H. The Role of gp130 in cerebral cortical development: in vivo functional analysis in a mouse exo utero system. *J Neurosci* 2002; **22**: 5516-5524 [PMID: 12097503]

27 **Mathijssen IM**, van Leeuwen JP, Vermeij-Keers C. Simultaneous induction of apoptosis, collagen type I expression and mineralization in the developing coronal suture following FGF4 and FGF2 application. *J Craniofac Genet Dev Biol* 2000; **20**: 127-136 [PMID: 11321597]

28 **Shinohara H**, Udagawa J, Morishita R, Ueda H, Otani H, Semba R, Kato K, Asano T. Gi2 signaling enhances proliferation of neural progenitor cells in the developing brain. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 41141-41148 [PMID: 15272018 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M406721200]

29 **Garcia-Frigola C**, Carreres MI, Vegar C, Herrera E. Gene delivery into mouse retinal ganglion cells by in utero electroporation. *BMC Dev Biol* 2007; **7**: 103 [PMID: 17875204 DOI: 10.1186/1471-213X-7-103]

30 **Kawauchi D**, Taniguchi H, Watanabe H, Saito T, Murakami F. Direct visualization of nucleogenesis by precerebellar neurons: involvement of ventricle-directed, radial fibre-associated migration. *Development* 2006; **133**: 1113-1123 [PMID: 16501169 DOI: 10.1242/dev.02283]

31 **Navarro-Quiroga I**, Chittajallu R, Gallo V, Haydar TF. Long-term, selective gene expression in developing and adult hippocampal pyramidal neurons using focal in utero electroporation. *J Neurosci* 2007; **27**: 5007-5011 [PMID: 17494686 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.0867-07.2007]

32 **Okada T**, Keino-Masu K, Masu M. Migration and nucleogenesis of mouse precerebellar neurons visualized by in utero electroporation of a green fluorescent protein gene. *Neurosci Res* 2007; **57**: 40-49 [PMID: 17084476 DOI: 10.1016/j.neures.2006.09.010]

33 **Saba R**, Nakatsuji N, Saito T. Mammalian BarH1 confers commissural neuron identity on dorsal cells in the spinal cord. *J Neurosci* 2003; **23**: 1987-1991 [PMID: 12657654]

34 **Saito T**, Nakatsuji N. Efficient gene transfer into the embryonic mouse brain using in vivo electroporation. *Dev Biol* 2001; **240**: 237-246 [PMID: 11784059 DOI: 10.1006/dbio.2001.0439]

35 **Soma M**, Aizawa H, Ito Y, Maekawa M, Osumi N, Nakahira E, Okamoto H, Tanaka K, Yuasa S. Development of the mouse amygdala as revealed by enhanced green fluorescent protein gene transfer by means of in utero electroporation. *J Comp Neurol* 2009; **513**: 113-128 [PMID: 19107806 DOI: 10.1002/cne.21945]

36 **Takiguchi-Hayashi K**, Sekiguchi M, Ashigaki S, Takamatsu M, Hasegawa H, Suzuki-Migishima R, Yokoyama M, Nakanishi S, Tanabe Y. Generation of reelin-positive marginal zone cells from the caudomedial wall of telencephalic vesicles. *J Neurosci* 2004; **24**: 2286-2295 [PMID: 14999079 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4671-03.2004]

37 **Friocourt G**, Kanatani S, Tabata H, Yozu M, Takahashi T, Antypa M, Raguénès O, Chelly J, Férec C, Nakajima K, Parnavelas JG. Cell-autonomous roles of ARX in cell proliferation and neuronal migration during corticogenesis. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 5794-5805 [PMID: 18509041 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1067-08.2008]

38 **De Pietri Tonelli D**, Calegari F, Fei JF, Nomura T, Osumi N, Heisenberg CP, Huttner WB. Single-cell detection of microRNAs in developing vertebrate embryos after acute administration of a dual-fluorescence reporter/sensor plasmid. *Biotechniques* 2006; **41**: 727-732 [PMID: 17191618 DOI: 10.2144/000112296]

39 **Chen X**, Gong XL, Katsumata M, Zeng YT, Huang SZ, Zeng F. Hematopoietic stem cell engraftment by early-stage in utero transplantation in a mouse model. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2009; **87**: 173-177 [PMID: 19666020 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2009.07.009]

40 **Tondelli B**, Blair HC, Guerrini M, Patrene KD, Cassani B, Vezzoni P, Lucchini F. Fetal liver cells transplanted in utero rescue the osteopetrotic phenotype in the oc/oc mouse. *Am J Pathol* 2009; **174**: 727-735 [PMID: 19218349 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2009.080688]

41 **Panaroni C**, Gioia R, Lupi A, Besio R, Goldstein SA, Kreider J, Leikin S, Vera JC, Mertz EL, Perilli E, Baruffaldi F, Villa I, Farina A, Casasco M, Cetta G, Rossi A, Frattini A, Marini JC, Vezzoni P, Forlino A. In utero transplantation of adult bone marrow decreases perinatal lethality and rescues the bone phenotype in the knockin murine model for classical, dominant osteogenesis imperfecta. *Blood* 2009; **114**: 459-468 [PMID: 19414862 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2008-12-195859]

42 **Heffez DS**, Aryanpur J, Rotellini NA, Hutchins GM, Freeman JM. Intrauterine repair of experimental surgically created dysraphism. *Neurosurgery* 1993; **32**: 1005-1010 [PMID: 8327074]

43 **Heffez DS**, Aryanpur J, Hutchins GM, Freeman JM. The paralysis associated with myelomeningocele: clinical and experimental data

implicating a preventable spinal cord injury. *Neurosurgery* 1990; **26**: 987-992 [PMID: 2362676]
44 **Stiefel D**, Copp AJ, Meuli M. Fetal spina bifida in a mouse model: loss of neural function in utero. *J Neurosurg* 2007; **106**: 213-221 [PMID: 17465388 DOI: 10.3171/ped.2007.106.3.213]
45 **Danzer E**, Schwarz U, Wehrli S, Radu A, Adzick NS, Flake AW. Retinoic acid induced myelomeningocele in fetal rats: characterization by histopathological analysis and magnetic resonance imaging. *Exp Neurol* 2005; **194**: 467-475 [PMID: 15893307 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2005.03.011]
46 **Matsumoto A**, Hatta T, Moriyama K, Otani H. Sequential observations of exencephaly and subsequent morphological changes by mouse exo utero development system: analysis of the mechanism of transformation from exencephaly to anencephaly. *Anat Embryol* (Berl) 2002; **205**: 7-18 [PMID: 11875660]
47 **Osburn BI**. The ontogeny of the ruminant immune system and its significance in the understanding of maternal-fetal-neonatal relationships. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 1981; **137**: 91-103 [PMID: 6277167]
48 **Kantoff PW**, Flake AW, Eglitis MA, Scharf S, Bond S, Gilboa E, Erlich H, Harrison MR, Zanjani ED, Anderson WF. In utero gene transfer and expression: a sheep transplantation model. *Blood* 1989; **73**: 1066-1073 [PMID: 2920208]
49 **Porada CD**, Park P, Almeida-Porada G, Zanjani ED. The sheep model of in utero gene therapy. *Fetal Diagn Ther* 2004; **19**: 23-30 [PMID: 14646413 DOI: 10.1159/000074255]
50 **David AL**, Peebles DM, Gregory L, Themis M, Cook T, Coutelle C, Rodeck CH. Percutaneous ultrasound-guided injection of the trachea in fetal sheep: a novel technique to target the fetal airways. *Fetal Diagn Ther* 2003; **18**: 385-390 [PMID: 12913352 DOI: 10.1159/000071984]
51 **Peebles D**, Gregory LG, David A, Themis M, Waddington SN, Knapton HJ, Miah M, Cook T, Lawrence L, Nivsarkar M, Rodeck C, Coutelle C. Widespread and efficient marker gene expression in the airway epithelia of fetal sheep after minimally invasive tracheal application of recombinant adenovirus in utero. *Gene Ther* 2004; **11**: 70-78 [PMID: 14681699 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gt.3302130]
52 **David AL**, Peebles DM, Gregory L, Waddington SN, Themis M, Weisz B, Ruthe A, Lawrence L, Cook T, Rodeck CH, Coutelle C. Clinically applicable procedure for gene delivery to fetal gut by ultrasound-guided gastric injection: toward prenatal prevention of early-onset intestinal diseases. *Hum Gene Ther* 2006; **17**: 767-779 [PMID: 16839275 DOI: 10.1089/hum.2006.17.767]
53 **Davey MG**, Hedrick HL, Bouchard S, Mendoza JM, Schwarz U, Adzick NS, Flake AW. Temporary tracheal occlusion in fetal sheep with lung hypoplasia does not improve postnatal lung function. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2003; **94**: 1054-1062 [PMID: 12571135 DOI: 10.1152/japplphysiol.00733.2002]
54 **George TM**, Fuh E. Review of animal models of surgically induced spinal neural tube defects: implications for fetal surgery. *Pediatr Neurosurg* 2003; **39**: 81-90 [PMID: 12845198 DOI: 10.1159/000071319]
55 **Meuli M**, Meuli-Simmen C, Yingling CD, Hutchins GM, Hoffman KM, Harrison MR, Adzick NS. Creation of myelomeningocele in utero: a model of functional damage from spinal cord exposure in fetal sheep. *J Pediatr Surg* 1995; **30**: 1028-1032; discussion 1028-1032 [PMID: 7472926 DOI: 10.1016/0022-3468(95)90335-6]
56 **Meuli M**, Meuli-Simmen C, Yingling CD, Hutchins GM, Timmel GB, Harrison MR, Adzick NS. In utero repair of experimental myelomeningocele saves neurological function at birth. *J Pediatr Surg* 1996; **31**: 397-402 [PMID: 8708911 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3468(96)90746-0]
57 **Fisher JE**, Lillegard JB, McKenzie TJ, Rodysill BR, Wettstein PJ, Nyberg SL. In utero transplanted human hepatocytes allow postnatal engraftment of human hepatocytes in pigs. *Liver Transpl* 2013; **19**: 328-335 [PMID: 23280879 DOI: 10.1002/lt.23598]
58 **McConico A**, Butters K, Lien K, Knudsen B, Wu X, Platt JL, Ogle BM. In utero cell transfer between porcine littermates. *Reprod Fertil Dev* 2011; **23**: 297-302 [PMID: 21211462 DOI: 10.1071/RD10165]
59 **Michejda M**. Intrauterine treatment of spina bifida: primate model. *Z Kinderchir* 1984; **39**: 259-261 [PMID: 6388186 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1044221]
60 **Mitchell G**, Brandt EM. Behavior of the female rhesus monkey during birth. In: Bourne GH. The rhesus monkey: management, reproduction, and pathology. New York: Academic Press, 1975: 231-244
61 **Ngo-Muller V**, Muneoka K. Exo utero surgery. *Methods Mol Biol* 2000; **135**: 481-492 [PMID: 10791343]
62 **Shikanai M**, Asahina K, Iseki S, Teramoto K, Nishida T, Shimizu-Saito K, Ota M, Eto K, Teraoka H. A novel method of mouse ex utero transplantation of hepatic progenitor cells into the fetal liver. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2009; **381**: 276-282 [PMID: 19217885 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2009.02.037]
63 **Trevino C**, Calof A, Muneoka K. Position specific growth regulation of 3T3 cells in vivo. *Dev Biol* 1992; **150**: 72-81 [PMID: 1537436 DOI: 10.1016/0012-1606(92)90008-5]
64 **Trevino C**, Anderson R, Muneoka K. 3T3 cell integration and differentiative potential during limb development in the mouse. *Dev Biol* 1993; **155**: 38-45 [PMID: 8416843 DOI: 10.1006/dbio.1993.1004]
65 **Kawamoto M**, Udagawa J, Hashimoto R, Matsumoto A, Yamada M, Nimura M, Otani H. Adrenocorticotropic tumor cells transplanted into mouse embryos affect pancreatic histogenesis. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2011; **51**: 62-69 [PMID: 21198907 DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.2010.00313.x]
66 **Nimura M**, Udagawa J, Otani H. Adrenocorticotropic hormone affects nonapoptotic cell death of undifferentiated germ cells in the fetal mouse testis: in vivo study by exo utero transplantation of corticotropic tumor cells into embryos. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2008; **48**: 81-86 [PMID: 18452489 DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.2008.00183.x]
67 **Zhang H**, Hatta T, Udagawa J, Moriyama K, Hashimoto R, Otani H. Induction of ectopic corticotropic tumor in mouse embryos by exo utero cell transplantation and its effects on the fetal adrenal gland. *Endocrinology* 1998; **139**: 3306-3315 [PMID: 9645707]
68 **Rolfe R**, Roddy K, Murphy P. Mechanical regulation of skeletal development. *Curr Osteoporos Rep* 2013; **11**: 107-116 [PMID: 23467901 DOI: 10.1007/s11914-013-0137-4]
69 **Warkany J**. Syndromes. *Am J Dis Child* 1971; **121**: 365-370 [PMID: 4253704]
70 **Kihara I,** Hashimoto R, Otani H. Effects of restrained fetal movement on the development of the rat hip joint. *Congenit Anom* 1998; **38**: 259-270 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.1998.tb00809.x]
71 **Hashimoto R**, Kihara I, Otani H. Perinatal development of the rat hip joint with restrained fetal movement. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2002; **42**: 135-142 [PMID: 12196711]
72 **Habib H**, Hatta T, Udagawa J, Zhang L, Yoshimura Y, Otani H. Fetal jaw movement affects condylar cartilage development. *J Dent Res* 2005; **84**: 474-479 [PMID: 15840786 DOI: 10.1177/154405910508400514]
73 **Habib H**, Hatta T, Rahman OI, Yoshimura Y, Otani H. Fetal jaw movement affects development of articular disk in the temporo-mandibular joint. *Congenit Anom* (Kyoto) 2007; **47**: 53-57 [PMID: 17504387 DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.2007.00143.x]
74 **Jahan E**, Matsumoto A, Udagawa J, Rafiq AM, Hashimoto R, Rahman OI, Habib H, Sekine J, Otani H. Effects of restriction of fetal jaw movement on prenatal development of the temporalis muscle. *Arch Oral Biol* 2010; **55**: 919-927 [PMID: 20728868 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.2010.07.010]
75 **Jahan E**, Matsumoto A, Rafiq AM, Hashimoto R, Inoue T, Udagawa J, Sekine J, Otani H. Fetal jaw movement affects Ihh signaling in mandibular condylar cartilage development: the possible role of Ihh as mechanotransduction mediator. *Arch Oral Biol* 2014; **59**: 1108-1118 [PMID: 25033382 DOI: 10.1016/j.archoralbio.2014.06.009]
76 **Naruse I**, Kameyama Y. Fetal laser surgery in genetic polydactyly mice. *Teratology* 1990; **41**: 731-735 [PMID: 2191460 DOI: 10.1002/tera.1420410610]
77 **Naruse I**, Keino H. Apoptosis in the developing CNS. *Prog Neurobiol* 1995; **47**: 135-155 [PMID: 8711131 DOI: 10.1016/0301-0082(95)00024-P]

78 **Naruse I**, Keino H, Taniguchi M. Fetal laser surgery exo utero in mice. *Congenit Anom* 1996; **36**: 107-113 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1741-4520.1996.tb00947.x]
79 **Reginelli AD**, Wang YQ, Sassoon D, Muneoka K. Digit tip regeneration correlates with regions of Msx1 (Hox 7) expression in fetal and newborn mice. *Development* 1995; **121**: 1065-1076 [PMID: 7538067]
80 **Han M**, Yang X, Farrington JE, Muneoka K. Digit regeneration is regulated by Msx1 and BMP4 in fetal mice. *Development* 2003; **130**: 5123-5132 [PMID: 12944425 DOI: 10.1242/dev.00710]
81 **Song Y**, Yan M, Muneoka K, Chen Y. Mouse embryonic diastema region is an ideal site for the development of ectopically transplanted tooth germ. *Dev Dyn* 2008; **237**: 411-416 [PMID: 18213586 DOI: 10.1002/dvdy.21427]
82 **Inagaki T**, Schoenwolf GC, Walker ML. Experimental model: change in the posterior fossa with surgically induced spina bifida aperta in mouse. *Pediatr Neurosurg* 1997; **26**: 185-189 [PMID: 9436828]

P- Reviewer: Shan LP, Wang CC **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.208

World J Surg Proced 2015 July 28; 5(2): 208-216
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Current management of acute type B aortic dissection

Sina Iranmanesh, John J Ricotta

Sina Iranmanesh, Department of Vascular Surgery, MedStar Washington Hospital Center, Washington, DC 20010, United States

John J Ricotta, Department of Surgery, MedStar Washington Hospital Center, Washington, DC 20010, United States

Author contributions: Iranmanesh S and Ricotta JJ solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors certify that they have no affiliations with or involvement in any organization or entity with any financial interest (such as honoraria; educational grants; participation in speakers' bureaus; membership, employment, consultancies, stock ownership, or other equity interest; and expert testimony or patent-licensing arrangements), or non-financial interest (such as personal or professional relationships, affiliations, knowledge or beliefs) in the subject matter or materials discussed in this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Sina Iranmanesh, MD, Department of Vascular Surgery, Medstar Washington Hospital Center, POB 3150 North, 110 Irving St NW, Washington, DC 20010, United States. sina.iranmanesh@gmail.com
Telephone: +1-813-4169360
Fax: +1-866-6329121

Received: November 8, 2014
Peer-review started: November 8, 2014
First decision: January 20, 2015
Revised: February 23, 2015
Accepted: March 30, 2015
Article in press: April 2, 2015
Published online: July 28, 2015

Abstract

Acute type B aortic dissection (TBAD) occurs as a result of an intimal tear within the proximal thoracic aorta. Patients are typically managed acutely with aggressive antihypertensive therapy. Surgical repair is reserved for those who develop complications such as rupture or malperfusion. The surgical management of acute TBAD has changed considerably in the last decade secondary to the advent of thoracic stent grafting. Thoracic endovascular aortic repair (TEVAR) has improved early mortality and morbidity rates for patients presenting with complicated TBAD. The role of TEVAR in patients presenting with acute and subacute uncomplicated TBAD is less clear. TEVAR has been associated with increased late survival and better aortic remodeling, with low perioperative morbidity in selected patients. Recent literature suggests certain radiographic criteria may be used to predict patients developing late aortic events who would benefit from early TEVAR. The purpose of this article is to review the contemporary management of acute TBAD, discuss controversies in management and evaluate the latest research findings.

Key words: Aorta thoracic; Vascular grafting; Aneurysm dissecting; Aortic rupture; Endovascular procedure; Stent

Core tip: Current recommendations and controversies within the surgical management of acute type B aortic dissection are discussed. The increased use of thoracic endovascular aortic repair has been associated with improved patient outcomes, though data on patients presenting with acute and subacute dissection is less clear. Certain radiographic findings may predict those at higher risk of developing late aortic-related complication.

Iranmanesh S, Ricotta JJ. Current management of acute type

B aortic dissection. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(2): 208-216 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i2/208.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i2.208

INTRODUCTION

Acute type B aortic dissection (TBAD) remains a complex clinical entity associated with a high rate of morbidity and mortality[1]. The majority of patients are able to be managed medically in the acute setting, though a subset of patients require acute surgical intervention. Open surgical therapy has traditionally been associated with high rates of in hospital death and morbidity. Surgical complications have been reduced by endovascular technology, specifically thoracic endovascular aortic repair (TEVAR). Unfortunately strong evidence is lacking regarding the optimal management of patients with acute TBAD. One of the difficulties in interpreting the literature on this topic involves the retrospective, single-institution nature of most studies. Few prospective, randomized trials exist to help guide vascular surgeons in selecting optimal management strategies. This paper will focus on reviewing the contemporary management of acute TBAD, controversies and future directions.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The primary etiology of TBAD is the separation of the layers of the aortic wall from each other, originating at a site known as the entry tear. This injury occurs within the intima at the proximal descending aorta, most often just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery. A study of hemodynamic forces within the aortic arch by Nathan *et al*[2] demonstrates this area to be particularly susceptible to shear forces. This, in part, explains the frequency with which this location is involved. Microscopic analysis reveals that the dissection occurs into the media, functionally separating the intima from the adventitia. The "false lumen" (between the intima and adventitia) becomes pressurized, and, since the adventitia is stronger than the intima, the true lumen may become compressed. Compression of the true lumen may result in propagation of the dissection in a caudal (or occasionally cranial) direction and compromise of the distal branch arteries to the viscera, spinal cord or extremities. A novel *ex vivo* model for aortic dissection by Faure *et al*[3] highlights the spiral dissection plane that descends caudally. Often the celiac, superior mesenteric and right renal arteries originate from the true lumen while the left renal originates from the false lumen.

Symptoms from malperfusion may result from either static or dynamic obstruction. Static obstruction occurs when a highly pressurized false lumen dissects around, and circumferentially occludes, the orifice of a branch vessel. In contrast, dynamic obstruction occurs when a branch vessel orifice is occluded intermittently by extrinsic compression of the true lumen by pulsatile flow within the false lumen. This phenomenon is best observed using intravascular ultrasound (IVUS) to evaluate a patient with severe true lumen compression (Figure 1).

The initial presentation of dissection is that of tearing chest pain radiating to the back. This may be accompanied by symptoms of end-organ ischemia such as abdominal pain, oligo-anuria, lower extremity ischemia, paresis or paraplegia depending on the end organs involved. When malperfusion occurs, often several vascular territories are involved[4]. In the setting of rupture, patients may develop hypotension, abdominal distention or a left pleural effusion. Diagnosis is most commonly made by computed tomography angiography (CTA) or transesophageal echocardiography (TEE). TEE, when readily available, can identify the proximal entry tear and its origin. It is also effective in differentiating type A and type B dissections, and can assess cardiac function without the use of contrast or ionizing radiation. CTA, however, has the advantage of being readily available in most emergency rooms and is less operator dependent. It can also identify rupture, end organ ischemia, the extent of distal dissection and the relative size of the true and false lumens. For this reason CTA has emerged as the study of choice in acute TBAD[5] (Figures 2 and 3).

MEDICAL MANAGEMENT

Medical management is critical for all patients with acute TBAD, whether or not surgery is performed. Initial management is focused on strict blood pressure and heart rate control. At our institution we favor initiation of anti-impulse therapy with a beta blocker followed by a vasodilator to prevent further propagation of the dissection and to manage the patient's symptoms. These medications are best administered in a closely monitored unit aided by an arterial line and urinary catheter. Target systolic blood pressure goals include 110-120 mmHg, with heart rate goals between 60-80 BPM[5]. These targets may be lowered if the patient's symptoms persist, as long as adequate perfusion as judged by urine output and mentation persists. Patients who respond to this regimen are transitioned to oral antihypertensive medications once their hypertension is controlled. Repeat imaging is typically performed prior to discharge and at regular outpatient intervals, evaluating for patency of the false lumen and aneurysmal degeneration. Established indications to proceed with operative intervention in the acute setting include: rupture, malperfusion, and persistent/refractory pain in the face of maximal medical therapy. The existence of one of these criteria is defined as complicated aortic dissection.

Estrera *et al*[6] evaluated 159 patients presenting with acute TBAD in a single center. In-hospital mortality for patients requiring only medical therapy (*i.e.,* uncomplicated) was 7.3%. Complication rates in medically managed patients included rupture in 5%, stroke in

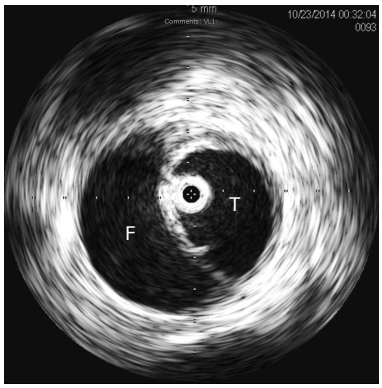


Figure 1 Intravascular ultrasound evaluation during thoracic stent grafting. The IVUS probe (image center) is seen confirming correct orientation within the true lumen. T: True lumen; F: False lumen; IVUS: Intravascular ultrasound.

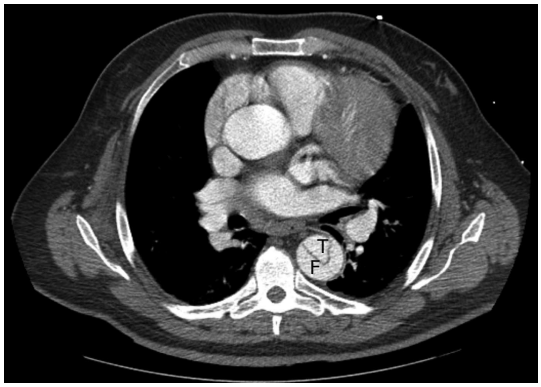


Figure 2 Computed tomography angiogram of a patient presenting with acute type B aortic dissection. T: True lumen; F: False lumen.

5%, spinal cord ischemia in 8.2%, mesenteric ischemia in 5.7%, dialysis dependence in 13.8%, and lower extremity ischemia in 3.8%. Survival at 1 year and 5 years was 83% and 75%, respectively. Approximately 14.5% of patients progressed to complicated aortic dissection requiring intervention; the in-hospital mortality for this cohort rose to 17%. Tsai *et al*[7] reviewed data from the multi-institution International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection(IRAD). They identified a 10% in hospital mortality rate for patients receiving medical therapy alone. They reported a similar incidence of overall morbidities as Estrera *et al*[6] Approximately 11% of patients in that cohort required surgical intervention. In addition, they reported 1 year and 3 years survival rates for patients treated initially with medical therapy at 90.3% and 77.6%. These data show that the overwhelming majority of patients present with uncomplicated aortic dissection, and they can safely be managed medically. There is, however, a notable incidence of late aortic events and decline in survival in the medically managed patients after several years.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT

The goals of surgical management are to prevent or treat

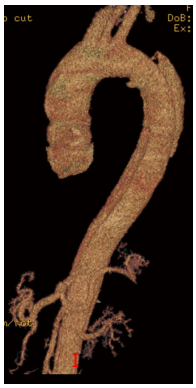


Figure 3 3D reconstruction from a computed tomography angiography of a patient presenting with acute type B aortic dissection, highlighting the entry tear originating distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery. The dissection plan is seen to extend well into the abdominal aorta.

rupture and/or ischemia from vessel malperfusion. This can be accomplished in one of two ways: (1) sealing the entry tear to promote false lumen thrombosis; or (2) equalizing the pressure between the true and false lumen by fenestration of the dissection septum to prevent progression of the dissection and reestablish perfusion to compromised end organs. The choice of therapy depends on the clinical and anatomic presentation of the patient. Efforts at sealing the entry tear are most likely to cause false lumen thrombosis and restore distal perfusion through the true lumen when there is a relatively discrete entry tear with a highly pressurized false lumen. However, when a major branch vessel is perfused exclusively through the false lumen, successfully sealing the entry tear may induce ischemia in the territory that vessel supplies. This can result in renal, intestinal, extremity or spinal cord compromise. Furthermore, when multiple entry and re-entry tears are present, sealing the proximal entry tear alone often will not be sufficient to depressurize the false lumen. Our current diagnostic capabilities make it difficult to definitively predict when such conditions may occur and this uncertainty has tempered enthusiasm for surgery as a first approach.

The principle of fenestration is the opposite of that underlying entry tear coverage. The aim of this technique is to increase communication between the true and false lumen, equalizing pressures within them and stabilizing the dissection process. The technique seeks to create the situation that occurs in many TBADs that respond to medical management alone, *i.e.,* equilibrium between true and false lumens. This technique is most often performed percutaneously and will be described under "endovascular approaches." It is important to recognize that this technique does not "treat" dissection, only malperfusion, and cannot prevent rupture or late aneurysmal dilation of the dissected arterial segment.

Correction of malperfusion may require more than one approach. When the entry tear is sealed and the false lumen depressurized, dynamic malperfusion will be reversed. Equilibration of the pressure in the true and false lumens may also reverse dynamic obstruction.

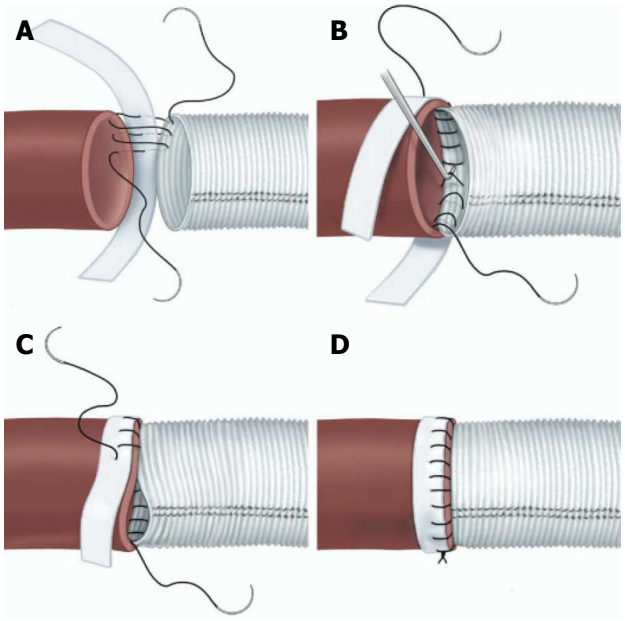


Figure 4 Suture line reinforcement with felt pledgets. A: Performing the posterior wall of the anastomosis first, in a "parachute" fashion. The suture travels from the prosthetic graft, to native aorta, then finally through the pledget; B: The suture line is tightened with the use of a nerve hook, and care taken to place the pledge on the outer surface of the aorta; C: Once the posterior wall of the anastomosis is completed, the anterior wall of the anastomosis is completed. The graft is somewhat invaginated within the aorta; D: The completed anastomosis, whereby the native aorta is buttressed on either end with pledget and graft. Source: "Long-term integrity of teflon felt-supported suture lines in aortic surgery," by Strauch *et al*[9]. Copyright 2005 by Elsevier, reprinted with permission.

Therefore sealing the entry tear, or fenestration of the aorta may be all that is necessary in some cases. However when a static obstruction exists, flow must be restored by another means. When ischemia is restricted to the lower extremities this may be accomplished by extra-anatomic bypass without addressing the aortic dissection itself. However when ischemia persists after initial treatment of malperfusion, vascular reconstruction directed at the ischemic territory is required. When the viscera are involved this is most often done from and endovascular approach using self-expanding stents or covered stents, since aortovisceral bypass in these circumstances is hazardous. These will be discussed in more detail in the "endovascular management" section. When lower extremity ischemia is present either endovascular stents or extra-anatomic bypass may be performed.

OPEN SURGICAL MANAGEMENT

Open surgical management is generally directed at sealing the entry tear and treating any acute complication (rupture or malperfusion) rather than definitive treatment of the aortic pathology. The urgent nature of the operation and unstable character of the aorta dictates a focal approach directed at saving life and limb. Classically, open surgical management of ruptured TBAD involves direct aortic replacement of the ruptured area. When malperfusion is present rather than rupture, management options include a short interposition graft to covering the proximal entry tear, aortic fenestration, or extra-anatomic bypass. Coverage of the entry tear requires a proximal suture line in an area of aorta free of dissection. The graft itself may be relatively short since the goals are simply to seal the entry tear and direct blood into the true lumen. This technique relieves malperfusion secondary to dynamic obstruction. Fenestration involves a transverse aortotomy at or below the location of the branch vessels at risk, with partial resection of the septum to equalize pressure in the true and false lumens[8]. Distal flow is directed exclusively into the true lumen. In both approaches, accurate identification of the distal true lumen and obliteration of the false lumen is critical and this may sometimes be difficult. The suture lines require reinforcement with pledget strips, placed circumferentially (Figure 4), both between the intima and adventitia in the false lumen of the dissected aorta and outside the adventitia at both proximal and distal suture lines, to maintain anastomotic integrity[9]. Aorto-visceral bypass, if required, should originate from the graft itself since the aorta is diseased. Definitive aortic repair is not the goal of open treatment in the acute setting. Spinal cord ischemia, when it occurs, is not reversible.

In patients who manifest only lower extremity ischemia, extra-anatomic bypass grafting, directed at restoring perfusion to the ischemic extremity, may be undertaken without addressing the aortic dissection itself, which is managed medically. In patients with unilateral ischemia a femoral-femoral bypass may be sufficient while in patients with bilateral ischemia axillo-bifemoral grafting is appropriate. As in the thoracic aorta, accurate identification of the distal true lumen is critical to avoid perpetuating the dissection distally. External reinforcement with pledgets may be required.

In a high volume single institution, Bozinovski *et al*[10] retrospectively reviewed 76 patients who underwent aortic replacement. Operative mortality was reported to be 22.4%. The relevant morbidity rates included: stroke (6.6%), paraplegia (6.6%), dialysis dependence (10.5%), left vocal cord paralysis (39.5%) and cardiac complications (43.4%). In their examination of the multi-institution IRAD dataset, Trimarchi *et al*[11] found a 29.3% mortality rate for 82 patients undergoing any open intervention for complicated TBAD. The majority (69.3%) of these patients underwent aortic replacement. Stroke and paralysis occurred in 9.0% and 4.5%, respectively. Sachs *et al*[12] analyzed data from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample (NIS), identifying a 20% in-hospital mortality rate for patients undergoing emergent open aortic replacement, despite being utilized in a younger, less comorbid patient population. Taken as a whole, open surgical intervention is associated with significant mortality and morbidity rates. For this reason it is not recommended in patients without life threatening complications.

ENDOVASCULAR MANAGEMENT

The principles of therapy using endovascular techniques remain the same as those with open surgery: either covering the entry tear to induce false lumen thrombosis or equalizing the pressure in the true and false lumen by fenestration. As with open fenestration, percutaneous fenestration treats malperfusion secondary to dynamic obstruction. Its advantages over open fenestration include avoidance of aortic cross clamping and general anesthesia. It can be performed rapidly in an interventional suite and document the perfusion of branch vessels. Furthermore in patients where visceral vessels are perfused through both the true and false lumens the risk of inducing ischemia by false lumen thrombosis is eliminated. Though the technique is not standardized, common methods include the use of IVUS to determine the locations of the true and false lumens. With a wire passed from one lumen into the other, a fenestration is created then enlarged *via* large balloon angioplasty or balloon-expandable stent placement. When visceral/extremity malperfusion occurs secondary to static obstruction, percutaneous branch vessel stent placement (*via* bare-metal or covered stents) may be utilized alone or in conjunction with other endovascular techniques described in this article.

There has been a robust experience with this technique to treat malperfusion in selected centers of excellence. Patel *et al*[4] published their results in treating 69 patients presenting with acute TBAD with visceral malperfusion. Treatment options included true lumen stenting, branch vessel stenting, fenestration, and a combination of all three modalities. When all ischemic territories were examined, angiographic reperfusion was obtained in 95.7% of cases. Early mortality was reported at 17.4%, with a 4.3% incidence of stroke, 2.9% incidence of spinal cord ischemia, and 14.5% of dialysis dependent renal failure. During the follow-up period, the authors noted 1 year and 3 years survival rates of 76.2% and 63.5%, respectively. Despite the immediate success with endovascular fenestration, the authors documented the technique's shortcomings – the inability to reduce long term aortic-related events. After successful fenestration the dissection will persist, the false lumen will not thrombose and the risk of late aneurysmal dilation persists. At 5 years, the rate of freedom from aortic rupture or repair was 67.7%. With the advent of stent graft coverage of the entry tear, the use of fenestration has diminished.

The biggest change in surgical management of TBAD is the evolution of TEVAR to substitute for open surgical sealing of the entry tear. Like percutaneous fenestration, TEVAR has the potential benefit of an "indirect" intraluminal approach to the dissected aorta as well as the ability to avoid aortic cross clamping and minimize additional end organ ischemia. Through this minimally invasive approach, TEVAR has significantly altered treatment algorithms in patients presenting acutely. The goals of TEVAR use in the acute setting are to seal the entry tear, decompress the false lumen, expand the true lumen, and prevent rupture. Until recently, thoracic endografts were being utilized in an off-label fashion in the United States. In 2014, two endografts, the TAG device (WL GORE) and the Valiant device (Medtronic), received United States Food and Drug Administration approval for use specifically in aortic dissection[13,14]. Several other devices remain under investigation.

Qin *et al*[15] recently reviewed their single center experience performing TEVAR in 152 patients presenting with complicated TBAD. They achieved technical success in 94.7% of cases, with an in-hospital mortality rate of 2%, stroke rate of 1.3%, and paralysis rate of 1.3%. They also reported a 2.6% incidence of type Ⅰ endoleak formation and a 1.3% rate of retrograde dissection. Fattori *et al*[16] reported a slightly higher mortality rate of 10.9% in their review of 290 patients from the IRAD dataset. Rates of stroke (2.3%) and paralysis (1.3%) remained low. In the long term follow up, the group did note that 30.6% of patients required a repeat intervention, and 13.4% developed any endoleak. The 5 year mortality rate was reported at 15.5%. Data from the NIS dataset revealed similar rates of in-hospital mortality (13.1%) and related morbidities[12]. Sachs *et al*[12] also documented a continual increase in the utilization of TEVAR throughout the study period. Hanna *et al*[17] reviewed their experience performing endovascular repair in 50 patients presenting with complicated TBAD. They reported no in-hospital deaths, with low (2%) rates of stroke and spinal cord ischemia. They noted a 20% utilization of adjunct procedures (branch vessel stenting and extra anatomic bypass). Though studied only retrospectively, TEVAR utilized in the acute complicated setting is associated with overall lower rates of mortality and morbidity compared with open repair.

TEVAR and percutaneous fenestration may not completely resolve end organ ischemia and supplemental endovascular techniques may be required[18]. Persistence of visceral malperfusion after true lumen expansion with TEVAR, or in the setting of static obstruction, typically warrants treatment with visceral branch vessel stenting. The choice of using bare-metal, covered, self-expanding or balloon expandable stents is left to the discretion of the surgeon, as all devices have been used to manage branch vessel malperfusion[19,20].

ROLE OF TEVAR IN ASYMPTOMATIC TBAD

The reduced morbidity and mortality of TEVAR compared to open repair raises the question of prophylactic TEVAR in asymptomatic patients. The rationale of such an approach would be to seal the entry tear at an early point in the process, depressurizing the false lumen and thereby reducing risk of rupture and progression to malperfusion in the acute setting or aneurysmal dilation in the long term. It is well known that in chronic dissection the septum between the true and false lumen

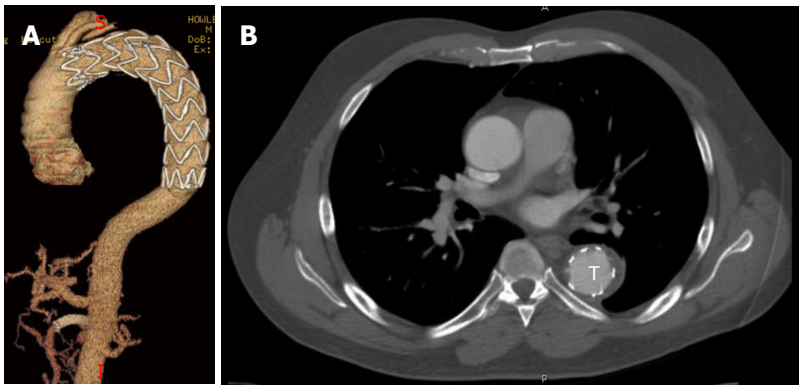


Figure 5 Remodeling after thoracic endovascular aortic repair. A: Follow-up 3D reconstruction from a computed tomography angiography of a patient who underwent TEVAR with adjunct superior mesenteric artery stenting for acute type B aortic dissection with malperfusion. There no evidence of endoleak or aneurysmal degeneration; B: Axial sections from same patient highlighting T expansion with evidence of false lumen thrombosis. TEVAR: Thoracic endovascular aortic repair; T: True lumen.

becomes stiff and repair by endovascular means is more complex and often impossible. The goal of early prophylactic intervention would be to promote false lumen thrombosis, thereby increasing aortic remodeling and reducing the incidence of late aneurysmal degeneration and the frequency of late open repair.

In an attempt to evaluate the role of TEVAR in uncomplicated TBAD, the Investigation of Stent Grafts in Aortic Dissection (INSTEAD) trial randomized approximately 140 patients presenting with subacute (> 14 d) uncomplicated TBAD to best medical therapy with TEVAR or best medical therapy alone[21]. Perioperative mortality rates in the TEVAR group were reported at 2.8%, with a 2.9% incidence of spinal cord ischemia and a 1.5% incidence in major stroke. At 2 years of follow up, the investigators were unable to demonstrate any mortality benefit from TEVAR compared with medical management, with an 88.9% survival in the TEVAR arm and a 95.6% survival in the medical therapy arm. There was no statistical difference seen in the rates of aortic-related deaths (2.9% medical *vs* 5.6% TEVAR), secondary interventions (22.1% medical *vs* 18.1% TEVAR) or spinal cord ischemia (1.4% medical *vs* 2.8% TEVAR) at the end of the 2 years study period. The authors concluded that there was no short or midterm benefit for TEVAR in patients with uncomplicated TBAD and the technique should be reserved for use in those presenting with complications.

There are several shortcomings of the INSTEAD Trial. The major criticisms were that the endpoints of death and complications at two years may not reflect the potential late benefits of TEVAR on false lumen thrombosis, aortic remodeling and late aortic related events and that the trial did not address the role of TEVAR in acute (< 14 d) aortic dissection.

The INSTEAD investigators acknowledged that two years may have been inadequate to capture enough aortic-related deaths within the medical therapy group. To that end, they published outcomes on the same cohort patients followed from 2-5 years from the initial randomization. At 5 years, all-cause mortality statistically differed between the medical (19.3%) and the TEVAR (11.1%) arms[22]. When examining aortic specific mortality, the difference between the medical (19.3%) and TEVAR (6.9%) groups is even more pronounced, with the majority of aortic-related deaths in the medical arm occurring between 2 and 5 years. The authors demonstrated a late survival benefit occurring between 2 and 5 years in patients undergoing TEVAR. It was concluded the survival benefit with TEVAR occurs at a cost of initially increased perioperative morbidity and mortality.

The INSTEAD investigators were also able to demonstrate an improvement in false lumen thrombosis and aortic remodeling in the TEVAR patients. Aortic remodeling is defined as an increase in the true lumen diameter with a subsequent reduction in the false lumen diameter over time, reflecting resolution of the dissection process (Figure 5). No specific criteria exist for objectively quantifying this phenomenon, though several techniques include measuring the true and false lumen diameters at different sites along the thoracic aorta, measuring luminal cross-sectional area, and by volumetric analysis[23]. At 2 years in the INSTEAD trial, only 19.4% of patients undergoing medical therapy were noted to have complete false lumen thrombosis, in contrast to 91.3% of patients undergoing TEVAR[21]. When carried out to 5 years, 22% of patients treated medically showed complete false lumen thrombosis compared with 90.6% of patients undergoing TEVAR[22]. Patterson *et al*[24] attempted to review the available literature on aortic remodeling. Despite being limited by multiple small-sized retrospective series, series with both acute and chronic dissection, and the heterogeneity in which aortic remodeling was quantified, the authors were able to confirm a high (80% to 90%) rate of complete false lumen thrombosis within the proximal thoracic aorta in patients with TBAD undergoing TEVAR. There is evidence to support the connection between aortic remodeling and improvement in long term survival, albeit limited. In a series of patients treated with TEVAR for chronic TBAD, Mani *et al*[25] demonstrated an 89% 3-year survival in

patients with evidence of aortic remodeling, in contrast to a 54% 3-year survival in patients who did not show this feature.

It is important to note that the INSTEAD trial did not address the optimal management of acute TBAD*; i.e.,* all patients survived at least two weeks without developing complications related to their dissection. In patients randomized to TEVAR, the time from diagnosis to treatment averaged 51 d. This may reflect a group of patients in whom the dissection process has already stabilized and who are less likely to develop early or mid-term complications with persistent medical management. Indeed the medical arm had a 95.6% survival and 2.9% aorta related mortality, lower than the 10% mortality reported form the medically managed patients in the IRAD registry[7]. Thus the proper endpoints might have been late rather than early mortality. In fact the 5 years results suggest that the impact of TEVAR is significant in patients who have a longer life expectancy.

INSTEAD did not address the question of how best to deal with patients with acute TBAD who remain asymptomatic but may be at risk for developing complications. While it is clear that this will not occur in the majority of patients, it is equally intuitive that intervention before rupture or malperfusion occurs would be the optimal way to reduce overall morbidity and mortality. The Acute Dissection: Stent Graft or Best Medical Therapy (ADSORB) trial is underway to clarify this issue. A prospectively randomized control study, the ADSORB trial randomized approximately 60 patients presenting with TBAD of less than 14 d duration to either best medical therapy or TEVAR utilizing a Gore TAG device. In contrast to the INSTEAD trial, the ADSORB trial's primary composite endpoint was freedom from either false lumen patency, aortic dilation, or aortic rupture. Mean time to randomization was 4.77 d, with 0.88 d to treatment. Although the study is ongoing, preliminary one year data has been presented. There were no in hospital occurrences of death, stroke or spinal cord ischemia. False lumen thrombosis and freedom from the composite endpoint was reported to be markedly higher in the TEVAR group (57%) compared to the medical only group (3%)[26].

It would be ideal to identify patients at high risk for developing complicated TBAD so that selective use of TEVAR in an asymptomatic setting could occur in at-risk patients, while patients likely to develop false lumen thrombosis with medical management alone could be spared surgical intervention. Several reports have been published that highlight specific cohorts of patients (identified *via* specific radiographic findings) that would potentially benefit the most from early TEVAR. In a recent retrospective review of 228 patients presenting with acute TBAD, Ueki *et al*[27] identified the descending aortic diameter and location of the entry tear as predictors of aortic-related events (dissection-related death, surgical intervention, aneurysmal degeneration or retrograde dissection). In patients treated medically, those with an aortic diameter less than 40 mm and an entry tear located greater than 50 mm from the left subclavian artery experienced an 82.5% rate of freedom from aortic events by 5 years. In contrast, those with aortic diameters greater than 40 mm and a proximal (less than 50 mm from the left subclavian) entry tear experienced a 53.5% freedom from aortic event rate over a similar time period. Marui *et al*[28] also retrospectively examined a group of patients with TBAD treated medically. They identified an aortic diameter greater than 40 mm, persistent false lumen patency and a fusiform dilation index as significantly associated with late aortic events. In a retrospective review of 110 patients presenting with TBAD, Akutsu *et al*[29] identified an aortic diameter of 45 mm on presentation and false lumen patency as independent risk factors for future dissection-related mortality. When examining a series of patients presenting with acute type A and TBADs, Song *et al*[30] identified a false lumen diameter of 22 mm or greater as an independent predictor of late aneurysmal degeneration and aneurysm related death.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CONCLUSION

Management of TBAD has undergone dramatic alterations within the past decade and the management of this problem continues to evolve. The high mortality associated with open repair of patients with complicated TBAD has been reduced by the increasing use of thoracic stent grafts to seal the entry tear and restore perfusion. Initial enthusiasm for percutaneous fenestration is being replaced for the most part by TEVAR, which affords entry tear sealing (and subsequent aortic remodeling) in a minimally invasive fashion. Moreover, the success of TEVAR in managing malperfusion has led investigators to study its use in uncomplicated TBAD. Data supporting this indication is not definitive, but what exists suggests that elective TEVAR in the subacute phase is associated with an improvement in 5 years aortic-related survival, at the cost of some increase in perioperative morbidity. The use of TEVAR also appears to improve aortic morphology over time, potentially explaining its long term survival benefit. This causal relationship, however, has not been definitely proven. Current trials are underway to determine feasibility in applying TEVAR in cases of early (< 14 d) uncomplicated TBAD, although the optimal timing of intervention and criterion for patient selection remain unclear. Observational data has aided in identifying specific radiographic criteria that may select out potential subgroups that may be more likely to benefit from TEVAR than medical therapy alone. Fruitful areas for further investigation include: the development of new devices with lower profile and better conformability to reduce perioperative complications; new techniques to increase incidence of false lumen thrombosis and identifying clinical and radiographic characteristics which can predict patients at high and low risk of developing complications with medical management.

REFERENCES

1 **Jimenez JC.** Acute and Chronic Dissection: Medical Management, Surgical Management, Endovascular Management, and Results. In: Moore W, editor. Vasc Endovasc Surg A Compr Rev. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013: 638-649

2 **Nathan DP**, Xu C, Gorman JH, Fairman RM, Bavaria JE, Gorman RC, Chandran KB, Jackson BM. Pathogenesis of acute aortic dissection: a finite element stress analysis. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2011; **91**: 458-463 [PMID: 21256291 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2010.10.042]

3 **Faure EM**, Canaud L, Cathala P, Serres I, Marty-Ané C, Alric P. Human ex-vivo model of Stanford type B aortic dissection. *J Vasc Surg* 2014; **60**: 767-775 [PMID: 24060393 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvs.2013.06.083]

4 **Patel HJ**, Williams DM, Meerkov M, Dasika NL, Upchurch GR, Deeb GM. Long-term results of percutaneous management of malperfusion in acute type B aortic dissection: implications for thoracic aortic endovascular repair. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2009; **138**: 300-308 [PMID: 19619770 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2009.01.037]

5 **Hiratzka LF**, Bakris GL, Beckman JA, Bersin RM, Carr VF, Casey DE, Eagle KA, Hermann LK, Isselbacher EM, Kazerooni EA, Kouchoukos NT, Lytle BW, Milewicz DM, Reich DL, Sen S, Shinn JA, Svensson LG, Williams DM. 2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACR/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM guidelines for the diagnosis and management of patients with Thoracic Aortic Disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines, American Association for Thoracic Surgery, American College of Radiology, American Stroke Association, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society of Interventional Radiology, Society of Thoracic Surgeons, and Society for Vascular Medicine. *Circulation* 2010; **121**: e266-e369 [PMID: 20233780 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e3181d4739e]

6 **Estrera AL**, Miller CC, Goodrick J, Porat EE, Achouh PE, Dhareshwar J, Meada R, Azizzadeh A, Safi HJ. Update on outcomes of acute type B aortic dissection. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; **83**: S842-S485; discussion S846-S850 [PMID: 17257938 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2006.10.081]

7 **Tsai TT**, Fattori R, Trimarchi S, Isselbacher E, Myrmel T, Evangelista A, Hutchison S, Sechtem U, Cooper JV, Smith DE, Pape L, Froehlich J, Raghupathy A, Januzzi JL, Eagle KA, Nienaber CA. Long-term survival in patients presenting with type B acute aortic dissection: insights from the International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection. *Circulation* 2006; **114**: 2226-2231 [PMID: 17101856 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.622340]

8 **Trimarchi S**, Segreti S, Grassi V, Lomazzi C, Cova M, Piffaretti G, Rampoldi V. Open fenestration for complicated acute aortic B dissection. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg* 2014; **3**: 418-422 [PMID: 25133107 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2225-319X.2014.07.08]

9 **Strauch JT**, Spielvogel D, Lansman SL, Lauten AL, Bodian C, Griepp RB. Long-term integrity of teflon felt-supported suture lines in aortic surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2005; **79**: 796-800 [PMID: 15734380 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2004.08.028]

10 **Bozinovski J**, Coselli JS. Outcomes and survival in surgical treatment of descending thoracic aorta with acute dissection. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2008; **85**: 965-970; discussion 970-971 [PMID: 18291179 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2007.11.013]

11 **Trimarchi S**, Nienaber CA, Rampoldi V, Myrmel T, Suzuki T, Bossone E, Tolva V, Deeb MG, Upchurch GR, Cooper JV, Fang J, Isselbacher EM, Sundt TM, Eagle KA. Role and results of surgery in acute type B aortic dissection: insights from the International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection (IRAD). *Circulation* 2006; **114**: I357-I364 [PMID: 16820600 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.105.000620]

12 **Sachs T**, Pomposelli F, Hagberg R, Hamdan A, Wyers M, Giles K, Schermerhorn M. Open and endovascular repair of type B aortic dissection in the Nationwide Inpatient Sample. *J Vasc Surg* 2010; **52**: 860-866; discussion 866 [PMID: 20619592 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvs.2010.05.008]

13 GORE TAG Thoracic Endoprosthesis - P040043/S051. [approval 2013 Sept 10]. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/DeviceApprovalsandClearances/Recently-ApprovedDevices/ucm372107.htm

14 Medtronic Valiant Thoracic Stent Graft with Captivia Delivery System - P100040/S012. [approval 2014 Jan 22]. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/DeviceApprovalsandClearances/Recently-ApprovedDevices/ucm384549.htm

15 **Qin YL**, Deng G, Li TX, Wang W, Teng GJ. Treatment of acute type-B aortic dissection: thoracic endovascular aortic repair or medical management alone? *JACC Cardiovasc Interv* 2013; **6**: 185-191 [PMID: 23428012 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcin.2012.11.004]

16 **Fattori R**, Montgomery D, Lovato L, Kische S, Di Eusanio M, Ince H, Eagle KA, Isselbacher EM, Nienaber CA. Survival after endovascular therapy in patients with type B aortic dissection: a report from the International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection (IRAD). *JACC Cardiovasc Interv* 2013; **6**: 876-882 [PMID: 23968705 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcin.2013.05.003]

17 **Hanna JM**, Andersen ND, Ganapathi AM, McCann RL, Hughes GC. Five-year results for endovascular repair of acute complicated type B aortic dissection. *J Vasc Surg* 2014; **59**: 96-106 [PMID: 24094903 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvs.2013.07.001]

18 **van Bogerijen GH**, Williams DM, Patel HJ. TEVAR for complicated acute type B dissection with malperfusion. *Ann Cardiothorac Surg* 2014; **3**: 423-427 [PMID: 25133108 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2225-319X.2014.05.03]

19 **Uchida N**, Shibamura H, Katayama A, Aishin K, Sutoh M, Kuraoka M. Surgical strategies for organ malperfusions in acute type B aortic dissection. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2009; **8**: 75-78 [PMID: 18854338 DOI: 10.1510/icvts.2008.186247]

20 **Feezor RJ**, Martin TD, Hess PJ, Beaver TM, Klodell CT, Lee WA. Early outcomes after endovascular management of acute, complicated type B aortic dissection. *J Vasc Surg* 2009; **49**: 561-566; discussion 566-567 [PMID: 19268759 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvs.2008.09.071]

21 **Nienaber CA**, Rousseau H, Eggebrecht H, Kische S, Fattori R, Rehders TC, Kundt G, Scheinert D, Czerny M, Kleinfeldt T, Zipfel B, Labrousse L, Ince H. Randomized comparison of strategies for type B aortic dissection: the INvestigation of STEnt Grafts in Aortic Dissection (INSTEAD) trial. *Circulation* 2009; **120**: 2519-2528 [PMID: 19996018 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.886408]

22 **Nienaber CA**, Kische S, Rousseau H, Eggebrecht H, Rehders TC, Kundt G, Glass A, Scheinert D, Czerny M, Kleinfeldt T, Zipfel B, Labrousse L, Fattori R, Ince H. Endovascular repair of type B aortic dissection: long-term results of the randomized investigation of stent grafts in aortic dissection trial. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv* 2013; **6**: 407-416 [PMID: 23922146 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCINTERVENTIONS.113.000463]

23 **Stanley GA**, Murphy EH, Knowles M, Ilves M, Jessen ME, Dimaio JM, Modrall JG, Arko FR. Volumetric analysis of type B aortic dissections treated with thoracic endovascular aortic repair. *J Vasc Surg* 2011; **54**: 985-992; discussion 992 [PMID: 21917398 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvs.2011.03.263]

24 **Patterson BO**, Cobb RJ, Karthikesalingam A, Holt PJ, Hinchliffe RJ, Loftus IM, Thompson MM. A systematic review of aortic remodeling after endovascular repair of type B aortic dissection: methods and outcomes. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2014; **97**: 588-595 [PMID: 24360089 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2013.07.128]

25 **Mani K**, Clough RE, Lyons OT, Bell RE, Carrell TW, Zayed HA, Waltham M, Taylor PR. Predictors of outcome after endovascular repair for chronic type B dissection. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg* 2012; **43**: 386-391 [PMID: 22326695 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejvs.2012.01.016]

26 **Hughes GC.** Management of acute type B aortic dissection; ADSORB trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2015; **149**: S158-S162 [PMID: 25306065 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2014.08.083]

27 **Ueki C**, Sakaguchi G, Shimamoto T, Komiya T. Prognostic factors in patients with uncomplicated acute type B aortic dissection. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2014; **97**: 767-773; discussion 773 [PMID: 24360090

DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2013.10.038]
28 **Marui A**, Mochizuki T, Koyama T, Mitsui N. Degree of fusiform dilatation of the proximal descending aorta in type B acute aortic dissection can predict late aortic events. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2007; **134**: 1163-1170 [PMID: 17976444 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2007.07.037]
29 **Akutsu K**, Nejima J, Kiuchi K, Sasaki K, Ochi M, Tanaka K, Takano T. Effects of the patent false lumen on the long-term outcome of type B acute aortic dissection. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2004; **26**: 359-366 [PMID: 15296897 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcts.2004.03.026]
30 **Song JM**, Kim SD, Kim JH, Kim MJ, Kang DH, Seo JB, Lim TH, Lee JW, Song MG, Song JK. Long-term predictors of descending aorta aneurysmal change in patients with aortic dissection. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2007; **50**: 799-804 [PMID: 17707186 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2007.03.064]

P- Reviewer: Kin T, Li XL, Paraskevas KI **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

World Journal of *Surgical Procedures*

World J Surg Proced 2015 November 28; 5(3): 217-234

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJSP World Journal of Surgical Procedures

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of surgical procedures

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Surgical Procedures* Editorial Board consists of 276 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgical procedures. They are from 35 countries, including Australia (10), Austria (3), Belgium (1), Brazil (4), Canada (5), China (23), Egypt (2), France (1), Germany (10), Greece (9), Hungary (1), India (6), Iran (3), Ireland (1), Israel (6), Italy (29), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (2), Nigeria (1), Norway (1), Pakistan (1), Poland (1), Romania (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (2), South Korea (7), Spain (11), Switzerland (5), Thailand (1), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (11), and United States (71).

Hungary

Péter Örs Horváth, *Pécs*

India

Nilakantan Ananthakrishnan, *Pondicherry*
Rakesh Kumar, *Haryana*
Suguna Lonchin, *Chennai*
Chinmay Kumar Panda, *Kolkata*
Muthukumaran Rangarajan, *Coimbatore*
Nihal Thomas, *Vellore*

Iran

Mehrdad Mohammadpour, *Tehran*
Seyed Reza Mousavi, *Tehran*
Mohammad Taher Rajabi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Desmond Winter, *Dublin*

Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*
Haim Gutman, *Tikva*
Yoav Mintz, *Jerusalem*
Solly Mizrahi, *Beer sheva*
Nir Wasserberg, *Petach Tiqua*
Oded Zmora, *Tel Hashomer*

Italy

Ferdinando Agresta, *Fregona*
Franco Bassetto, *Padova*
Claudio Bassi, *Verona*
Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
Francesco Boccardo, *Genoa*
Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
Fausto Catena, *Bologna*
Luigi D'Ambra, *La Spezia*
Alessandro Franchini, *Florence*
Giuseppe Galloro, *Naples*
Massimo Gerosa, *Verona*
Francesco Greco, *Brescia*
Roberto Iezzi, *Rome*
Fabrizio Luca, *Milan*
Simone Mocellin, *Padova*
Boscolo-Rizzo Paolo, *Padua*
Giacomo Pata, *Brescia*
Marcello Picchio, *Latina*
Giuseppe Piccinni, *Bari*
Marco Raffaelli, *Rome*
Matteo Ravaioli, *Bologna*
Raffaele Russo, *Naples*
Vincenzo Russo, *Naples*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Luciano Solaini, *Ravenna*
Pietro Valdastri, *Pisa*
Luca Viganò, *Torino*
Luigi Zorcolo, *Cagliari*

Japan

Hiroki Akamatsu, *Osaka*
Mitsuhiro Asakuma, *Osaka*
Hideo Baba, *Kumamoto*
Akihiro Cho, *Chiba*
Shotaro Enomoto, *Wakayama*
Satoshi Hagiwara, *Yufu*
Yoshiki Hirooka, *Nagoya City*
Motohiro Imano, *Osaka*
Yasuhiro Ito, *Kobe*
Koichi Iwatsuki, *Osaka*
Kyousuke Kamada, *Asahikawa*
Hirotoshi Kobayashi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Kume, *Gifu*
Daisuke Morioka, *Yokohama*
Toshitaka Nagao, *Tokyo*
Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
Kensaku Sanefuji, *Fukuoka*
Norio Shiraishi, *Oita*
Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
Nobumi Tagaya, *Koshigaya*
Sonshin Takao, *Kagoshima*
Hiroshi Takeyama, *Tokyo*
Koji Tanaka, *Suita*
Kuniya Tanaka, *Yokohama*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Akira Tsunoda, *Kamogawa*
Dai Uematsu, *Nagano*
Shinichi Ueno, *Kagoshima*
Toshifumi Wakai, *Niigata*
Atsushi Watanabe, *Sapporo*
Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
Yo-ichi Yamashita, *Hiroshima*
Naohisa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Seiichi Yoshida, *Niigata*

Lebanon

Bishara Atiyeh, *Beirut*

Lithuania

Aleksandras Antusevas, *Kaunas*

Mexico

José A Robles Cervantes, *Guadalajara*
Miguel F Herrera, *Mexico City*

Netherlands

Frans L Moll, *Utrecht*
Paulus Joannes van Diest, *Utrecht*

Nigeria

Christopher Olusanjo Bode, *Lagos*

Norway

Michael Brauckhoff, Bergen

Pakistan

Drshamim Muhammad Shamim, *Karachi*

Poland

Lek Nowińska Anna, *Katowice*

Romania

Mihai Ciocirlan, *Bucharest*
Adrian Iancu, *Cluj Napoca*

Saudi Arabia

Abdul-Wahed Meshikhes, *Dammam*

Singapore

Zhi-wei Huang, *Singapore*
Brian K P Goh, *Singapore*

South Korea

Sung-Hyuk Choi, *Seoul*
Young Seob Chung, *Seoul*
Dong-Ik Kim, *Seoul*
Choon Hyuck David Kwon, *Seoul*
Ho-Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
In Ja Park, *Seoul*
Sung-Soo Park, *Seoul*

Spain

Maria Angeles Aller, *Vallehermoso*
Aniceto Baltasar, *Alcoy*
Bernardo Hontanilla Calatayud, *Pamplona*
Manuel Giner, *Madrid*
Fernando Hernanz, *Cantabria*
Álvaro Larrad Jiménez, *Madrid*
David Martinez-Ramos, *Castellon*
Juan Viñas Salas, *Leida*
Eduardo M Targarona, *Barcelona*
Carmen Peralta Uroz, *Barcelona*
Jesus Vaquero, *Madrid*

Switzerland

Marco Buter, *Zürich*
Pascal Gervaz, *Geneva*
Merlin Guggenheim, *Männedorf*
Jürg Metzger, *Lucerne*
Cafarotti Stefano, *Bellinzona*

Thailand

Varut Lohsiriwat, *Bangkok*

Turkey

Ugur Boylu, *Istanbul*

WJSP

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Contents

Four-monthly Volume 5 Number 3 November 28, 2015

World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Volume 5 Number 3 November 28, 2015

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Surgical Procedures

ISSN
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
December 29, 2011

FREQUENCY
Four-monthly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Surgical Procedures
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
November 28, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.217

World J Surg Proced 2015 November 28; 5(3): 217-222
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

Versatility of therapeutic reduction mammoplasty in oncoplastic breast conserving surgery

Fernando Hernanz, Mónica González-Noriega, Rocío Vázquez Pérez, Manuel Gómez-Fleitas

Fernando Hernanz, Mónica González-Noriega, Rocío Vázquez Pérez, Manuel Gómez-Fleitas, Department of Surgery, Valdecilla Hospital, 39008 Santander, Cantabria, Spain

Author contributions: Hernanz F contributed to the conception and design of the study, who carried out surgical procedures; González-Noriega M made acquisition of and analysis and interpretation of them; Pérez RV made acquisition of data; Gómez-Fleitas M made critical revision.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors disclose that they do not have any commercial associations or financial support.

Correspondence to: Fernando Hernanz, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor of Surgery, Department of Surgery, Valdecilla Hospital, Avenue Valdecilla sn., 39008 Santander, Cantabria, Spain. cgdhff@humv.es
Telephone: +34-942-203733
Fax: +34-942-202726

Received: February 28, 2015
Peer-review started: March 2, 2015
First decision: June 3, 2015
Revised: June 27, 2015
Accepted: July 21, 2015
Article in press: July 23, 2015
Published online: November 28, 2015

Abstract

Oncoplastic breast conserving surgery is the gold standard approach for the surgical treatment of early breast cancer. There is a well defined technique named "therapeutic mammoplasty" which is characterized for using a reduction mammaplasty technique to treat breast cancer conservatively. In our current practice, "therapeutic mammoplasty" or therapeutic reduction mammaplasty is our favorite oncoplastic breast conserving approach which it used in almost half of our patients. This technique is very versatile allows us the resection of tumors located in all breast quadrants of patients with moderate-to large-sized breasts. We describe a series of 57 patients who were treated using a therapeutic reduction mammaplasty. All surgical procedures were carried out by one comprehensive breast surgeon who planned and designed the surgery performing both oncologic and reconstructive procedures. Surgical margins were insufficient in eight patients (14%). Nine patients (15.8%) had a complication in early postoperative period and in one of them adjuvant radiotherapy was delayed four months due to a wound dehiscence. The rate of synchronous contralateral symmetrization was 31.6%. Our conclusion is that reduction mammaplasty is a useful and safe skill to treat breast cancer conservatively playing a very important role therefore it must be situated in the priority of learning objectives.

Key words: Breast conserving surgery; Oncoplastic; Oncoplastic breast surgery; Reduction mammoplasty; Therapeutic mammaplasty

Core tip: Reduction mammaplasty techniques are a really useful and safe skills to treat breast cancer conservatively allowing breast surgeons manage tumors located in all breast quadrants with low morbidity in moderate to large breasted patients, thanks their versatility they play a very important role in oncoplastic conservative surgery therefore they must be situated in the priority of learning objectives.

Hernanz F, González-Noriega M, Pérez RV, Gómez-Fleitas M. Versatility of therapeutic reduction mammoplasty in oncoplastic breast conserving surgery. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(3): 217-222 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i3/217.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.217

INTRODUCTION

Currently, oncoplastic breast conserving surgery (OBCS) should be the gold standard approach for the surgical treatment of early breast cancer[1-3]. Oncoplastic techniques (OT) offer clear advantages on nearly forty percent of patients in who common breast conserving treatment (BCT) (surgery plus radiotherapy) are followed by cosmetic sequelaes[4] besides the rest of the patients who also could be benefited from many surgical tricks which can improve aesthetic outcomes[5]. Since 1998, when Audretsch *et al*[6] described the use of plastic surgery techniques to reshape the breast at the time of lumpectomy or quadrantectomy introducing the term "oncoplastic", it has passed enough time to be able to evaluate long-term oncologic outcomes, therefore a meta-analysis gathering 3165 patients treated by OBCS *vs* 5494 treated BCT have demonstrated that OBCS obtain similar results to standard breast conserving surgery improving cosmetic outcome and patients' satisfaction[7].

There is a large amount of OT but these can be classified in two main groups: Volume replacement or displacement techniques. Nowadays, the last ones, which are more frequently used[8], have a broad technical variety with different patters incisions, pedicles used for nipple areola complex (NAC) movement, ways to fill tumor removal defect and their multiple combinations. Several authors[9-13] have created different algorithms attempting to optimize OT and offering us a method to select the most appropriate OT in each patient. These algorithms for immediate conservative surgery reconstruction are based on some aspects such as type and size of the breast, extent of tumor removal defect, ptosis degree, breast tissue density and location of the tumor in the breast. Other aspects very important in the process of decision are patient preferences and surgeon expertise.

In OT displacement volume group there is well defined technique a "therapeutic mammoplasty" term coined by McCulley *et al*[14,15] which is characterized for using a reduction mammaplasty technique and radiotherapy to treat breast cancer. These authors described two different scenarios depending if the tumor lies or not within the routine pattern incision and excision dividing the breast in nine areas with theirs corresponding approaches. Therapeutic mammaplasty is especially useful in large breasted patients in who a bilateral reduction mammaplasty offers clear advantages which are both oncological and functional which cause better radiation therapy and beside relieving the symptoms related to breast hypertrophy thus improves quality of life[16], even more, this approach is a better option than skin-sparing total mastectomy and immediate reconstruction having lower morbidity and more favorable cosmesis[17].

Munhoz *et al*[18], wrote that the main advantages of the therapeutic reduction mammaplasty (TRM) should include reproducibility, low interference with oncological treatment and long-term results. We agree completely with him and it is more, based on our experience, we would like to add that this technique is versatile because it could be used to treat tumors located in all breast quadrants with the condition that the patient having a moderate to large-sized breast.

The aim of this work was to communicate our experience with TRM showing the distribution of tumors into the breast, rate of affected margins, early surgical complications, and synchronous contralateral breast symmetrization.

PATIENTS AND METHODS

Between 2005 and 2013, 57 patients suffering from breast cancer suitable for BCT underwent TRM at our Oncoplastic Breast Unit, Hospital Valdecilla (Santander, Spain). All surgical procedures were carried out by one comprehensive breast surgeon (FH) who planned and designed the surgery performing both oncologic and reconstructive procedures. Data from patient and tumor characteristics, surgical procedures, early complications and pathological study were prospectively collected and stored in IBM SPSS statistics program.

RESEARCH RESULT

Characteristic of patients and tumours are described in Tables 1 and 2. Seven patients were treated before surgery with neoadjuvant chemotherapy. Most of tumor excisions were guided by needle-wires (84.2%) according to our method previously published[19]; wires were inserted 1 cm distant to radiologic tumors limits as markers of optimal limit resection, sufficiently of resection margins was per-operatively tested by X-ray analysis of surgical specimen. Biopsy of sentinel lymph node (49) and axillary linfadenectomy (10) was performed in mostly patients by the T inverted pattern incision. Opposite breast surgery by reduction mammaplasty was carried out in eighteen patients (31.6%).

Surgical margins status

Margins were insufficient in eight patients (14%), five affected and three with focal involvement. Two of them having affected margins underwent total mastectomy. Pathologic study of mastectomy showed residual invasive carcinoma and carcinoma *in situ* in one patient and residual ductal carcinoma *in situ* in the other.

Early surgical complications

Nine patients (15.8%) had a complication in early

Table 1 Characteristics of the series of 57 patients *n* (%)

Age (yr)	57, 8.9 SD
Status menstrual	
Premenopausal	13 (22.8)
Postmenopausal	44 (77.2)
Affected breast	
Right	19 (33.3)
Left	38 (66.7)
Tumour location through the breast (quadrant)	
Upper outer	16 (28.1)
Upper inner	3 (5.3)
Lower Inner	3 (5.3)
Central	12 (21.1)
Intersection upper quadrants	7 (12.3)
Intersection lower quadrants	5 (8.8)
Intersection inner quadrants	3 (5.3)
Intersection outer quadrants	7 (12.3)
Inframmary fold	1 (1.8)
Multifocal	14 (24.6)
Radiological tumour size (mm)	21.7, 12.58 SD

Table 2 Characteristic of 57 breast carcinomas *n* (%)

In situ	7 (12.3)
Invasive	50 (87.7)
Type of histology	
Ductal	39
Lobular	6
Mixed	1
Papilar	1
Others	3
Positive estrogenic receptors	38
Positive progesterone receptors	37
Positive Herb2 receptors	7
Ki67 (n = 42)	
> 10%	15
10%-50%	19
51%-75%	3
> 75%	4
Pathologic tumour size (mm)	17.1, 9.77 SD
Patients with lymph nodes positives	12 (14)

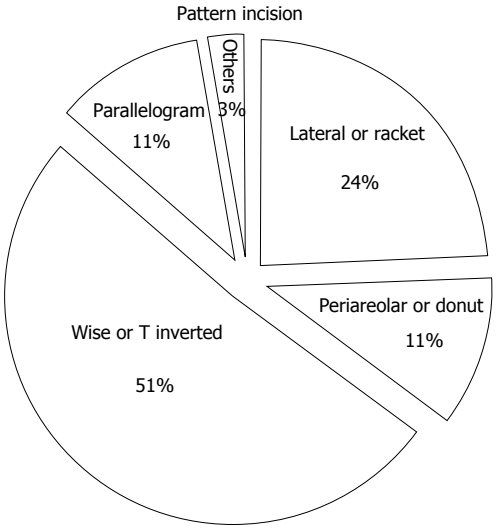


Figure 1 Distribution of the pattern incisions used in breast cancer patients treated using oncoplastic conservative approach at our unit.

postoperative period (five a hematoma, four a minor wound dehiscence) and three of them had to be re-operated for evacuating a hematoma. There were no major complications such necrosis of NAC or severe breast infections and only one adjuvant radiotherapy was delayed four months in one patient due to a wound dehiscence.

DISCUSSION

Although some OT are specifically useful to manage some determined tumor locations such as a lateral or tennis racket mammaplasty[20] for tumors located at upper outer quadrant or LIQ-V mammaplasties[21] for these located at lower inner quadrants, reduction mammaplasty with T inverted pattern incision appropriately adapted is be able to treat tumors situated at all breast quadrants. In a very large series of 540 consecutive cases published by Fitoussi *et al*[22] in which a variety of OT were used, T inverted pattern incision was the most frequently utilized in 40% of patients. Our current BCT entails 77.2% of breast cancer surgery and in oncoplatic breast conserving experience using volume displacement technique this pattern incision is the most common (Figure 1) used in 52% of cases, and our favorite approach (unpublished data).

As inner quadrants were the less frequent tumor localizations with 10.6% and the outer ones were the most frequent our first choice to move NAC was a superomedial pedicle but in this series we also used inferior and bipedicled ones. In those patients with central tumors in who NAC had to be removed we reconstructed NAC using different techniques, for example, contralateral areola (Figure 2) or skin graft plus arrow flap for nipple reconstruction. The variation of localizations shows the versatility of TRM in breast with moderate or large size.

Early complications rate was 15.8%, these were minor; our experience is similar to others authors such as Gulcelik *et al*[23] who reported a rate of minor early complications of 16.3% and major ones of 1.9% without differences between reduction mammaplasy used for macromastia treatment and breast cancer. A wide range of complications rate of therapeutic reduction mammaplasty has been reported[24] likely due to differences in criteria and collecting data but, one conclusion is uniform that they usually are minor not impacting seriously on delivery of adjuvant therapies unless they were severe, McIntosh *et al*[25] in a systematic review found that delayed adjuvant treatment in only 6% of cases.

The rate of synchronous contralateral symmetrization was 31.6% but most of these patients were operated in the first half of the series before 2011; like as Fitoussi *et al*[22] our current preference is delayed contralateral symmetrization. The reasons for that have been clearly exposed by Kaviani *et al*[26] who categorized the patients in three groups: Patients unwilling any contralateral

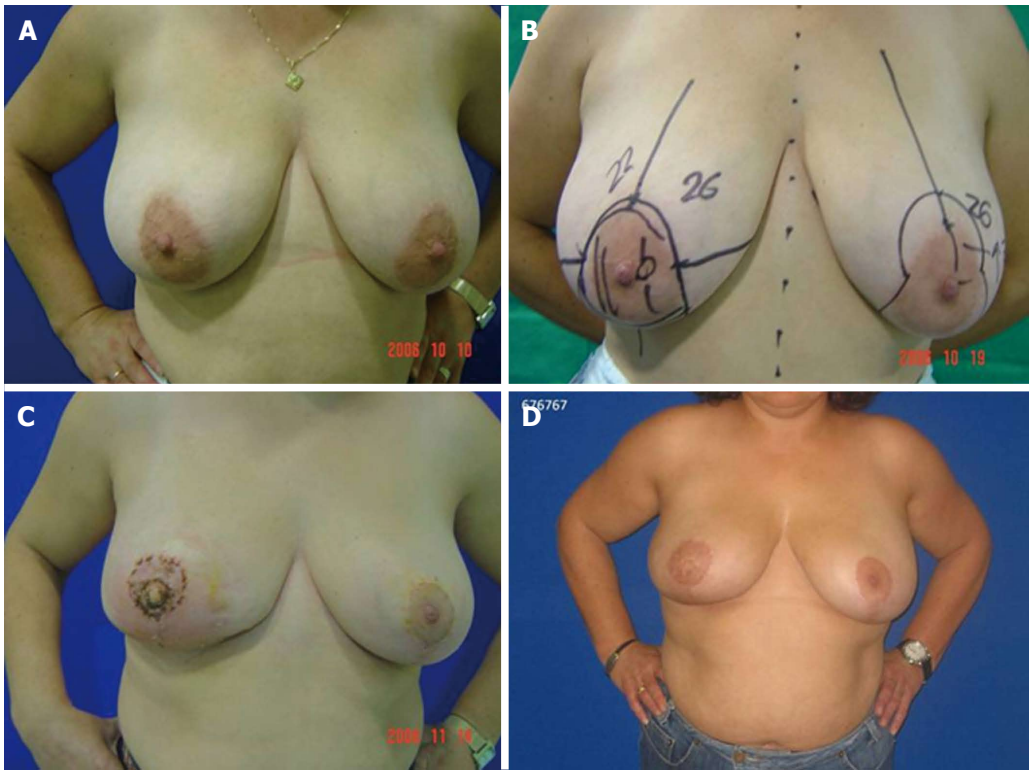


Figure 2 A 40-year-old postmenopausal woman with an invasive ductal carcinoma with positive estrogenic, progesterone and Herb2 receptors situated at central quadrant of right breast which sized 15 mm on mammograms. A and B: Appearance of patient. Design of pattern of therapeutic reduction mammaplasty; C and D: Nipple areola complex right reconstructed by contralateral areola graft. Long-term aesthetic outcome.

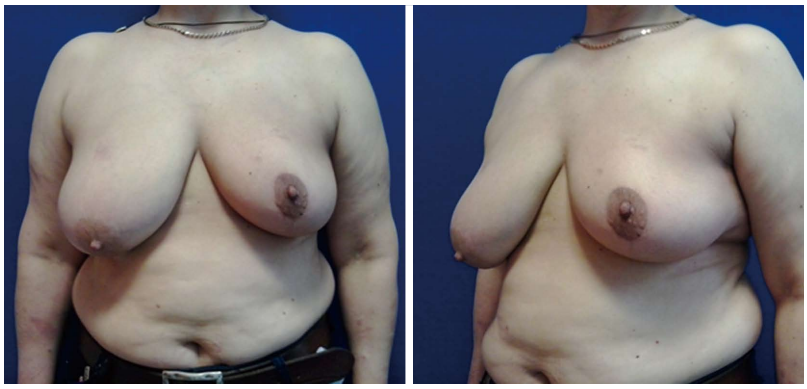


Figure 3 Appearance of a 49-year-old woman after underwent oncoplastic breast conserving surgery and posterior adjuvant chemotherapy and radiotherapy. She had a bifocal invasive lobulillar carcinoma situated at intersection of upper quadrants with positive estrogenic and progesterone receptors and $T_2N_0M_0$ pathological staging. She presents breast asymmetry which she wants it to be corrected.

procedures, patients preferring an all-in-one operation willing immediate symmetrization and patients desiring optimal aesthetic results; only patients belonging to the second group are candidates to immediate contralateral symmetization. In our experience, our average patient is in the first group. Figure 3 shows the appearance of a patient belonging to third group with breast asymmetry which she wants it to be corrected; we will carry out symmetrization of the right breast when she stabilized her weight because she put on weight during chemotherapy treatment.

Patient satisfaction and aesthetic outcomes reported are very high with a low rate of failure as which summarized by the fact that almost none patients regretted to chose this type of surgery[18]. Changes of aesthetic outcomes over the time after completing radiotherapy have been commented not affecting negatively patient satisfaction. In our experience, TRM as reduction mammaplasty technique has the same limitations and aesthetic outcomes can be deteriorated over the time by pseudoptosis (Figure 4) or excessive weight gain.

Finally, all OT and more specifically those of level Ⅱ are based on the knowledge of reduction mammaplasty techniques; independently, which model for oncoplastic approach can be chosen "comprehensive breast surgeon" or "oncologic and plastic team", skill sharing

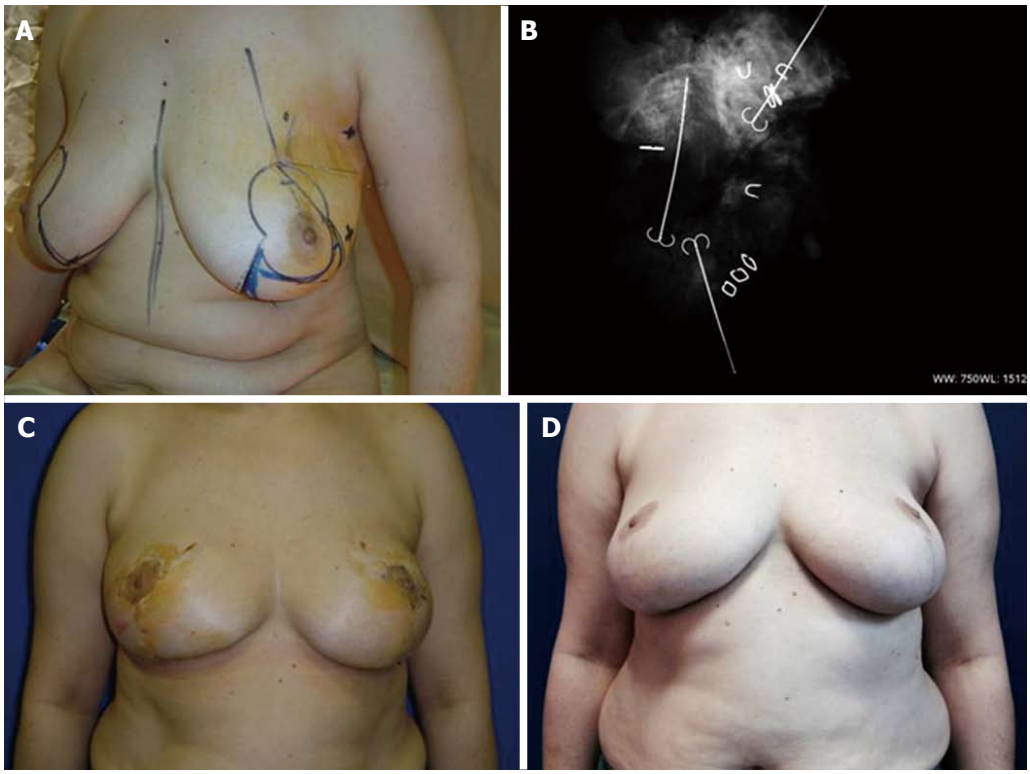


Figure 4 A 44-year-old premenopausal female with an invasive ductal carcinoma at upper outer quadrant of the left breast which sized 35 mm on mammograms who was treated with neoadjuvant chemotherapy before surgery. A therapeutic bilateral reduction mammaplasty with T inverted pattern incision and superomedial pedicle used for shifting nipple areola complex and an infero-lateral one to fill the breast defect caused by extirpation of a surgical specimen weighted 223 g was carried out. Pathological study showed a tumor size 12 mm, one negative sentinel lymph node and free surgical margins. A: Design of pattern incision with three wires inserted to guide tumor excision; B: X-ray of surgical specimen showed complete radiological removal of tumor; C: Appearance on early postoperative period; D: Long-term aesthetic outcome three years after breast conserving treatment shows both breasts with pseudotosis.

between breast unit members is eagerly desirable and, in our opinion, about reduction mammaplasty techniques the former statement is essential. Accepting the lack of oncoplastic training[27] and the fact that expertise requires long time[28], we proposed a management policy[29] to mitigate this situation incorporating the surgical treatment of symptomatic macromastia into Breast Cancer Unit[30]. One step in this direction is the inclusion of gynaecomastia and congenital asymmetry surgical treatment into several Oncoplastic Breast Surgery Units in United Kingdom.

CONCLUSION

Reduction mammaplasty technique is a useful and safe skill to treat breast cancer located in all breast quadrants with low morbidity playing a very important role in oncoplastic conservative surgery in moderate to large breasted patients therefore it must be situated in the priority of learning objectives.

REFERENCES

1 **Warren AG**, Morris DJ, Houlihan MJ, Slavin SA. Breast reconstruction in a changing breast cancer treatment paradigm. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2008; **121**: 1116-1126 [PMID: 18349628 DOI: 10.1097/01.prs.0000305516.93441.fd]
2 **Spear SL**. Oncoplastic surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2009; **124**: 993-994 [PMID: 19730325 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181b17ab3]
3 **Silverstein MJ**, Mai T, Savalia N, Vaince F, Guerra L. Oncoplastic breast conservation surgery: the new paradigm. *J Surg Oncol* 2014; **110**: 82-89 [PMID: 24847860 DOI: 10.1002/jso.23641]
4 **Hernanz F**, Pérez-Cerdeira M, Sánchez S, Redondo-Figuero C. Cosmetic sequelae after breast-conserving treatment using conventional surgical techniques. *Breast J* 2013; **19**: 342-343 [PMID: 23600624 DOI: 10.1111/tbj.12113]
5 **Petit JY**, De Lorenzi F, Rietjens M, Intra M, Martella S, Garusi C, Rey PC, Matthes AG. Technical tricks to improve the cosmetic results of breast-conserving treatment. *Breast* 2007; **16**: 13-16 [PMID: 17070051]
6 **Audretsch WP**, Rezai M, Kolotas C, Zamboglou N, Schnabel T, Bojar H. Tumor-specif immediate reconstruction in breast cancer patients. *Perspect Plast Surg* 1998; **11**: 71
7 **Losken A**, Dugal CS, Styblo TM, Carlson GW. A meta-analysis comparing breast conservation therapy alone to the oncoplastic technique. *Ann Plast Surg* 2014; **72**: 145-149 [PMID: 23503430 DOI: 10.1097/SAP.0b013e3182605598]
8 **Haloua MH**, Krekel NM, Winters HA, Rietveld DH, Meijer S, Bloemers FW, van den Tol MP. A systematic review of oncoplastic breast-conserving surgery: current weaknesses and future prospects. *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 609-620 [PMID: 23470508 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3182888782]
9 **Churgin S**, Isakov R, Yetman R. Reconstruction options following breast conservation therapy. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2008; **75** Suppl 1: S24-S29 [PMID: 18457194]
10 **Munhoz AM**, Montag E, Arruda E, Pellarin L, Filassi JR, Piato JR, de Barros AC, Prado LC, Fonseca A, Baracat E, Ferreira MC. Assessment of immediate conservative breast surgery reconstruction: a classification system of defects revisited and an algorithm for selecting the appropriate technique. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2008; **121**: 716-727 [PMID: 18317121 DOI: 10.1097/01.

prs.0000299295.74100.fa]
11 **Losken A**, Hamdi M. Partial breast reconstruction: current perspectives. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2009; **124**: 722-736 [PMID: 19730292 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181b179d2]
12 **Clough KB**, Kaufman GJ, Nos C, Buccimazza I, Sarfati IM. Improving breast cancer surgery: a classification and quadrant per quadrant atlas for oncoplastic surgery. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 1375-1391 [PMID: 20140531 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0792-y]
13 **Urban C**, Lima R, Schunemann E, Spautz C, Rabinovich I, Anselmi K. Oncoplastic principles in breast conserving surgery. *Breast* 2011; **20** Suppl 3: S92-S95 [PMID: 22015301 DOI: 10.1016/S0960-9776(11)70302-2]
14 **McCulley SJ**, Macmillan RD. Planning and use of therapeutic mammoplasty--Nottingham approach. *Br J Plast Surg* 2005; **58**: 889-901 [PMID: 16043150 DOI: 10.1016/j.bjps.2005.03.008]
15 **McCulley SJ**, Macmillan RD. Therapeutic mammaplasty--analysis of 50 consecutive cases. *Br J Plast Surg* 2005; **58**: 902-907 [PMID: 16043153 DOI: 10.1016/j.bjps.2005.03.007]
16 **Hernanz F**, Regaño S, Vega A, Gómez Fleitas M. Reduction mammaplasty: an advantageous option for breast conserving surgery in large-breasted patients. *Surg Oncol* 2010; **19**: e95-e102 [PMID: 19716288 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2009.08.001]
17 **Losken A**, Pinell XA, Eskenazi B. The benefits of partial versus total breast reconstruction for women with macromastia. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; **125**: 1051-1056 [PMID: 20072088 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3118d0ab08]
18 **Munhoz AM**, Montag E, Gemperli R. Current aspects of therapeutic reduction mammaplasty for immediate early breast cancer management: An update. *World J Clin Oncol* 2014; **5**: 1-18 [PMID: 24527398 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v5.i1.1]
19 **Hernanz F**, Regaño S, Vega A, Alvarez A. Needle-wire-guided breast tumor excision. *J Surg Oncol* 2006; **94**: 165-166 [PMID: 16847825]
20 **Ballester M**, Berry M, Couturaud B, Reyal F, Salmon RJ, Fitoussi AD. Lateral mammaplasty reconstruction after surgery for breast cancer. *Br J Surg* 2009; **96**: 1141-1146 [PMID: 19787762 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.6696]
21 **Clough KB**, Oden S, Ihrai T, Massey E, Nos C, Sarfati I. Level 2 oncoplastic surgery for lower inner quadrant breast cancers: the LIQ-V mammoplasty. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 3847-3854 [PMID: 23838910 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3085-4]
22 **Fitoussi AD**, Berry MG, Famà F, Falcou MC, Curnier A, Couturaud B, Reyal F, Salmon RJ. Oncoplastic breast surgery for cancer: analysis of 540 consecutive cases [outcomes article]. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010; **125**: 454-462 [PMID: 20124831 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181c82d3e]
23 **Gulcelik MA**, Dogan L, Camlibel M, Karaman N, Kuru B, Alagol H, Ozaslan C. Early complications of a reduction mammoplasty technique in the treatment of macromastia with or without breast cancer. *Clin Breast Cancer* 2011; **11**: 395-399 [PMID: 21993009 DOI: 10.1016/j.clbc.2011.08.001]
24 **Iwuchukwu OC**, Harvey JR, Dordea M, Critchley AC, Drew PJ. The role of oncoplastic therapeutic mammoplasty in breast cancer surgery--a review. *Surg Oncol* 2012; **21**: 133-141 [PMID: 21411311 DOI: 10.1016/j.suronc.2011.01.002]
25 **McIntosh J**, O'Donoghue JM. Therapeutic mammaplasty--a systematic review of the evidence. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2012; **38**: 196-202 [PMID: 22206704]
26 **Kaviani A**, Safavi A, Mirsharifi R. Immediate and delayed contralateral symmetrization in oncoplastic breast reduction: patients' choices and technique formulation. *Plast Reconstr Surg Glob Open* 2015; **3**: e286 [PMID: 25674367 DOI: 10.1197/GOX.0000000000000246]
27 **Andree C**, Farhadi J, Goossens D, Masia J, Sarfati I, Germann G, Macmillan RD, Scheflan M, Van Not HP, Catanuto G, Nava MB. A position statement on optimizing the role of oncoplastic breast surgery. *Eplasty* 2012; **12**: e40 [PMID: 22977675]
28 **Carty MJ**, Chan R, Huckman R, Snow D, Orgill DP. A detailed analysis of the reduction mammaplasty learning curve: a statistical process model for approaching surgical performance improvement. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2009; **124**: 706-714 [PMID: 19730289 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181b17a13]
29 **Hernanz F**, Santos R. Incorporating the surgical treatment of symptomatic macromastia into a Breast Cancer Unit: could this be a useful management policy? *Breast* 2011; **20**: 190-191 [PMID: 21050760 DOI: 10.16/j.breast.2010.10.006]
30 **Hernanz F**, Santos R, Arruabarrena A, Schneider J, Gómez Fleitas M. Treatment of symptomatic macromastia in a breast unit. *World J Surg Oncol* 2010; **8**: 93 [PMID: 21040550 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-8-93]

P- Reviewer: Wang SK **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.223

World J Surg Proced 2015 November 28; 5(3): 223-228
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Are stapler line reinforcement materials necessary in sleeve gastrectomy?

Ibrahim Sakcak

Ibrahim Sakcak, Department of General Surgery, Medicalpark Hospital, 06100 Ankara, Turkey

Ibrahim Sakcak, Department of General Surgery, Numune Education and Research Hospital, Sıhhiye, 06100 Ankara, Turkey

Author contributions: Sakcak I solely wrote this paper.

Institutional review board statement: Ethics committee approval is not obligatory in Turkey for retrospective studies (Clinical Study Regulation, Turkish Official Gazette, Date: April 13, 2013, No: 28617), therefore ethics committee approval was not obtained.

Informed consent statement: All patients provided their informed consent for surgery (informed consent could not be obtained for study due to its retrospective nature).

Conflict-of-interest statement: None.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at ibrahimsakcak66@gmail.com. Consent was not obtained but the presented data are anonymized and risk of identification is low.

Correspondence to: Ibrahim Sakcak, Associate Professor, Department of General Surgery, Medicalpark Hospital, Sihhiye, 06100 Ankara, Turkey. ibrahimsakcak66@gmail.com
Telephone: +90-312-6668000
Fax: +90-212-2273477

Received: May 5, 2015
Peer-review started: May 6, 2015
First decision: May 13, 2015
Revised: May 28, 2015
Accepted: July 16, 2015
Article in press: July 17, 2015
Published online: November 28, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the effect of staple line reinforcement materials on decreasing complications related to sleeve gastrectomy.

METHODS: In this retrospective study, we analyzed 84 patients who had sleeve gastrectomy due to obesity between April 2012 and April 2015. Sleeve gastrectomy procedure was performed in patients with a body mass index (BMI) more than 40 kg/m^2, and the ones with a BMI between 32 and 40 kg/m^2 in the presence of comorbid diseases. Reinforcement materials were used in 45 patients while they were not used in 39 patients. Materials such as Peristrip, 3/0 prolene, and V-lock were used for reinforcement in the reinforcement group (RG), and the materials used showed variations during the study period. The baseline characteristics, duration of surgery, hospital stay, comorbidities including hypertension, type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hepatosteatosis, gallstones, osteoarthritis, gastroesophageal reflux, sleep disorders, as well as the complications including leaks and bleeding after surgery were recorded and compared between the reinforcement and non-RGs (NRGs).

RESULTS: There were no differences between the reinforcement and NRGs for baseline characteristics including age (P = 0.689), gender (P = 0.057), height (P = 0.483), weight (P = 0.889), BMI (P = 0.971), hospital stay (P = 0.888), or duration of surgery (P = 0.229). The most common comorbidities in the RG were hypertension (24.4%) and hepatosteatosis (24.4%), while type 2 diabetes mellitus (28.2%) and

hepatosteatosis (28.2%) were the most frequent comorbidities in the NRG. There were no differences between the reinforcement and NRGs for the rates of comorbidities (P > 0.05). Leak was observed in one (2.2%) patient in the RG, and there was leak in 2 (5.1%), and bleeding in 2 (5.1%) patients in the NRG. There were no differences between the reinforcement and NRGs for the rate of staple line leaks (P = 0.446) or bleeding (P = 0.213). One of the patients with leak died in the NRG while there were no deaths in the RG.

CONCLUSION: Although staple line reinforcement materials decreased morbidity and mortality, the differences between the two groups were not statistically significant.

Key words: Obesity; Sleeve gastrectomy; Staple line; Reinforcement

Core tip: Sleeve gastrectomy is one of the most frequently performed surgical procedures in the treatment of obesity. In this study, we investigated the efficiency of use of staple line reinforcement materials in decreasing these complications. We included 84 patients in our study. Reinforcement materials were used in 45 patients while they were not used in 39 patients. Although we found that staple line reinforcement materials decreased morbidity and mortality, the differences between the two groups were not statistically significant for complications or mortality. There is a need for prospective randomized studies on larger patient populations to further clarify the subject.

Sakcak I. Are stapler line reinforcement materials necessary in sleeve gastrectomy? *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(3): 223-228 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i3/223.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.223

INTRODUCTION

The data published by the World Health Organization in 2014 indicate that 39% of the world population over 18 years of age are overweight and 14% of them are obese, and some problems including hypertension, cardiovascular diseases and gastroesophageal reflux appear due to obesity[1]. Obesity is a significant health problem in the developed countries, and its prevalence has been increasing in the developing countries. In Turkey, which is a developing country, the prevalence of obesity in adults increased two-fold in the last 15 years, and reached 29.5%.

Laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy is one of the most frequently performed bariatric procedures with an increasing popularity owing to its efficiency in weight loss, and its ability to improve comorbidities. Sleeve gastrectomy shows its effect on weight loss by three different mechanisms: (1) Stomach volume is decreased by 80%-85%; (2) The concentration of ghrelin, an ergogenic hormone, decreases; and (3) Gastric emptying rate increases[2].

The main disadvantages of sleeve gastrectomy are staple line leaks (SLLs) and bleeding. SLLs are seen in 1%-3% of patients after primary procedures[2]. Leaks subsequently result in abdominal sepsis, chronic gastric fistula, necrotizing fasciitis, multi-organ failure and eventually sepsis, and they are the most important causes of mortality[3,4]. A number of surgeons use staple line reinforcement materials (SLRMs) to decrease this complication while some others claim that those materials are not necessary, and use of them does not decrease SLLs[5,6].

In this study, we aimed to investigate whether use of SLRM in patients who had sleeve gastrectomy due to obesity decreased complications such as SLLs and bleeding.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This retrospective study included 84 patients who had sleeve gastrectomy due to obesity at Ankara Numune Education and Research and Medicalpark Ankara Hospitals between April 2012 and April 2015. The patients were divided into two groups as the reinforcement group (RG) in which a reinforcement material was used to reinforce the staple line, and non-RG (NRG) in which a staple line reinforcement material was not used. Selection of the patients into the RG or NRG group was the surgeon's preference. Demographic characteristics, comorbidities, and morbidities of the patients were recorded.

Sleeve gastrectomy procedure was performed in patients with a body mass index (BMI) more than 40 kg/m^2, and in the ones with a BMI between 32 and 40 kg/m^2 in the presence of comorbid diseases.

Enoxaparin sodium (Sanofi Winthrop Industrie, Maisons-Alfort/France) 60 mg was injected subcutaneously 12 h before surgery for prophylaxis of venous thromboembolism, and the patients wore anti-embolism socks on the day of surgery. Surgery was performed in the supine position, and the surgeon performed the surgery standing between the legs of the patient. Procedure was performed through 5 trocars: One 15 mm trocar for stapler handle, one 10 mm trocar for the camera, and three 5 mm trocars for instruments and liver retractor. The greater omentum was separated from the greater curvature, starting 2 cm proximal to the pylorus with Harmonic (Ethicon, United States) or Ligasure (Covidien, United States). The stomach was divided approximately 3 cm proximal to pylorus, targeting 1 cm lateral to the esophagogastric junction. Echelon 60 (Ethicon-Mexico) and Covidien 60 (Covidien, United States) staplers were used to divide the stomach.

A thick tissue stapler was used in the antrum, a thin tissue stapler used in the fundus, and a medium-

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of 84 patients that had laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy

	RG (n = 45)	NRG (n = 39)	P
Age (yr)			
Male, n (%)	9 (20.0)	7 (17.9)	0.811
Female, n (%)	36 (80.0)	32 (82.1)	
Height (cm)	167.1 ± 8.5	166.1 ± 8.1	0.483
Weight (kg)	122.3 ± 23.2	120.9 ± 20.6	0.889
BMI (kg/m^2)	43.1 ± 7.4	43.3 ± 8.2	0.971
Hospital stay (d)	5.0 ± 2.3	4.3 ± 2.3	0.888
Duration of surgery (min)	82.9 ± 33.2	78.2 ± 30.3	0.229

RG: Reinforcement group; NRG: Non-reinforcement group; BMI: Body mass index.

Table 2 Comorbidities of the patients n (%)

	RG (n = 45)	NRG (n = 39)	P
Hypertension	11 (24.4)	10 (25.6)	0.899
Hyperlipidemia	9 (20.0)	10 (25.6)	0.926
Type 2 diabetes mellitus	9 (20.0)	11 (28.2)	0.883
Sleep disorders	7 (15.6)	6 (15.4)	0.560
GERD	10 (22.2)	10 (25.6)	0.714
Depression	7 (15.6)	6 (15.4)	0.560
Hepatosteatosis	11 (24.4)	11 (28.2)	0.696
Gallstone	8 (17.8)	8 (20.5)	0.750
Osteoarthritis	4 (8.9)	4 (10.3)	0.560

RG: Reinforcement group; NRG: Non-reinforcement group; GERD: Gastroesophageal reflux disease.

Table 3 Staple-line bleeding and leaks after sleeve gastrectomy n (%)

	RG (n = 45)	NRG (n = 45)	P
Staple-line leaks	1 (2.2)	2 (5.1)	0.446
Staple-line bleeding	0	2 (5.1)	0.213

RG: Reinforcement group; NRG: Non-reinforcement group.

Table 4 Comparison of the groups for the complications other than staple line leaks and bleeding n (%)

	RG (n = 45)	NRG (n = 45)	P
Venous thromboembolism	0	1 (2.6)	0.464
Surgical field infection	3 (6.7)	2 (5.1)	0.568
Pulmonary complications	0	1 (2.6)	0.464

RG: Reinforcement group; NRG: Non-reinforcement group.

thick tissue stapler in the tissues between. An orogastric tube was inserted during surgery, the stomach contents were aspirated. The tube was then removed, and a 36 F calibration tube was inserted. Diluted methylene blue was given through the calibration tube to test the presence of any leak, and then the tube was removed. Materials such as Peristrip, 3/0 prolene, and V-lock were used for reinforcement in RG. The type of the material showed variations during the study period. Peristrip was used in 27 of 45 patients, 3/0 prolene was used in 12, and V-lock suture was used in 6 patients that had surgery after October 2014. The stomach tissue was removed through the 15-mm trocar incision. A Jackson-Pratt drain was placed, and it was removed when the drainage was less than 30 mL. The patient drank 100 mL methylene blue on postoperative day 1, and the drain was checked for the presence of methylene blue. The patient was given oral liquids after making sure that there was no leak.

Statistical analysis

SPSS version 22.0 (SPSS Inc, Chicago, IL) was used for statistical analyses. The categorical variables were compared by Fisher exact χ^2 test. Numerical data are presented as mean ± SD, and one sample t-test was used to determine whether they were parametric or not. Since the numerical data were determined to be non-parametric, Mann Whitney-U test was used to compare the two groups.

RESULTS

The baseline characteristics of 84 patients are presented in Table 1. There were no significant differences between the two groups.

There were 9 different comorbidities in the two groups. The most common comorbidities in RG were hypertension and hepatosteatosis (24.4%), while type 2 diabetes mellitus and hepatosteatosis were the most frequent comorbidities (28.2%) in NRG (Table 2).

Leak, which is the most distressing complication in sleeve gastrectomy, was seen in one patient in RG (2.2%), and in 2 (5.1%) patients in NRG (P = 0.446). Leaks were recognized within three days after surgery, and the patients were followed conservatively first. However, none of the patients responded to conservative treatment. The leak orifice was closed endoscopically with over-the-scope clips at postoperative 2nd-4th wk. All patients recovered with this intervention. There were no bleeding in RG, however, it developed in 2 (5.1%) patients in NRG. The difference between the groups was not statistically significant (P = 0.213) (Table 3).

Comparison of the groups for the complications other than SLLs and staple line bleeding is presented in Table 4. Infection of the surgical field was seen in 3 patients in RG. Venous thromboembolism was seen in 1, surgical field infection was seen in 2, and pulmonary complications were seen in 1 patient in NRG. One patient in RG and 2 patients in NRG also had SLLs. Antibiotics and conservative treatment were administered to those patients. One patient in NRG died despite all those treatments, and other patients recovered.

DISCUSSION

SLL is the most important cause of mortality and morbidity after sleeve gastrectomy. Stapler line is reinforced

in order to minimize this distressing complication[7]. Various SLRMs are used for this purpose, and the staple line is sutured. The primary SLRM used is a synthetic bioabsorbable material composed of the copolymer polyglycolic acid/trimethylene carbonate (GORE SEAMGUARD Bioabsorbable Staple Line R, W.L. Gore and Associates, Elkton, MD, United States) put into the stapler cartridge, and Peri-Strips Dry with veritas. A recent meta-analysis including 56 studies and 6578 patients reported that SLRMs were used in 56% of the patients that had laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy[8]. The results of this meta-analysis indicated that use of SLRMs decreased the leak rate from 3.2% to 2%, without any statistically significant difference in between. Knapps *et al*[4] reviewed 30 papers including 4881 patients, and did not find any statistically significant difference for leaks or bleeding with use of SLRM. Albanopoulos *et al*[9] performed a randomized study on 40 patients, and reported that use of SLRMs did not decrease the leak rate. On the other hand, some surgeons claimed that use of those materials decreased SLLs. Ser *et al*[10] performed a study on 118 patients, and reported the SLL rate as 10% without use of SLRMs, and as 0% with use of SLRMs. The results of that study reported a great difference between the two groups. However, it must be noted that the study of Ser *et al*[10] included smaller number of patients when compared to other meta-analyses and reviews. In our study, SLL was seen in 1 (2.2%) patient in RG, and in 2 (5.1%) patients in NRG, and bleeding was seen in 2 (5.1%) patients in NRG.

The pathophysiological basis of stapler line reinforcement is not clear. Poor blood flow at staple line, insufficient closure of stapler cartridge, postoperative gastroparesis and pyloric dysfunction have been accused for SLLs[11]. In addition, a staple line closure which is not straight is one of the most important causes for leaks.

Some stapler-related and tissue-related factors affect the morbidity of surgery. The stomach has the most variable wall thickness among the gastrointestinal system organs. Its wall is the thickest in prepyloric antrum, and the thinnest in the fundus. The thickness of the stomach wall decreases as one gets closer to the greater curvature, along the axis of the stomach[7]. The tissue thickness must be taken into consideration when performing sleeve gastrectomy. The most important features of staplers are their leg lengths, closing characteristics, and the type of metal. Tissue-related characteristics are viscosity and thickness. The risk for leaks and bleeding increases with a long leg length, on the other hand, the leak risk also increases with a short leg length due to tissue ischemia and necrosis[12]. Staplers with a long leg length must be used in the antrum, and those with a short leg length must be used in fundus. If a stapler with a short leg length is used in the antrum, this may cause dehiscence at the staple line[13]. We preferred staplers with a long leg length in the antrum, staplers with a medium leg length in the corpus, and staplers with a short leg length in the fundus.

The likelihood of leak through the cut edge of the stomach differs after sleeve gastrectomy. Of all leaks, 6.8%-14.3% were seen in distal 1/3 of the stomach while 75%-100% of them occurred in the proximal 1/3 of the stomach, particularly at the level of the esophagogastric junction[14]. The leaks occurring in 3 patients in our series were at the level of the esophagogastric junction, in other words, in the proximal 1/3 of the stomach. Thin walls and poor vascularity in this part of stomach may be responsible for the leaks.

Leaks usually occur due to mechanical and ischemic factors. Wrong firing of stapler, and cutting in irregular zig-zags are among the mechanical factors, and they usually cause leak in the first postoperative 2 d. Ischemic factors are dissection of the tissues excessively with energy devices (Harmonic, Ligasure) and disturbance of the vasculature[3]. Therefore, the tissues must be held carefully while using energy devices, and their use must be avoided in distal narrowings. Some surgeons wait for a while after squeezing the tissue with stapler in order to prevent leaks and bleeding, and they think that the fluid content of the tissue decreases and the vessels collapse in this way[15]. Our team also practices this method, and we think that it is effective.

The thickness of the bougies used in sleeve gastrectomy for calibration and standardization is still debated. Bariatric surgeons usually use bougies with a diameter of 32-40 F[16]. Some studies suggest that use of small-diameter bougies accelerates weight loss, however, increases the frequency of SLLs. The reference point here is higher intraluminal pressure in the stomach in case of a smaller diameter. Usually 34 and 36 F bougies have been recommended. Larger bougies may make reaching the ideal weight difficult[17]. We used 36 F bougies in our series.

The mechanism of leak and bleed prevention by SLRMs is not known. However, it is sure that the materials used show a compressive effect. It is not known how effective this compression is. Some argue that compressive materials shorten operation time more than oversewing sutures[18]. Durmush *et al*[19] studied 518 patients retrospectively, and reported that materials that were implanted to stapler cartridge shortened operation time by 13 min when compared to oversewing. Kasalicky *et al*[20] reported their experience on 207 patients, and stated that they did not use any reinforcement materials at the staple line or sutured it, the duration of operation shortened by 10 min, and the risk of bleeding did not increase. On the other hand, in their series with 100 patients, Shah *et al*[21] reported that SLRM shortened operation time by 14 min on average (58.8 ± 19.7 min *vs* 72.8 ± 25.8 min, $P = 0.0153$). In our series, the operation time was approximately 5 min longer in RG, however, the difference between the two groups was not statistically significant.

One of the reasons for increased SLLs is revision surgery. Revision surgery is usually performed in patients who had laparoscopic adjustable gastric band surgery, and later had band removal due to band-related problems. The risk of leak is higher than 10% in those

patients[22]. This high risk is due to insufficient stapler closure resulting from increased fibrosis and edema. Staged surgery was recommended to reduce this risk. Gastric band is removed in the first operation, and one week later, sleeve gastrectomy is performed[23]. Four of our patients had had laparoscopic gastric band before, and our team had removed the band. We performed staged surgery in all those patients, and no leaks were observed.

Early diagnosis and treatment of SLLs are important to decrease morbidity and mortality. Therefore, an appropriate method must be used to identify leaks. Methylene blue, air-liquid test, and observation of the staple line with endoscopes are used for this purpose[24,25]. In our study, leak test was performed by administration of diluted methylene blue both during surgery, and on postoperative day 1. A positive methylene blue test was confirmed in all of our patients by whole abdomen computerized tomography obtained after the patient was given an oral contrast material.

We could not have a final judgment on the use of SLRMs. The reasons for this is a small number of patients included in our study, retrospective and non-standardized study design, and no standardization of the materials used for reinforcement, which are limitations of our study. There is a need for further studies on a larger patient population with use of standard reinforcement materials.

In conclusion, sleeve gastrectomy is one of the most frequently performed bariatric procedures. Leak and bleeding are the most worrisome complications of this surgical technique. Various materials are used to reinforce the staple line to prevent those complications. However, there is no consensus in the literature on whether use of reinforcement materials decreased the complications or not. Although we could not have a final judgment in our study on use of SLRMs, we will go on using those materials in some patients depending on patient factors and course of surgery.

COMMENTS

Background

Sleeve gastrectomy is one of the most frequently performed surgical procedures in the treatment of obesity. However, it may result in some complications such as staple line leaks and bleeding, and even death.

Research frontiers

Reducing morbidities, particularly staple line leaks and bleeding, will increase the safety of the procedure. A number of surgeons use staple line reinforcement materials to decrease this complication while some others claim that those materials are not necessary, and use of then does not decrease staple line leak. There is still a need for research in this area.

Innovations and breakthroughs

In the authors' study, staple line leak was seen in 1 (2.2%) patient in the reinforcement group (RG), and in 2 (5.1%) patients in the non-RG (NRG), and bleeding was seen in 2 (5.1%) patients in the NRG, without any significant differences between the groups. The leaks occurred in 3 patients in their series were at the level of the esophagogastric junction, in other words, in the proximal 1/3 of the stomach. They preferred staplers with a long leg length in the antrum, staplers with a medium leg length in the corpus, and staplers with a short leg length in the fundus since the stomach wall is the thickest in the prepyloric antrum, and the thinnest in the fundus. They waited for a while after squeezing the tissue with stapler in order to prevent leaks and bleeding, and they think that the fluid content of the tissue decreases and the vessels collapse in this way. They performed staged surgery in gastric band patients, and no leaks were observed.

Applications

The authors could not have a final judgment on the use of staple line reinforcement materials. The reasons for this is a small number of patients included in their study, retrospective and non-standardized study design, and no standardization of the materials used for reinforcement. There is a need for further studies on a larger patient population with use of standard reinforcement materials.

Terminology

Laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy was performed through 5 trocars: One 15 mm trocar for stapler handle, one 10 mm trocar for the camera, and three 5 mm trocars for instruments and liver retractor. The greater omentum was separated from the greater curvature, starting 2 cm proximal to the pylorus with Harmonic (Ethicon, United States) or Ligasure (Covidien, United States). The stomach was divided approximately 3 cm proximal to the pylorus, targeting 1 cm lateral to the esophagogastric junction. Echelon 60 stapler (Ethicon-Mexico) and Covidien 60 (Covidien, United States) stapler were used to divide the stomach, and a thick tissue stapler was used in the antrum, a thin tissue stapler was used in the fundus, and a medium-thick tissue stapler was used in the tissues between. A 36 F calibration tube was used to determine the width of the remaining stomach.

Peer-review

The manuscript on staple line reinforcement is well-written and thus, of interest for the readers of the journal.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization**. Obesity and overweight, factsheet number 311, 2014. [Accessed 2015 April]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en/

2 **Melissas J**, Daskalakis M, Koukouraki S, Askoxylakis I, Metaxari M, Dimitriadis E, Stathaki M, Papadakis JA. Sleeve gastrectomy-a "food limiting" operation. *Obes Surg* 2008; **18**: 1251-1256 [PMID: 18663545 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-008-9634-4]

3 **Sakran N**, Goitein D, Raziel A, Keidar A, Beglaibter N, Grinbaum R, Matter I, Alfici R, Mahajna A, Waksman I, Shimonov M, Assalia A. Gastric leaks after sleeve gastrectomy: a multicenter experience with 2,834 patients. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 240-245 [PMID: 22752283 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2426-x]

4 **Knapps J**, Ghanem M, Clements J, Merchant AM. A systematic review of staple-line reinforcement in laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy. *JSLS* 2013; **17**: 390-399 [PMID: 24018075 DOI: 10.4293/108680813X13654754534639]

5 **Hady HR**, Dadan J, Gołaszewski P, Safiejko K. Impact of laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy on body mass index, ghrelin, insulin and lipid levels in 100 obese patients. *Wideochir Inne Tech Maloinwazyjne* 2012; **7**: 251-259 [PMID: 23362424 DOI: 10.5114/wiitm.2011.28979]

6 **Langer FB**, Reza Hoda MA, Bohdjalian A, Felberbauer FX, Zacherl J, Wenzl E, Schindler K, Luger A, Ludvik B, Prager G. Sleeve gastrectomy and gastric banding: effects on plasma ghrelin levels. *Obes Surg* 2005; **15**: 1024-1029 [PMID: 16105401]

7 **Rawlins L**, Rawlins MP, Teel D. Human tissue thickness measurements from excised sleeve gastrectomy specimens. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 811-814 [PMID: 24196553 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3264-1]

8 **Parikh M**, Issa R, McCrillis A, Saunders JK, Ude-Welcome A, Gagner M. Surgical strategies that may decrease leak after laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy: a systematic review and meta-analysis of 9991 cases. *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 231-237 [PMID:

23023201 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31826cc714]
9 **Albanopoulos K**, Alevizos L, Flessas J, Menenakos E, Stamou KM, Papailiou J, Natoudi M, Zografos G, Leandros E. Reinforcing the staple line during laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy: prospective randomized clinical study comparing two different techniques. Preliminary results. *Obes Surg* 2012; **22**: 42-46 [PMID: 21533880 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-011-0421-2]
10 **Ser KH**, Lee WJ, Lee YC, Chen JC, Su YH, Chen SC. Experience in laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy for morbidly obese Taiwanese: staple-line reinforcement is important for preventing leakage. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 2253-2259 [PMID: 20174931 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-010-0945-x]
11 **Chen B**, Kiriakopoulos A, Tsakayannis D, Wachtel MS, Linos D, Frezza EE. Reinforcement does not necessarily reduce the rate of staple line leaks after sleeve gastrectomy. A review of the literature and clinical experiences. *Obes Surg* 2009; **19**: 166-172 [PMID: 18795383 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-008-9668-7]
12 **Chekan E**, Whelan RL. Surgical stapling device-tissue interactions: what surgeons need to know to improve patient outcomes. *Med Devices* (Auckl) 2014; **7**: 305-318 [PMID: 25246812 DOI: 10.2147/MDER.S67338]
13 **Elariny H**, González H, Wang B. Tissue thickness of human stomach measured on excised gastric specimens from obese patients. *Surg Technol Int* 2005; **14**: 119-124 [PMID: 16525963]
14 **Abou Rached A**, Basile M, El Masri H. Gastric leaks post sleeve gastrectomy: review of its prevention and management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13904-13910 [PMID: 25320526 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i38.13904]
15 **Baker RS**, Foote J, Kemmeter P, Brady R, Vroegop T, Serveld M. The science of stapling and leaks. *Obes Surg* 2004; **14**: 1290-1298 [PMID: 15603641]
16 **Gagner M**. Leaks after sleeve gastrectomy are associated with smaller bougies: prevention and treatment strategies. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2010; **20**: 166-169 [PMID: 20551815 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.0b013e3181e3d12b]
17 **Rosenthal RJ**, Diaz AA, Arvidsson D, Baker RS, Basso N, Bellanger D, Boza C, El Mourad H, France M, Gagner M, Galvao-Neto M, Higa KD, Himpens J, Hutchinson CM, Jacobs M, Jorgensen JO, Jossart G, Lakdawala M, Nguyen NT, Nocca D, Prager G, Pomp A, Ramos AC, Rosenthal RJ, Shah S, Vix M, Wittgrove A, Zundel N. International Sleeve Gastrectomy Expert Panel Consensus Statement: best practice guidelines based on experience of > 12,000 cases. *Surg Obes Relat Dis* 2012; **8**: 8-19 [PMID: 22248433 DOI: 10.1016/j.soard.2011.10.019]
18 **Gentileschi P**, Camperchioli I, D'Ugo S, Benavoli D, Gaspari AL. Staple-line reinforcement during laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy using three different techniques: a randomized trial. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 2623-2629 [PMID: 22441975 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2243-2]
19 **Durmush EK**, Ermerak G, Durmush D. Short-term outcomes of sleeve gastrectomy for morbid obesity: does staple line reinforcement matter? *Obes Surg* 2014; **24**: 1109-1116 [PMID: 24810764 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-014-1251-9]
20 **Kasalicky M**, Dolezel R, Vernerova E, Haluzik M. Laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy without over-sewing of the staple line is effective and safe. *Wideochir Inne Tech Maloinwazyjne* 2014; **9**: 46-52 [PMID: 24729809 DOI: 10.5114/wiitm.2014.40387]
21 **Shah SS**, Todkar JS, Shah PS. Buttressing the staple line: a randomized comparison between staple-line reinforcement versus no reinforcement during sleeve gastrectomy. *Obes Surg* 2014; **24**: 2014-2020 [PMID: 25129485 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-014-1374-z]
22 **Fuks D**, Verhaeghe P, Brehant O, Sabbagh C, Dumont F, Riboulot M, Delcenserie R, Regimbeau JM. Results of laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy: a prospective study in 135 patients with morbid obesity. *Surgery* 2009; **145**: 106-113 [PMID: 19081482 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2008.07.013]
23 **Acholonu E**, McBean E, Court I, Bellorin O, Szomstein S, Rosenthal RJ. Safety and short-term outcomes of laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy as a revisional approach for failed laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding in the treatment of morbid obesity. *Obes Surg* 2009; **19**: 1612-1616 [PMID: 19711138 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-009-9941-4]
24 **Deitel M**, Crosby RD, Gagner M. The First International Consensus Summit for Sleeve Gastrectomy (SG), New York City, October 25-27, 2007. *Obes Surg* 2008; **18**: 487-496 [PMID: 18357494 DOI: 10.1007/s11695-008-9471-5]
25 **Gagner M**, Deitel M, Kalberer TL, Erickson AL, Crosby RD. The Second International Consensus Summit for Sleeve Gastrectomy, March 19-21, 2009. *Surg Obes Relat Dis* 2009; **5**: 476-485 [PMID: 19632647 DOI: 10.1016/j.soard.2009.06.001]

P- Reviewer: Kin T, Losanoff JE **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: Wang TQ **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Surgical Procedures

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.229

World J Surg Proced 2015 November 28; 5(3): 229-234
ISSN 2219-2832 (online)

CASE REPORT

Malignant melanoma in the pediatric population

John Psaltis, Eric Reintgen, Ali Antar, Mark Giori, Leah Alvin, Alyssa Benjamin, Bridget Budny, Taylor Gianangelo, Aaron Gruman, Anna Stamas, Michael Reintgen, Rosemary Giuliano, Jeff Smith, Douglas Reintgen

John Psaltis, Eric Reintgen, Ali Antar, Mark Giori, Leah Alvin, Alyssa Benjamin, Bridget Budny, Taylor Gianangelo, Aaron Gruman, Anna Stamas, Michael Reintgen, Rosemary Giuliano, Douglas Reintgen, Department of Surgery, Morsani School of Medicine, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL 33612, United States

Jeff Smith, Department of Pathology, Florida Hospital - N Pinellas, Tarpon Springs, FL 34689, United States

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: This study was approved by the University of South Florida Institutional Review Board - 6/2015.

Informed consent statement: Informed consent was obtained from the parents of the children described in the study.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors have no conflicts of interests to declare.

Correspondence to: Douglas Reintgen, MD, Department of Surgery, Morsani School of Medicine, University of South Florida, MDC 52, 12901 Bruce B. Downs Blvd., Tampa, FL 33612, United States. dreintge@health.usf.edu
Telephone: +1-813-4408554
Fax: +1-813-9059891

Received: May 20, 2015
Peer-review started: May 21, 2015
First decision: June 18, 2015
Revised: July 1, 2015
Accepted: September 7, 2015
Article in press: September 8, 2015
Published online: November 28, 2015

Abstract

Controversial pigmented lesions in children are a problem for pathologist, clinicians and families that are confronted with this dilemma. Some skin lesions in this population defy diagnosis with pathologists split between a benign diagnosis and a cancer diagnosis. Three cases of controversial pigmented lesions in the pediatric population are presented. Three patients underwent radical resection of the controversial pigmented lesion, intra-operative lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsy. Due to the low morbidity of the SLN procedure a case is made to perform lymphatic mapping in this clinical scenario. If the SLNs are negative, not much is lost except for the scar and this becomes another line of evidence that perhaps the original lesion was benign. If the SLN shows metastatic cells, then the original skin lesion must be malignant and the patient is offered stage Ⅲ recommendations that would include complete node dissections and adjuvant Interferon therapy. This strategy provides for adequate treatment of the worse-case scenario, that the skin lesion is malignant. The cost to the patient is a low morbidity procedure, the SLN biopsy.

Key words: Pediatric pigmented skin lesions; Sentinel lymph node biopsy; Melanoma

Core tip: The sentinel lymph node staging procedure can be used to treat effectively pediatric patients with ambiguous pigmented skin lesions.

Psaltis J, Reintgen E, Antar A, Giori M, Alvin L, Benjamin A, Budny B, Gianangelo T, Gruman A, Stamas A, Reintgen M, Giuliano R, Smith J, Reintgen D. Malignant melanoma in the pediatric population. *World J Surg Proced* 2015; 5(3): 229-234 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2219-2832/full/v5/i3/229.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5412/wjsp.v5.i3.229

INTRODUCTION

Malignant melanomas are remarkably rare in children. Roughly 2% of melanomas occur in children under the age of 20 and approximately 0.4% of cases occur in prepubescent children[1]. In the United States, childhood and adolescent melanoma accounts for only 1.3% of all cases of melanoma[2]. Nevertheless, malignant melanoma (MM) is a potentially fatal disease, and it is critical to consider MM as a differential diagnosis of any pigmented lesion in a child. Clinically, childhood melanoma presents similarly to adult melanoma, and the use of the asymmetry, borders, color, diameter, and evolution of early diagnosis criteria can be used to screen children as well[3]. It has been shown that children diagnosed with melanoma have the same prognostic outcomes as their adult counterparts, while those diagnosed with melanoma before the age of 10 have a better outcome than those diagnosed between the ages of 10 and 20[3].

Nevi can be a common finding amongst children. Depending on the size of the lesion, a congenital melanocytic nevus is one of the risk factors for developing childhood melanoma due to the potential malignant transformation[4]. In dealing with pigmented lesions in this population of particular concern is the Spitz nevus, a benign lesion with morphological features similar to malignant melanoma, first described by Sophie Spitz in 1948[5-9]. Spitz stated that although this type of nevus was histologically malignant, it behaved in a benign manner[10]. As such, one of the biggest difficulties in diagnosing melanoma in children is differentiating a malignant melanoma from a benign Spitz Nevus[7,8]. Such lesions of uncertain biological potential are termed atypical spitzoid melanocytic neoplasms[7]. One study demonstrated that even amongst an experienced panel of pathologists, the variability in diagnosis was still substantial[9]. The differential diagnosis between a melanoma and a dysplastic Spitz nevus was still confusing, with the most common error being an interpretation of a benign lesion when it was actually malignant[11]. In addition pathologists are wary of saddling a child with a malignant diagnosis if indeed the skin lesion behaves in a benign fashion. Under-diagnosing or over-diagnosing controversial pigmented lesions in the pediatric population have repercussions either way. If under-diagnosed, the patient may not receive the standard definitive cancer treatment, such as a radical resection and a sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsy. Although somewhat controversial, this primary treatment has been associated with a survival benefit in adults if indeed the SLN is found to contain metastatic disease. By under-treating children with MM, life-saving treatment may be denied[4,12-15]. If over-diagnosed, the patient may have procedures that are not necessary, resulting in increased morbidity. In addition the children are then labeled with a cancer diagnosis for the remainder of their lives. Patients mistakenly diagnosed with melanoma may exhibit fear of relapse and may not be able to obtain life or health insurance[14].

The misdiagnosis of melanoma is the second most common reason for cancer malpractice claims in the United States, second only to mistakes in breast cancer diagnosis[16]. All these claims are involved in the under-diagnosis of melanoma and physicians have always been willing to practice defensive medicine, despite increasing the costs of care, to guard against under-diagnosis and less than standard treatment.

In this report we describe three patients with controversial pigmented lesions in the pediatric population. The reports have complete pathology that helps to define the difficulty of the diagnosis, and the full spectrum of issues that arise in dealing with atypical pigmented skin lesions in this population is illustrated. A case is made for lymphatic mapping and SLN biopsy in this setting since the procedure exhibits low morbidity and finding metastatic cells in the SLN can help with the primary diagnosis. Finally a "standard of care" treatment is given for the metastatic disease.

CASE REPORT

Case 1

A previously healthy 2-year-old girl presented to outside physicians with an irregular mole on her right calf. A biopsy was performed and pathology showed an atypical nevus (Spitz nevus) *vs* melanoma. The patient underwent a radical resection of the primary melanoma and SLN biopsy. Pathology showed a 4.1 mm melanoma with clear margins at the primary site. However 2/3 right groin SLNs were positive for metastatic melanoma. The patient underwent a complete lymph node dissection (CLND) of her right groin and all further nodes were negative. The patient was referred to St. Jude's Children Hospital where she received 1 year of adjuvant Interferon therapy.

Case 2

This case involves an otherwise healthy 4-year-old white male who presented with a solid mass in his pinna of the right ear that appeared mostly subcutaneous. It had increased in size and became painful and irritating to the patient.

The patient underwent an excisional biopsy of the mass and pathology revealed features of an intradermal Spitz nevus, with low mitotic rate, nuclear atypia and incomplete maturation of melanocytes at the base of the lesion. Local pathology showed an atypical nevus with the proliferation of large melanocytes. The lesion was positive for Melan-A and S-100 and negative for cytokeratin AE1/AE3, desmin, ESA, GFAP, muscle specific actin and Ki-67. Ki-67 stain was positive and showed increased proliferative activity in the tumor cells. The case was then sent for consultation with the Mayo Clinic, which reported a non-ulcerated malignant spitzoid melanoma with a Breslow thickness of 3.6 mm. The lesion was analyzed at UCSF and pathology was interpreted as an atypical compound proliferation

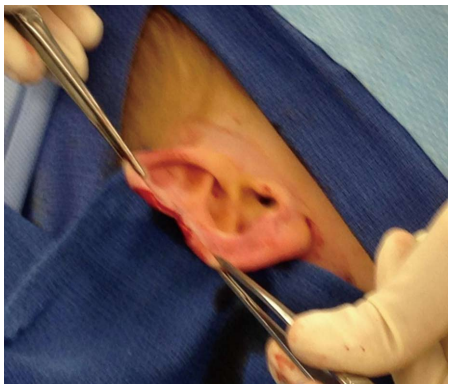


Figure 1 Intra-operative photograph of wedge resection of the right ear as a primary treatment of the melanoma from case 2.

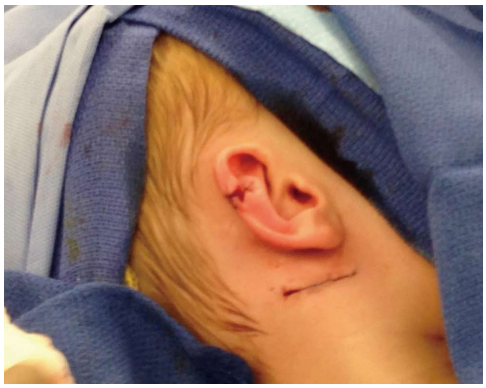


Figure 2 Intra-operative photograph of repair of wedge resection of right ear and sentinel lymph node biopsy of the right posterior triangle.

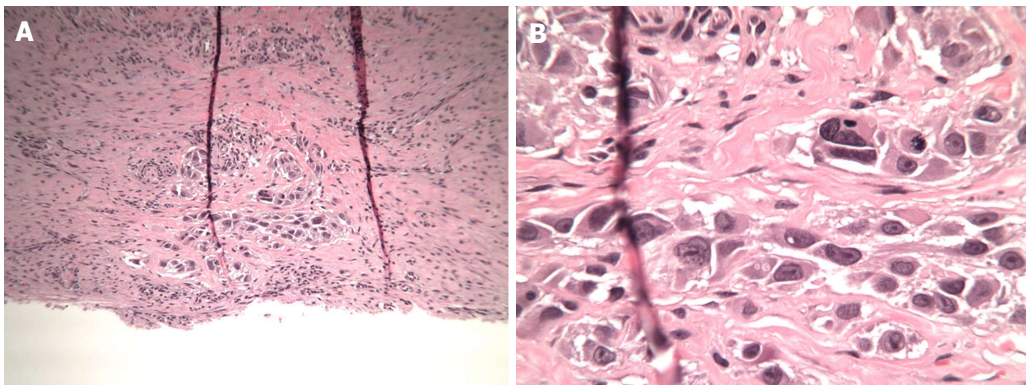


Figure 3 Photomicrography of the wedge resection of the right ear (H and E stain) (A) and higher magnification of malignant melanoma cells (B). In the deep dermis there were nests of large malignant appearing melanocytes with some mitotic figures.

of spitzoid melanocytes consistent with a spitzoid melanoma. Fluorescence *in situ* hybridization analysis of the tumor demonstrated gain in chromosomes 6p, 11q and 8q. These molecular findings favor interpretation as a spitzoid melanoma. Immunostaining for p16 demonstrated relative prominent positivity to verify no loss in chromosome 9p.

The patient was taken to the OR where, under general anesthesia, he underwent a radical resection of the melanoma of the right ear (wedge resection), intra-operative lymphatic mapping and SLN biopsy (Figures 1 and 2). Histologic examination revealed the SLNs to be negative for any evidence of metastatic disease. The wedge resection of the ear showed a nest of malignant appearing melanocytes deep within the dermis (Figure 3) and margins were free. The final diagnosis was residual malignant spitzoid melanoma with clear margins and negative SLNs.

Case 3

A previously healthy 12-year-old girl presented to her local dermatologist with an atypical nevus on her left forearm. A biopsy was performed that had the differential diagnosis of a dysplastic nevus *vs* melanoma (Figure 4A). The patient was treated under the melanoma protocol at USF with a radical resection of the primary site, intra-operative lymphatic mapping and SLN biopsy. Pathology showed clear margins from the primary site but the SLN was initially diagnosed as positive for micrometastatic disease (Figure 4B). A second opinion on the pathology showed a dysplastic nevus and benign nevus cells in the SLN (Figure 5). The patient is being observed.

The melanoma database at the University of South Florida (USF) and Florida Hospital - North Pinellas is a prospective database that is used for day-to-day clinical care and for clinical research. Under a USF IRB approval, all patients registered in the database are consented to have their data de-identified and used in future research projects. Case reports at USF do not require IRB approval.

DISCUSSION

Despite such difficulties in diagnosing malignant melanoma, it is important to avoid a delay in the diagnosis because early detection and aggressive treatment improves the patient' chances of survival[6,10,12]. The recommended course of action after detection and diagnosis of malignant melanoma is a radical resection of the primary site and if the melanoma is greater than 0.76 mm in thickness, a SLN biopsy. Complete lymph node dissections are reserved for those patients with a positive SLN[6-10]. The nosologic category of childhood

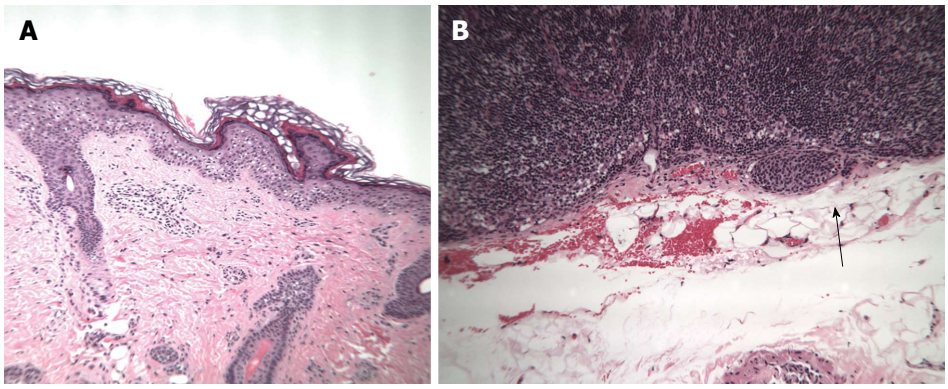


Figure 4 H and E stain. A: Photomicrograph of primary lesion removed from the left forearm from case 3; B: Photomicrograph of the sentinel lymph node from case 3 - H and E stain - showing subcapsular deposits of pigmented cells (arrow).

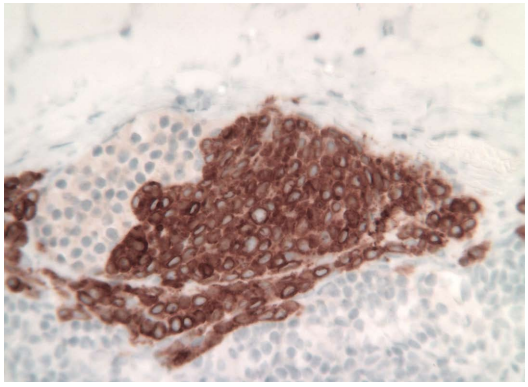


Figure 5 Immunostaining (MART-1) of the sentinel lymph node from case 3.

spitzoid melanoma refers to an emerging entity that seems distinct from conventional adult melanoma. Such tumors often lack BRAF mutations and are reported in the past literature under such flawed designations as malignant Spitz nevus. Findings to date suggest a small risk for metastases to regional lymph nodes with a low risk for widespread dissemination. It is thought that such lesions represent a low-grade form of melanoma[14]. Immunohistochemical differentiation with S-100 protein and HMB-45, although useful in identifying melanocytic cells, is not useful in distinguishing between malignant melanoma and Spitz Nevi, as both lesions stain positive with both markers[6,17]. A newer diagnostic assay using 5 markers (ARPC2, FN1, RGS1, SPP1 and WNT2) has been shown to be effective in differentiating between malignant melanoma and Spitz nevi[17]. Using an algorithm based on the pattern and intensity of these 5 markers with varying skin lesions, this multi-marker assay was able to correctly diagnose a high percentage of melanomas, Spitz nevi, dysplastic nevi, and other misdiagnosed lesions[17]. The multi-marker assay corrected three-quarters of cases in which incorrect pathological diagnosis were rendered, including melanomas initially diagnosed as nevi[17]. The test could be used to aid in the histologic diagnosis of melanoma, preventing errors in under diagnosis[17]. Regardless, it still remains difficult for clinicians and pathologists to differentiate between the two diagnoses (benign *vs* malignant), even for those who deal with such cases on a daily basis.

Performing a SLN biopsy after a wide local excision of the lesion can serve both a diagnostic and therapeutic purpose. Histopathological examination of the harvested SLNs can be used to support the diagnosis of the lesion as benign, helping to avoid incorrectly burdening a young patient with a lifelong diagnosis of malignancy as well as decrease the morbidity from subsequent and more invasive procedures such as a CLND. However, if the pathology reveals that the lesion is malignant, then the nodes can still serve a further diagnostic purpose by allowing clinicians to better stage and grade the harmful lesion, and determine if further surgery is indicated. In addition to these diagnostic benefits, the removal of the SLN can serve a therapeutic purpose by removing all disease, since in all stage Ⅲ patients (regional nodal disease), the metastatic disease is confined to the SLN 85% of the time. That is, the SLN acts as an effective trap in the regional basin to spread of the metastatic disease to higher non-SLNs[18].

Although controversy exists on whether performing the SLN procedure provides a survival benefit to the patient, we know that the best evidence of efficacy for the SLN procedure is displayed in those patients with documented stage Ⅲ disease, and a positive SLN[12-15].

Controversial pigmented lesions in children refer to the fact that some skin lesions in this population are problematic in trying to determine a benign pathology from a malignant. Many times multiple pathologists will render an opinion on the skin biopsy with some basing their benign reading on the prognosis for a Spitz nevus quoted in the literature for patients even though the cytology of the cells are malignant. Other pathologists prefer to interpret the skin histology based on what they observe with their microscopic examination. Newer genetic profiling of these skin lesions may be helpful in differentiating these lesions into appropriate benign *vs* malignant categories. However, clinicians are left with little guidance in trying to care for patients with this clinical scenario.

For the last 10 years the Cutaneous Oncology Pro-

gram at USF/FH-N Pinellas has implemented a protocol for dealing with these difficult cases. Since the lymphatic mapping and SLN procedure is a low morbidity procedure, pediatric patients with controversial pigmented lesions are treated as if they carry the melanoma diagnosis, and are considered candidates for a radical resection of the primary melanoma to obtain clear margins and SLN biopsy for nodal staging. This protocol can accomplish the following: (1) If the SLN is negative for metastases, then that data would be considered a line of evidence that the skin lesion is benign and the patient has a good prognosis; (2) If the SLN is positive for metastases, this is a good indication that the original skin lesion is malignant making the patient eligible for CLNDs and adjuvant Interferon therapy. Case 3 illustrates the fact that benign nevus cell rests in the SLN must be differentiated from metastatic melanoma cells in the SLN; and (3) Patients will not be under treated if indeed they have the malignant phenotype. Likewise any over treatment of the patients is associated with a low morbidity operation, the SLN biopsy.

Even though malignant melanoma diagnoses in children are rare, we must be cognizant of such a possibility because early diagnosis is crucial to patient outcome. Despite new methods used to distinguish nevi and melanoma from each other, a certain protocol system, such as that implemented at the Cutaneous Oncology Program at USF/FH-N Pinellas, is crucial in assuring the appropriate patient treatment.

As recurrences and melanoma-related death inevitably remain a possibility years after patient diagnosis, it is necessary for long-term patient follow-up, including full-body skin examination in this population for the remainder of their lives[3,19].

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

Pediatric patients with controversial pigmented skin lesions are problematic in treatment and for assigning prognosis.

Clinical diagnosis

Three patients are described with skin lesions where the histologic diagnosis of benign or malignant is in doubt.

Differential diagnosis

The differential diagnosis is between a benign dysplastic nevus and a malignant melanoma.

Laboratory diagnosis

Histologic examination using routine hematoxolin and eosin stain and immunohistochemistry with S-100 and HMB-45 stains was performed.

Imaging diagnosis

Pre-operative lymphoscintigraphy was performed to identify all nodal basins at risk for metastases.

Pathological diagnosis

The primary site differential was between dysplastic nevi *vs* malignant melanoma. The differential diagnosis in the sentinel lymph nodes (SLNs) was metastatic melanoma *vs* benign nevus cells.

Treatment

All 3 patients underwent radical resection of their primary sites and SLN biopsy. The patient with a positive SLN was administered adjuvant Interferon alfa-2b for 1 year.

Term explanation

The SLNs are all nodes in the regional basin that have a direct connection by way of afferent lymphatics to the primary melanoma site. SLNs are identified with either a blue dye or radiocolloid mapping technique.

Experiences and lessons

Since the lymphatic mapping and SLN procedure is a low morbidity procedure, pediatric patients with controversial pigmented lesions are treated as if they carry the melanoma diagnosis, and are considered candidates for a radical resection of the primary melanoma to obtain clear margins and SLN biopsy for nodal staging.

Peer-review

This article includes valuable information regarding the complexities of distinguishing benign nevi from malignant melanoma in the pediatric population.

REFERENCES

1 **Boddie AW**, Smith JL, McBride CM. Malignant melanoma in children and young adults: effect of diagnostic criteria on staging and end results. *South Med J* 1978; **71**: 1074-1078 [PMID: 684494 DOI: 10.1097/00007611-197809000-00009]

2 **Hamre MR**, Chuba P, Bakhshi S, Thomas R, Severson RK. Cutaneous melanoma in childhood and adolescence. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2002; **19**: 309-317 [PMID: 12078862 DOI: 10.1080/08880010290057327]

3 **Ferrari A**, Bono A, Baldi M, Collini P, Casanova M, Pennacchioli E, Terenziani M, Marcon I, Santinami M, Bartoli C. Does melanoma behave differently in younger children than in adults? A retrospective study of 33 cases of childhood melanoma from a single institution. *Pediatrics* 2005; **115**: 649-654 [PMID: 15741367 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2004-0471]

4 **van der Ploeg AP**, Haydu LE, Spillane AJ, Quinn MJ, Saw RP, Shannon KF, Stretch JR, Uren RF, Scolyer RA, Thompson JF. Outcome following sentinel node biopsy plus wide local excision versus wide local excision only for primary cutaneous melanoma: analysis of 5840 patients treated at a single institution. *Ann Surg* 2014; **260**: 149-157 [PMID: 24633018 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000500]

5 **Spitz S**. Melanomas of childhood. *Am J Pathol* 1948; **24**: 591-609 [PMID: 18859360 DOI: 10.3322/canjclin.41.1.40]

6 **Reintgen DS**, Vollmer R, Seigler HF. Juvenile malignant melanoma. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1989; **168**: 249-253 [PMID: 2919354]

7 **Ghazi B**, Carlson GW, Murray DR, Gow KW, Page A, Durham M, Kooby DA, Parker D, Rapkin L, Lawson DH, Delman KA. Utility of lymph node assessment for atypical spitzoid melanocytic neoplasms. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 2471-2475 [PMID: 20224858 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1022-3]

8 **Murali R**, Sharma RN, Thompson JF, Stretch JR, Lee CS, McCarthy SW, Scolyer RA. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in histologically ambiguous melanocytic tumors with spitzoid features (so-called atypical spitzoid tumors). *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 302-309 [PMID: 18000712 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9577-3]

9 **Allen AC**, Spitz S. Histogenesis and clinicopathologic correlation of nevi and malignant melanomas; current status. *AMA Arch Derm Syphilol* 1954; **69**: 150-171 [PMID: 13123539 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1954.01540140018002]

10 **Ceballos PI**, Ruiz-Maldonado R, Mihm MC. Melanoma in children. *N Engl J Med* 1995; **332**: 656-662 [PMID: 7845431 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199503093321007]

11 **Barnhill RL**, Argenyi ZB, From L, Glass LF, Maize JC, Mihm MC, Rabkin MS, Ronan SG, White WL, Piepkorn M. Atypical Spitz nevi/tumors: lack of consensus for diagnosis, discrimination from melanoma, and prediction of outcome. *Hum Pathol* 1999; **30**: 513-520 [PMID: 10333219 DOI: 10.1016/S0046-8177(99)90193-4]

12 **Morton DL**, Thompson JF, Cochran AJ, Mozzillo N, Nieweg OE, Roses DF, Hoekstra HJ, Karakousis CP, Puleo CA, Coventry BJ, Kashani-Sabet M, Smithers BM, Paul E, Kraybill WG, McKinnon JG, Wang HJ, Elashoff R, Faries MB. Final trial report of sentinel-node biopsy versus nodal observation in melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 599-609 [PMID: 24521106 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1310460]

13 **Coit D**. Sentinel lymph node biopsy for melanoma: a plea to let the data speak. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 3359-3361 [PMID: 25059791 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3947-4]

14 **Thompson JF**, Faries MB, Cochran AJ. Sentinel lymph node biopsy for melanoma: a plea to let the data be heard. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 3362-3364 [PMID: 25103536 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3967-0]

15 **Kachare SD**, Brinkley J, Wong JH, Vohra NA, Zervos EE, Fitzgerald TL. The influence of sentinel lymph node biopsy on survival for intermediate-thickness melanoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 3377-3385 [PMID: 25063010 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3954-5]

16 **Palazzo JP**, Duray PH. Congenital agminated Spitz nevi: immunoreactivity with a melanoma-associated monoclonal antibody. *J Cutan Pathol* 1988; **15**: 166-170 [PMID: 3397410 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0560.1988.tb00537.x]

17 **Kashani-Sabet M**, Rangel J, Torabian S, Nosrati M, Simko J, Jablons DM, Moore DH, Haqq C, Miller JR, Sagebiel RW. A multi-marker assay to distinguish malignant melanomas from benign nevi. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 6268-6272 [PMID: 19332774 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0901185106]

18 **Reintgen C**, Reintgen M, Reintgen D. Evidence for a Better Nodal Staging System for Cancers. The Importance of Non-Sentinel Lymph Node Metastases. Bassett Society, Durham, NC, 2014

19 **Larsen AK**, Jensen MB, Krag C. Long-term Survival after Metastatic Childhood Melanoma. *Plast Reconstr Surg Glob Open* 2014; **2**: e163 [PMID: 25289356 DOI: 10.1097/GOX.0000000000000122]

P- Reviewer: Mocellin S, de la Serna IL **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com